# CAVALRY
# DRILL REGULATIONS
## UNITED STATES ARMY

V

3517
2

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA

VR 357.73
Un3.2

GIFT OF FAIRMAN ROGERS.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Lyrasis Members and Sloan Foundation

http://www.archive.org/details/cavalrydrillre00unit

# CAVALRY

# DRILL REGULATIONS.

UNITED STATES ARMY.

---

Adopted Oct. 3, 1891.

---

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY
1892.

WAR DEPARTMENT,
*Washington, October* 3, 1891.

A board of officers consisting of Lieut. Col. John C. Bates, Twentieth Infantry; Lieut. Col. George B. Sanford, Ninth Cavalry; Maj. Henry C. Hasbrouck, Fourth Artillery; Maj. John C. Gilmore, Assistant Adjutant-General; Capt. Joseph T. Haskell, Twenty-third Infantry; Capt. Edward S. Godfrey, Seventh Cavalry; and Capt. James M. Lancaster, Third Artillery, with First Lieut. George Andrews, Twenty fifth Infantry, as recorder at first, and later, First Lieut. John T. French, jr., Fourth Artillery, having prepared a system of Drill Regulations for cavalry which has been approved by the President, it is herewith published for the information and government of the Army, and for the observance of the militia of the United States.

With a view to insure uniformity throughout the Army, all cavalry exercises and maneuvers not embraced in this system are prohibited and those herein prescribed will be strictly observed.

REDFIELD PROCTOR,
*Secretary of War.*

# CAVALRY
# DRILL REGULATIONS.

## DEFINITIONS.

***Alignment***—A straight line upon which several men or bodies of troops are formed, or are to be formed.

***Base***—The unit on which a movement is regulated; as, *base trooper, troop,* or *squadron.*

***Center***—The middle point or element of a command; as, the *center trooper, troop,* etc.

***Column***—A formation in which the elements are placed one behind another, whether these elements are troopers, fours, platoons, troops, or larger bodies.

***Deploy***—To extend the front; as, to pass from column into line.

***Depth***—The space from head to rear of any formation, including the leading and rear elements.

***Disposition***—The distribution of the fractions of a body of troops, and the formations and duties assigned to each, for the accomplishment of a common end.

***Distance***—An open space in the direction of depth.

Distances are measured from the heads of horses in rank to the croups of horses posted in front of the line, and from the croups of horses in rank to the heads of horses in rear of the line.

The distance between two subdivisions in column is measured from the croups of the horses in front to the heads of the horses in rear.

Full distance is equal to the front of the subdivision, plus its interval in line, less three yards.

164920

*Drill*—The exercises and evolutions taught on the drill ground and executed in the precise and formal manner prescribed.

*Echelon*—In the order in echelon, the subdivisions are placed one behind another, extending beyond and unmasking one another, either wholly or in part.

In battle formation this term is also employed to designate the different elements or lines in the direction of depth. Example: *The first echelon, the attacking line* or *the firing line; the second echelon, the support,* etc.

*Evolution*—A movement executed by several squadrons for the purpose of passing from one formation to another.

*Facing Distance*—Sixteen inches; *i. e.,* the difference between the front of a man in ranks and his depth.

*File*—A single trooper in rank.

*File-Closers*—Officers or non-commissioned officers posted two yards in rear of the rank; it is their duty to rectify mistakes and to insure steadiness and promptness in the rank.

*Flank*—The right or left of a command in line or column; also the element on the right or left of a line.

In speaking of the enemy, one says "his right flank," "his left wing," etc., to indicate the flank or wing that the enemy would so designate.

*Flank Attack*—A movement made against the enemy's flank.

*Flankers*—Men so posted or marched as to protect the flank of a column.

*Flank March*—A march, whatever the formation, by which troops move parallel to the enemy's position.

*Formation*—Arrangement of the elements of a command. The placing of all the fractions in regular order in line, in column, or for battle.

*Front*—The space, in width, occupied by a command, either in line or column.

*Front* also denotes the direction of the enemy.

in estimating the extent of the front, the space occupied by one mounted man is taken as one yard, which includes the interval of six inches between knees. (See Pars. 115 and 379.)

*Guard, Advance*—A body of troops marching in front of a command to reconnoiter and to protect its march.

*Guard, Rear*—A body of troops to protect the rear of a command.

*Guide*—An officer, non-commissioned officer, or trooper, upon whom the command regulates its march.

*Head*—The leading element of a column.

*Interval*—An open space between elements of the same line.

The interval between two mounted men is measured from knee to knee; between two dismounted men, it is measured from elbow to elbow; between two troops, squads, etc., from the left knee of the left man of the group on the right to the right knee of the man on the right of the left group.

The intervals between individuals allow for inequalities in marching, permit greater freedom in individual movements, and reduce crowding, especially at the faster gaits.

The intervals between subdivisions are necessary to allow for the oscillations in marching; it is therefore expected that the intervals prescribed will be preserved approximately rather than accurately.

*Left*—The left extremity or element of a body of troops.

*Line*—A formation in which the different elements are abreast of each other. When the elements are in column, the formation is called a line of columns.

*Maneuver*—A movement made according to the nature of the ground with reference to the position and movements of the enemy.

*Order, Close*—The normal formation in which troopers are regularly arranged in line or column.

*Order, Extended*—The formation in which the troopers or the subdivisions, or both, are separated by intervals greater than in close order.

*Pace*—Thirty inches; the length of the full step in quick time.

*Ploy*—To diminish front; as, to ploy into close column.

*Point of Rest*—The point at which a formation begins.

*Rank*—A line of men placed side by side.

*Right*—The right extremity or element of a body of troops.

*Scouts*—Men detailed to precede a command on the march and when forming for battle, to gather and report information concerning the enemy and the nature of the ground.

*Tactics*—The art of handling troops in the presence of the enemy; *i. e.*, applying on the battle field the movements learned at drill.

*Turning Movement*—An extended movement around the enemy's flank for the purpose of threatening or attacking his flank or rear.

*Wing*—The portion of a command between the center and the flank; the squadron is the smallest body which is divided into wings.

## SIGNALS.

The following signals are used alone or in conjunction with verbal commands or trumpet calls. The whistle call, to fix the attention, may precede the signal.

All *preparatory* signals are made from the *guard;* the return to the guard, from the preparatory signal, is the signal of execution.

As long as the instructor has his saber at *guard*, after attention has been commanded or signaled, the attention is kept fixed on the instructor; the return to carry is an indication that no further signals are to be made until *attention* is again signaled or commanded.

*Attention*—Raise the arm vertically to its full extent, saber in prolongation of the arm, and describe small horizontal circles with the point.

*Forward*—First and second motions of *front cut.*

*Right oblique*—Extend the arm and saber obliquely to the right until both are horizontal.

*Left oblique*—Same to the left.

*Fours right;* or, *By the right flank*—Extend the arm and saber to the right until both are horizontal.

*Fours left;* or, *By the left flank*—Same to the left.

In the forward, oblique, and flank marches, the instructor, as soon as he has made the preparatory signal, moves his horse in the direction the squad is to march.

*To change direction to the right or left*—Raise the arm until horizontal, saber pointing toward the marching flank; carry the arm and saber horizontally to the front, at the same time turn the horse in the direction to be taken.

*Fours right about;* or, *Fours left about;* or, *To the rear.*

Execute *rear point* and turn the horse about in the direction the fours are to wheel.

*To increase the gait one degree*—Carry the hand to the right shoulder, saber vertical; raise and lower the hand, keeping the saber vertical; to be repeated several times.

*To decrease the gait one degree*—First motion of *head parry*.

By the increase and decrease of the gait one degree is understood the passing from a walk to a trot, or from a trot to a gallop and the reverse. In changes of gait, the instructor, upon making the preparatory signal, causes his horse to take the gait ordered.

*Halt*—Raise the arm vertically to its full extent, saber in prolongation of the arm.

*Right front into line*—Execute *right moulinet.*

*Left front into line*—Execute *left moulinet.*

*As Skirmishers*—Wave the saber several times to the right and left in front of the body. When dismounted, raise both arms until horizontal, extended laterally.

*Rally*—Extend the arm vertically and rapidly circle the saber horizontally around the head.

*To fight on foot*—Execute *rear moulinet.*

*Action right front*—Execute *right moulinet.*

*Action left front*—Execute *left moulinet.*

*Action right*—Execute *right point.*

*Action left*—Execute *left point.*

*Cease firing*—A whistle call.

When necessary, these signals may be made with the carbine or head-dress held in the hand, or with the hand only.

# GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

**1.** All details, detachments, and other bodies of troops will habitually be formed in single rank.

**2.** Movements that may be executed toward either flank are explained as toward but one flank, it being necessary to substitute the word "left" for "right," or the reverse, to have the command and explanation of the corresponding movement toward the other flank.

**3.** In movements where the guide may be either right, left, or center, it is indicated in the command thus: *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

**4.** Any movement may be executed either from the halt or when marching, if not otherwise prescribed.

**5.** All movements on foot, not specially excepted, may be executed in double time. If the movement be from the halt, or when marching in quick time, the command *double time* precedes the command *march;* if marching in double time, the command *double time* is omitted.

**6.** All mounted movements, not specially excepted, may be executed at a trot or gallop.

The gait should generally be increased progressively, the trot being executed from a walk, the gallop from a trot. If marching at a gallop, the gait will be decreased to a trot and then to a walk before halting; if marching at a trot, the same rule applies, halting from a trot being considered an exceptional movement.

**7.** To execute a movement at a trot or gallop, the command *trot* or *gallop* precedes the command *march*, unless marching at the gait desired.

**8.** *a.* In movements from the halt, or when marching at the walk. if the gait be not specified in the command, the movement is executed at the walk and terminates at the halt.

*b.* In movements from the halt, or when marching at the walk, if the command *trot* or *gallop* be given, or, when marching at the trot, if the gait be not specified in the command, the leading unit moves at the walk and continues the walk until halted; the others execute the movement at the gait ordered, and upon its completion take the walk.

*c.* If marching at the gallop, or at the trot and the command be *gallop,* the leading unit moves at the trot; the others execute the movement at the gallop, and upon its completion take the trot.

*d.* During the execution of a movement, the instructor may reduce the gait or command the halt at any time; the units that have completed the movement reduce the gait, or halt, at the command; the others conform as they complete the movement.

*e.* In the text, reference is made to this paragraph in all movements coming under its provisions.

**9.** *a.* There are two kinds of commands. The *preparatory* command, such as *Forward*, indicates the movement that is to be executed. The command of *execution*, such as MARCH, or HALT, causes the execution.

*b.* Preparatory commands are distinguished by *italics,* those of execution, by CAPITALS.

*c.* Where it is not mentioned in the text who gives the commands prescribed, they are the commands of the instructor.

*d.* The preparatory command should be given at such an interval of time before the command of execution as to admit of its being properly understood; the pause after each command should be well defined, and will vary with the size of the body of troops. The command of execution should be given the instant the movement is to commence.

*e.* The tone of command is animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the number of men under instruction.

*f.* Each preparatory command is pronounced in an ascending tone of voice, but always in such a manner that the command of execution may be more energetic and elevated.

*g.* On foot, the command of execution is pronounced in a firm and brief tone.

*h.* In mounted movements, the preparatory commands are more or less prolonged to insure their being heard; the command of execution is always prolonged.

*i.* When giving commands to troops, it is usually best to face or look toward them.

**10.** To secure uniformity, officers and non-commissioned officers are practiced in giving commands.

The trumpet calls and saber signals should be frequently used in instruction, in order that the officers and men may readily recognize them.

**11.** If the instructor wishes to revoke a preparatory command, he does so by commanding: *As you were.*

**12.** For the purpose of correcting errors the instructor may command: 1. *In place,* 2. HALT; all the officers, file-closers, and troopers halt at once and remain in place.

To resume the movement, the instructor commands: 1. *Squad* (or, *Troop*, etc.), 2. MARCH.

The movement is then completed as if it had not been interrupted.

**13.** In the different schools, the posts of the officers and noncommissioned officers are specified, but as instructors they go wherever their presence is necessary.

## *Elementary Drills.*

**14.** Thorough training in the School of the Soldier and the School of the Trooper is the basis of efficiency. Instruction will be progressive and will be first given to small squads, which are made larger as the instruction advances.

**15.** Short and frequent drills are preferable to long ones, which exhaust the attention of both instructor and recruit.

**16.** As the instruction progresses, the recruits will be grouped according to proficiency, in order that all may advance as rapidly as their abilities permit. Those who lack aptitude and quickness will be separated from the others and placed under experienced drill masters.

**17.** Generally, sergeants and corporals are the instructors under the supervision of an officer; but the captain occasionally requires the lieutenants to act as instructors.

**18.** The instructor will always maintain a military bearing, and by a quiet, firm demeanor set a proper example to the men.

**19.** As the recruits become somewhat proficient in the School of the Soldier and School of the Trooper, the officer superintending the instruction may call upon them in turn to drill the squad in his presence and to correct any errors that may be observed. This will increase their interest, hasten their instruction, and facilitate judgment upon their fitness for the duties of non-commissioned officers.

# CLOSE ORDER.

## SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.

**20.** This school has for its object the instruction of the individual recruit, on foot, and afterward that of the squad.

From the beginning, the instructor will insist upon a smart appearance of the recruits, and will exact that their clothing be clean and neatly adjusted.

**21.** The instructor explains each movement in as few words as possible, at the same time executing it himself. He requires the recruits to take by themselves the proper position and does not touch them for the purpose of correcting them, except when they are unable to correct themselves; he avoids keeping them too long at the same movement, although each should be understood before passing to another. He exacts by degrees the desired precision and uniformity.

**22.** When, for purposes of instruction any movement is divided into motions, or executed in detail, the command of execution determines the prompt execution of the first motion, and the commands: **TWO**, **THREE**, etc., that of the other motions.

To execute the movements in detail, the instructor first commands: *By the numbers;* all movements divided into motions are then executed as above explained, until the command: *Without the numbers,* or until he commands movements other than those in the manual of arms.

As soon as the recruits thoroughly understand the several motions, they execute them alternately with and without the numbers.

The execution of movements by the numbers is chiefly applicable to the instruction of recruits, but may be re-

curred to for the purpose of correcting faults and checking carelessness.

**23.** After the movements have been properly executed in the order laid down, the instructor no longer confines himself to that order.

**24.** When the execution of a movement is improperly begun and the instructor wishes to begin it anew for the purpose of correcting it, he commands: ***As you were;*** at which the movement ceases and the former position is resumed.

## INDIVIDUAL INSTRUCTION *without* ARMS.

**25.** For this instruction, a few recruits, usually not exceeding four, are placed in single rank, facing to the front.

**26.** To teach the recruits how to assemble, the instructor requires them to close the left hand and place the knuckles against the waist above the hip, wrist straight, back of the hand to the front; he then places them on the same line, so that the right arm of each man rests lightly against the left elbow of the man next on his right, and then directs the left hands to be replaced by the side. The men thus find themselves with an interval that allows for a free movement of the arms.

**27.** When the recruits have learned how to take their places, they are required to assemble without assistance.

The instructor commands: **FALL IN.**

The men assemble promptly as above prescribed, at attention, each man dropping the left hand as the next man on his left has his interval.

### *Position of the Soldier, or Attention.*

**28.** Heels on the same line, and as near each other as the conformation of the man permits.

Feet turned out equally, and forming with each other an angle of about sixty degrees.

Knees straight without stiffness.

Body erect on the hips, inclining a little forward; shoulders square and falling equally.

Arms and hands hanging naturally, backs of the hands outward; little fingers opposite the seams of the trousers; elbows near the body.

Head erect and square to the front; chin slightly drawn in, without constraint; eyes straight to the front.

### *The Rests.*

**29.** Being at a halt, to rest the men: **FALL OUT**, or **REST**, or **AT EASE**.

At the command *fall out*, the men may leave the rank, but will remain in the immediate vicinity. At the command *fall in*, they resume their former places.

At the command *rest*, the men remain in rank, but are not required to preserve silence nor immobility.

At the command *at ease*, the men keep one heel in place and preserve silence, but not immobility.

If marching: 1. *Route step*, 2. **MARCH**; or, 1. *At ease*, 2. **MARCH**.

The men keep their places in the squad, but are not required to keep the cadenced step; at *route step*, they are not required to preserve silence.

**30.** 1. *Parade*, 2. **REST**.

Carry the right foot six inches straight to the rear, left knee slightly bent; clasp the hands in front of the center of the body, left hand uppermost, left thumb clasped by thumb and forefinger of right hand; preserve silence and steadiness of position.

**31.** To resume the attention or position of the soldier: 1. *Squad*, 2. **ATTENTION**.

The men take the position of the soldier and fix their attention.

### *To Dismiss the Squad.*

**32.** Being in line at a halt: **DISMISSED**.

### *Eyes Right or Left.*

**33.** 1. *Eyes,* 2. **RIGHT** (or **LEFT**), 3. **FRONT.**

At the command *right,* turn the head gently, so as to bring the left eye in line with the center of the body, eyes fixed on the line of eyes of the men in, or supposed to be in, the same rank.

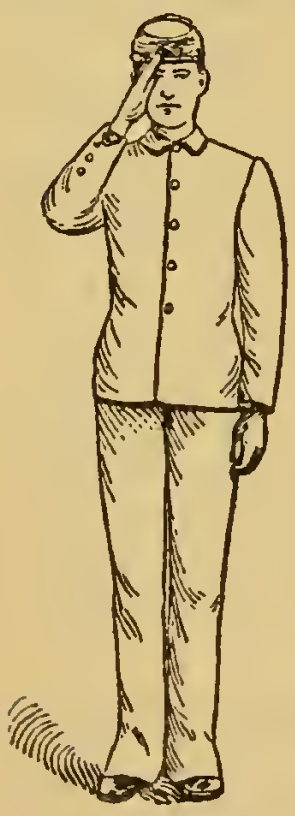
At the command *front,* turn the head and eyes to the front.

The instructor sees that the movement does not derange the squareness of the shoulders.

### *Facings.*

**34.** To the right or left: 1. *Right* (or *Left*), 2. **FACE.**

Raise slightly the right heel and left toe and face to the right, turning on the left heel, assisted by a slight pressure on the ball of the right foot; replace the right foot.



Pl. 1, Par. 36.

The facings to the left are also executed upon the left heel.

**35.** To the rear: 1. *About,* 2. **FACE.**

Raise slightly the left heel and right toe, face to the rear, turning to the right on the right heel and the ball of the left foot; replace the left foot beside the right.

### *Salute with the Hand.*

**36.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *hand,* 2. **SALUTE.**

Raise the right hand smartly till the forefinger touches the lower part of the headdress above the right eye, thumb and fingers extended and joined, palm to the left, forearm inclined at about forty-five degrees, hand and wrist straight; (TWO) Drop the arm quietly by the side. (See Par. 1012.)

If uncovered, the forefinger touches the forehead above the eye.

## SETTING UP EXERCISES.

**37.** In order to retain a proper set-up and to keep the muscles supple, all soldiers in garrison should be frequently practiced in the following exercises.

The *arm, hand, trunk, leg,* and *foot* exercises should be alternated, the drill interrupted by frequent rests, and varied by instruction in the facings, marchings, etc. While exercising one part of the body, care should be taken that the other parts remain quiet, as far as the conformation of the body will allow.

At the command *halt,* given at any time, the exercise ceases and the position of the soldier is resumed.

The recruits being in single rank (Par. 27), the instructor will place them three paces apart.

He will require the blouses to be unbuttoned or removed, and the movements to be executed with quickness and energy.

### *First Exercise.*

1. *Arm,* 2. EXERCISE, 3. HEAD, 4. UP, 5. DOWN, 6. RAISE.

At the command *exercise,* raise the arms laterally until horizontal, palms upward. HEAD: Raise the arms in a circular direction over the head, tips of fingers touching top of cap over the forehead, backs of fingers in contact their full length, thumbs pointing to the rear, elbows pressed back. UP: Extend the arms upward their full length, palms touching. DOWN: Force them obliquely back, and gradually let them fall by the sides. RAISE: Raise the arms laterally, as prescribed for the second command. Continue by repeating *head, up, down, raise.*

### *Second Exercise.*

1. *Arm,* 2. EXERCISE, 3. FRONT, 4. REAR.

At the command *exercise,* raise the arms laterally,

First Exercise. FRONT: Swing the arms, extended, horizontally to the front, palms touching, heels on the ground. REAR: Swing the arms, extended, well to the rear, inclining them slightly downward, raising the body upon the toes. Continue by repeating *front, rear,* till the men, if possible, are able to touch the hands behind the back.

*Third Exercise.*

1. *Arm,* 2. EXERCISE, 3. CIRCLE.

At the command *exercise,* raise the arms laterally, as in First Exercise. CIRCLE: Slowly describe a small circle with each arm, upward and backward, from front to rear, the arms not passing in front of the line of the breast. Continue by repeating *circle.*

*Fourth Exercise.*

1. *Arm,* 2. EXERCISE, 3. SHOULDER, 4. FRONT, 5. REAR.

At the command *exercise,* raise the arms laterally, as in First Exercise. SHOULDER: Place the tips of fingers lightly on top of the shoulders, keeping upper arms horizontal. FRONT: Force the elbows to the front. REAR: Force the elbows back as far as possible. Continue by repeating *front, rear*

*Fifth Exercise.*

1. *Hand,* 2. EXERCISE, 3. CLOSE, 4. OPEN.

At the command *exercise,* raise the arms laterally, as in First Exercise. CLOSE: Close the hands with force. OPEN: Open the hands quickly, spreading the fingers and thumbs apart as much as possible. Continue by repeating *close, open.*

*Sixth Exercise.*

1. *Forearms vertical,* 2. RAISE, 3. UP, 4. DOWN.

At the command *raise,* raise the forearms until nearly vertical, fingers extended and joined, palms toward each

other. UP: Thrust upward with force, extending the arms to their full length. DOWN: Force the arms obliquely back and gradually let them fall by the sides. Continue by repeating *raise, up, down.*

### *Seventh Exercise.*

1. *Forearms horizontal,* 2. RAISE, 3. FRONT, 4. REAR.

At the command *raise,* raise the forearms to the front until horizontal, elbows forced back, hands tightly closed, backs down. FRONT: Thrust the arms forcibly to the front, turning the backs of the hands up, arms horizontal. REAR: Bring the arms back quickly to the first position, forcing the elbows and shoulders to the rear. Continue by repeating *front, rear.*

### *Eighth Exercise.*

1. *Trunk,* 2. EXERCISE, 3. DOWN, 4. BACK.

At the command *exercise,* raise the hands and place them on the hips, fingers to the rear, thumbs to the front, elbows pressed back. DOWN: Bend the trunk forward at the hips as far as possible. BACK: Raise and bend the trunk to the rear as far as possible. Execute both motions slowly without bending the knees. Continue by repeating *down, back.*

### *Ninth Exercise.*

1. *Trunk,* 2. EXERCISE, 3. RIGHT, 4. LEFT.

At the command *exercise,* place the hands on the hips, as in Eighth Exercise. RIGHT: Bend the trunk to the right, without twisting it or raising either heel. LEFT: Bend the trunk similarly to the left. Execute both motions slowly. Continue by repeating *right, left.*

### *Tenth Exercise.*

1. *Trunk,* 2. EXERCISE, 3. CIRCLE RIGHT (or LEFT).

At the command *exercise,* place the hands on the hips as in Eighth Exercise. CIRCLE RIGHT: Bend the trunk

to the right, as in Ninth Exercise; turn the trunk to the rear and bend to the rear, as in Eighth Exercise; turn the trunk to the left and bend to the left, as in Ninth Exercise; turn the trunk to the front and bend forward, as in Eighth Exercise. Continue by repeating *circle right.*

### *Eleventh Exercise.*

1. *Arms vertical, palms to the front,* 2. RAISE, 3. DOWN, 4. UP.

At the command *raise*, raise the arms from the sides, extended to their full length, till the hands meet above the head, palms to the front, fingers pointed upward, thumbs locked, right thumb in front, shoulders pressed back. DOWN: Bend over till the hands, if possible, touch the ground, keeping arms and knees straight. UP: Straighten the body and swing the arms extended to the vertical position. Continue by repeating *down, up.*

### *Twelfth Exercise.*

1. *Arms forward, palms down,* 2. RAISE, 3. DOWN, 4. UP.

At the command *raise,* raise the arms to the front, extended to their full length, till the hands are in front of and at the height of the shoulders, palms down, fingers extended and joined, thumbs under forefingers. DOWN: Bend the trunk forward at the hips as far as possible and swing the arms backward, knees and arms straight. UP: Straighten the trunk and swing the arms to the forward position. Continue by repeating *down, up.*

### *Thirteenth Exercise.*

1. *Leg,* 2. EXERCISE, 3. *Half bend,* 4. DOWN, 5. UP.

At the command *exercise,* place the hands on the hips, as in Eighth Exercise. DOWN: Lower the body, separating the knees and bending them as much as possible, heels on the ground, head and trunk erect. UP: Raise the body, straightening and closing the knees. Continue by repeating *down, up.*

### *Fourteenth Exercise.*

1. *Leg,* 2. **Exercise,** 3. *Full bend,* 4. **Down,** 5. **Up.**

At the command *exercise,* place the hands on the hips, as in Eighth Exercise. **Down:** Lower the body, separating the knees and bending them as much as possible, head and trunk erect, heels raised, weight of body resting on the balls of the feet. **Up:** Raise the body, straightening and closing the knees, and lower the heels to the ground. Continue by repeating *down, up.*

### *Fifteenth Exercise.*

1. *Leg,* 2. **Exercise,** 3. *Left* (or *Right*), 4. **Forward,** 5. **Rear;** or, 5. **Ground.**

At the command *exercise,* place the hands on the hips, as in Eighth Exercise. **Forward:** Move the left leg to the front, knee straight, so as to advance the foot about fifteen inches, toe turned out, sole nearly horizontal, body balanced on right foot. **Rear:** Move the leg to the rear, knee straight, toe on a line with the right heel, sole nearly horizontal. Continue by repeating *forward, rear.*

When the recruit has learned to balance himself, the command *forward* is followed by **Ground:** Throw the weight of the body forward by rising on the ball of the right foot, advance and plant the left, left heel thirty inches from the right, and advance the right leg quickly to the position of forward. Continue by repeating *ground* when the right and left legs are alternately in the position of forward.

### *Sixteenth Exercise.*

1. *Leg,* 2. **Exercise,** 3. **Up.**

At the command *exercise,* place the hands on the hips as in Eighth Exercise. **Up:** Raise the left leg to the front, bending and elevating the knee as much as possible, leg from knee to instep vertical, toe depressed. **Up:** Replace the left foot and raise the right leg as prescribed for the left.

Execute slowly at first, then gradually increase to the cadence of double time. Continue by repeating *up* when the right and left legs are alternately in position.

### *Seventeenth Exercise.*

1. *Foot,* 2. EXERCISE, 3. UP, 4. DOWN.

At the command *exercise,* place the hands on the hips as in Eighth Exercise. UP: Raise the body upon the toes, knees straight, heels together. DOWN: Lower the heels slowly to the ground. Continue by repeating *up, down.*

As soon as the exercises are well understood, they may be executed without repeating the commands. For this purpose the instructor gives the commands as prescribed, then adds: *Continue the exercise,* upon which the motions to be repeated are continuously executed until the command *halt.*

Where there is a regular system of gymnastic instruction, it may replace the setting-up exercises for well-trained soldiers.

## THE STEPS.

### *Quick Time.*

**38.** The length of the full step in quick time is thirty inches, measured from heel to heel, and the cadence is at the rate of one hundred and twenty steps per minute.

**39.** The recruits being confirmed in the position of the soldier, the instructor places himself eight or ten yards in front of them, and facing toward them, executes the step slowly, at the same time explaining the principles; he then commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. MARCH.

At the command *forward,* throw the weight of the body upon the right leg without bending the left knee.

At the command *march,* move the left leg smartly, but without jerk, carry the foot straight forward thirty inches from the right, measuring from heel to heel, sole

near the ground, knee straight and slightly turned out; at the same time throw the weight of the body forward, and plant the foot without shock, weight of body resting upon it; next, in like manner, advance the right foot and plant it as above; continue the march, keeping the face ot the front.

The instructor indicates from time to time the cadence of the step by calling *one, two, three, four;* or, *left, right,* the instant the left and right foot, respectively, should be planted.

The cadence is at first given slowly, and gradually increased to that of quick time.

**40.** To arrest the march: 1. *Squad,* 2. HALT.

At the command *halt,* given as either foot is brought to the ground, the foot in rear is brought up and planted without shock by the side of the other.

### *Double Time.*

**41.** The length of the full step in double time is thirty-six inches; the cadence is at the rate of one hundred and eighty steps per minute. At this rate a mile can be passed over in about ten minutes.

**42.** To march in double time: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Double time,* 3. MARCH.

At the command *forward,* throw the weight of the body on the right leg; at the command *double time,* raise the hands until the forearms are horizontal, fingers closed, nails toward the body, elbows to the rear.

At the command *march,* carry forward the left foot, leg slightly bent, knee somewhat raised, and plant the foot thirty-six inches from the right; then execute the same motion with the right foot. Continue this alternate movement of the feet, throwing the weight of the body forward and allowing a natural swinging motion of the arms.

The recruits are also exercised in running the principles being the same as for double time.

When marching in double time and when running, the men breathe as much as possible through the nose, keeping the mouth closed.

### *To Mark Time.*

**43.** Being in march: 1. *Mark time,* 2. **MARCH.**

At the command *march,* given as either foot is coming to the ground, continue the cadence and make a semblance of marching without gaining ground, by alternately advancing each foot about half its length, and bringing it back on a line with the other.

To resume the full step: 1. *Forward,* 2. **MARCH.**

### *Short Step.*

**44.** Being in march: 1. *Short step,* 2. **MARCH.**

Take steps of fifteen inches. The full step is resumed at the commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. **MARCH.**

The length of the short step in double time is eighteen inches.

### *Side Step.*

**45.** Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *step,* 2. **MARCH.**

Carry the right foot twelve inches to the right, keeping knees straight and shoulders square to the front; as soon as the right foot is planted, bring the left foot to the side of it, and continue the movement, observing the cadence for each foot as explained for quick time.

The side step is not executed in double time.

### *Back Step.*

**46.** Being at a halt: 1. *Backward,* 2. **MARCH.**

Step back with the left foot fifteen inches straight to the rear, measuring from heel to heel, then with the right, and so on, the feet alternating.

At the command *halt,* bring back the foot in front to the side of the one in rear.

The back step is used for short distances only, and is not executed in double time.

**47.** The *short step, side step,* and *back step* may be executed from *mark time,* and conversely.

### *Change Step.*

**48.** Being in march: 1. *Change step,* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march,* given as the right foot comes to the ground. the left foot is advanced and planted; the toe of the right foot is then advanced near the heel of the left, the recruit again stepping off with the left.

The change on the right foot is similarly executed, the command *march* being given as the left foot strikes the ground.

### *Covering and Marching on Points*

**49.** The instructor selects two points on the ground and requires the recruits in succession to place themselves so that the prolongation of the straight line through these points shall pass between their heels.

The instructor places himself in rear of each recruit, points out the faults of his position, and causes him to cover accurately.

When the recruits are able to cover the points quickly and accurately, they are required after covering to march upon the points in quick and double time. The instructor, remaining in rear of the recruit, observes his march; when halted, the recruit corrects his covering, if necessary; at the command *fall out,* he steps to one side.

The other recruits are halted near the same point, and when all have arrived the instructor selects new points and continues the exercise.

Two recruits should also be established by the instructor, one covering the other, and the others required to cover them at considerable distances apart; the recruits should then be faced about and the exercise repeated in the new direction.

It should be demonstrated to the recruits that they can not march in a straight line without selecting two points in the desired direction and keeping them covered while advancing.

**50.** A distant and conspicuous landmark will next be selected as a point of direction; the recruit will be required to choose two intermediate points on the ground in line with the point of direction and to march upon it by covering these points, new points being selected as he advances.

## INDIVIDUAL INSTRUCTION *with* ARMS.

### *Armament of Trooper for Garrison Duty, Dismounted.*

**51.** Complete armament: Carbine, pistol, and saber.

For drill and inspection, as may be directed.

For duty out of rank, as orderly, witness, etc.: Saber and saber belt.

Full dress: Carbine (without sling) and cartridge box. Undress: Carbine (without sling) and cartridge belt; or pistol and cartridge belt; or saber and saber belt, with or without pistol.

The saber belt will always be worn with full dress.

The saber is not worn when in rank, on dismounted duty, except for saber drill, inspection of saber, or on duty that does not require marching.

Spurs are not worn on dismounted duty.

The carbine sling will be worn for drill, when ordered.

**52.** The recruit should, as soon as possible, be taught the use of his carbine, its care and preservation.

When fair progress has been made in the Individual Instruction without Arms, the recruit will be taught the manual of arms; instruction without arms and that with arms alternating.

Part of each drill with arms should be devoted to marching (see Pars. 109 and 110).

**53.** At the command *fall in,* the recruits, usually not exceeding four, assemble (Par. 27), pieces at order arms.

**54.** To prevent accidents, the chambers will be opened (Par. 87) whenever the squad is first formed, and again just before being dismissed. *This rule is general.*

**55.** The cadence of the motions is that of quick time. The recruits will at first be required to give their whole attention to the details of the motions, the cadence being

gradually acquired as they become accustomed to handling their arms.

The instructor will at first allow the men to execute the movements by themselves without command, until they understand the details; after this he will require them to execute the movements together at command.

The movements relative to the cartridge, adjustment of sight, and sling and unsling carbine are executed with promptness and regularity, but not in cadence.

**56.** Being at a halt, the movements are, for purposes of instruction, divided into motions and executed in detail.

To fix the cadence in the minds of the men, they may, from time to time, be instructed to count in unison in a low tone, *one* at the end of the first motion, and *two, three,* etc., at the end of the other motions (see Par. 22).

## MANUAL OF THE CARBINE.

### *General Rules.*

**57.** *First.* In resuming the carry from any position in the manual, the motion next to the last concludes with the left hand as high as the hollow of the right shoulder, fingers extended and joined, thumb close to forefinger, back of the hand to the front, elbow close to the body, right hand embracing the guard with thumb and forefinger; the last motion consists in dropping the left hand by the side.

*Second.* In all positions of the left hand at the sight, the thumb is extended along the stock, the end of it touching the band, except in *port arms.*

*Third.* In all positions of the piece in front of the center of the body, the barrel is to the rear and vertical.

Pl. 2, Par. 58.

*Fourth.* The piece is habitually carried with the hammer at the safety notch.

**58.** The recruit being in the position of the soldier, the instructor will first cause him to place his piece carefully in the following positions:—

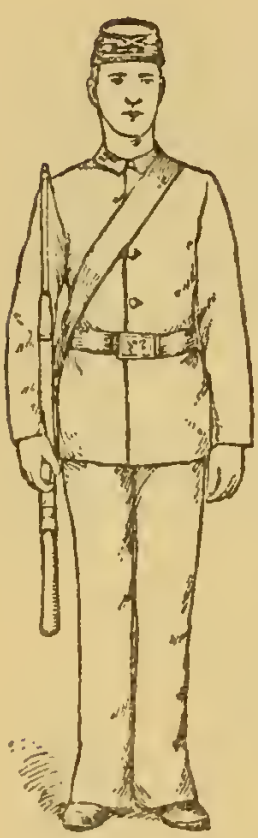
### *Position of Order Arms.*

The butt rests evenly on the ground, arms hanging naturally, elbows near the body, right hand holding the piece between the thumb and fingers, first two fingers in front, the others in rear and opposite the seam of the trousers; this will incline the barrel forward, and

Pl. 3, Par. 58.

the toe of the piece will be about one inch to the right and two inches to the rear of the right toe.

*Position of Carry Arms.*



Pl. 4, Par 59.

The piece is in the right hand, thumb and forefinger embracing the guard, the remaining fingers closed together and grasping the stock just under the hammer, which rests on the little finger; barrel nearly vertical, and resting against the shoulder, guard to the front; arm hanging nearly at its full length near the body.

The instructor sees that the piece, at the carry, is neither too high nor too low; if too high, the piece will be unsteady; if too low, the right arm will become fatigued, and the shoulder will be drawn down.

**59.** On first bearing arms the recruits are liable to derange their positions by lowering a shoulder or hip. The instructor endeavors to correct these faults.

**60.** Being at the order: 1. *Carry,* 2. ARMS.

Raise the piece vertically with the right hand, grasp it at the same time with the left above the right; resume the carry. (TWO) Drop the left hand.

**61.** Being at the carry: 1. *Order,* 2. ARMS.

Advance the piece, grasp it with the left hand, forearm horizonal, let go with right hand; lower the piece quickly with the left, re-grasp it with the right above the sight, hand near the thigh, butt about three inches from the ground, left hand steadying the piece near the right, fingers extended and joined, forearm and wrist straight, and inclining downward. (TWO) Lower the piece gently to the ground with the right hand, drop the left by the side, and take the position of order arms.

**62.** Being at the carry: 1. *Present,* 2. ARMS.

Carry the piece with the right hand in front of the center of the body, at the same time grasp it with the left hand at the sight, forearm horizontal and resting against the body. (TWO) Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand below and against the guard.

Pl. 5, Par. 62.

1. *Carry,* 2. ARMS. Resume the carry. (TWO) Drop the left hand.

**63.** Being at the carry or order: 1. *Right shoulder,* 2. ARMS.

Raise the piece vertically with the right hand; grasp it with the left at the sight, and raise this hand till it is at the height of the chin; at the same time embrace the butt with the right hand, toe between the first two fingers, the other fingers under the plate, barrel same inclination to the front as at the order. (TWO) Raise the piece and place it on the right shoulder, lock-plate up, muzzle elevated and inclined to the left, so that, viewed from the front, the line of the stock from toe to guard shall appear nearly parallel to the row of buttons; slip the left hand down to the lock-plate. (THREE) Drop the left hand by the side.

Pl. 6, Par. 63.

**64.** Being at the right shoulder: 1. *Carry,* 2. ARMS.

Carry the butt slightly to the left and lower the piece with the right hand; grasp it with the left at the sight, hand at the height of the chin, barrel to the rear and at the same inclination to the front as at the order. (TWO) Resume the carry. (THREE) Drop the left hand.

**65.** Being at the right shoulder: 1. *Order,* 2. ARMS.

Take the first position of carry from right shoulder. (TWO) Lower the piece with the left hand, at the same

time re-grasping it with the right above the sight, and take the first position of order from carry. (THREE) Take the position of order arms.

**66.** Being at the carry or order: 1. *Port,* 2. ARMS.

Pl 7, Par. 66.

Raise and throw the piece diagonally across the body, lock-plate to the front; grasp it smartly with both hands, the right, palm down at the small of the stock; the left, palm up, just below the sight, thumb clasping the piece; barrel sloping to the left and crossing opposite the middle of left shoulder, right forearm horizontal; forearms and piece near the body.

1. *Carry,* 2. ARMS. Resume the carry. (TWO) Drop the left hand.

Being at the port: 1. *Order,* 2. ARMS. Take the second and third positions of order from right shoulder.

**67.** Being at the right shoulder: 1. *Port,* 2. ARMS.

Take the first position of carry from right shoulder. (TWO) Take the position of port arms.

1. *Right shoulder,* 2. ARMS. Take the second and third positions of right shoulder from carry.

### *The Rests.*

**68.** *Fall out, Rest,* and *At ease,* are executed as without arms.

On resuming the attention, take the position of order arms.

*Route step, march,* and *At ease, march,* are executed as without arms, except that the pieces are carried at will, keeping the muzzles elevated.

**69.** Being at the order: 1. *Parade,* 2. REST.

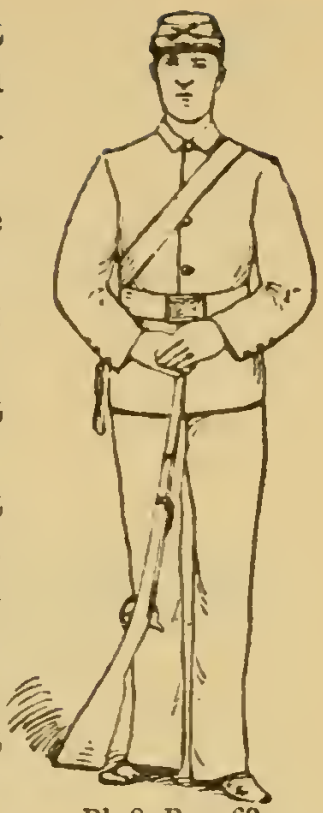
Carry the right foot six inches straight to the rear, left knee slightly bent; carry the muzzle in front of the

center of the body, barrel to the left, right hand near the muzzle, and take the position of parade rest (Par. 30), muzzle between thumb and forefinger of the left hand.

1. *Squad,* 2. ATTENTION. Quit the piece with the left hand, and resume the order.

**70.** To dismiss the squad with arms: 1. *Port,* 2. ARMS, 3. DISMISSED.

**71.** Being at the order, carry or right shoulder: 1. *Sling,* 2. CARBINE.



Pl. 8, Par. 69.

Pl. 9, Par. 71.

Take the position of port arms. (TWO) Loosen the grasp of left hand and revolve the piece with the right, barrel to the rear, regrasp it with the left near swivel bar, and move left hand opposite to and in front of left shoulder, back of the hand down, thumb along the groove, elbow close to the body, muzzle pointing upward and to the left; at the same time quit the piece with the right hand, and with it slip the swivel to the front, open the swivel with the thumb, and engage it in the ring; grasp the small of the stock with the right hand. (THREE) Let go with the left hand, dropping it by the side; lower the muzzle to the right, pushing the carbine behind the right thigh, butt to the rear, and drop the right hand by the side.

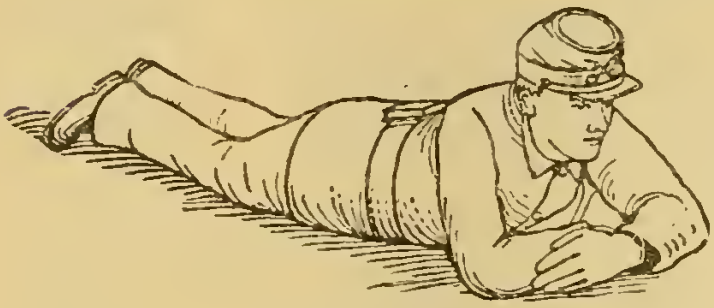
Being at the port, to sling carbine, execute the second and third motions of sling carbine.

**72.** 1. *Unsling.* 2. CARBINE. Grasp the carbine at the small of the stock with the right hand, bring it to the

front and take the second position of sling carbine; free the swivel from the ring, and carry it to the rear with the right hand; grasp the carbine with the right hand, at the small of the stock, and take the position of port arms.

The carbine may then, by command, be brought to the order, carry or right shoulder.

### *Positions Kneeling and Lying Down.*



Pl. 10, Par. 73.

**73.** The movements of kneeling, lying down, and rising are first taught without arms; they are executed as with arms except that in the position kneeling the right hand rests on the right thigh, and in moving to and from the lying position, the right hand is placed on the ground; in the position lying down, the forearms are against each other on the ground, left arm in front.

**74.** At the command *kneel, lie down,* or *rise,* the hammer will first be lowered to the safety notch, if not already there. *This rule is general.*

Pl. 11, Par 75.

**75.** Being at the order: KNEEL.

Half-face to the right, carrying right foot so that the toe shall be about ten inches to the rear and ten inches to the left of left heel; kneel on right knee, bending the left, left toe slightly inclined to the right, right leg pointing directly to the right; weight of body resting on right heel; place left forearm across left thigh, hand hanging naturally;

the piece remains in the position of order arms, right hand grasping it above the sight. *This is the position of order kneeling.*

**76.** Being at the order kneeling: **RISE.**

Rise and take the position of order arms.

**77.** Being at the order kneeling: **LIE DOWN.**

Place the right knee near the left heel. (**TWO**) Draw back the left foot, and place the knee on the ground; place the left hand well forward on the ground, and lie flat on the belly, thus inclining the body about thirty-five degrees to the right; the piece is lowered at the same time with the right hand, toe resting on the ground, barrel up, left hand at the sight, left elbow on the ground, right hand at the small of the stock, opposite the neck. *This is the position lying down.*

Pl. 12, Par. 77.

**78.** Being in position lying down: **RISE.**

Reverse the second motion of lying down (Par. 77). (**TWO**) Rise as from the order kneeling (Par. 76).

**79.** Being at the order standing: **LIE DOWN.**

Take the position of order kneeling, except that the right knee is placed near the left heel. (**TWO**) Execute second motion of lie down (Par. 77).

**80.** Being in position lying down: **KNEEL.**

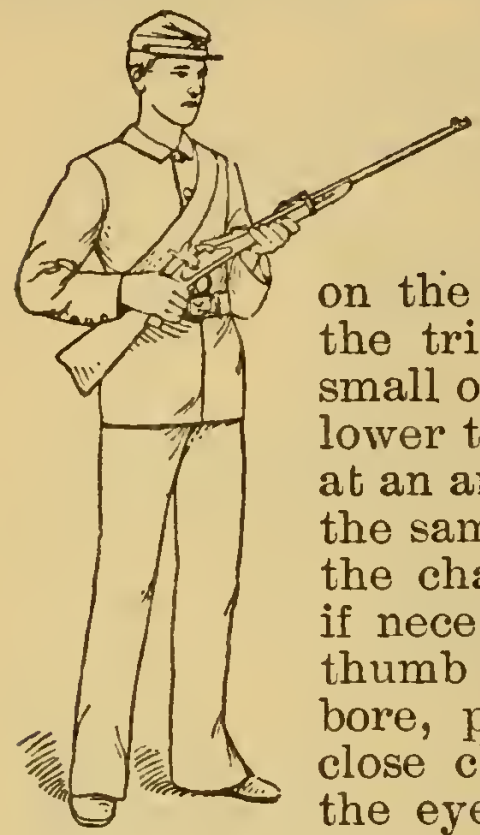
Execute the first motion of rise (Par. 78) and take the position of order kneeling.

*To Load.*

**81.** Being in line, standing, at the carry or order: **LOAD.**

Half-face to the right, carrying the right heel six

inches to the rear and three inches to the right of the left heel, turning the toes of both feet slightly inward: at the same time raise the piece with the right hand, drop it into the left at the sight, muzzle at the height of the chin, left elbow against the body, small of the stock at the waist; place the right thumb on the head of the hammer, forefinger on the trigger, the other fingers against the small of the stock, and half-cock the piece; lower the muzzle, barrel sloping downward at an angle of about twenty-five degrees, at the same time open chamber; look toward the chamber, remove the cartridge shell if necessary; take a cartridge between the thumb and first two fingers, place it in the bore, pressing it home with the thumb; close chamber with the right thumb, cast the eyes to the front, carry the right hand to the small of the stock and raise the muzzle to the height of the chin. *The last position is the position of load.*



Pl. 13, Par. 81.

**82.** If kneeling, the left forearm rests across the left thigh. If lying down, the left hand steadies the piece, toe resting on the ground.

**83.** Boxes are closed after executing the order or order kneeling.

**84.** Being in the position of load: 1. *Squad,* 2. **READY.** Cock the piece with the right thumb and return the thumb to the small of the stock.

**85.** The piece may be brought to the ready from any position by the same commands; in executing it, first take the position of load (Pars. 81 and 82).

**86.** Being in the position of load or ready: 1. *Order,* 2. **ARMS.**

Lower the hammer to the safety notch, and take the order or order kneeling.

**87.** To ascertain if any of the pieces are loaded, the instructor causes them to be brought to the port, and commands: 1. *Open,* 2. CHAMBER.

Half-cock the piece, open chamber, and return the hand to the small of the stock.

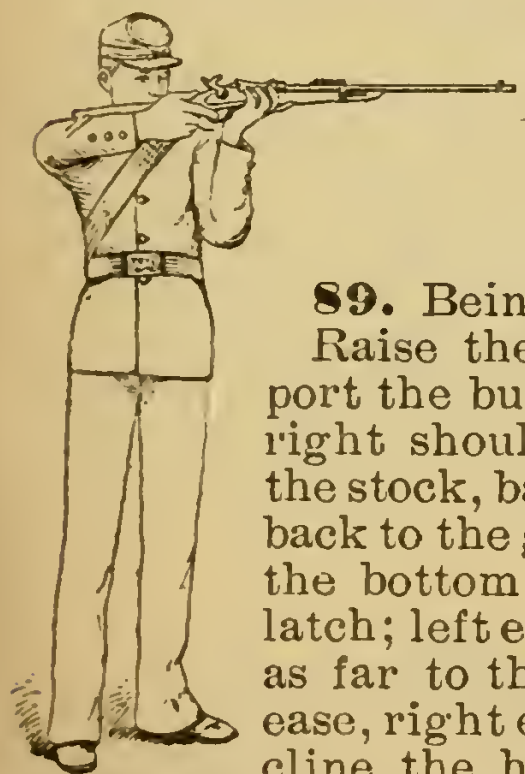
Each man, as soon as his piece is examined, closes chamber with the right thumb, lowers the hammer to the safety notch and returns the hand to the small of the stock.

If the instructor does not examine the pieces, he commands: 1. *Close,* 2. CHAMBER.

The chambers are closed, hammers lowered to safety notch, and the port resumed.

**88.** Being in any position, pieces loaded: 1. *Draw,* 2. CARTRIDGE.

Executed as prescribed for loading (Pars. 81 and 82), except that the cartridge is withdrawn and returned to the box or belt, and the hammer lowered to the safety notch.



Pl. 14, Par. 89

*To Aim and Fire.*

**89.** Being at the ready: AIM.

Raise the piece with both hands and support the butt firmly against the hollow of the right shoulder, right thumb extended along the stock, barrel horizontal; slip the left hand back to the guard, little finger resting against the bottom of the thumb-piece of the cam-latch; left elbow resting against the body and as far to the right as it can be placed with ease, right elbow as high as the shoulder; incline the head slightly forward and a little to the right, cheek resting against the stock, left eye closed, right eye looking through the notch of

rear sight so as to perceive the top of the front sight; second joint of forefinger resting lightly against the front of the trigger, but not pressing it.

**90.** FIRE.

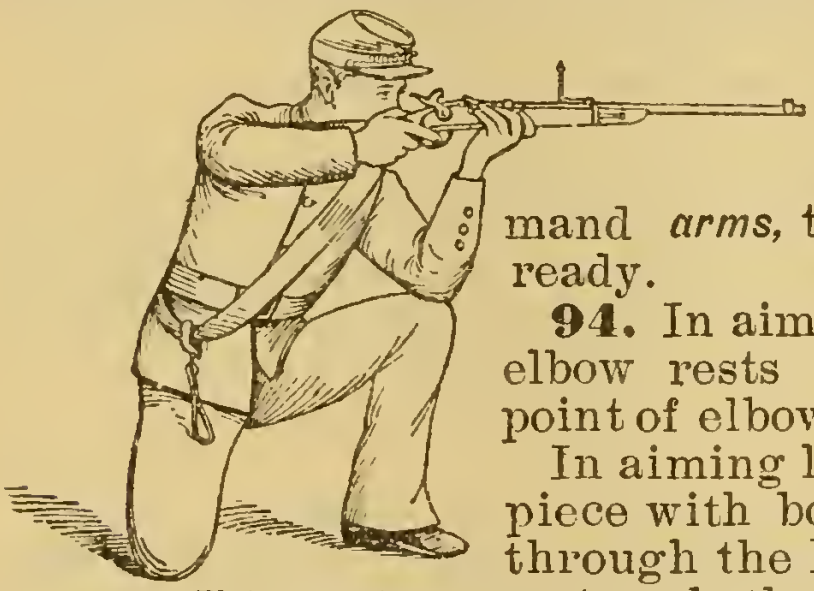
Press the finger against the trigger, fire without deranging the aim and without lowering or turning the head.

**91.** LOAD.

Lower the piece and load (Par. 81).

**92.** The exercise is continued by the commands: 1. *Squad,* 2. READY, 3. AIM, 4. FIRE, 5. LOAD.

**93.** To accustom the recruits in the position of aim to wait for the command fire: 1. *Recover,* 2. ARMS.



Pl. 15, Par. 94.

At the command *recover,* withdraw the finger from the trigger; at the command *arms,* take the position of ready.

**94.** In aiming kneeling, the left elbow rests upon the left knee, point of elbow in front of knee cap.

In aiming lying down, raise the piece with both hands and slip it through the left to the lock-plate; rest on both elbows, and press the butt firmly against the right shoulder; in recovering arms, the piece is held as in load.

Pl. 16, Par. 94.

**95.** When the recruits are thoroughly instructed in the adjustments of the sight, and the principles of aiming as laid down in the Firing Regulations for Small Arms, they will be required to aim, using the different lines of sight. For this purpose the instructor commands: 1. *At* (so many) *yards,* 2. *Squad,* 3. READY, 4. AIM.

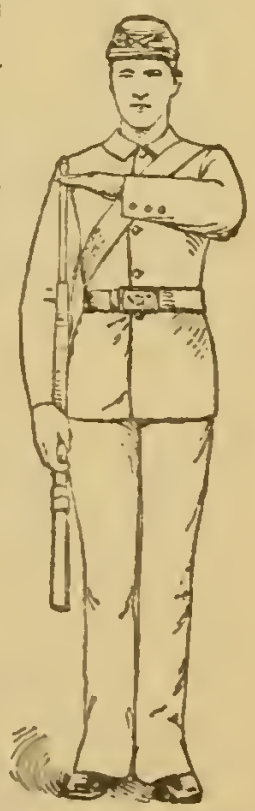
The instructor assures himself by careful inspection that each man sets his sight at the range indicated: when satisfied that the subject is fully comprehended, he will exercise the men in aiming at a designated object. For this purpose he commands: 1. *At that tree* (or *At* —), 2. *At* (so many) *yards,* 3. *Squad,* 4. READY, 5. AIM.

At the first command, fix the eyes on the object indicated; at the second command, adjust the sight, and immediately fix the eyes on the object again.

**96.** In order not to mislead the men, the distance announced in the command should be as nearly as possible the true distance of the objective. By changing the objective, all the different lines of sight may be used; the men should also be practiced in aiming at objects above and below them.

**97.** The recruits are at first taught to load and fire without using cartridges; after a few lessons, they should use dummy cartridges, and when well instructed, the drill may close with a few rounds of blank cartridges.

**98.** No cartridges will be used, except when indicated in the first command, thus: 1. *With dummy* (*blank* or *ball*) *cartridges,* 2. LOAD. *This rule is general.*



Pl. 17, Par. 99.

*Carbine Salute.*

**99.** Being at the carry: 1. *Carbine,* 2. SALUTE.

Carry the left hand smartly to the hollow of the right shoulder, forearm horizontal, palm

of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forefinger against the piece. (TWO) Drop the left hand by the side (see Par. 1012).

### *To Inspect Cartridge Boxes.*

**100.** Being at the order: 1. *Open,* 2. BOXES.

Open the cartridge box with the left hand and drop the hand by the side; each man, as his box is inspected, closes it and drops the hand by the side.

### *Inspection of Arms (dismounted).*

**101.** Being fully armed, with carbine at the order: 1. *Inspection,* 2. ARMS.

The cartridge boxes are opened at the command *arms.*

Each man, as the inspector approaches him, executes *port arms* and *open chamber.*

The inspector takes the piece (the man dropping the hands by the sides), inspects and hands it back to the man, who receives it with the left hand at the sight, resumes the port, closes chamber, brings the hammer to the safety notch, slings carbine, and unbuttons the flap of the pistol holster.

As the inspector returns the piece, the next man executes *inspection arms;* and so on through the squad. Should the piece be inspected without handling, the man closes chamber, brings the hammer to the safety notch, slings carbine, and unbuttons the flap of the pistol holster when the inspector passes to the next man, who immediately executes *inspection arms.*

The inspection of arms begins on the right, after which the inspector may pass in rear and inspect the boxes from left to right.

Boxes are closed as soon as inspected.

The carbines and boxes having been inspected, the inspector approaches the right of the squad; at his approach all the men execute *inspection pistol* (see Par. 175);

as he passes to the second, the first man returns pistol and draws saber, and so on throughout.

When the inspector again approaches the right, the first two men execute the first motion of inspection saber; the first man, as the inspector comes in front of him, executes the second motion of inspection saber; the second man, as the inspector comes in front of him, executes the second motion of inspection saber, the first man at this instant executing the third motion, and the third man the first motion; the first man then returns saber and unslings carbine. As the inspector comes in front of the other men the movements are executed successively, as just explained. (See Par. 190.)

**102.** If armed with carbine and saber only, each man draws saber as soon as he slings carbine, and the inspection is conducted as before.

**103.** If armed with the pistol and saber, or saber only, the saber is returned after the inspection.

**104.** If armed with the carbine only, each carbine, after having been inspected, is brought to the order.

**105.** The following positions of the piece are intended mainly for use in extended order and route marches. Whenever the commands for any of these positions are given, the piece will be shifted in the most convenient manner; reducing the movements to regular motions and cadence is prohibited.

**106.** 1. *Trail,* 2. ARMS.

The piece is grasped with the right hand where it will balance, right arm slightly bent, barrel up, piece nearly horizontal.

A corresponding position in the left hand may be used.

**107.** 1. *Left shoulder,* 2. ARMS.

The piece rests on the left shoulder, barrel up and muzzle elevated so as not to interfere with the men in rear, trigger guard in front of and near the shoulder, left hand embracing the butt, heel between the first and second fingers, elbow down.

**108.** 1. *Secure,* 2. ARMS.

Pl. 18, Par. 108.

The piece is held in the right hand where it will balance, barrel up, sloping downward and to the front; right hand supported against the front of the hip, upper arm against the stock.

A corresponding position in the left hand may be used.

**109.** When the recruits are first exercised in marching with arms, the instructor orders the pieces into position before putting the squad in march and before passing from quick to double time; he also causes the recruits to be at quick time at the carry before ordering the halt.

**110.** When the marchings and manual of arms are thoroughly understood, the following general rules govern:—

*First.* If at the order, bring the piece to the right shoulder at the preparatory command for marching in quick time.

*Second.* If at the order or carry, bring the piece to the right shoulder at the command *double time.*

*Third.* A disengaged hand in double time is held as when without arms.

*Fourth.* If at the right shoulder, left shoulder, or trail, bring the piece to the order on halting, the execution of the order and halt commence at the same instant.

*Fifth.* When the facings, side step, back step, and alignments are executed from the order, raise the piece slightly while in motion, and resume the order on halting. When this rule applies to other movements, it is therein stated.

**111.** In the battle exercises, or whenever circumstances require, the regular positions of the manual of arms and the firings may be ordered without regard to

the previous position of the piece; such movements as are not in the manual will be executed without regard to motions or cadence.

It is laid down as a principle that the effective use of the weapon is not to be impeded by the formalities of drill.

## THE SQUAD, DISMOUNTED.

**112.** The movements are explained as with arms; but in the first instruction of recruits, they are taught without arms, omitting reference to the position of the piece.

**113.** The recruits are divided into groups of from five to eight men, to represent squads, each under the command of a non-commissioned officer, preferably a corporal, who is the instructor (Par. 17).

The object is to give the corporal the confidence and experience necessary to qualify him as squad leader, while at the same time teaching the recruits the movements in close and extended order.

The corporal, as squad leader, is posted on the right of the rank (see Par. 13).

**114.** When the guide is announced in the command, the man on the designated flank, or in the center, conducts the march, but in no other respect acts as guide.

To accustom the recruits to their duties in all positions, their places will frequently be changed.

**115.** The depth of a man is taken as twelve inches; his front in rank as twenty-eight inches, which includes his breadth and interval.

## SQUAD DRILL.

**116.** To form the squad, the corporal places himself at the point where the right is to be, faces in the direction in which it is to face, makes the signal for the assembly, or commands: **FALL IN** (see Par. 53).

### *Alignments.*

**117.** The alignments are first taught by requiring the recruits to align themselves man by man, upon two men established as a base.

Being at the carry or order: 1. *Two files from the right (left* or *center) three paces to the front,* 2. MARCH, 3. NEXT, 4. FRONT.

At the command *march,* the first two men on the right march three paces to the front, halt, execute *eyes right,* and place the left hand above the hip (Par. 26); the instructor aligns them, and then causes the remaining men to move up successively on this alignment, each by the command *next.*

At the command *next,* the next man marches three paces to the front, shortening the last step so as to find himself about six inches in rear of the new alignment, which must never be passed; he then executes *eyes right,* places the left hand above the hip, and taking steps of two or three inches, moves up, placing his arm lightly against the elbow of the man on his right, so that his eyes and shoulders shall be in line with those of the men on his right.

The instructor sees that each man observes the principles of the alignment, and when the last man has arrived on the line, verifies the alignment from the right flank, and orders up or back such men as may be in rear or in advance of the line; only the men designated move.

The recruit should be taught to turn his head no further than is necessary to enable him to place himself so that he can look along the line of eyes and just see the breast of the second man from him, without thrusting his head or body to the front or rear.

At the command *front,* given when the rank is aligned, the men cast their eyes to the front and drop the left hand; all movement in the rank must then cease.

In dressing to the left, each man places himself so that his left elbow touches lightly the arm of the man on his left.

In dressing to the center, the base files are established and look to the *front;* at the command *next,* the next men on the right and left of the center move to the front and

dress as explained; those on the right of the center dress as if the alignment were to the left, and those on the left of the center as if the alignment were to the right. The instructor verifies the alignment from either flank.

**118.** In the first drills, the basis of the alignment is established parallel to the front of the squad, and afterward in oblique directions.

In order to habituate the recruit to his interval in line, the left hand is placed above the hip in all alignments in the School of the Soldier.

**119.** The recruits having learned to align themselves man by man, the instructor establishes the base files and aligns the squad by the commands: 1. *Right* (*Left* or *Center*), 2. DRESS, 3. FRONT.

At the command *dress*, all the men except the base files move forward and dress up to the line.

The instructor verifies the alignment and gives the command *front;* all the men then turn the head and eyes to the front and drop the left hand by the side.

**120.** Alignments to the rear are executed on the same principles: 1. *Right* (*Left* or *Center*) *backward,* 2. DRESS, 3. FRONT.

The men step back, halt a little in rear of the line of the base files, and immediately dress up by steps of two or three inches.

**121.** To execute the alignments using the side step, the instructor establishes the base files a few paces to right or left of the squad and commands: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *step,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*), 3. DRESS, 4. FRONT.

At the command *dress,* the men execute the side step, close toward the base files and dress as already explained.

**122.** When the squad dresses quickly and well, the guide alone is first established.

In dressing, the first two or three men are accurately aligned as quickly as possible, to afford a base for the remainder of the squad.

## MARCHINGS.

### *To March in Line.*

**123.** Being in line at a halt: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*), 3. **MARCH.**

The men step off, the guide marching straight to the front.

The instructor sees that the men preserve the interval toward the side of the guide; that they yield to pressure from that side and resist pressure from the opposite direction; that by slightly shortening or lengthening the step they gradually recover the alignment, and by slightly opening out or closing in they gradually recover the interval, if lost; that while habitually keeping the head to the front, they may occasionally glance toward the side of the guide to assure themselves of the alignment and interval, but that the head is turned as little as possible for this purpose.

To change the guide: *Guide* (*left, right,* or *center*).

**124.** If the men lose step, the instructor commands: **STEP.**

The men glance toward the side of the guide, retake the step, and cast their eyes to the front.

### *To March Backward.*

**125.** Being at a halt: 1. *Backward,* 2. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*), 3. **MARCH.**

### *To March to the Rear.*

**126.** Being in march: 1. *To the rear,* 2. **MARCH,** 3. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

At the command *march,* given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot; then turn on the balls of both feet, face to the right about, and immediately step off with the left foot.

If marching in double time, turn to the right about, taking four short steps in place, keeping the cadence, and step off with the left foot.

### *To March by the Flank in Column of Files.*

**127.** Being in line at a halt: 1. *Right* (or *Left*), 2. **FACE**, 3. *Forward*, 4. **MARCH**.

If marching: 1. *By the right* (or *left*) *flank*, 2. **MARCH**.

At the command *march*, given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot, then face to the right in marching and step off in the new direction with the right foot; the men cover in file and keep closed to facing distance.

**128.** To halt the column of files: 1. *Squad*, 2. **HALT**; and, to face it the front, 3. *Left* (or *Right*), 4. **FACE**.

Marching in column of files, to march in line: 1. *By the right* (or *left*) *flank*, 2. **MARCH**, 3. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

### *To Change Direction in Column of Files.*

**129.** Being in march: 1. *Column right* (or *left*); or, 1. *Column half-right* (or *half-left*), 2. **MARCH**.

The leading man, shortening two or three steps, turns to the right, or half-right, moving over a quarter or an eighth circle whose radius is about eighteen inches; the other men follow the first and turn on the same ground.

If at a halt: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Column right* (or *left*); or, 2. *Column half-right* (or *half-left*), 3. **MARCH**.

### *The Oblique March.*

**130.** For the instruction of recruits, the squad being correctly aligned, the instructor will face the squad half-right or half-left, point out to the men their relative positions, and explain that these are to be maintained in the oblique march.

**131.** Being in line at a halt, or marching: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *oblique*, 2. **MARCH**.

Each man half-faces to the right, at the same time stepping off in the new direction. He preserves his relative position, keeping his shoulders parallel to those of the man next on his right, and so regulates his step as to make the head of this man conceal the heads of the other men in the rank; the rank remains parallel to its original front.

At the command *halt,* the men halt, faced to the front.

To resume the original direction: 1. *Forward,* 2. MARCH.

The men half-face to the left in marching and then move straight to the front.

If marking time while obliquing, the oblique march is resumed by the commands: 1. *Oblique,* 2. MARCH.

The short step will not be used in the oblique march.

**132.** In the oblique march, the guide is always, without indication, on the side toward which the oblique is made. On resuming the direct march, the guide is, without indication, on the side it was previous to the oblique. If the oblique be executed from a halt, the guide is announced on taking the direct march in line.

*These rules are general.*

**133.** The column of files obliques by the same commands and means, the leading man being the guide.

### *To March in Double Time.*

**134.** Being in line at a halt: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*), 3. *Double time,* 4. MARCH.

### *To Pass from Quick Time to Double Time, and the Reverse.*

**135.** 1. *Double time,* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march,* given when the left foot strikes the ground, advance the right foot in quick time. and step off with the left foot in double time.

To resume quick time: 1. *Quick time,* 2. MARCH.

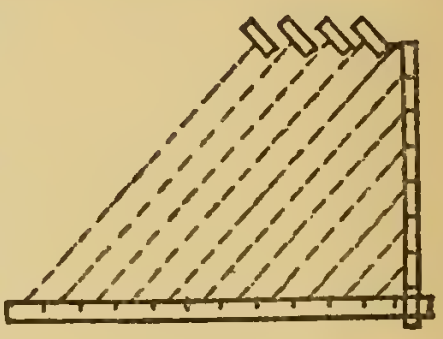
At the command *march,* given as either foot is coming to the ground, the squad resumes quick time.

## TURNINGS.

### *To Turn and Halt.*

**136.** Marching in line: 1. *Squad right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH, 3. FRONT.

The first command is given when the squad is at least two paces from the turning point (see Par. 9*d*).



Pl. 19, Par. 136.

At the command *march,* the man on the right halts and faces to the right; the other men half-face to the right in marching, and without changing the length or cadence of the step, place themselves successively upon the alignment established by the pivot man; all dress to the right without command. The instructor verifies the alignment from the pivot flank and gives the command *front.*

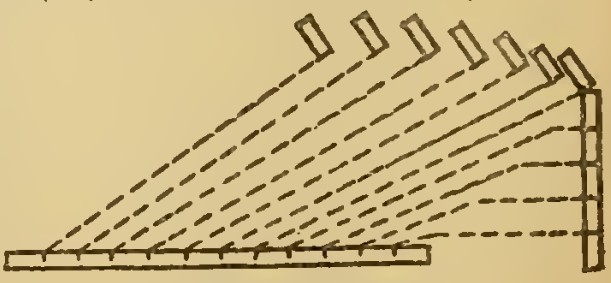
If at a halt, the movement is executed in the same manner; if at the order and the movement be executed in quick time, the pieces are raised slightly while in motion.

*Squad half-right* (or *half-left*) is executed in the same manner, except that the pivot makes a half-face to the right.

### *To Turn and Advance.*

**137.** Marching in line: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *turn,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Forward,* 4. MARCH, 5. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

At the second command, the man on the right, who is the guide, marches by the right flank, taking the short step without changing the cadence; the other men half-face to the right in marching,



Pl. 20, Par. 137.

and, moving by the shortest line, successively place themselves on the new line, when they take the short step.

When the last man has arrived on the new line, the fourth command is given, when all resume the full step.

During the turn, the guide is, without command, on the pivot flank. The guide is announced on resuming the full step.

If at a halt, the movement is similarly executed, and in quick time, unless the command *double time* be given.

*Right* (or *Left*) *half-turn* is executed in the same manner, except that the pivot man makes a half-face to the right.

Should the command *halt* be given during the execution of the movement, those men who are on the new line halt; the others halt on arriving on the line; all dress to the right without command.

The instructor verifies the alignment from the pivot flank and commands: FRONT.

## MOVEMENTS BY FOURS.

**138.** Any number of men may be united for this instruction.

In movements by fours, when there are no chiefs of platoons nor file-closers, the instructor announces the guide toward either flank.

When chiefs of platoons or file-closers are present, the guide in column of fours is, without command, on the side toward the chiefs of platoons, or the side opposite the file-closers.

In changing to the opposite flank, the chiefs of platoons and file-closers pass quickly through the column.

### *To Count Fours.*

**139.** Being in line: 1. *Count*, 2. FOURS.

At the command *fours*, the men, commencing on the right, count *one, two, three, four, one, two, three, four,* and so on to the left.

*To March by the Flank.*

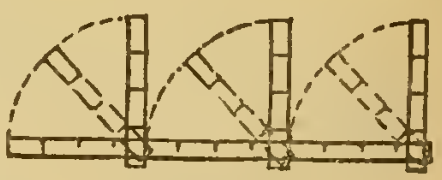
**140.** Being in line: 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH**, 3. *Guide* (*left* or *right*).

Each four wheels ninety degrees to the right on a fixed pivot, the pivot man turning strictly in his place; the man on the marching flank maintains the full step, moving on the arc of a circle with the pivot man as the center; the men dress on the marching flank, shortening their steps according to their distance from it, and keep their intervals from the pivot.

Upon the completion of the wheel, the men of each four take the full step, marching in a direction parallel to the former front of the squad, dress toward the guide, and maintain a distance of one hundred inches between the fours.

**141.** To form column of fours and halt: 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH**, 3. *Squad*, 4. **HALT**.

The command *halt* is given as the fours complete the wheel; each four dresses toward the marching flank.



Pl. 21, Par. 141.

**142.** In all wheelings by fours, the forward march is taken up on the completion of the wheel unless the command *halt* be given.

In column of fours, the guide of the leading four is the guide of the column.

*These rules are general.*

**143.** Being in column of fours at a halt, to put it in march: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide* (*right* or *left*), 3. **MARCH**.

*Marching in Column of Fours, to Change Direction.*

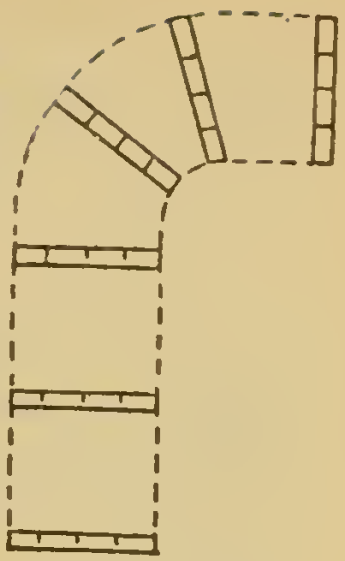
**144.** 1. *Column right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH**.

The leading four wheels to the right on a movable pivot, executed as in Par. 140, except that the pivot man shortens his steps to ten inches in quick time, and

twelve inches in double time, gaining ground forward so as to clear the wheeling point; the wheel completed, the four takes the full step; the other fours move forward and wheel on the same ground.

*Column half-right* (or *half-left*) is similarly executed, the leading four wheeling forty-five degrees.

To put the column of fours in march and change direction at the same time: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide* (*right* or *left*), 3. *Column right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.



Pl. 22, Par. 144.

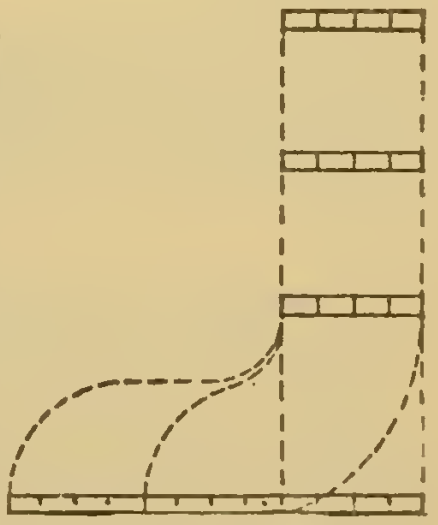
*Being in Line, to Form Column of Fours and Change Direction at the Same Time.*

**145.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. *Column right* (or *left*): or, 2. *Column half-right* (or *half-left*), 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide left* (or *right*).

*To Break into Column of Fours to the Front.*

**146.** Being in line: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *forward,* 2. *Fours right* (or *left*), 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide* (*left* or *right*).

The right four marches straight to the front, shortening the first three or four steps; the other fours wheel to the right, each on a fixed pivot; the second four, when its wheel is two-thirds completed, wheels to the left on a movable pivot, and follows the first; the other fours, having wheeled to the right, move forward, and each wheels to the left on a movable pivot so as to follow the second.



Pl. 23, Par. 146.

*To March the Column of Fours to the Rear.*

**147.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*) *about,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

Each four wheels one hundred and eighty degrees on a fixed pivot.

*To Face the Line to the Rear and to March it to the Rear.*

**148.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*) *about,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad,* 4. HALT; or, 1. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

Each four wheels one hundred and eighty degrees on a fixed pivot.

**149.** The movements for forming line from column of fours are executed according to the principles explained in the Squad Mounted, and by similar commands, substituting *double time* for *trot* and *gallop,* and *quick time* for *walk.*

MOVEMENTS BY TWOS.

**150.** A two consists of Nos. 1 and 2, or Nos. 3 and 4, of a four.

Column of twos is *marched by the flank from line,* is *halted,* is *put in march, changes direction,* and is *marched to the rear* by the same commands and means as the column of fours substituting *twos* for *fours* in the commands and explanations.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Column of Twos.*

**151.** 1. *By twos,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

At the command *march,* Nos. 1 and 2 move forward in quick time, Nos. 3 and 4 mark time till disengaged, when they oblique to the right and follow Nos. 1 and 2 at a distance of fourty-four inches.

*Marching in Column of Twos, to Form Column of Fours.*

**152.** 1. *Form fours,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

At the command *march,* Nos. 1 and 2 take the short step, Nos. 3 and 4 oblique to the left until they uncover Nos. 1 and 2, when they move straight to the front. The fours having united, all take the full step.

## FIRINGS.

**153.** In the different firings, when the captain and chiefs of platoons are present, they will, at the first command, take positions in rear of the line, corresponding to their positions in front (Par. 472). They resume their posts at the command *posts,* given after the command *cease firing.*

**154.** The post of the instructor is three paces in rear of the squad, but in actual firing he places himself where he can best make himself heard and at the same time observe the effect of the fire. The objective should be in plain view and so designated as to be easily distinguished by all.

**155.** The commands for firing are the same, whether the squad be standing, kneeling, or lying down. The commands for kneeling or lying down precede the commands for firing.

If the cartridge box be worn, it is slipped to the hip after executing the preparatory command, and opened; it is closed and replaced after executing *cease firing,*

### *Volley Firing.*

**156.** The squad being in line fronting the object to be fired upon, pieces loaded: 1. *Fire by squad,* 2. *At* (such an object), 3. *At* (so many) *yards,* 4. *Squad,* 5. READY, 6. AIM, 7. FIRE, 8. LOAD.

To fire another volley at the same objective, with the same line of sight: 1. *Squad,* 2. READY, 3. AIM, 4. FIRE, 5. LOAD.

To fire another volley at the same objective, but with

a new line of sight: 1. *At* (so many) *yards*, 2. *Squad*, 3. READY, 4. AIM, 5. FIRE, 6. LOAD.

To fire another volley at a new objective and with a new line of sight: 1. *At* (such an object), 2. *At* (so many) *yards*, 3. *Squad*, 4. READY, 5. AIM, 6. FIRE, 7. LOAD.

**157.** The objective and range will be indicated in the preparatory commands for all kinds of fire, as illustrated in the preceding examples.

If the objective be at a considerable angle to the front of the squad, the instructor will change the front of the squad so as to face it.

The commands are given with sufficient intervals to allow them to be executed as already prescribed. The command *fire* is given when the pieces appear to be steady.

*These rules are general.*

### *To Cease Firing.*

**158.** CEASE FIRING.

The men stop firing, draw cartridge or eject the empty shell, lower the sight leaf, and take the order, order kneeling, or the position lying down, as the case may be.

**159.** The command (or signal) *cease firing* is always used to stop the firing, and may be given at any time after the first preparatory command for firing, whether the firing has actually commenced or not. *This rule is general.*

**160.** 1. CEASE FIRING, 2. LOAD.

The firing will stop: such pieces as are already loaded will be brought at once to the position of load: the others will be loaded.

This is intended to interrupt the firing for the purpose of steadying the men, or to change to another method of firing.

### *To Fire at Will.*

**161.** 1. *Fire at will*, 2. *At* (such an object). 3. *At* (so many) *yards*, 4. *Squad*, 5. READY, 6. COMMENCE FIRING.

At the command *commence firing,* each man, independently of the others, takes careful aim at the object, fires, loads and continues the fire as rapidly as is consistent with taking careful aim at each shot. The men should be taught to load rapidly and to aim deliberately.

## MANUAL OF THE PISTOL.

**162.** When a lanyard is used, one end is attached to the butt of the pistol; the other end forms a sliding loop, which is passed over the head and drawn snug against the right armpit. The lanyard should then be of just such length that the arm can be extended without constraint.

**163.** The pistol being in the holster, to raise pistol: 1. *Raise,* 2. PISTOL.

At the command *raise,* unbutton the holster flap with the right hand and grasp the stock, back of the hand to the body.

At the command *pistol,* draw the pistol from the holster, reverse it, muzzle up, the hand holding the stock with the thumb and last three fingers; the little finger may be placed under the butt; back of forefinger pressed against the inside of the front of the guard; guard to the front; barrel nearly vertical; hand as high as the neck and six inches to the right and front of the right shoulder. *This is the position of raise pistol.*

When dismounted, carry the right foot about twenty inches to the right and place the left hand in the position of the bridle hand.

**164.** Being mounted and at the position raise pistol: 1. *Lower,* 2. PISTOL.

At the command *pistol,* lower the pistol without changing the grasp, and rest the hand and pistol on the right thigh, back of hand up, muzzle in front of right knee.

When dismounted, lower the pistol without changing the grasp of the hand and rest the wrist against the right hip, back of the hand to the right; barrel inclined to the front and downward at an angle of forty-five degrees.

**165.** Being at raise or lower pistol: 1. *Return,* 2. PISTOL.

At the command *pistol,* insert the pistol in the holster, back of hand to the body, button the flap and drop the hand by the side.

If dismounted, bring the right foot by the side of the left and drop the left hand by the side.

**166.** LOAD.

Being at raise or lower pistol, place the pistol at the cylinder in the left hand, barrel inclined to the left front and downward at an angle of about forty-five degrees, halfcock the pistol and open the gate with the right thumb; if necessary, eject the empty shells, working the ejecting rod with the forefinger of left hand and turning the cylinder with the left thumb, right hand holding the stock; take a cartridge from the box or belt, insert it in the chamber, press it home with the right thumb, and so on for each chamber to be loaded; close the gate with the right forefinger, lower the hammer, and raise pistol.

**167.** Being at raise or lower pistol: 1. *Ready,* 2. TO THE FRONT (or RIGHT OBLIQUE, etc.); or, 2. *At* (such an object).

At the command *ready,* place the right thumb on the hammer; at the second command, direct the eyes to the front, or toward the object indicated.

**168.** FIRE.

Thrust and point the pistol toward the objective, arm nearly or quite extended, at the same time cocking the pistol, and fire, and resume the raise or lower pistol according to the position before firing.

An almost imperceptible pause may be allowed between the thrusting and firing in which to correctly point the pistol. Deliberate aiming, however, should not be permitted.

After firing without cartridges, pause an instant to see

if the pistol is correctly pointed, to get the personal error.

When it appears in the practice that a man is not sufficiently dextrous to cock the pistol while thrusting it toward the objective, or that in so doing others near by are endangered, the instructor may permit the man to cock the pistol at the command *ready.*

The instructor must take into account individual peculiarities in order to secure the best results in firing; in such cases, departure from the text is permissible.

When mounted, lean slightly forward, bearing on the stirrups; in firing to the front, lean well to the right and slightly forward to avoid burning or frightening the horse.

To continue the firing in the same direction or at the same objective: 1. *Ready,* 2. FIRE.

**169.** In a similar manner the men will be instructed to fire to the left, right, right oblique, left oblique, right rear, left rear, and rear. When firing to the left, the pistol hand will be about opposite the left shoulder; when firing to the rear or right rear, the shoulders are turned about forty-five degrees to the right; when firing to the left and left rear, the shoulders are turned about forty-five degrees to the left.

Instruction may be given with the pistol in the left hand.

**170.** The recruits are first taught to load and fire without using cartridges. Pointing practice will habitually be given mounted.

**171.** No cartridges will be used, except when indicated in the first command, thus: 1. *With* (so many) *dummy* (*blank* or *ball*) *cartridges,* 2. LOAD.

*To Fire at Will.*

**172.** 1. *To the front,* etc., or, 1. *At* (such an object), 2. *Fire at will,* 3. *Ready,* 4. COMMENCE FIRING, 5. CEASE FIRING.

The trooper fires as rapidly as is consistent with careful pointing at each shot. The raise or lower pistol is resumed after each shot.

**173.** Habitually the pistol will be loaded with only five ball cartridges and the hammer lowered on the empty chamber.

**174.** The practice firing will be conducted on the principles explained in the Firing Regulations for Small Arms.

**175.** 1. *Inspection,* 2. **PISTOL.**

At the command *pistol,* execute *raise pistol,* except that the pistol is held about six inches in front of the center of the body, barrel up pointing to the left front and upward at an angle of about forty-five degrees, wrist straight and as high as the breast.

The instructor passes along the rank and examines the pistols. To inspect the pistol minutely, he takes it in his hands, and then returns it to the trooper, who grasps it at the stock and resumes *inspection pistol;* each trooper returns pistol as the inspector passes to the next. If the pistols are not inspected, they are returned by the commands: 1. *Return,* 2. **PISTOL.**

## THE SABER.

### *To Take and Close Intervals and Distances.*

**176.** The normal interval and distance between men is three yards; to take a greater or less interval or distance, the command *at* (so many) *yards* is added to the first command.

### *To Take Intervals.*

**177.** Being in line at a halt: 1. *To the right* (or *left*) *take intervals,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad,* 4. HALT, 5. *Left* (or *Right*), 6. FACE.

At the command *march,* all face to the right; the leading man steps off, followed in succession by the others at three yards apart. The command *halt* is given when the last man has three yards.

### *To Close Intervals.*

**178.** 1. *To the right* (or *left*), *assemble,* 2. MARCH

The right man stands fast; the other men face to the right and move off, each halting faced to the front, six inches from the man on his right.

### *To Take Distances.*

**179.** Being in line at a halt: 1. *Front take distance,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad,* 4. HALT.

No. 1 of each four moves straight to the front; No. 2 moves straight to the front when No. 1 has a distance of three yards; Nos. 3 and 4 move off in succession in like manner; the command *halt* is given when No. 4 has his distance

To form line again. 1. *Form,* 2. RANK.

No. 1 of each four stands fast; Nos. 2, 3, and 4 move up into their intervals and halt.

## MANUAL OF THE SABER.

Pl. 24, Par. 186.

**180.** The instruction under this head is given to four or more men, placed in single rank.

**181.** On foot, the scabbard is hooked up unless otherwise prescribed. (See Par. 51.)

**182.** The instructor points out and names the different parts of the saber and saber knot: SABER: *Hilt* (*gripe, guard, pommel, base*); *Blade* (*back, edge, point*); *Scabbard* (*bands, rings, springs*). SABER KNOT: *Tassel, strap, sliding loops.*

**183.** The *right* and *left sides of the gripe* are the right and left sides in the position of *carry.*

**184.** The hand is *in tierce* when it holds the gripe, back of the hand up; *in quarte,* when it holds the gripe, back of the hand down.

**185.** During the first lessons, intervals of one yard are taken.

**186.** 1. *Draw,* 2. SABER.

At the command *draw,* unhook the saber with the thumb and first two fingers of the left hand, thumb on the end of the hook, fingers lifting the upper ring; pass the right hand through the saber knot and push the sliding loop up to the wrist with the left hand; grasp the scabbard with the left hand at the upper band, bring the hilt a little forward, seize the gripe with the right hand, and draw the blade six inches out of the scab-

Pl. 25, Par. 186.

Pl. 26, Par. 186

bard, pressing the scabbard against the thigh with the left hand

At the command *saber,* draw the saber quickly, raising the arm to its full extent to the right front, at an angle of about forty-five degrees, the saber, edge down, in a straight line with the arm; make a slight pause and bring the back of the blade against the shoulder, edge to the front, arm nearly extended, hand by the side, elbow back. third and fourth fingers back of the gripe; at the same time hook up the scabbard with the thumb and first two fingers of the left hand at the upper ring; drop the left hand by the side. *This is the position of carry saber, dismounted.*

**187.** 1. *Present,* 2. SABER.

Carry the saber to the front, base of the hilt as high as the chin and six inches in front of the neck, edge to the left, point six inches in front of the hilt, thumb extended on the back of the gripe, little finger by the side of the others.

1. *Carry,* 2. SABER. Resume the carry.

**188.** 1. *Charge,* 2. SABER.

Execute the first motion of tierce point.

1. *Carry,* 2. SABER. Resume the carry.

**189.** 1. *Raise,* 2. SABER.

Execute the first motion of front cut.

1. *Carry,* 2. SABER. Resume the carry.

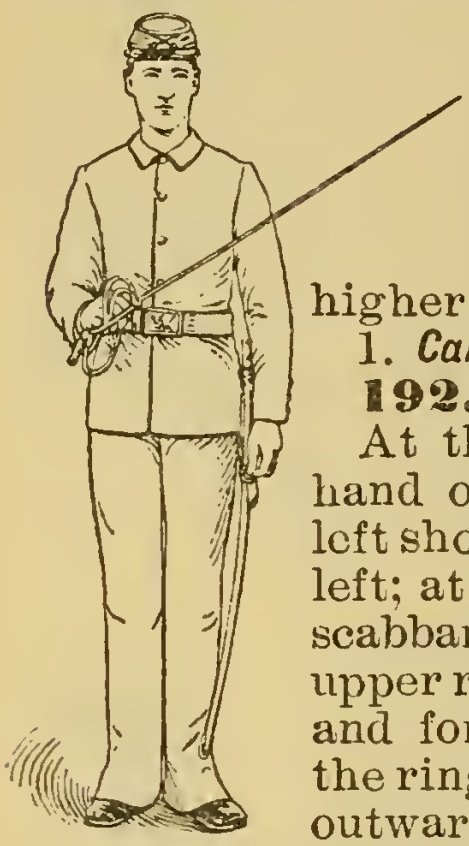
**190.** 1. *Inspection,* 2. SABER.

Take the position of present saber. (TWO) Turn the wrist outward by a motion to the front and right to show the other side of

Pl. 27, Par. 187

the blade, the edge to the right. (THREE) Resume the carry.

**191.** 1. *Port,* 2. SABER.



Pl. 28, Par. 191.

Place the right hand, back up, in front of the right hip at the height of the waist, thumb extended on the back of the gripe, little finger by the side of the others, blade inclined to the left and front, point two feet higher than the hand.

1. *Carry,* 2. SABER.

**192.** 1. *Return,* 2. SABER.

At the command *return,* carry the right hand opposite to and six inches from the left shoulder, the saber vertical, edge to the left; at the same time unhook and lower the scabbard with the left hand, supporting the upper ring on the second finger, the thumb and forefinger holding the scabbard above the ring, the arm extended, the hand turned outward; turn the head to the left, fix the eyes on the mouth of the scabbard, raise the right hand vertically and lower the blade, passing the back across and along the left arm, point to the rear, insert the blade six inches in the scabbard and turn the head to the front.

At the command *saber,* with a quick movement send the saber to the hilt in the scabbard, free the wrist from the saber knot and drop the right hand by the side; hook up the saber, turning it toward the body, guard to the rear, and drop the left hand by the side.

### *To Rest and to Dismiss the Squad.*

**193.** The squad is rested as without arms (Par. 29). Being at a carry: 1. *Parade,* 2. REST.

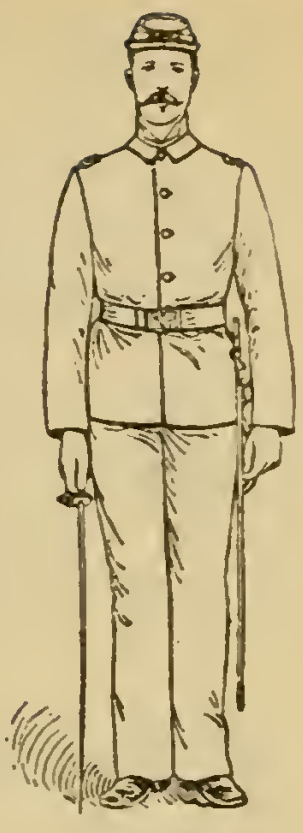
Take the position of parade rest, dropping the point of

the saber to the ground in front of the center of the body, edge of the blade to the right.

**194.** To resume the attention: 1. *Squad,* 2. ATTENTION.

At the command *attention,* resume the position of the soldier and come to the carry.

**195.** To dismiss the squad, the instructor first causes sabers to be returned, and then commands: DISMISSED.



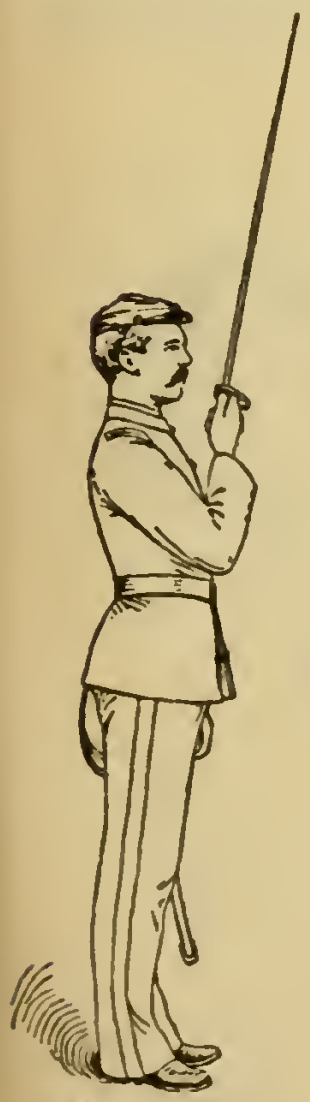
Pl. 29, Par. 196.

MANUAL OF THE SABER FOR OFFICERS.

**196.** At the command *order arms,* when dismounted, drop the saber directly to the front, the point on or near the ground, back of the blade to the front, thumb along the back of the gripe, back of hand to the right, arm extended.

At the command *carry arms,* resume the carry.

While reading orders, the saber is held suspended by the saber knot at the wrist.

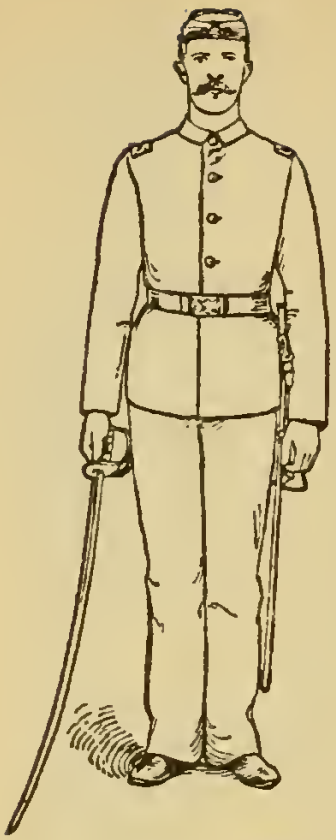


Pl. 30, Par. 197.

**197.** 1. *Present,* 2. SABER (or ARMS).

At the command *present,* execute *present saber* (Par. 187).

Pl. 31, Par. 197.



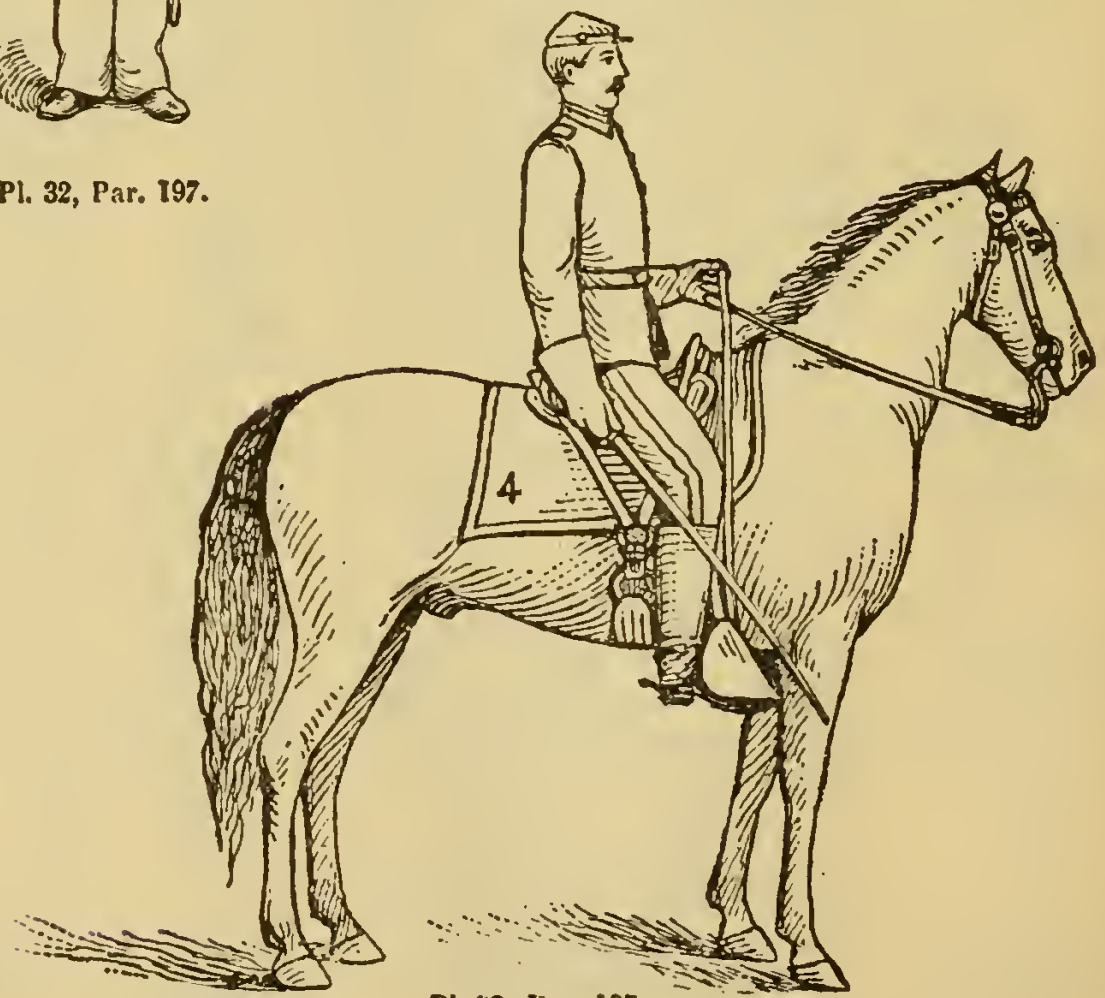
Pl. 32, Par. 197.

At the command *saber,* or *arms,* lower the saber, point in prolongation of the right foot and near the ground, edge to the left, hand by the side, thumb on left of gripe, arm extended. If mounted, the hand is held behind the thigh, point a little to the right and front of the stirrup.

1. *Carry,* 2. SABER (or ARMS). Resume the carry.

**198.** In rendering honors, officers and non-commissioned officers execute *present saber* and *carry saber.*

**199.** When marching in double time,




Pl. 33, Par. 197.

officers and non-commissioned staff officers, when dismounted, carry the saber at the port; the left hand steadies the scabbard.

**200.** In route marches the saber is habitually carried in the scabbard. On all other duties with troops under arms, officers and non-commissioned staff officers draw and return saber without waiting for any word of command.

**201.** Parade rest is executed by officers and non-commissioned staff officers when dismounted as in Par. 193.

With the above exceptions, officers, non-commissioned staff officers, and file-closers do not execute the manual of the saber, nor the saber exercise with the men, unless specially directed.

## SABER EXERCISE.

**202.** The squad is armed with the saber only, and placed in single rank, and formed with intervals or distances (Pars. 177 and 179).

The object of the moulinets is to give suppleness to the wrist, which increases the dexterity and confidence of the men. Each lesson is begun and ended with the moulinets, executed with a quickness proportioned to the progress of the men, remembering that force is less necessary than skill.

In teaching the saber exercise on foot, special reference must be had to its application when mounted. To this end, recruits are not to direct the blade so as to strike the head or haunches of the horse, or the knees of the rider.

This instruction will, as far as practicable, be given mounted; after the trooper becomes fairly well instructed in the motions, the practice should be carried on while the squad is marching in column of troopers or in circle on the track of the riding school. Instruction in riding will thereby be combined with instruction in the use of the saber.

All cuts with the hand in tierce, when not executed by the numbers, are terminated with a half moulinet in bringing the saber to the position of guard; in all cuts with the hand in quarte the hand is kept in quarte to the finish and then quickly drawn back to guard.

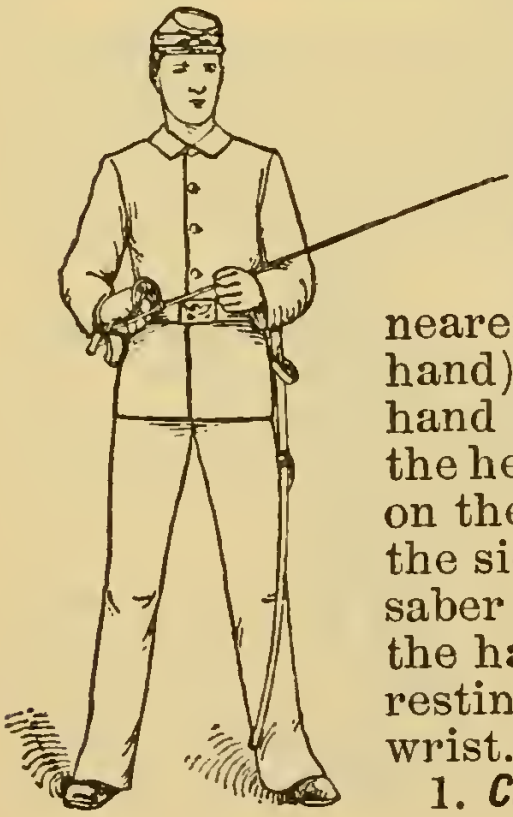
The thrust requires less force, and its result is more prompt, sure, and decisive, than the cut.

The gripe is held in the full grasp. During the first lessons, the instructor takes care to rest the men from time to time, and to always give his explanations when the squad is at a carry or at guard, keeping the arm extended only long enough to correct faults.

When the troopers execute the motions with regularity, the instructor causes them to be executed without the numbers.

The saber exercise may be had with the saber in the left hand.

**203.** Being at carry saber, the instructor commands: GUARD.



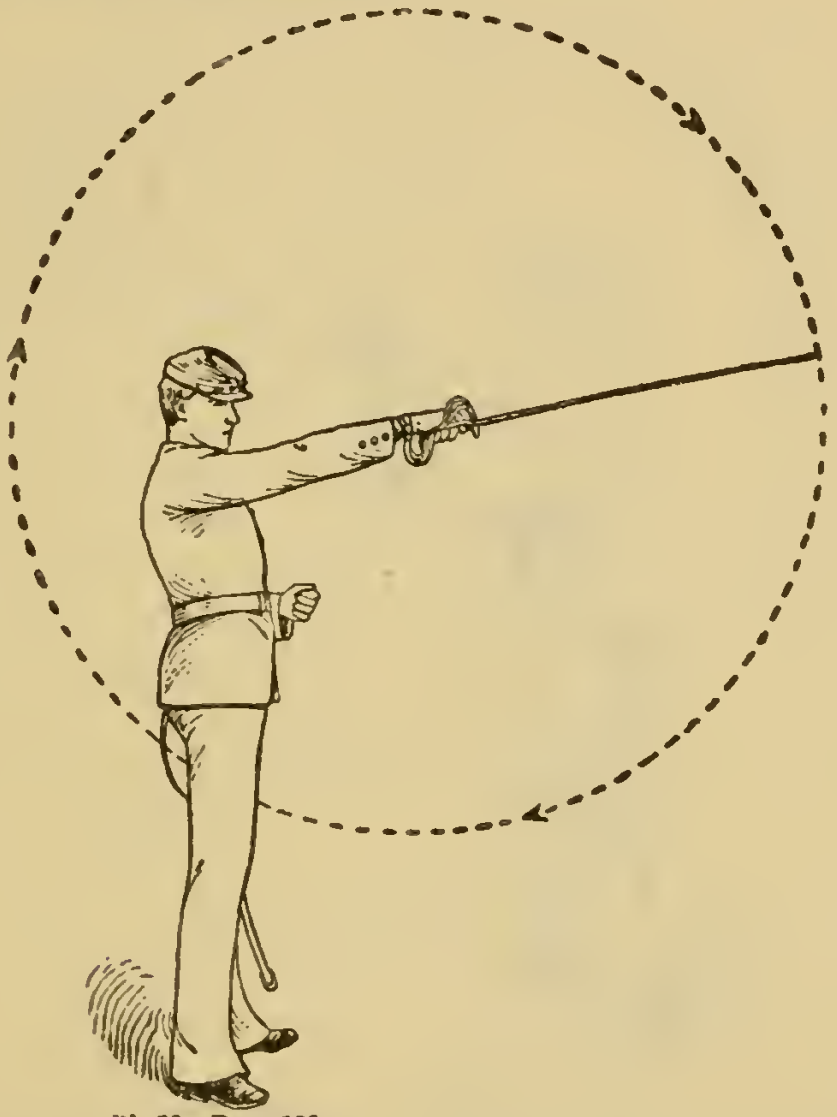
Pl. 34. Par. 203.

Carry the right foot about twenty inches to the right, heels on the same line; place the left hand, closed, six inches from the body, and as high as the elbow, fingers toward the body, little finger nearer than the thumb (position of bridle hand); at the same time place the right hand in tierce in front of the hip and at the height of the waist, thumb extended on the back of the gripe, little finger by the side of the others; the point of the saber to the left and a little higher than the hand; the blade, edge to the front, resting on the left forearm near the wrist.

1. *Carry*. 2. SABER. Resume the position of the soldier and come to the carry.

**204.** All the movements in the saber exercise are executed from *guard.*

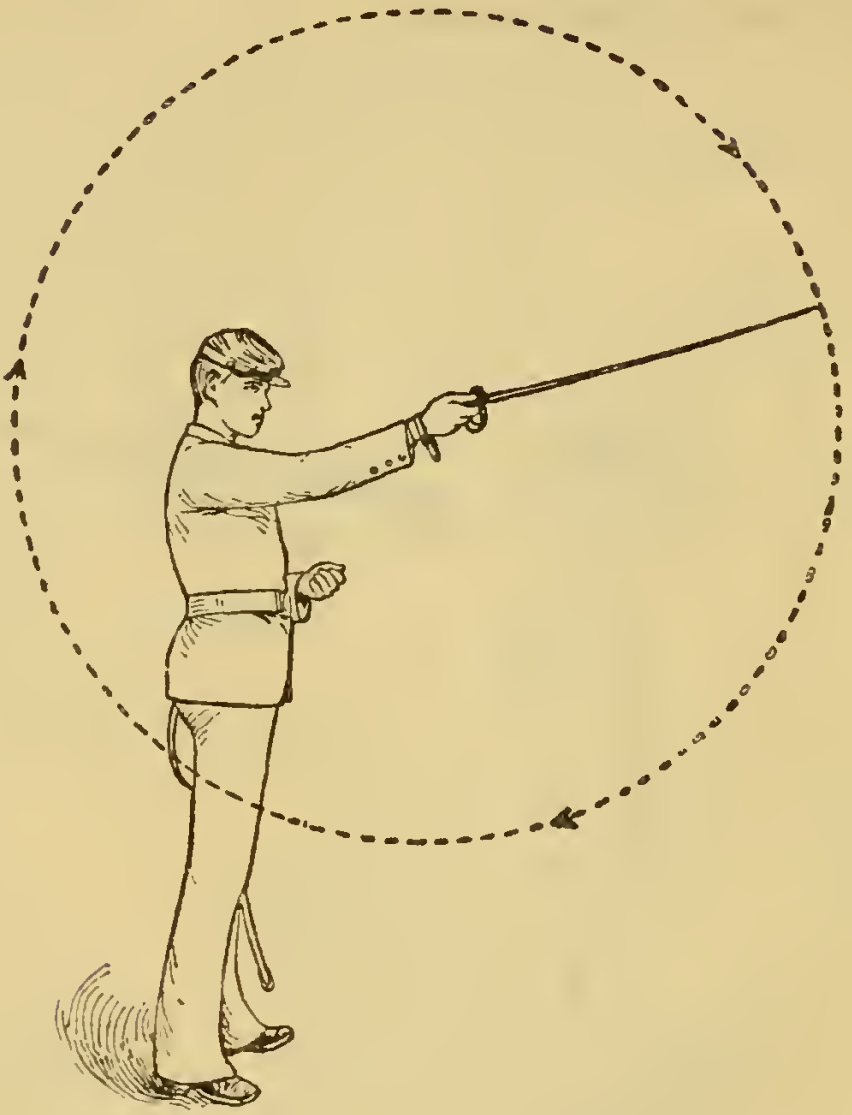
**205.** 1. *Left,* 2. MOULINET.



Pl. 35, Par. 205.

Extend the arm obliquely to the left and front to its full length, the hand in tierce and as high as the eyes, the point of the saber in front of the left shoulder and a little higher than the hilt. (TWO) Lower the blade, edge to the front and make rapidly a circle around the hand, to the left of and near the horse's neck, the blade passing close to the left elbow; return to the first position. (THREE) Resume the guard.

**206.** 1. *Right*, 2. MOULINET.



Pl. 36. Par. 206.

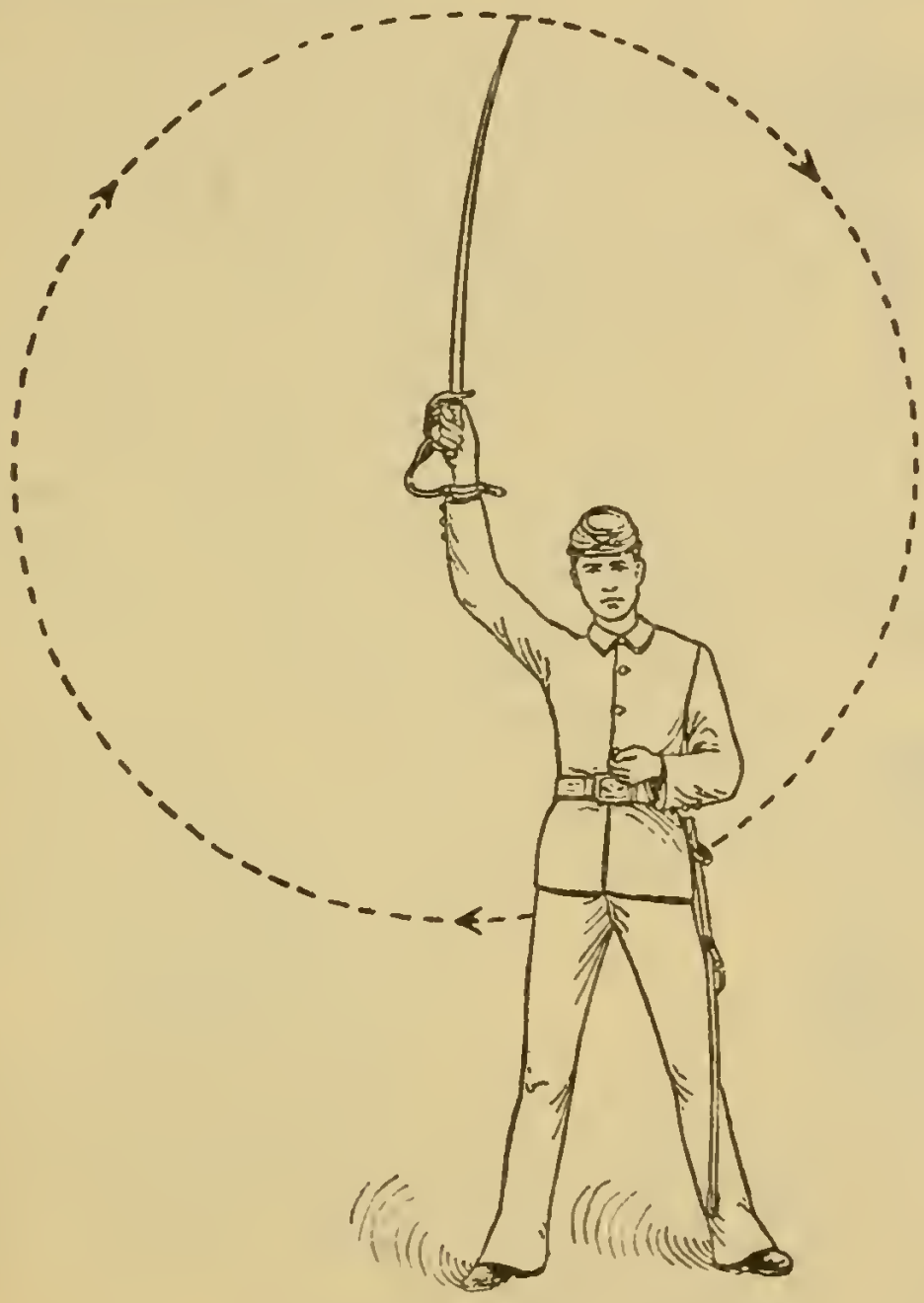
Extend the arm to the front to its full length, the hand in quarte and as high as the eyes, the point in front of the right shoulder and a little higher than the hilt. (TWO) Lower the blade, edge to the front, make rapidly a circle around the hand, to the right of and near the horse's neck, the blade passing close to the right elbow; return to the first position. (THREE) Resume the guard.

**207.** 1. *Left and right* (or *Right and left*), 2. MOULINET.

Execute the first motion of left moulinet. (TWO) Execute left moulinet and, without pausing, turn the

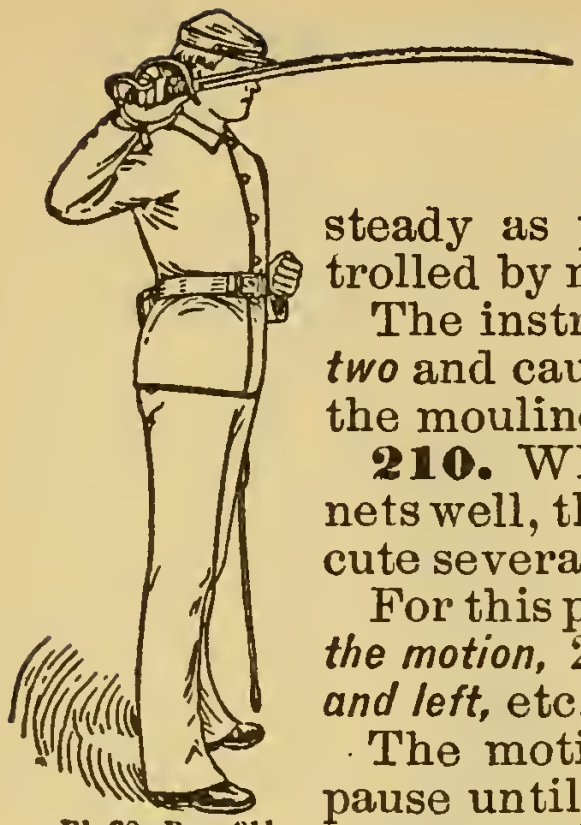
wrist and execute the second motion of right moulinet. (THREE) Resume the guard.

**208.** 1. *Rear,* 2. MOULINET.



Pl. 37, Par. 208.

Raise the arm to the right and rear to its full extent, point of the saber upward, edge to the right, body slightly turned to the right. (TWO) Begin by moving the point of the saber toward the left and describe a circle in rear.



Pl. 38, Par. 211.

returning to the first position. (THREE) Resume the guard.

**209.** In executing the moulinets, the right arm is kept as steady as possible, the saber being controlled by motions of the wrist and hand.

The instructor may repeat the command *two* and cause the second motion of each of the moulinets to be repeated.

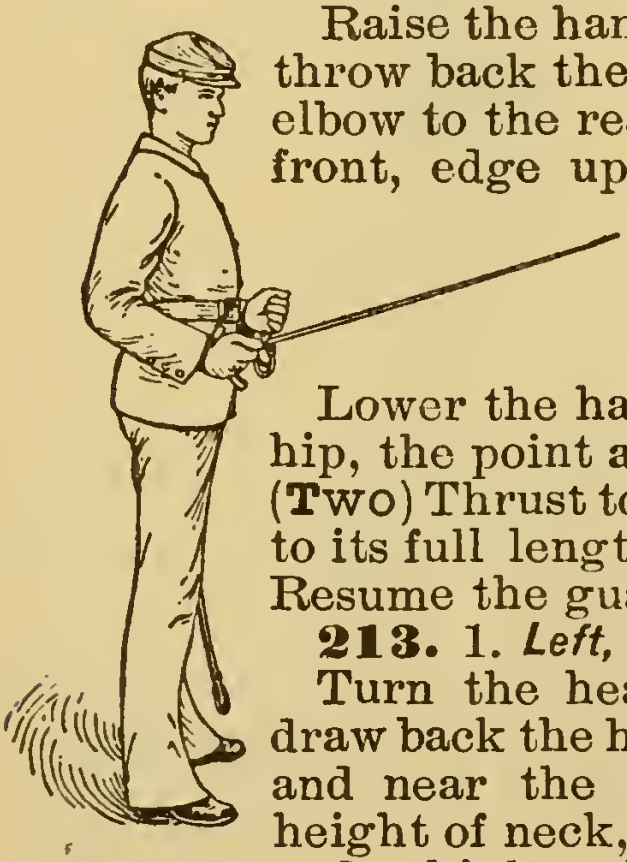
**210.** When the men execute the moulinets well, the instructor causes them to execute several in succession without pausing.

For this purpose he commands: 1. *Continue the motion,* 2. *Left* (or *Right,* or *Rear,* or *Right and left,* etc.), 3. MOULINET, 4. GUARD.

The motions are then repeated without pause until the command *guard.*

**211.** 1. *Tierce,* 2. POINT.

Raise the hand, back up, as high as the eye; throw back the right shoulder, carrying the elbow to the rear, point of the saber to the front, edge upward. (TWO) Thrust to the front, extending the arm to its full length, edge up. (THREE) Resume the guard.



Pl. 39, Par. 212.

**212.** 1. *Quarte,* 2. POINT.

Lower the hand, back down, near the right hip, the point a little higher than the wrist. (TWO) Thrust to the front, extending the arm to its full length, edge to the left. (THREE) Resume the guard.

**213.** 1. *Left,* 2. POINT.

Turn the head and shoulders to the left, draw back the hand in tierce toward the right and near the right shoulder, hand at the height of neck, edge upward, point to the left and as high as the hand. (TWO) Thrust to the

left, extending the arm to its full length, edge to the front. (THREE) Resume the guard.

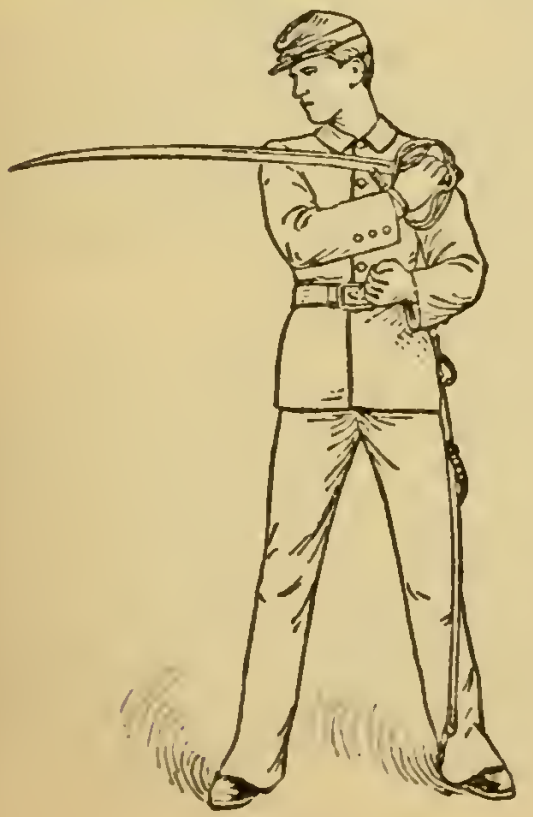
**214.** 1. *Right,* 2. POINT.

Turn the head to the right, carry the hand in quarte near the left breast, edge upward, point to the right and as high as the hand. (TWO) Thrust to the right, extending the arm to its full length, edge to the front. (THREE) Resume the guard.

**215.** 1. *Rear,* 2. POINT.

Turn the head and shoulders to the right and rear, bring the hand in quarte near the left breast, point to the rear and as high as the hand, edge upward. (TWO)

Pl. 40, Par. 213.



Pl. 41, Par. 214.

Pl. 42, Par. 215.

Pl. 43, Par. 216.

Thrust to the rear, extending the arm to its full length, edge to the right. (THREE) Resume the guard.

**216.** 1. *Against infantry,* 2. *Left,* 3. POINT.

Same as left point, except that the point is downward. (TWO) Thrust down in tierce, inclining the body slightly to the front and left. (THREE) Resume the guard.

**217.** 1. *Against infantry,* 2. *Right,* 3. POINT.

Same as quarte point, turning the head and shoulders to the right, inclining the point downward. (TWO) Thrust in quarte, inclining the body slighty to the front and right. (THREE) Resume the guard.

Pl. 44. Par. 217.

**218.** 1. *Against infantry,* 2. *Front,* 3. POINT.

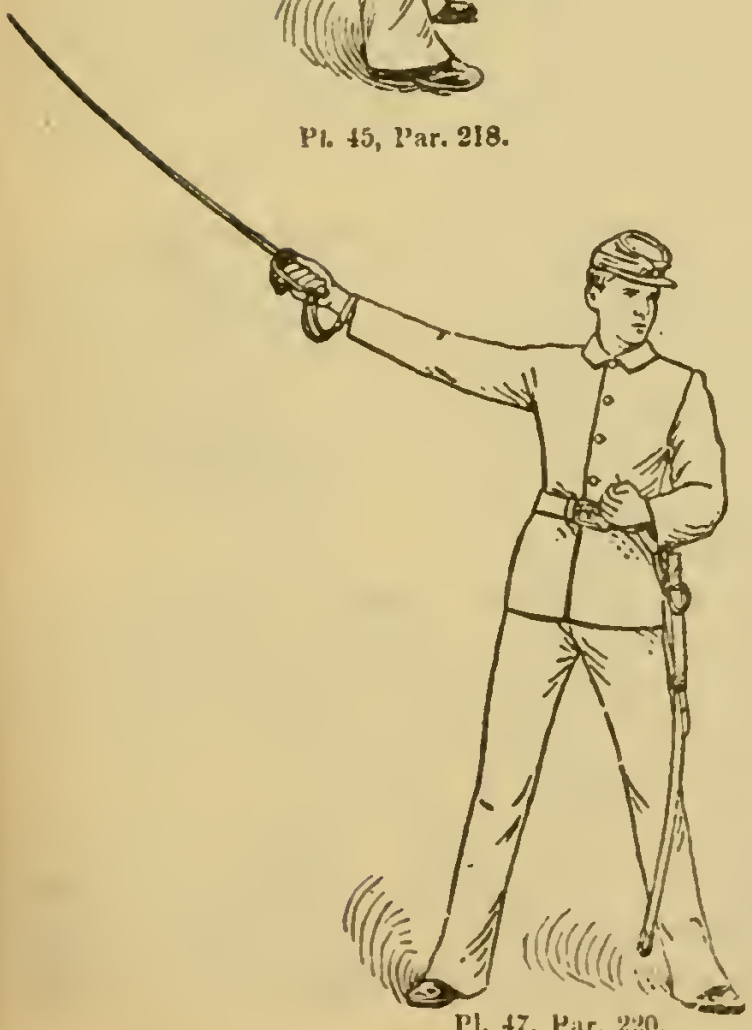
Bend well down to the right, extending the arm well down to the front and right, hand in rear of the thigh, back of saber up. (TWO) Thrust forward. (THREE) Resume the guard.

**219.** 1. *Front,* 2. CUT.

Raise the saber, arm half extended, hand in front of right shoulder and a little higher than the head, edge up, point to the rear and higher than the hand, blade inclined about forty-five degrees. (TWO) Cut to the front, extending the arm to its full length. (THREE) Resume the guard.

Pl. 45, Par. 218.

Pl. 46, Par. 219.



Pl. 47, Par. 220.

**220.** 1. *Left,* 2. **CUT.** Turn the head to the left, raise the saber, arm extended to the right; hand, back down, as high as the head, point higher than the hand. (**TWO**) Cut diagonally to the left. (**THREE**) Resume the guard.

**221.** 1. *Right,* 2. **CUT.**

Pl. 48, Par. 221.

Turn the head to the right, carry the hand opposite the left breast, point of the saber upward, edge to the left. (**TWO**) Extend the arm quickly to its full length and cut horizontally to the right. (**THREE**) Resume the guard.

**222.** The front, left, and right cuts are used against infantry and are made by inclining the body forward, close to the horse's neck, the seat close, knees and ankles supple, clinging to the horse with the legs and thighs, carrying the bridle hand slightly to the side opposite the cut without checking the horse, and cutting at the proper angle without swaying the body or the horse.

**223.** 1. *Rear,* 2. **CUT.**

Turn the head to the right, throwing back the right shoulder; carry the hand near the left breast, blade vertical, edge to the left. (**TWO**) Extend the arm quickly to its full length and cut horizontally to the rear in tierce. (**THREE**) Resume the guard.

**224.** 1. *Left in quarte and tierce,* 2. **CUT.**

Execute the first motion of left cut. (**TWO**) Execute the second motion of left cut. (**THREE**) Turn the hand in tierce and cut horizontally to the front till the point is in front of the left shoulder. (**FOUR**) Resume the guard.

**225.** 1. *Right in tierce and quarte,* 2. **CUT.**

Execute the first motion of right cut. (**TWO**) Execute the second motion of right cut. (**THREE**) Turn the hand in quarte and cut horizontally to the front till the point is in front of the right shoulder. (**FOUR**) Resume the guard.

Pl. 49, Par. 227.

**226.** 1. *Rear in tierce and quarte,* 2. CUT.

Execute the first motion of rear cut. (TWO) Execute the second motion of rear cut. (THREE) Turn the hand in quarte, and cut horizontally till the point is in front of the right shoulder. (FOUR) Resume the guard.

The combination cuts in quarte and tierce or the reverse are made as if directed against the same object.

Pl. 50, Par. 228.

Pl. 51, Par. 229.

**227.** 1. *Right,* 2. PARRY.

Carry the hand quickly a little to the right, point of the saber as high as the eyes and opposite the right shoulder, edge to the right so as to cover the right arm and shoulder. (TWO) Resume the guard.

**228.** 1. *Left,* 2. PARRY.

Turn the hand in quarte, and carry it to the left, just above the left forearm, edge of blade to the left, point to the front, as high as the eyes, and a little to the left of the left shoulder so as to cover the left arm and shoulder. (TWO) Resume the guard.

**229.** *Right low parry* and *left low parry* are executed in the same manner as right parry and left parry, ex-

Pl. 52, Par. 229.

cept that the point is lowered so as to cover the right and left legs respectively.

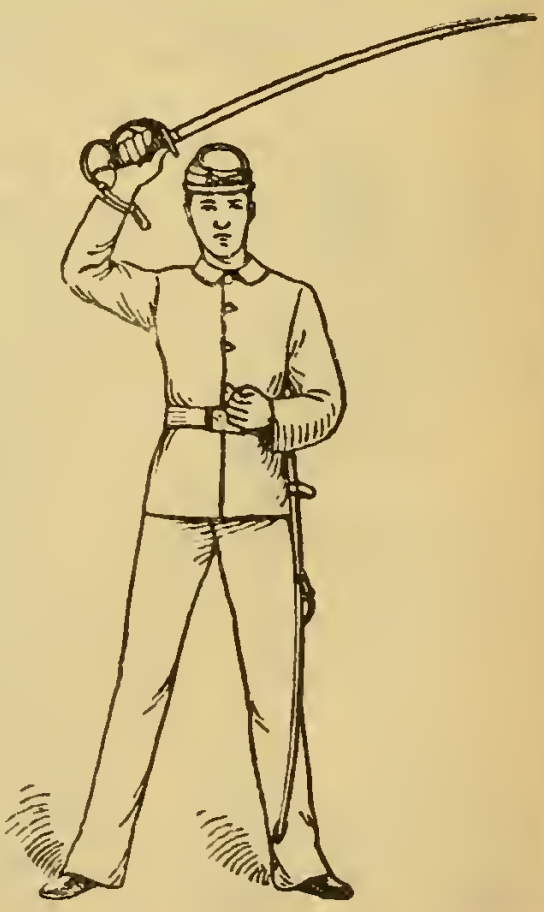
**230.** 1. *Head,* 2. **PARRY.**

Raise the hand six inches above and in front of the head and slightly in front of the right shoulder, edge of the blade up, point to the left and slightly higher than the hand. (**TWO**) Resume the guard.

In this parry, the point or hand should be moved so as to parry the cut according to the direction of the attack.

**231.** 1. *Against infantry,* 2. *Left,* 3. **PARRY.**

Turn the head and shoulders to the left; raise the saber, arm extended upward to the front and left, hand in tierce, back of the blade to the front, point upward. (**TWO**) Describe a circle quickly on the left, from front to rear, parallel to the horse's neck, arm extended; turn aside the bayonet with the back of the blade, bringing the hand, still in tierce, above the left shoulder. (**THREE**) Resume the guard.



Pl. 53, Par. 230.

**232.** 1. *Against infantry,* 2. *Right,* 3. **PARRY.**

Turn the head to the right, throwing back the right shoulder, raise the saber, arm extend-

ing upward to the right and rear, hand in tierce, edge of the blade to the left, point upward. (TWO) Describe a circle quickly on the right, dropping the point from rear to front, arm extended; turn aside the bayonet with the back of the blade, bringing the hand as high as the head, point upward. (THREE) Resume the guard.

**233.** Any combination of the cuts, thrusts, and parries that may, in the judgment of the instructor, be desirable, are permitted; examples:—

1. *Tierce point and front,* 2. CUT.
1. *Quarte point and front,* 2. CUT.
1. *Left point and right* (or *left*), 2. CUT.
1. *Right point and left* (or *right*), 2. CUT.
1. *Rear point and rear,* 2. CUT.
1. *Against infantry, right point and right,* 2. CUT.
1. *Against infantry, left point and left.* 2. CUT, etc.

## FENCING EXERCISE.

**234.** The fencing exercise develops the agility, intelligence, and esprit of the trooper, as well as his adroitness and confidence in the use of the saber; all movements must be executed with the greatest possible quickness and lightness.

It is intended merely to prescribe the manner of executing the movements laid down, but not to restrict the number of movements, leaving to the discretion of troop commanders and the ingenuity of instructors the selection of such other exercises as accord with the object of the drill.

When practicable, masks, wooden sabers, plastrons, and right-hand gloves are provided; the sabers to be of hickory, ash, beech, or other tough wood, resembling in shape and length the regulation saber, and to have sheet-iron or leather guards. When wooden sabers are not provided, the single stick may be used. This is a stick

three and one-half feet long, three-quarters to one inch in diameter at the hilt, and somewhat tapered toward the point. A disk of sheet iron or stiff leather about five or six inches in diameter should be fastened six inches from the hilt, to protect the hand. To give the single stick the proper balance, a hole may be bored lengthwise in the gripe, into which is put the proper amount of shot or lead.

A target or dummy is made by firmly setting in the ground a post about five and one-half feet high, padded so as to be about twenty inches in diameter. The top will be for the head cuts; a painted ring about ten inches from the top will indicate the shoulder, and another ring about two feet from the top, the waist; against this latter, the thrusts should be directed.

The instruction may be given with the saber in left hand, with the left foot advanced.

Frequent short rests should be given.

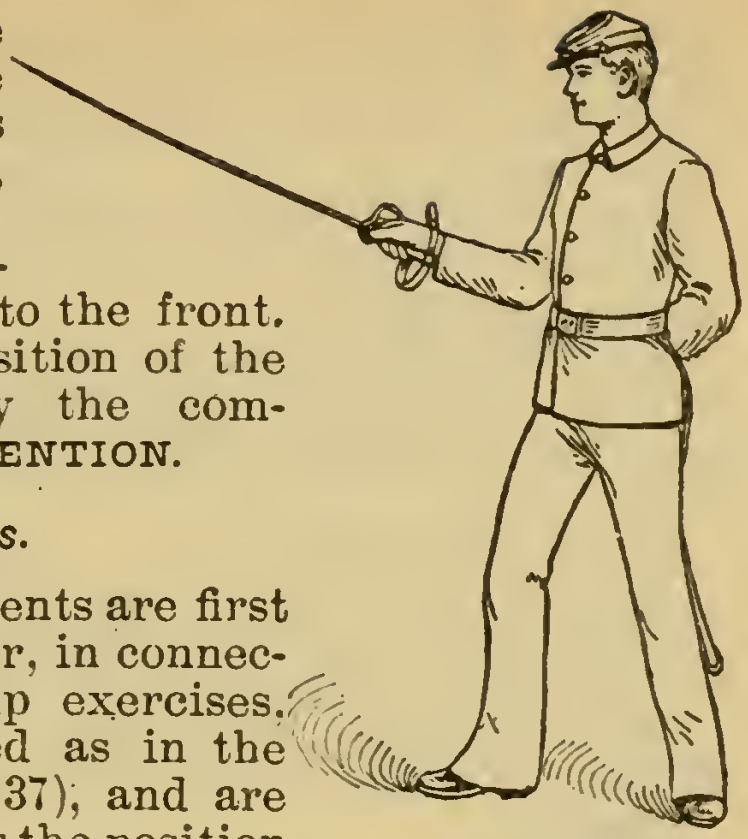
**235.** In all movements, the feet make a right angle, right toe and eyes to the front. *This rule is general.*

**236.** The squad being formed with intervals or distances (Pars. 177 or 179), sabers at a carry, the instructor cautions: *Fencing exercise,* and commands: GUARD.

Half face to the left, placing the right heel in front of and against the left, the weight on the left leg; unhook the scabbard with the left hand and grasp it between the rings, back of the hand outward, turn the hand inward and place the left forearm against the small of the back. (TWO) Advance the right foot twice its length, both knees well bent, so as to be directly over the feet; body erect and bearing equally on both legs; at the same time lower the saber to the front, point about the height and in front of left eye, edge to the right; hand, back up, a little higher than the elbow, arm about half extended, elbow in front of the right hip, thumb extended along the back of the gripe, little finger joined to the others, right toe pointing toward adversary.

If armed with the wooden saber or single stick, the left forearm is placed behind the back, hand closed.

1. *Carry*, 2. SABER. Resume the carry, faced to the front. If without arms, the position of the soldier is resumed by the commands: 1. *Squad*, 2. ATTENTION.



Pl 54, Par. 236.

*Leg Movements.*

**237.** The leg movements are first taught without the saber, in connection with the setting-up exercises, the hands being placed as in the Eighth Exercise (Par. 37), and are made without deranging the position of the trunk or head; when armed with the saber, without deranging the position of the saber.

Being at the guard: ADVANCE.

Raise slightly and advance the right foot twice its length; follow quickly with the left the same distance.

RETREAT.

Raise slightly and move the left foot twice its length to the rear; follow quickly with the right foot the same distance.

FRONT PASS.

Advance the left foot twice its length to the front of the right, then advance the right foot fifteen inches in front of the left.

REAR PASS.

Carry the right foot twice its length to the rear, then carry the left foot fifteen inches in rear of the right.

RIGHT VOLT.

Face to the right, turning on the ball of the right foot; at the same time carry the left foot to its position in rear.

LEFT VOLT.

Face to the left, turning on the ball of the right foot; at the same time carry the left foot to its position in rear.

LEFT TRAVERSE.

Carry the left foot about fifteen inches to the left and about three inches to the front; follow with the right foot about ten inches to the left and about three inches to the front.

RIGHT TRAVERSE.

Carry the right foot about ten inches to the right and three inches to the front; follow with the left foot about fifteen inches to the right and three inches to the front.

In the traverses, the troopers move on a circle around the point of contact of the blades when engaged.

LUNGE.

Advance the right foot about twice its length, the right leg from knee to instep vertical, the left leg extended, the left foot flat on the ground, body erect, chest thrown out, and head slightly thrown back.

At the command *guard,* bend the left knee, and with a quick extension of the right knee, spring from the ball of the right foot and bring back the right foot.

**238.** Being at the guard: 1. *Change,* 2. GUARD.

Carry the right foot twice its length in rear of the left and take the position of guard, left foot in front; change the saber into the left hand.

In a similar manner the guard is resumed with the right foot in advance at the command *change guard.*

**239.** All the saber movements not specially excepted are executed from the position of guard. The command *guard* terminates each movement.

**240.** The *cuts* are made principally by movements of the wrist, keeping the hand in front of the body near the *line of defense* (an imaginary vertical line through the

center of the body), otherwise the person will be exposed to attack, and recovery in time to make a successful parry or counter attack will be difficult.

The cuts are made lightly. When they are made against an adversary, the point is usually carried over the adversary's point.

There are three principal cuts: *front, right,* and *left.* The right and left cuts are subject to any number of variations, the instructor designating the particular part or member of the body against which the blow is to be directed, as *right* (or *left*) *cheek, side, thigh, leg,* etc.

1. FRONT CUT, 2. GUARD.

Raise the point until the blade is nearly vertical, edge to the front, without any marked movement of the forearm. (TWO) Cut to the front and downward, as at the head of an adversary, at the same time extending the arm and left leg.

1. *Against right shoulder* (or *side,* etc.), 2. RIGHT CUT, 3. GUARD.

Move the point about eighteen to twenty-four inches to the left of the line of defense. (TWO) Cut to the right, at the same time extending the right arm and left leg, throwing the weight on the right leg.

1. *Against left shoulder* (or *side,* etc.), 2. LEFT CUT, 3. GUARD.

Move the point about eighteen to twenty-four inches to the right of the line of defense. (TWO) Cut to the left, at the same time extending the right arm and left leg, and throwing the weight on the right leg.

**241.** The object of the lunge is to give a further reach to the saber; it is executed at the instant of making the cut or thrust; if executed without the numbers, then at the command *cut, thrust,* etc.

**242.** The *thrust* is an attack with the point of the saber, and is usually made by lowering the point below the blade of the adversary.

The thrust is preferred to the cut, especially mounted; the forward movement of the horse gives force and does not derange the position.

Being at the guard: 1. TIERCE THRUST, 2. GUARD.

Raise the hand to the height of the neck and in front of the right shoulder, edge of the blade up, point to the front and as high as the breast. (TWO) Thrust to the front, as at the breast, etc., of an adversary, raising the hand as high as the forehead and extending the arm and left leg, weight on the right leg.

1. QUARTE THRUST, 2. GUARD.

Raise the hand in quarte in front of and as high as the shoulder, edge of the blade to the left, point as high as the breast. (TWO) Thrust to the front as at the breast, etc., of an adversary, at the same time raising the hand as high as the forehead and extending the arm and left leg, weight on the right leg.

### *Blows with the Hilt.*

**243.** Being at the guard, dismounted saber exercise, or fencing exercise, or at the carry: 1. *Front,* 2. STRIKE.

Grasp the blade at the middle with the left hand, placing it against the right shoulder, edge of the blade to the front. (TWO) Strike upward to the front with the right hand. Resume the guard or carry.

1. *Left,* 2. STRIKE. Same as *front strike,* except that the body is turned to the left at the hips and the blow delivered to the left. *Left strike* may be combined with *left volt.*

1. *Right,* 2. STRIKE. Turn the head and shoulders to the right, raise the right hand to the left shoulder, saber horizontal, edge up; grasp the blade at the middle with the left hand. (TWO) Strike with the pommel straight to the right. Resume the guard or carry.

**244.** The *parry* wards off the blow of the adversary and should be made without disturbing the equilibrium of the body, and only so far as may be necessary to cover

the person, the point being moved as little as possible to accomplish it.

The parries are *single, double,* etc., according to the number, and are the same as in the saber exercise (Pars. 227, 228, 229, and 230).

In the parries, the position of the hand and point vary according to the direction of the blow, and so move as to receive the adversary's attack on the half of the blade near the hilt. The strength of the parry diminishes as the distance from the hilt increases.

**245.** The *feints* are movements made to deceive an adversary by threatening a cut or thrust different from that intended. They are *simple, double,* etc., according to the number of movements.

The *feint* should be so well made that it will be mistaken for the intended blow, and thus throw the adversary off his guard, exposing him to attack at another point, at which the lunge is quickly made.

**246.** The *return* is the counter attack, made after having parried the adversary's attack.

**247.** *Withdrawing the leg* is done by moving the right leg behind the left without moving the latter. This movement carries the body beyond the reach of the adversary and enables a return with a head hit, or hit on the wrist, according as the attack was above or below the forearm.

**248.** The troopers, after having been taught the motions, first slowly, then rapidly, by the numbers, are then formed into two ranks facing each other, with intervals of about two or three yards between troopers. Each trooper in one rank, designated No. 1, is thus placed opposite a trooper in the other rank, designated No. 2.

The instructor commands: PROVE DISTANCE.

Extend the arm and saber to the front, edge to the right, and take distance from the opponent, the point of the saber just touching the opponent's hilt.

### *The Engagements.*

**249.** Both ranks being at the guard, to engage, No. 1 and No. 2 cross sabers, edge against edge, about eight to twelve inches from the point. The engagement is *tierce* when the back of the hand is up, edge of blade to the right, and the adversary's blade is kept to the right. The engagement is *quarte* when the back of the hand is down and in front of the left breast, edge of blade to the left at the height and in front of right eye, and the adversary's blade is kept to the left. The engagement in tierce is generally the better, because the more natural and easier position to hold the saber.

The *hanging* or *high engagement* is when the saber hand is at the height and in front of the right shoulder, back of the hand to the left, edge of blade toward the front, point about as high as the waist.

Being at the guard,

1. *No. 1 Tierce,* 2. ENGAGE.

1. *No. 1 Quarte,* 2. ENGAGE.

1. *No. 1 High,* 2. ENGAGE.

When No. 1 engages, No. 2 covers, taking the same engagement.

When changing the engagement, the point is dropped just enough to pass under the adversary's blade, at the same time turning and shifting the hand; the adversary then turns and shifts his hand so as to cover.

**250.** 1. GUARD, 2. *Tierce* (or *Quarte* or *High*), 3. ENGAGE.

The instructor indicates the movements for attack by No. 1, and the corresponding parries for defense by No. 2, and then commands: 1. ASSAULT, 2. GUARD.

Each attack is repeated several times, and then No. 2 is cautioned to make the same attack, and No. 1 the defense; and so on with the various attacks and defenses. The trooper lunges at the instant of attack.

Examples:

| No. 1. | No. 2. |
|---|---|
| *Right cut at leg.* | *Right low parry.* |
| *Front cut.* | *Head parry.* |
| *Right shoulder, right cut.* | *Right parry.* |
| *Right side, right cut.* | *Right parry.* |
| *Right cheek, right cut.* | *Head parry.* |
| *Left cheek, left cut.* | *Head parry.* |
| *Left side, left cut.* etc. | *Left parry*, etc. |

The simple attacks and parries being familiarized, the feints are explained and combined with the attacks, as: No. 1. *Feint right cut at leg, and attack right cheek.* No. 2. *Right low and head parry.*

After the troopers have become familiar with the parries, the instructor will indicate the feint and attack only; the defense will make corresponding parries without indication.

The steps will be combined with the attack, *e. g.*, when No. 1 advances, No. 2 retreats, etc.

The instructor explains the return and teaches first the simple attack and return, and then the double, etc., attacks and returns.

### *Fencing, Mounted.*

**251.** This exercise is intended for the training of both horse and trooper, and to cultivate the presence of mind and individuality necessary in the mêlée into which the charge finally resolves itself.

The instructor, from time to time, orders movements on the track, in order to relieve the monotony of the fencing exercise to those not immediately engaged, or to quiet the horses.

The squads are formed at opposite ends of the hall; the instructor designates one rank as No. 1, the other as No. 2, then gives in detail the attack, return, and parries; first, when the troopers meet each other by the right,

then by the left, and finally the attack and defense in pursuit.

The engagement is tierce when each trooper has his opponent to his right, and quarte when to his left.

At the command *next,* each returns to the left of his rank.

The exercise will be had at a walk, trot, and gallop.

The troopers are also exercised in two ranks with intervals, facing each other.

**252.** In actual combat the trooper will put his enemy at a disadvantage by attacking him on his left rear.

Great attention should at all times be given to maintaining the proper position and equilibrium of the body, that they may not be deranged by the exertion of delivering a cut or thrust.

In delivering a forward thrust, very little force is necessary while the horse is in quick motion, as the extension of the arm with a good direction of the point will be sufficient. Endeavor to prevent the adversary from attacking on the left rear; to meet this attack, halt suddenly, to allow the adversary to pass by, or bear over as closely to him as possible, or turn quickly to the right about and meet him.

When meeting an adversary to the left front, turn sharply to the left or left about, on your own ground, so as to bring his left on your right, with your saber arm free.

When pursued, endeavor to keep the adversary to the right rear, and keep him at a distance by the rear cut and thrust, or strike his horse's head, his bridle hand, or the reins.

# SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER.

**253.** The object of this school is to teach individual horsemanship and the ready use of arms on horseback; a knowledge of these is indispensable to the efficiency of the trooper, whether acting singly or in rank.

The recruit will be taught that his own disposition or temper is usually communicated to and reacts upon the horse, and therefore it is to their mutual interest to preserve calmness.

**254.** The order of instruction indicated may be modified at the discretion of the officer superintending, care being taken to develop the confidence of the recruit by progress suited to his capacity, and which will exempt him as far as possible from falls or other accidents.

During the first few lessons the instructor will devote his attention chiefly to giving to the recruits the proper seat and carriage and to making them self-confident on horseback; he will quietly and patiently correct the faults of each individual as they occur, frequently passing from one to another, and will require by degrees the correct execution of his teachings; these understood and confidence imparted, the positions and motions will then be rigidly enforced.

The instructor may dismount when he can in that way the better teach the positions.

Quiet, well-trained horses are first assigned, and each recruit is required to change his horse from day to day.

**255.** Each mounted drill begins and ends at a walk. *This rule is general.*

**256.** During the drills the recruits are taught the following rules for the care of horses, until the instructor is satisfied by means of questions that they are thoroughly comprehended.

Never threaten, strike, or otherwise abuse a horse.

Before entering a stall, speak to the horse gently and then go in quietly.

Never take a rapid gait until the horse has been warmed up by gentle exercise.

Never put up a horse brought in a heated condition to the stable or picket line, but throw a blanket over him and rub his legs, or walk him until cool. When he is wet, put him under shelter, and wisp him until dry.

Never feed grain to a horse nor allow him to stand uncovered when heated. Hay will not hurt a horse, no matter how warm he may be.

Never water a horse when heated unless the exercise or march is to be immediately resumed.

Never throw water over any part of a horse when heated.

Never allow a horse's back to be cooled suddenly, by washing or even removing the blanket unnecessarily.

To cool the back gradually, the blanket may be removed and replaced with the dry side next the horse.

## THE EQUIPMENT OF THE HORSE.

**257.** The instructor indicates the different parts and uses of each equipment as a commencement of this instruction.

### *To Fold the Saddle-Blanket.*

**258.** The blanket, after being well shaken, will be folded into six thicknesses, as follows: Hold it well up by the two corners, the long way up and down; double it lengthwise (so the fold will come between the "U" and "S"), the folded corner (middle of blanket) in the left hand; take the folded corner between the thumb and forefinger of the right hand, thumb pointing to the left; slip the left hand down the folded edge two-thirds its length and seize it with the thumb and second finger; raise the hands to the height of the shoulders, the blanket between them extended; bring the hands together, the double fold falling outward; pass the folded corner from the right hand into the left hand, between the thumb and fore-

finger, slip the second finger of the right hand between the folds, and seize the double folded corner; turn the left (disengaged) corner in, and seize it with thumb and forefinger of the right hand, the second finger of the right hand stretching and evening the folds; after evening the folds, grasp the corners and shake the blanket well in order to smooth the folds, raise the blanket and place it between the chin and breast; slip the hands down half-way, the first two fingers outside, the other fingers and thumb of each hand inside, seize the blanket with the thumbs and first two fingers, let the part under the chin fall forward; hold the blanket up, arms extended, even the lower edges, seize the middle points between the thumbs and forefingers, and flirt the outside part over the right arm; the blanket is thus held before placing it on the horse.

*To Put on the Blanket and Surcingle.*

**259.** The instructor commands: **BLANKET.**

Approach the horse on or near (left) side, with the blanket folded and held as just described; place it well forward on his back, by tossing the part of the blanket over the right arm to the off (right) side of the horse, still keeping hold of the middle points; slide the blanket once or twice from front to rear to smooth the hair, being careful to raise the blanket in bringing it forward; place the blanket with the forefinger of the left hand on the withers, and the forefinger of the right hand on the backbone, the blanket smooth; it should then be well forward with the edges on the left side; remove the locks of mane that may be under it; pass the buckle end of the surcingle over the middle of the blanket, and buckle it on the near side, a little below the edge of the blanket.

*To Put on the Watering Bridle.*

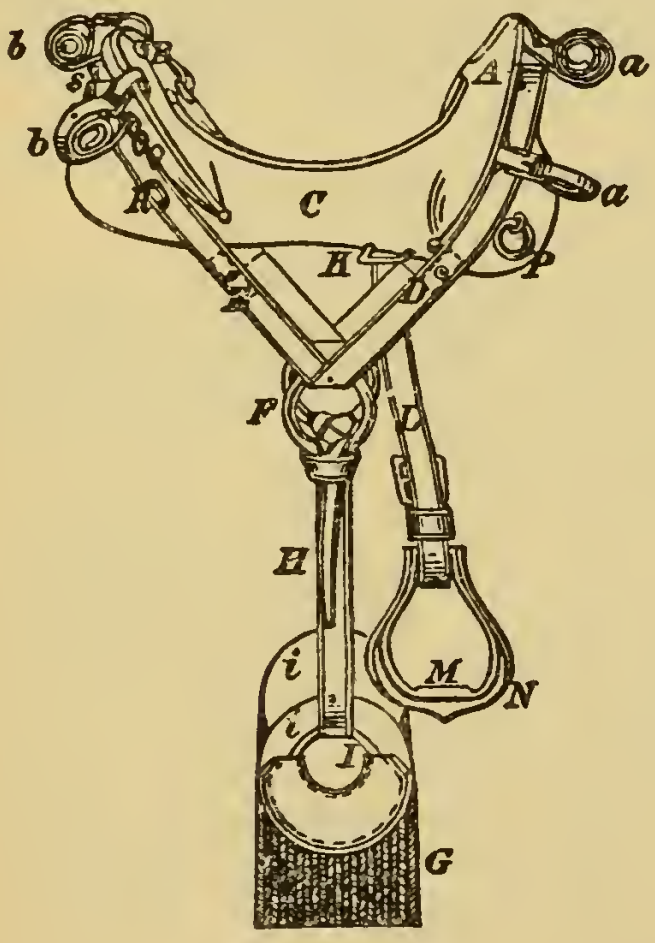
**260.** The instructor commands: **BRIDLE.**

Take the reins in the right hand, the bit in the left;

approach the horse on the near side, slip the reins over the horse's head and let them rest on his neck; reach under and put the toggle of the bridle through the right halter ring, insert the left thumb in the side of the horse's mouth above the tush and press open the lower jaw; insert the bit and pass the toggle through the left halter ring. The bit should hang so as to touch, but not draw up, the corners of the mouth.

### *To Unbridle.*

**261.** At the command *unbridle,* pass the reins over the horse's head and take the toggles out of the halter rings.




Pl 55, Par. 261.

NOMENCLATURE OF THE SADDLE.

A, Pommel.
B, Cantle.
C, Sidebar.
D, Quarter straps, front } spider.
E, Quarter straps, rear }
F, Quarter strap ring, or spider ring.
G, Cincha.
H, Cincha strap.
I, Cincha ring.
K, Stirrup loop.
L, Stirrup strap.
M, Stirrup tread.
N, Stirrup hood.
P, Q, Rings.
R, Cantle staple.
S, Saddle-bag stud.
aa, bb, Coat straps,
ii, Cincha ring safes.

*To Saddle*

**262.** For instruction, the saddle may be placed four yards in rear or front of the horse. The stirrups are crossed over the seat, the right one uppermost; then the cincha and cincha strap are crossed above the stirrups, the strap uppermost. The blanket having been placed as previously explained, the instructor commands: SADDLE.

Seize the pommel of the saddle with the left hand and the cantle with the right, approach the horse on the near side from the direction of the croup and *place the center of the saddle on the middle of the horse's back* so it will fit close to it; let down the cincha strap and cincha; pass by the horse's head to the off side, adjust the cincha and straps and see that the blanket is smooth; return to the near side by the head, raise the blanket slightly under the pommel arch so that the withers may not be compressed; take the cincha strap in the right hand, reach under the horse and seize the cincha ring with the left hand, pass the end of the strap through the ring from underneath (from inside to outside), then up and through the upper ring from the outside; if necessary, make another fold in the same manner.

The strap is fastened as follows: Pass the end through the upper ring to the front; seize it with the left hand, place the fingers of the right between the outside folds of the strap; pull from the horse with the right hand and take up the slack with the left; cross the strap over the folds, pass the end of it, with the right hand, underneath and through the upper ring back of the folds, then down and under the loop that crosses the folds and draw it tightly; weave the ends of the strap into the strands of the cincha.

Another method of fastening the cincha strap is as follows: Pass the end through the upper ring to the rear; seize it with the right hand, place the fingers of the left

between the outer folds of the strap; pull from the horse with the left hand and take up the slack with the right; pass the end of the strap underneath and draw it through the upper ring until a loop is formed; double the loose end of the strap and push it through the loop and draw the loop taut. The free end should then be long enough to conveniently seize with the hand.

Having fastened the cincha strap, let down the right stirrup, then the left.

The surcingle is then buckled over the saddle and should be a little looser than the cincha.

The cincha when first tied should admit a finger between it and the belly. After exercising for awhile the cincha will be found too loose and should be tightened.

**263.** To approximate the length of the stirrup straps before mounting, they are adjusted so that the length of the stirrup strap, including the stirrup, is about one inch less than the length of the arm, fingers extended.

### *To Unsaddle.*

**264.** The instructor commands: **UNSADDLE.**

Stand on the near side of the horse; unbuckle and remove the surcingle; cross the left stirrup over the saddle; loosen the cincha strap and let down the cincha; pass to the off side by the head, cross the right stirrup, then the cincha; pass to the near side by the head, cross the cincha strap over the saddle; grasp the pommel with the left hand, the cantle with the right, and remove the saddle over the croup and place it in front or rear of the horse as may be directed, pommel to the front; grasp the blanket at the withers with the left hand and at the loin with the right, remove it in the direction of the croup, the edges falling together, wet side in, and place it across the saddle, folded edge on the pommel.

If in the stable, place the saddle on its peg when taken off the horse.

### *To Put on the Curb Bridle.*

**265.** The instructor commands: BRIDLE.

Take the reins in the right, the crown piece in the left hand; approach the horse on the near side, passing the right hand along his neck; slip the reins over his head and let them rest on his neck; take the crown piece in the right hand and the lower left branch of the bit in the left hand, the forefinger against the mouthpiece; bring the crown piece in front of and slightly below its proper position; insert the thumb into the side of the mouth above the tush; press open the lower jaw, insert the bit by raising the crown piece, with the left hand draw the ears gently under the crown piece, beginning with the left ear; arrange the forelock, secure the throat latch, and then the curb strap, taking care not to set them too closely.

**266.** The mouthpiece, which should fit the width of the horse's mouth, rests on that part of the bars (the lower jaw between the tushes and molars) directly opposite the chin groove; the curb strap should then lie in the chin groove without any tendency to mount up out of it on the sharp bones of the lower jaw. This position of the mouthpiece will be attained for the majority of horses by adjusting the cheek straps so that the mouthpiece will be one inch above the tushes of the horse and two inches above the corner teeth of the mare.

The throat latch should admit four fingers between it and the throat; this prevents constriction of the windpipe or pressure on the large blood vessels.

The curb strap, which should be of width to fit the chin-groove, not over three-fourths of an inch, should fit smoothly the chin-groove, and be loose enough to admit one or two fingers when the branches of the bit are in line with the cheek straps.

**267.** At the discretion of the instructor, the halter may be taken off before bridling, the reins being first passed

over the neck; the hitching strap, if not left at the manger or picket line, is tied around the horse's neck. The hitching strap may also be arranged as follows: Loop it two or three times through the ring, making the loops about eight inches long; wind the strap several times around the loops and draw the end tightly through them.

### *To Unbridle.*

**268.** The instructor commands: **UNBRIDLE.**

Stand on the near side of the horse; pass the reins over the horse's head, placing them on the bend of the left arm; unbuckle the throat latch, grasp the crown piece with the right, and assisting with the left hand gently disengage the ears; grasp the bit with the left hand, and gently disengage it from the horse's mouth by lowering the crown piece; place the crown piece in the palm of the left hand, take the reins in the right hand, pass them together over the crown piece, make two or three turns around the bridle, then pass the bight between the brow band and crown piece and draw it snug.

The bridle is hung up by the reins, or placed across the saddle on the blanket.

If the horse has no halter on, unbridle and push the bridle back so that the crown piece will rest on the neck behind the poll until the halter is replaced.

### *To Roll the Overcoat.*

**269.** Spread the overcoat with the inside down, fold the sleeves square across, the cuffs touching at the back seam; spread the cape with the edges parallel to the front edges of the coat, the cape reefed and drawn to the back seam; turn the tails under about nine inches, the folded edge perpendicular to the back seam; fold over the front edges of the coat and skirt to form a rectangle not more than thirty-four inches across, according to the size of the coat; roll tightly from the collar with the hands and

knees, and bring over the whole roll that part of the skirt which was turned under, thus binding the roll.

*To Roll the Bed Blanket and Shelter Tent.*

**270.** The blanket measures seventy-two by eighty-four inches.

Spread the shelter tent and turn under one end about ten inches.

Fold the blanket to three thicknesses across the shorter edge; the fold then measures twenty-four inches wide; place the blanket thus folded across the middle of the shelter tent, the end of the folded blanket about one inch above the folded edge of the tent; fold the side parts of the tent over the blanket; roll tightly from the exposed end of the blanket with the hands and knees and bring over the whole roll the part of the tent that was turned under, thus binding the roll.

On account of the inelasticity of the canvas it will be found necessary, just before turning over the part which binds the roll, to spread the canvas a little where it folds inside, at the end of the roll.

*To Pack the Saddle.*

**271.** *Overcoat* rolled as prescribed, and strapped on the pommel; *blanket,* with change of underclothing inside, is rolled in the shelter tent (the roll not to be less than twenty-four nor more than twenty-eight inches in length, according to bulk); *nose bag* slipped over the roll outside of the shelter tent on the near end and the strap buckled over the off end; *side lines,* when carried, to be spread over the blanket roll, the leather ends being brought together and the whole secured by the cantle straps; *lariat,* rolled around the picket pin and snapped into near cantle ring: *canteen* with *cup* on strap attached to off cantle ring: *tin plate* or *meat can, knife, fork,* and *spoon* in off saddlebag: *currycomb, brush,* and *watering bridle* in near saddle bag.

Extra ammunition and rations to be divided so as to equalize the weight in the saddlebags; also extra horseshoes (fitted) and nails (pointed), when on active service and separated from transportation. When the haversack is carried, the change of clothing may be placed in the saddlebags, and the haversack, with the rations, meat can, etc., will be carried on the near side and secured by passing the haversack strap over the blanket roll and under the off end; in this case the tin cup will be attached to the haversack.

On the march, the lariat to be coiled and fastened with a thong to the near cantle ring (passing under the left stirrup strap),the free end snapped into the halter ring.

Generally in field service, especially when the horse is low in flesh, the bed blanket should be folded and placed over the saddle blanket.

### *The Position of Stand to Horse.*

**272.** The instructor commands: **STAND TO HORSE.**

Each trooper places himself, facing to the front, on the near side of the horse, eyes on a line with the front of the horse's head, so he can see along the front, and takes the position of the soldier, except that the right hand, nails down, grasps both reins, the forefinger separating them, six inches from the bit.

### *To Lead Out.*

**273.** The troopers standing to horse, to leave the stable or picket line, the instructor commands: **LEAD OUT.**

Each trooper, holding his hand well up and firm, leads his horse, without looking at him, to the place designated by the instructor.

The troopers form in single rank from right to left, and, until further orders, with intervals of three yards.

If the horse shows a disposition to resist being led, the trooper takes the reins from the horse's neck, takes

the ends in the left hand, then, with the right hand holding the reins, leads the horse as before. When leading through a low or narrow doorway, the horse should be quieted by the voice or caresses, and not allowed to pass through hurriedly. To prevent the horse from rushing ahead, the instructor may direct the trooper to face toward the horse, holding one rein in each hand, close to the bit, and lead him by stepping backward: after passing the doorway the trooper leads the horse as before.

*To Align the Rank.*

**274.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*), 2. DRESS, 3. FRONT.

The troopers dress to the right and move their horses forward or backward, as may be necessary to align them.

*To Mount* (*without Saddle*).

**275.** 1. PREPARE TO MOUNT, 2. MOUNT.

At the first command, drop the right rein, take two back steps, stepping off with the left foot, at the same time sliding the right hand along the left rein; face to the right as the right foot is being planted, and bring the left foot by the side of the right. This should place the trooper behind the near shoulder of the horse. Take both reins in the right hand, aided by the left, the reins coming in on the side of the forefinger, forefinger between the reins, the loose end falling over on the off side; place the right hand on the withers, thumb to the left, fingers to the right, holding the reins short enough to feel lightly the horse's mouth; place the left hand on the horse's neck near the withers, and grasp a lock of the mane, the lock coming out between the thumb and fore finger.

At the command *mount,* spring lightly from the ground and raise the body, keeping it erect, and supporting the weight on the hands; carry the right leg, knee bent, over the horse's back, the weight still borne on the hands;

sit down gently on the horse's back, and take one rein in each hand, the reins bearing equally on the horse's mouth.

In the earlier lessons, the recruit may rest the right forearm on the horse's back to enable him to raise the body when mounting.

*Position of the Trooper (without Saddle).*

**276.** Body balanced on the middle of the horse's back.

Head erect and square to the front.

Chin slightly drawn in.

Shoulders square and well thrown back.

Chest pushed out.

Back straight.

Elbows slightly to the rear of the points of the shoulders.

Forearms horizontal and close to the sides without pressure.

Wrists turned in slightly.

The right rein in the right hand, and the left rein in the left hand, coming in on the under side of the little finger, and coming out over second joint of forefinger. which is slightly protruded to the front of the other fingers, and on which the thumb firmly holds the rein; the other fingers closed on the reins, nails toward the body; reins bearing equally on the horse's mouth: bight (end) of reins falling to the front and on the right side of the horse's neck.

Hands about six inches apart, on a level with the elbows, backs straight up and down.

Buttocks bearing equally on the middle of the horse's back, the seat being as flat as possible.

Legs stretched by their weight alone, the flat of the thighs and knees clasping the horse equally.

Legs from knees down vertical and free.

Feet parallel to the sides of the horse, or as nearly so as the conformation of the man will permit.

*Remarks on the Position of the Trooper.*

*Body balanced on the middle of the horse's back,* because that is the point where the motion of the horse is least communicated to the rider, and the best weight-bearing position for the horse.

*Head erect and square to the front.* If not, the body will incline forward or to one side and be unsteady.

*Chin slightly drawn in.* To prevent the head and shoulders from drooping to the front.

*Shoulders square and well thrown back and the chest pushed out.* If not, the chest will be contracted and the back curved to the rear.

*Back straight.* This gives an erect carriage and counteracts the tendency to slouch or droop the shoulders.

*Elbows slightly to the rear of the shoulders.* To assist in keeping the shoulders back.

*Forearms horizontal and close to the sides without pressure.* To prevent their being thrown out when the horse trots; if with pressure, the motion of the body will be communicated to the hand and rein.

*Wrists turned in slightly.* To assist in keeping the elbows close to the body.

*Buttocks bearing equally, and seat as flat as possible.* So that the body will preserve its steadiness.

*Flat of thighs and knees clasping the horse equally.* To give a firm, steady seat.

*Legs from knees down vertical and free.* That they may be carried to the rear to aid in directing the horse without deranging the seat.

*Feet parallel to the horse.* To assist in holding the thighs in position.

The body from the hips up should be movable, and should, in a measure, yield to the motions of the horse; from the hips to the knees, immovable and close to the horse; from the knees down, movable.

The arms move freely at the shoulders to avoid com-

municating the motion of the body to the reins; the hands oscillate slightly with the motion of the horse, but otherwise they are stationary, except to direct the horse.

During the earlier lessons, the position of the recruit is necessarily one of constraint.

No man can be said to be a good horseman who has not a firm, well-balanced seat; it is therefore of the utmost importance; it will assist the horse; the want of it will impede the horse's actions, make sore backs, etc.

### *To Lengthen or Shorten the Reins.*

**277.** Bring the hands toward each other; grasp the right rein with the thumb and forefinger of the left hand a short distance from the right thumb; relax the grasp of the right hand, and allow the rein to slip through to get the proper bearing; then close the right hand and replace the hands. With the left rein the positions of the hands are reversed.

### *To Take the Reins in One Hand.*

**278.** To relieve the constraint of the arms by changing their position, as well as to prepare the recruits for the use of the curb bridle, the instructor commands: 1. *In left* (or *right*) *hand,* 2. TAKE REINS.

At the second command, bring the left hand opposite the middle of the body; half open and place in it the right rein, holding both reins as explained for the left rein, except that the little finger separates the reins, the right rein coming in above the little finger; close the left hand and drop the right hand behind the thigh.

### *To Adjust the Reins.*

**279.** Seize the bight with the thumb and forefinger of the right hand; partly open the left hand so as to allow the reins to slip through it: raise the right hand until the reins bear equally; close the left hand upon

them, letting the bight fall over the forefinger and right rein; drop the right hand.

*To Retake the Reins in Both Hands.*

**280.** The reins being in the left hand: 1. *In both hands,* 2. TAKE REINS.

Half open the left hand, seize with the right hand the right rein, and hold them as previously described.

*To Drop and Retake Reins.*

**281.** DROP REINS: Drop the reins on the horse's neck near the withers, and drop the hands behind the thighs.

TAKE REINS: The trooper retakes the reins and holds them as before dropping them.

*To Dismount (without Saddle).*

**282.** 1. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, 2. DISMOUNT.

At the first command, pass the right rein into the left hand, then seize both reins with the right hand, in front of the left, forefinger between the reins, and place the right hand on the withers, thumb to the left, fingers to the right, the reins coming into the hand on the side of the forefinger; let go with the left hand, place it on top of the neck directly in front of the withers, and grasp a lock of the mane, the lock coming out between the thumb and forefinger.

At the command *dismount* raise the body on both hands, carry the right leg, knee bent, over the horse's back without touching it; bring the right leg near the left and come lightly to the ground on the balls of the feet, bending the knees a little; face to the left, drop the right rein, step to the front, sliding the right hand along the left rein, and take the position of stand to horse.

*To Dismount on the Off Side.*

**283.** 1. *To the right,* 2. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, 3. DISMOUNT.

The second and third commands are executed as in Par. 282, but by inverse means, the trooper coming to the ground on the off side.

*To Mount from the Off Side.*

**284.** The trooper being dismounted and on the off side of his horse: 1. PREPARE TO MOUNT, 2. MOUNT.

The commands are executed as in Par. 275, but by inverse means.

**285.** If the commands be: 1. *Squad,* 2. MOUNT, the men execute at the command *mount* all that has been prescribed at the commands *prepare to mount* and *mount.*

If the commands be: 1. *Squad,* 2. DISMOUNT; or, 1. *To the right,* 2. *Squad,* 3. DISMOUNT, the men execute at the command *dismount* all that has been prescribed at the commands *prepare to dismount* and *dismount.*

*These rules are general,* the command *platoon, troop,* etc., being substituted for the command *squad.*

*To Rest.*

**286.** Being at stand to horse, the command *rest* is executed as in the School of the Soldier, except that the troopers hold the reins and keep their horses in place.

Being mounted, at a halt, at the command: REST, or being in march, at the commands: 1. *Route order,* 2. MARCH, the men are permitted to turn their heads, to talk, and to make slight changes of position, but they will not lounge on their horses.

Being at stand to horse, the command *at ease* is executed as in the School of the Soldier.

Being mounted at a halt, at the command: AT EASE, or being in march, at the commands: 1. *At ease,* 2. MARCH, the men are permitted to turn their heads or make slight changes of position, but preserve silence.

**287.** To resume the attention: 1. *Squad,* 2. ATTENTION.

Each trooper, if dismounted, takes the position of stand to horse; if mounted, he takes the position of the trooper. *These rules are general.*

*To Dismiss the Squad.*

**288.** The squad being dismounted: 1. *By the right* (*left,* or *right and left*), 2. FALL OUT.

The trooper on the right leads his horse one yard to the front and then marches directly to the stables or picket line.

Each of the other troopers executes in succession the same movement, so as to follow the horse next on the right, at a distance of one yard.

The men remove, clean, and put the equipments in place, and care for and secure their horses under the directions of the instructor or senior non-commissioned officer.

Each man, as soon as he has finished, stands to heel. The instructor or non-commissioned officer having satisfied himself by inspection that the horse and equipments are properly cared for and that the precautions required on their return from exercise have been observed, orders the men to fall in, marches them to the troop parade and dismisses them as prescribed in the School of the Soldier.

**289.** STAND TO HEEL: Each man stands at attention, one yard in rear of and facing his heel post. At the picket line he stands at attention, one yard in rear of and facing his horse.

## MOUNTED EXERCISES.

**290.** The mounted exercises make the recruit agile and supple, give him confidence, and enable him to maintain a balanced seat on his horse in every variety of movement. All troopers will be frequently practiced in them, in order to maintain their agility and suppleness.

Whenever practicable the recruits will be practiced in mounting and dismounting and in the other mounted exercises, using a wooden vaulting horse, or a horizontal vaulting bar, the height of which will depend upon the ability of the man, being gradually raised until at the height of a horse.

To give confidence to recruits, horses that are apt to become uneasy will, during the first few lessons, be tied in roomy stalls, to a fence, or to the walls of the riding hall, or the horse may be put on the longe, the trooper dropping the reins.

The horses are equipped with the watering bridle, and, at the discretion of the instructor, have the saddle pad or blanket and surcingle. If the horse be tied, it is recommended that the pad or blanket be dispensed with.

When the troopers have been taught, with the horses tied or on the longe, to mount, dismount, and to hold the reins, and when they have some confidence on horseback, the exercises are continued with the horses in line with intervals, or in column of troopers; the instruction in marching and the use of the aids will then begin and thereafter form a part of each lesson.

When the mounted exercises are correctly executed at a halt, they are repeated at a walk, then at a trot, and finally at a canter.

Recruits at first often support themselves with the reins and cling with the legs; to remedy these faults they are made to ride without holding the reins, the arms folded;

the troopers are formed in column of twos, or two parallel columns; each trooper in one column is instructed to pass the reins over his horse's head to the trooper next to him in the other column; the ride is then conducted at a trot.

The same instructions may be given on the longe.

The troopers will not be required to go through all the mounted exercises in the order in which they are described, the more difficult exercises not being attempted and the gaits for the easier ones being restricted to a walk until the troopers have acquired a secure, well-balanced seat at a trot and a gallop (see Par. 254).

During the exercises, the trooper drops and retakes reins without command, whenever necessary to execute the motions or to control his horse, and when he dismounts he remains near the shoulder of the horse and keeps one hand on the withers (or pommel). When the horse is not led, the hand on the withers or pommel holds the reins with a bearing just sufficient to let the horse know he is under control.

To resume the position of stand to horse, the instructor commands: **STAND TO HORSE.**

### *The Galloping Step.*

**291.** During the exercises at a trot and canter, the trooper when dismounted keeps pace with his horse at the shoulder, by means of the galloping step, which he executes (keeping one hand on the horse) by a succession of leaps, rising and alighting with the rise and fall of the forehand of the horse, keeping the left or right foot in advance, according as he is on the left or right side of the horse, and supporting his weight on the balls of the feet. Frequent brief rests should be given in order not to strain or unduly fatigue men who are not accustomed to the exercises.

**292.** The first, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, and the first part of the fifteenth

and sixteenth exercises (Par. 37) may be executed as prescribed in the School of the Soldier.

*First Mounted Exercise.*

1. **Lean back**, 2. **Up.** Lean back until the head rests on the horse's croup; hands resting on the thighs, toes turned in, legs kept in place. **Up**: Resume gradually the position of the trooper without deranging the position of the feet and legs.

*Second Mounted Exercise.*

1. **Raise knees**, 2. **Down.** Raise the knees until the thighs are horizontal; lower legs vertical; toes on a level with heels and turned in; body erect and shoulders square. **Down**: Resume the position of the trooper. Continue by repeating *raise, down.*

*Third Mounted Exercise.*

1. **Raise feet**, 2. **Down.** Raise the feet to the rear as high as practicable on the sides of the horse; then raise the knees, keeping the feet in place until on a level with the ankle. **Down**: Resume the position of the trooper. Continue by repeating *raise, down.*

*Fourth Mounted Exercise.*

1. *Right* (or *Left*), 2. **Face**, 3. **Front.**
Turn the body to the right, carry right knee toward the rear, legs astride the horse, feet pointing to the right, body erect; hands resting on right thigh. **Front**: Resume the position of the trooper.

*Fifth Mounted Exercise.*

**Turn to the right** (or **left**).
Pass the left leg, knee bent, over the horse's neck, turning on the seat, and sit faced to the horse's right; body erect, hands resting on the thighs. The turns may be

continued by the same command, the trooper passing the right or left leg over the croup or neck of the horse.

*Sixth Mounted Exercise.*

1. *Right* (or *Left*), 2. REACH.

Carry the right hand, back up, straight to the front, fingers and arm extended and horizontal. (TWO) Close the legs firmly, sweep the hand quickly to the right, keeping the arm horizontal and leaning the body to the right. (THREE) Resume the position of the trooper.

*Seventh Mounted Exercise.*

1. *Right* (or *Left*) *rear*, 2. REACH.

The first motion is the same as right reach. (TWO) Sweep the hand quickly by the right to the rear, keeping the arm horizontal, at the same time making a *right face* and leaning the body to the rear. (THREE) Resume the position of the trooper.

*Eighth Mounted Exercise.*

1. *Right* (or *Left*) *low*, 2. REACH.

Hold the reins with the thumb and forefinger and grasp a lock of the mane with the other fingers of the left hand. (TWO) Bend the body to the front and downward, to the right of and near the horse; right arm extended and fingers as near the ground as possible. (THREE) Resume the position of the trooper.

The horse being saddled: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *low*, 2. REACH.

Hold the reins with the thumb and forefinger and grasp a lock of the mane with the other fingers of the left hand; free the left foot from the stirrup and carry the leg, knee bent, to the rear, supporting it just above the ankle against the cantle of the saddle. (TWO) Bend the body to the right and front and near the horse; carry the right foot in the stirrup slightly to the rear, supporting it against the side of the horse; extend the right arm

and touch the ground with the fingers. (THREE) Resume the position of the trooper.

Being in line with intervals or in column of troopers: 1. *To the right* (or *left*), 2. DROP SABER, 3. *Right* (or *Left*) *low*, 4. REACH.

At the second command, drop the saber on the ground to the right of the horse.

At the command *reach,* execute the *right low reach* and pick up the saber.

The same exercise may be had with the cap or other object. The instructor sees that the troopers are not impatient with the horses; that each trooper persists until he accomplishes the feat or demonstrates his inability to do so.

The objects of the reaches are to teach the recruit to regain his balance, to impress him with the importance of the hold of the legs and confirm him in their use, and to prepare him for the use of the saber mounted.

### *Ninth Mounted Exercise.*

The trooper mounted and at *turn to the left* (or *right*), to mount: 1. PREPARE TO MOUNT, 2. MOUNT.

At the first command, place the right hand on the withers; seize a lock of the mane with the left hand.

At the command *mount,* support the weight on the hands, turning the body to the right about, legs extended and joined, then pass the right leg, knee bent, over the horse's back and take the position of the trooper.

### *Tenth Mounted Exercise.*

The trooper mounted at *turn to the left,* to dismount: 1. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, 2. DISMOUNT.

At the first command, place the right hand on the withers; seize a lock of the mane with the left hand.

At the command *dismount,* support the weight on the hands, turning the body to the right about, descend

lightly to the ground on the balls of the feet, bending the knees a little

If the trooper be at *turn to the right,* to dismount on the off side: 1. *To the right,* 2. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, 3. DISMOUNT.

Executed as just prescribed, except that the positions of the hands are reversed, that the body is turned to the left about and descends on the off side.

### *Eleventh Mounted Exercise.*

The trooper mounted at *turn to the left,* to dismount on the off side: 1. *To the right,* 2. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, 3. DISMOUNT.

At the second command, place the right hand on the withers; seize a lock of the mane with the left hand.

At the command *dismount,* support the weight on the hands, turning the body to the right about, pass both legs, joined, over the horse's back and descend lightly to the ground on the off side, alighting on the balls of the feet, bending the knees a little.

If the recruit be at *turn to the right,* to dismount on the near side: 1. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, 2. DISMOUNT.

Executed as just prescribed, except that the positions of the hands are reversed, that the body is turned to the left about and descends on the near side.

### *Twelfth Mounted Exercise.*

*Without saddle:*

FACE TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) ABOUT.

Place both hands on the withers; raise the body upward and forward on the hands; at the same time quickly extend the legs to the rear and cross them, left leg in front, above the horse's back; lower the body, catching the horse on the left side with the right leg and the right side with the left leg; at the same time give an impulse to the right with the hands; sit down facing the croup.

*With saddle:*

FACE TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) ABOUT.

Place the right hand on the cantle, left hand on the pommel; raise the body on the hands; tilt the body to the right, elevating the buttocks, change the right leg to the near side, left to the off side, and take position facing the croup.

The trooper facing to the croup, to face him to the proper front the instructor gives the same commands, which are executed in a similar manner.

It is preferable for the troopers to go through this exercise by individual trial, until they have gained confidence. before requiring them to execute it at command.

### *Thirteenth Mounted Exercise.*

To mount marching: 1. PREPARE TO MOUNT, 2. MOUNT.

Executed as prescribed from a halt, except that the trooper is at the galloping step; that he springs forward as he rises, and that as he drops into his seat he catches against the flank with his leg to avoid passing over the horse.

### *Fourteenth Mounted Exercise.*

To dismount marching: 1. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, 2. DISMOUNT; or, 1. *To the right,* 2. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, 3. DISMOUNT.

Executed as prescribed from a halt, except that when the legs are joined, the trooper presses the left leg against the side of the horse to push his body clear, and alights on the ground faced to the front and takes the galloping step.

### *Fifteenth Mounted Exercise.*

Being at the halt: 1. PREPARE TO VAULT, 2. VAULT.

Executed from either side of the horse, as prescribed for the mount from a halt, except that the trooper leans the body forward and carries both legs joined over the

horse's back, without touching it; as soon as the body clears the horse, he eases the right hand gradually and takes it off the withers (pommel) just before coming to the ground, and alights on both feet.

Being in march, the trooper alights facing to the front, and takes the galloping step.

When the trooper is sufficiently instructed, the instructor may combine the mounting, dismounting, and vaulting. For example: Mounted, turned to the left, the instructor commands: DISMOUNT AND MOUNT; or DISMOUNT, VAULT, AND MOUNT, etc.

### *Sixteenth Mounted Exercise.*

To jump on and over the horse. The men are without arms or spurs, in line, at stand to horse. A quiet horse is held facing to the right or left, and fifteen or twenty yards in front of the squad.

The troopers will be instructed as to the kind of jump they are to make.

1. *First trooper from the left* (or *right*), 2. MARCH.

The left trooper turns his horse over to the trooper next on his right, walks along the front, and when opposite the horse to be jumped, faces him and takes a fast run; upon reaching him he places his hands on the horse's back, jumps astride of him or over him as directed, returns to his place in the rank, and resumes his horse. The other troopers move out successively at the command *next*.

The troopers will also be exercised at jumping on the horse from the direction of the croup.

### *Seventeenth Mounted Exercise.*

To mount double and to dismount. The troopers are divided into two squads, the first squad being mounted, and the troopers called individually No. 1; the other squad being dismounted, and its troopers called individually No. 2.

Nos. 1 remain with their horses and Nos. 2 are ordered to join Nos. 1; or, if in the riding hall, the first squad is put on the track in column of troopers marching to the left hand, and the second squad ordered to join it. No. 2 places himself on the near side and near No. 1, and may place his right hand on the horse's back.

1. PREPARE TO MOUNT, 2. MOUNT.

At the first command, No. 1 takes the reins in the right hand, lowers the left shoulder and carries the left elbow, bent, to the rear, and supports himself by clasping the horse with the legs, and, if necessary, places his right hand on the horse's neck or withers; No. 2 clasps the forearm of No. 1 with his left hand, back up; places his right hand on the horse's back directly behind No. 1 and, if marching, takes the galloping step.

At the command *mount*, No. 2 springs up and seats himself behind No. 1, astride of the horse and facing to the front; No. 1 at the same time raises his left shoulder, leans his body to the right to assist and support No. 2, and immediately resumes the erect position; No. 2 steadies his seat by placing his hands under the armpits of No. 1, thumbs behind the shoulders.

Being mounted double, to dismount: 1. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, 2. DISMOUNT.

At the first command, No. 1 takes the reins in the right hand, carries his elbow to the rear and steadies himself as at the command *prepare to mount* for mounting double; No. 2, pressing against No. 1, pushes himself slightly to the rear, and places his right hand on the horse's back between himself and No. 1, and his left hand, back up, on the left forearm of No. 1.

At the command *dismount*, No. 2 carries the right leg over the croup, comes to the ground and takes the galloping step, supporting himself by his hands, without hanging on No. 1.

If the command be: 1. *No. 1,* 2. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, 2. DISMOUNT, No. 1 drops the reins, places his left hand

on the left thigh of No. 2, and grasps a lock of the mane with the right hand.

At the command *dismount,* No. 1 passes the right leg over the horse's neck, raising the right hand and reseizing the mane as the leg passes, springs from the horse, pushing himself forward with the left hand, and supporting himself with the right, comes to the ground and takes the galloping step. No. 2 then takes the reins and seats himself forward; No. 1 retains his hold of the mane until he can safely do without it, and then takes position as No. 2 alongside of the mounted trooper, now become No. 1.

If the commands be: 1. *Squad,* 2. DISMOUNT (both troopers being mounted), No. 2 dismounts, then No. 1 in front of No. 2.

At the command: 1. *Squad,* 2. MOUNT (both troopers being dismounted), No. 1 mounts and then No. 2 as previously explained.

If, when the squad is dismounted, the instructor wishes No. 1 to become No. 2, and No. 2 to become No. 1, he commands: CHANGE NUMBERS, when the troopers take places according to their new numbers.

These exercises are executed on both sides of the horse, and at all gaits.

### *The Aids in Horsemanship.*

**293.** The training of the new horse involves the infliction of more or less pain, the necessity for which becomes less as his intelligence is quickened into understanding the lightest pressure.

A horse is *bit-wise* when (the bit being correctly fitted and properly adjusted) he obeys the lightest pressure upon either bar.

He is *rein-wise* when he obeys the lightest pressure of the rein on either side of the neck, the bit not being disturbed from its normal position.

He is *leg-wise,* when he obeys the lightest correctly combined action of the rider's legs.

The most thoughtful care should be constantly exercised in the combined applications of the aids, that they may not be opposed to each other in their action, *i. e.,* one favoring the intended move, the other opposing it.

Preparatory to the movements, the instructor mounts the squad and explains the uses of the reins and legs.

The reins and legs, the application of which determines the movements and gaits of the horse, are called the *aids.*

The trooper should not only know when to apply a given aid, but he should also understand why he applies it.

The reins serve to prepare the horse to move, and to guide, support, and halt him; their action should be gradual and in harmony with that of the legs.

In using them, the arms should have free action at the shoulder; when a light pressure will be sufficient to govern the horse, the action of the hand should be at the wrist; for greater pressure, the elbow should be carried back, *but without raising the hand.*

In riding, the hand should be kept steady and ought not to move with the body; it should merely oscillate with the motion of the horse's head; at the same time it must be kept light, for the bit causes pain if pressed constantly on the mouth, destroys its sensibility, and makes the horse's mouth hard.

The hand is light when there is an almost imperceptible alternate feeling and easing of the hand in harmony with the motion of the horse, by which the delicacy of the mouth is preserved, and the horse made to carry himself light.

That hand is best which. by giving and taking properly and keeping constant touch of the bit, controls the horse with the least force, and will best preserve the mouth.

As a rule, it is recommended that recruits ride with one rein in each hand; this will prevent the bad habit of holding the left shoulder advanced.

The legs serve to assist, together with the reins, in controlling the horse. Closing the knees, without pressure by the lower part of the leg, tends to steady the horse in position. Carrying the lower legs slightly to the rear, closing them equally with slight pressure, prepares him to move, or, if moving, to keep him up to the hand. Closed with greater pressure behind the girth, they urge him forward.

Carrying the right (or left) leg to the rear, closing it with pressure, causes the horse to move his haunches to the left (or right).

The pressure of the legs must be an elastic muscular action; a heavy, clinging pressure, or dull thumping with the heels must not be permitted.

The reins act to direct the forehand; the lower legs incite to action and govern the movement of the haunches.

*To Gather the Horse.*

**294.** Close the knees gradually and gently, at the same time turn the little finger toward the body; this is to attract the attention of the horse and to prepare him to move, that his first motions be neither too abrupt nor too slow.

*To March.*

**295.** 1. *Forward,* 2. MARCH.

At the command *forward,* gather the horse.

At the command *march,* rein in slightly—that is, bring the hand a little toward the body, turning it on the wrist; then immediately yield the hand and close the legs slightly to the rear, with a firm, equal, and elastic pressure, until the horse yields; then relax the legs and adjust the reins so as to have a slight feeling of the bit.

*To Halt.*

**296.** 1. *Squad,* 2. **HALT.**

At the command *squad,* gather the horse without slackening the gait.

At the command *halt,* rein in by gradually bringing the hands toward the body, turning them on the wrist and carrying the elbows slightly to the rear without raising the hands; at the same time close the legs to steady the horse. When the horse stops, relax the hands and legs.

*Being in Line with Intervals, to March by the Flank in Column of Troopers.*

**297.** 1. *By the right* (or *left*) *flank,* 2. **MARCH.**

At the first command, gather horse.

Pl. 56, Par. 297.

At the command *march,* open the right rein and close both legs, the right leg a little more to the rear than the other; turn to the right by moving the horse over a quarter of a circle whose radius is two yards; when the turn is nearly ended, diminish the effect of the right rein and leg, using the left rein and leg to straighten the horse; when the turn is completed, relax both legs and move off at a right angle to the original direction. The effect of the rein is to lead the horse in the desired direction, not to pull him back on that side.

Whenever executing the individual turn at a trot or gallop, the effect of the outer (in this case the left) leg should be increased to sustain the horse.

**298.** A squad marched by the flank, from line with intervals, is in column of troopers, with the distance of four feet from the head of one horse to the croup of the horse next in front.

Marching in column of troopers, each recruit should so conduct his horse that the recruit next in front of him shall hide all others in front; all follow in the trace of the conductor or leading trooper.

Distances when lost should be regained gradually.

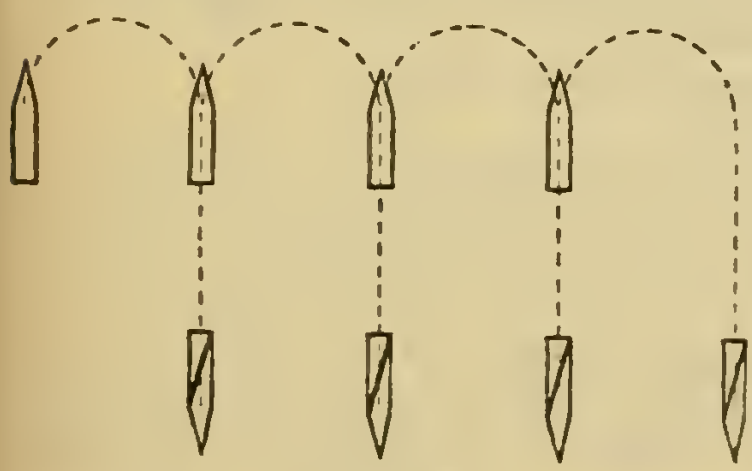
If the column of troopers be marched by the flank, the squad will then be in line with intervals of three yards between troopers.

**299.** For convenience in estimating spaces, each horse with his rider is considered as occupying a space of three yards in length and one yard in width, but by measurement the horse occupies only about eight feet in length.

**300.** To halt the column of troopers: 1. *Squad,* 2. **HALT**, and to resume the march: 1. *Forward,* 2. **MARCH**.

*The Individual About.*

**301.** Being in line with intervals, or in column of troopers: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *about,* 2. **MARCH**.



Pl. 57, Par. 301.

Each trooper turns his horse on a half circle with a radius of two yards, and then moves off in the new direction, the former rear.

When in line, the instructor may add: 3. *Guide right* (*left* or *center*).

*To Oblique.*

**302.** Being in line with intervals, or in column of troopers: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *oblique,* 2. **MARCH**.

Each trooper turns his horse half-right on an eighth of a circle and then moves at an angle of forty-five degrees to his former direction.

To resume the original direction: 1. *Forward,* 2. **MARCH**.

Each trooper turns half-left and then moves forward.

**303.** If, when obliquing, the commands: 1. *Squad,* 2. **HALT,** be given, the troopers halt in the oblique position; the oblique march is resumed at the commands: 1. *Oblique,* 2. **MARCH.** *This rule is general.*

*To Change Direction.*

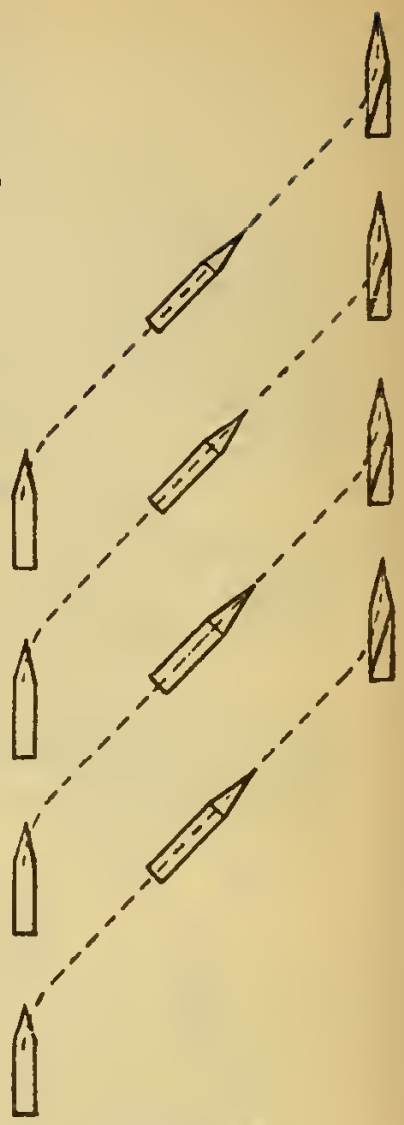
**304.** Marching in column of troopers: 1. *Column right* (or *left*); or, 1. *Column half-right* (or *half-left*), 2. **MARCH.**

The leading trooper turns or half turns to the right and marches in the new direction; the other troopers move forward and turn successively on the same ground.

If at a halt, to march and change direction at the same time: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Column right* (or *left*); or, 2. *Column half-right* (or *half-left,* 3. **MARCH.**

At the command *forward,* all the troopers gather their horses.

At the command *march,* the leading trooper turns to the right; the others move forward and in succession turn on the same ground.



Pl. 58, Par. 302.

*To Rein Back.*

**305.** Being in line at a halt: 1. *Backward,* 2. **MARCH,** 3. *Squad,* 4. **HALT.**

At the command *backward,* gather the horse.

At the command *march,* keep a firm seat, hold both legs close; rein in gradually until the horse yields to the pressure of the bit and steps to the rear; then immediately yield the hand slightly to allow the horse to regain his balance, and relax the legs; continue in the same manner to yield the hand and relax the legs, and rein in and close the legs, so as to keep the horse in continuous motion.

This movement should be frequently practiced to keep the horse light and collected.

If the horse raises his nose and throws his weight on his haunches without stepping back, hold the hands low and play the reins with light rapid motions of the hands until he yields.

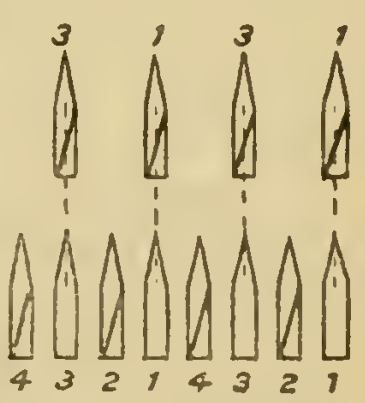
If the horse throws his haunches to the right, ease the left leg and close well the right. If to the left, ease the right leg and close well the left. If this be not sufficient to put the horse in proper position, open the rein on the side toward which he throws his haunches, supporting him at the same time with the other rein.

**306.** For convenience, the instructor may cause the recruits, upon leading out, to form line with horses one foot and a half apart, and teach them to mount and dismount in line, to march by the flank from line, and to form line from column of troopers, only employing these movements to begin and end the drill, the interval of three yards being maintained during the instruction.

### *To Mount in Line (without Saddle).*

**307.** The instructor causes the men to count fours, and commands: 1. PREPARE TO MOUNT, 2. MOUNT, 3. *Form*, 4. RANK.

At the first command, the odd numbers, stepping off with the left foot, lead their horses four yards straight to the front, regulating by the right; all then prepare to mount.



Pl. 59, Par. 307.

At the command *mount*, all mount.

At the command *rank*, the even numbers move up in the intervals without jostling or rushing. In forming rank, both mounted and dismounted, the odd numbers hold their horses' heads well up to prevent kicking.

*To Dismount (without Saddle).*

**308.** 1. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, 2. DISMOUNT, 3. *Form*, 4. RANK.

At the first command, the odd numbers gather their horses and move forward four yards, and all prepare to dismount.

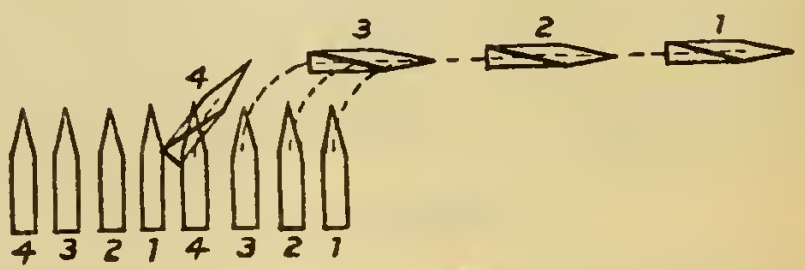
At the command *dismount*, all dismount.

At the command *rank*, the even numbers move up in the intervals.

*Being in Line without Intervals, to March by the Flank in Column of Troopers.*

**309.** Being at a halt: 1. *By trooper, by the right flank*, 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the man on the right gathers his horse.



Pl. 60, Par. 309.

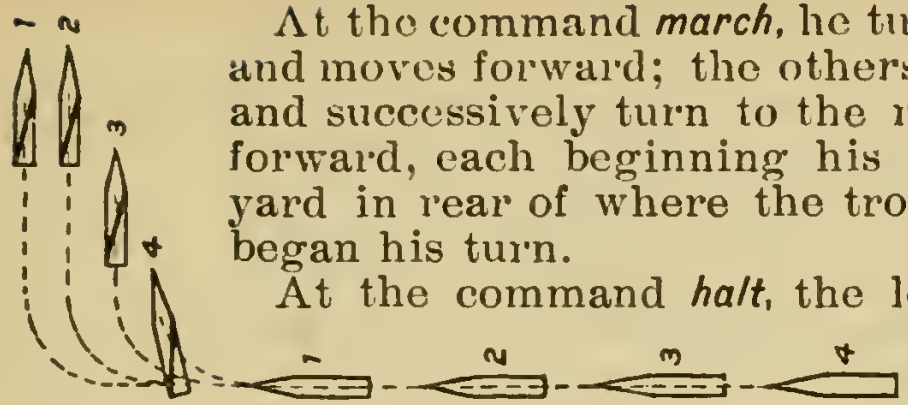
At the command *march*, he turns to the right and moves forward in the new direction. The second man from the right gathers his horse when the first begins to move; he turns to the right so as to follow the first at the distance of four feet from head to croup. The movement is executed in succession by the other troopers as explained for the second.

If marching, all halt at the command *march*, except the man on the right. The movement is then executed as before.

*Being in Column of Troopers, to Form Right or Left into Line.*

**310.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *into line*, 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad*, 4. HALT, 5. FRONT.

At the first command, the leading trooper gathers his horse.



Pl. 61, Par. 310.

At the command *march*, he turns to the right and moves forward; the others move forward and successively turn to the right and move forward, each beginning his turn when one yard in rear of where the trooper preceding began his turn.

At the command *halt*, the leading trooper halts; each of the others halts on the line, to the right of the leading trooper, aligns himself to the left, and then looks to the front.

The command *halt* is not given until the leading trooper has advanced at least five yards.

### *The Riding School.*

**311.** If there be no riding hall, a rectangular track is laid out, one hundred yards long and thirty-three yards wide. The corners are marked with stakes or stones, and the troopers are cautioned to keep within the prescribed limits.

Spent oak tan, when it can be obtained, makes an excellent covering, and should be spread on a track of six to ten feet in width. For the mounted exercises it is advantageous to have the track inclosed. The fence should incline outward four on one to form the knee guard.

The spaces between stables may be utilized for riding schools.

A convenient number of troopers, about twelve to sixteen, will be united for instruction in the school. The horses should be equipped with the snaffle bit, and at the discretion of the instructor may be saddled.

The leading and rear troopers, designated conductors, should be non-commissioned officers or instructed troopers.

The march is to the right hand or to the left hand,

according as the right or left hand is toward the interior of the track.

The instructor, placing himself inside the track, gives his attention to individual horsemanship rather than to accuracy of drill.

The troopers may be divided into two squads. The instructor designates the rear trooper of the first squad and the following trooper of the second squad as conductors. The squads are then separated by halting the second or causing the first to take an increased gait. When the leading conductors are at corresponding points on opposite sides of the track, the second squad takes up the march or the increased gait, and maintains its distance.

The conductors are to arrive at the same time at diagonally opposite angles, the rear column regulating by the other.

The conductor takes a free and even gait and keeps the track, changing direction exactly at the corners without command. The troopers follow, preserving their distances and recovering them by degrees when lost; just before arriving at a corner each gathers his horse and executes the turn correctly.

When marching to the right hand, if the horse bears his shoulders to the right, open the left rein a little and close the right leg; if he throws his haunches to the right, close the right leg in rear of the girth and feel lightly the right rein.

### *To Change Hands.*

**312.** The instructor commands: 1. *Column right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH, when the conductor is marching on one of the sides; and, 3. *Column left* (or *right*), 4. MARCH, when he arrives within two yards of the opposite side.

Or, 1. *Column half-right* (or *half-left*), 2. MARCH, when the conductor enters one of the long sides; and, 3. *Column half-left* (or *half-right*), 4. MARCH, when near the opposite side.

Or, as soon as the last man is upon one of the long sides, 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *oblique,* 2. MARCH, adding, 3. *Forward,* 4. MARCH, when the squad arrives near the opposite side.

Or, 1. *By the right* (or *left*) *flank,* 2. MARCH, when the column is marching on one of the long sides, and, 3. *By the left* (or *right*) *flank,* 4. MARCH, when the line arrives within two yards of the opposite side.

When marching in line, each trooper regulates his horse by that of the conductor who last led in column.

In changing hands in column, the columns pass each other to the right; in changing hands in line, the troopers pass each other to the right, and keep their legs closed while passing through the intervals to prevent the horses from slackening the gait.

*To Trot.*

**313.** Being at a walk upon one of the long sides· 1. *Trot* (or *Slow trot*), 2. MARCH.

At the command *trot,* gather the horse.

At the command *march,* yield the hands a little and close the legs by degrees until the horse obeys, then the hands are gradually replaced and the legs relaxed.

The gait is slow at first, and the instructor sees that the troopers feel lightly their horses' mouths *without bearing upon the reins,* and explains that the necessary ease and stability are acquired by sitting well down on the horse, or saddle, and partially relaxing the body, thighs, and legs, the hands oscillating with the motion of the horse's head.

He requires the troopers to preserve their seats by balancing the body; that they avoid the common fault of leaning the body too far or curving the back to the rear; that they sit erect and keep the thighs close to the horse.

The movements already taught at open intervals at a walk are repeated at a trot, care being taken to give the commands when the squad is marching on one of the long

sides of the track or when two yards from it. In turning by trooper to the right or left, the instructor sees that the trot is neither slackened nor increased.

*To Pass from the Trot to the Walk.*

**314.** Being at a trot: 1. *Walk,* 2. **MARCH.**

At the command *walk,* gather the horse.

At the command *march,* rein in by degrees, and hold the legs close to prevent the horse from coming to a halt; as soon as he walks, replace the hands gradually and relax the legs.

*To Increase and Diminish the Rapidity of the Trot.*

**315.** Being at a slow trot: 1. *Trot out,* 2. **MARCH.**

Gather the horse, then yield the hands, and close the legs by degrees until the horse gradually increases the gait to a fast trot.

The instructor sees that the horses are kept up to the proper gait, and pays particular attention to the position of the troopers; if their seats become too much deranged, he brings the squad to a slow trot, or to a walk; this is especially important in the earlier instruction of recruits.

**316.** To resume a moderate trot: 1. *Slow trot,* 2. **MARCH.**

Rein in by degrees until the horse moderates the gait, closing the legs to prevent his taking the walk.

*To Pass from a Halt to the Trot.*

**317.** Being at a halt: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Trot,* 3. **MARCH.**

At the command *forward,* gather the horse.

At the command *march,* pass at once to the trot as explained from a walk, except that the legs are closed with more energy.

*To Halt from a Trot.*

**318.** Being at a trot; 1. *Squad,* 2. **HALT.**

Executed as explained from a walk; the troopers stop

their horses together, but not too abruptly. This should be frequently practiced.

*To Pass from the Front to the Rear of the Column.*

**319.** Being at a walk, to teach recruits the application of the aids: 1. *First trooper from front to rear,* 2. **March,** 3. **Next.**

At the first command, the leading trooper gathers his horse.

At the command *march,* he leaves the column by a right or left about, according as he is marching to the right or left hand, moves parallel to the column, and enters it again at the rear by another about.

The troopers in succession execute the same movement at the command *next,* which is repeated by the instructor until all the troopers have passed from front to rear.

*To Pass from the Rear to the Front of the Column.*

**320.** Being at a walk: 1. *Last trooper from rear to front,* 2. *Trot,* 3. **March,** 4. **Next.**

At the command *trot,* the trooper in rear gathers his horse.

At the command *march,* he leaves the column by an oblique, takes the trot, moves parallel to the column, enters it again at the front by another oblique, and resumes the walk, and so on for the others, each moving out at the command *next.*

Should the trooper enter the column at too great a distance in front of the leading trooper, he slackens the walk until at the proper distance.

*To March in Circle.*

**321.** Marching to the right, and the conductor being at least seventeen yards from a corner: 1. *Circle to the right* (or *left*), 2. **March.**

At the first command, the leading conductor gathers his horse.

At the command *march,* he describes a circle between the two tracks; the other men follow, each gathering his horse before entering upon the circle, keeping him there by the inner rein, and closing the leg on that side.

**322.** While circling, the squad may change gaits, be halted in column, and put in march, as when marching on the track.

To change hands: 1. *Column right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH.**

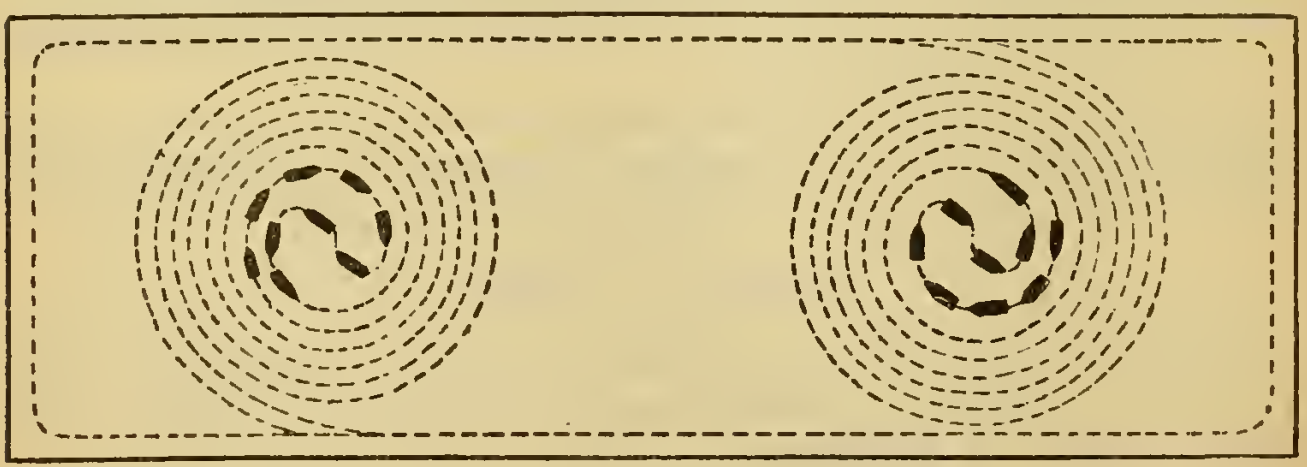
The squad passes over the diameter of the circle and circles in the opposite direction by the commands: 1. *Column left* (or *right*), 2. **MARCH,** the command *march* being given when the conductor is two yards from the circumference.

To march again on a straight line, the instructor commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. **MARCH,** when the leading conductor arrives on the long side of the track.

The conductor, followed by the other troopers, then takes the track and moves forward.

### *The Spiral.*

**323.** Marching to the right, and at least seventeen yards from a corner: 1. *Spiral to the right,* 2. **MARCH.**



Pl. 62, Par. 323.

The conductor, followed by the other troopers, gradually diminishes the circle until the column is riding inward on a spiral. On approaching the center: 1. *Column left about,* 2. MARCH.

The conductor turns left about and rides outward on a spiral, and resumes the march to the right.

*Spiral to the left* is executed in a similar manner.

*Individual Circling.*

**324.** Marching to the right (or left) hand on the long side of the hall: 1. *Troopers, circle to the right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH.

Pl. 63, Par. 324.

Each trooper marches on a circle four yards in diameter, tangent to the track, regulating on the conductor, all completing the circle at the same time. The troopers continue on the circle until the commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. MARCH, given as the troopers take the track; they then march on the track to the same hand as when the movement began.

When marching on the circle to the right, each trooper opens the right rein and closes both legs; when marching at a trot or a gallop, he closes the left more than the right, to sustain the horse. If the commands: 1. *Squad,*

2. **HALT**, be given, the troopers halt their horses facing in the same direction as the conductors.

### *To Mount* (*with Saddle*).

**325.** The horses equipped with saddles and curb bridles are habitually formed in line. The troopers standing to horse, the instructor causes them to count fours, and commands: 1. **PREPARE TO MOUNT**, 2. **MOUNT.**

At the first command, the odd numbers lead out as previously explained.

All the troopers drop the right rein, take two back steps, stepping off with the left foot, at the same time sliding the right hand along the left rein; half-face to the right as the right foot is being planted, and bring the left foot near the right; this should place the trooper about opposite the girth; with the aid of the left hand take both reins in the right, forefinger between the reins, and place the right hand on the pommel, the reins coming into the hand on the side of the forefinger, and held so as to feel lightly the horse's mouth, the bight falling on the off side. (**TWO**) Place a third of the left foot in the stirrup, with the assistance of the left hand if necessary, and support it against the forearm of the horse; rest upon the ball of the right foot; place the left hand on top of the neck, well forward, and grasp a lock of the mane, the lock coming out between the thumb and forefinger.

At the command *mount,* spring from the right foot, holding firmly to the mane and keeping the right hand on the pommel; bring the heels together, knees straight and resting against the saddle, body erect; pass the right leg, knee bent, over the croup of the horse without touching him; let the body come gently into the saddle; let go the mane, insert the right foot in the stirrup, pass the reins into the left hand and adjust them.

At the command: 3. *Form,* 4. **RANK,** the even numbers move as before explained.

### *Position of the Trooper, with Saddle.*

(See Plate 64, Par. 356.)

**326.** Same as previously explained (Par. 276), with the following exceptions: Buttocks bearing equally and as flat as possible upon the middle of the saddle; reins coming into left hand on the side of little finger, and leaving it between thumb and forefinger; little finger between the reins, right rein above it; the other fingers closed, thumb pressing the reins firmly on second joint of forefinger; the end of the reins falling to the front and outside of the right rein; left forearm horizontal and close to the body without pressure; wrist turned inward, so that the back of the hand is almost perpendicular to the front and vertical; right hand behind the thigh, arm hanging naturally; feet inserted in the stirrups so that the ball of the foot rests on the tread of the stirrup, heel slightly lower than the tread.

### *Stirrups.*

**327.** The stirrups should support the feet and the weight of the legs only, and be of such length that when the legs are in proper position, the feet out of the stirrups, the treads will be on a level with the lower part of the inner ankle bone.

The length depends somewhat on the formation of the man; a man with a thick, heavy thigh requires a shorter stirrup than a man with a thin, flat one. For long distances at the gallop and trot, a shorter stirrup is required than at the walk.

When riding, the stirrups take up, in a measure, the weight of the body in its descent to the saddle, by a yielding of the ankles to prevent shock. This action is an easy, quick stiffening of the muscles which distributes the downward motion between the feet, thighs, and seat.

If, after the trooper has been exercised a short time at

the slow trot, he has a close seat, his leg in proper position,with his heel down, but does not easily keep his stirrup, then the stirrup requires shortening.

*To Cross the Stirrups.*

**328.** CROSS STIRRUPS.

Throw the right stirrup over to the near side, then the left one to the off side, the straps resting on the withers in front of the pommel, hoods outward.

The instructor frequently directs that the stirrups be crossed. The troopers mount and dismount with stirrups crossed as if the horses were unsaddled, placing the right hand on the pommel instead of on the withers.

Stirrups must be taken again during the first lessons at the gallop.

*To Dismount (with Saddle).*

**329.** 1. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, 2. DISMOUNT.

At the first command, the odd numbers move forward four yards, regulating by the right. All the troopers then seize the reins with the right hand, in front of and near the left, forefinger between the reins, so that they come in on the side of the forefinger: place the right hand on the pommel; let go with the left hand, place it on top of the neck, grasp a lock of the mane, the lock coming out between the thumb and forefinger; take the right foot out of the stirrup; partly disengage the left foot, body erect.

At the command *dismount*, rise upon the left stirrup, pass the right leg, knee bent, over the croup of the horse without touching him; descend lightly to the ground, remove the left foot from the stirrup and place it by the side of the right, body erect; let go the mane; place the end of the reins on the neck near the pommel of the saddle with the right hand, which then seizes the left rein; face to the left; take two short steps, left foot first, slip-

ping the right hand along the left rein, and take the position of stand to horse.

At the command, 3. *Form,* 4. RANK, the even numbers lead up as before explained.

### *The Curb Bridle.*

**330.** The general principles for the use of the reins and legs, already explained for the watering bridle, apply to the management of the horse with the curb bridle, except that the bridle hand is moved instead of both hands. In all movements of the hand, the arm should act freely and without constraint to the body, and as the bit of the curb bridle is much more severe than that of the watering bridle, it must be applied gradually and more gently, particularly in halting and in reining back.

*To turn the horse to the right* (or *left*): Carry the hand a little forward and to the right (or left), so that the left (or right) rein bears on his neck.

### *The Spur.*

**331.** The spur is used as an aid, and also as a means of punishment. It is an aid when it is used to augment the effect produced by one or both legs; it is used as a means of punishment when the horse refuses to obey the action of the legs.

To use it as an aid, the trooper continues the pressure of the leg until the spur touches the skin, and adds its effect to that of the leg.

To use it as a means of punishment, hold firmly to the horse with the legs, turn the toes out a little, yield the hand slightly, and press firmly with the spur behind the girth, without moving the body, until the horse obeys. The spur must never be used to punish unless absolutely necessary, and then with vigor at the moment the horse commits the fault. Unnecessary strokes will arouse his resentment and induce stubbornness; a thumping or a

continuous light touch will either make the horse insensible to the proper action of the legs or cause him to kick.

### *Instruction with Saddle, Curb Bridle, and Spurs.*

**332.** The movements already prescribed are repeated. The instructor causes recruits at first to use the saddle and watering bridle, and does not give them the curb bridle and spurs until they have confidence in their seat and are able to ride fairly well.

As a general rule, after commencing the use of the saddle in the riding-hall exercises, about one-half the time of each drill will be without saddles, the saddles being removed and conveniently placed in the hall.

A man who can ride bare-back can ride with a saddle.

### *The Gallop.*

**333.** The gallop is a succession of leaps during which there is a small interval of time that all the feet are in the air. In galloping on a straight line, it is immaterial with which foot the horse leads, but troops will march with greater ease and comfort if all the horses lead with the same foot.

A horse gallops on the right foot when the right fore and hind legs move in advance of the left fore and hind legs; he gallops on the left foot when the left fore and hind legs are in advance. He gallops true when he gallops on the right foot in marching to the right, or on the left foot in marching to the left hand; he gallops false if in marching to the right he gallops on the left foot or conversely.

A horse is disunited when he gallops with the near fore leg followed by the off hind leg, or the off fore leg followed by the near hind leg; in either case his balance is deranged and his strength impaired.

When the horse gallops on the left foot, the rider feels a sensible movement in his position from left to right;

when he gallops on the right foot the movement of the rider is from right to left; when the horse is disunited the rider experiences irregular movements; when the horse gallops true he preserves his balance, and in case of a mistake, he has his legs under better control, and can more easily recover himself. When he gallops false or disunited, he is apt to fall whenever he makes a blunder.

**334.** The *canter* is a short, collected gallop; the horse's forehand is raised, his whole figure is collected and shortened, his neck bowed and his head drawn in, and he moves by the spring of the haunches. It is the gait that should be used in the riding-hall exercises and mounted gymnastics.

The gallop can not be safely used in the riding hall unless the horse gallops true and the track is in good condition.

### *To Gallop.*

**335.** The recruits marching to the right hand: 1. *To three yards take distance,* 2. **TROT,** 3. **MARCH.**

The leading trooper takes the trot; each of the other troopers in succession takes the trot when the one in front of him has gained the distance of three yards.

This precaution is taken with recruits to prevent the horses running upon each other and causing confusion.

1. *Gallop;* or, 1. *Canter,* 2. **MARCH.**

At the command *gallop,* gather the horse.

At the command *march,* close both legs and rein in with a firm, light hand (this is to bring the haunches under), then carry the bridle hand to the left and press the left leg with vigor; these actions throw the weight on the near hind leg and allow the off fore and hind feet to lead; as soon as the horse rises, give the hand and relax the left leg; reining in slightly and closing the legs with light pressure will keep the horse at the gait and up to the hand; a dead pull should be avoided; if the horse

leans on the hand, yield the hand and play the reins a little, then close the legs and rein in a little abruptly; as soon as the horse obeys, yield the hand.

For recruits, the gait at first is restricted to the canter.

To keep the horse true, the rider must accommodate himself to all the horse's motions, particularly in changing direction at the corners. When a horse gallops false, or disunited, his rider is ordered to leave the column, come to a trot, and pass to the rear of the column, taking care not to interfere with the other men; arriving at the rear, he resumes the gallop, the instructor explaining how to keep the horse true. The gallop to each hand will be kept up only once or twice around the riding school, the horses being brought to the trot before changing hands.

In turning the corners, the gait is apt to be too hurried.

To correct this fault, the bridle hand should be carried forward (with pressure on the inward rein) and the horse supported with the inward leg.

The instructor will not at first dwell upon the mechanism of the gait, but allow each recruit to accommodate himself to the motion of the horse without losing his seat.

The men must keep their horses steady; when able to manage them properly at a gallop, the distance of four feet from head to croup is gradually resumed.

In order to make it easier for the trooper to start his horse true, the instructor will find it advantageous to march the squad in line with intervals across the hall at a trot, and upon approaching the track, commands: 1. *By the right flank,* 2. *Gallop;* or, 2. *Canter,* 3. MARCH.

Or, to give the command *gallop* or *canter* when the squad is circling at a trot.

When the troopers have been sufficiently exercised at the gallop on straight lines and in circling, they are exercised at a gallop in marching by the flank and circling by trooper, the instructor taking care that the turns are

not made too short, that the troopers keep their horses true, and that they do not derange their positions. During these exercises, the stirrups will sometimes be crossed.

*To Pass from the Canter to the Gallop, and the Reverse.*

**336.** Being at a canter (on one of the long sides): 1. *Gallop,* 2. MARCH.

Give the hand and close the legs by degrees, until the horse increases his gait to a gallop; when the proper cadence is attained, the instructor pays particular attention to the positions of the troopers; if their seats become too much deranged, he brings the squad to a canter, or to a trot.

To resume the canter: 1. *Canter,* 2. MARCH.

Rein in by degrees until the horse moderates the cadence, closing the legs to prevent his taking the trot.

All changes of gait are made gradually. The horse should never be spurred to make a sudden start, nor should the reins be jerked.

*To Pass from the Gallop or Canter to the Trot.*

**337.** 1. *Trot,* 2. MARCH.

At the command *trot,* gather the horse.

At the command *march,* rein in by degrees and hold the legs close; as soon as the horse trots, replace the hand gradually and relax the legs.

**338.** The object of the passages and circling on the forehand and haunches is to teach the horse to obey the pressure of the legs and reins, and to instruct the recruits in the application of the aids.

Each of these movements will first be taught to the recruits individually. If the movement be new to the horses, the trooper should have one or two light pliant switches sufficiently long to reach the horse behind the girth, which are used at the time of, and on the same

side as the pressure of the leg; when the horse yields, much should be made of him; it will encourage the horse to pet him after each effort.

Care is taken that the movements are not hurried, nor too much required of the horse during the first trials.

**339.** To turn the horse on his forehand: 1. *On forehand,* 2. *To the right* (or *left*); or, 2. *To the right* (or *left*) *about,* 3. MARCH.

At the first command, gather the horse.

At the command *march,* close the right leg behind the girth until the horse steps to the left with his hind feet, keeping him straight and preventing him from stepping off with his fore feet by supporting him with the left leg and the reins; relieve the pressure of the right leg as soon as the horse obeys. Continue the application of these means until the horse has turned to the required degree; the fore feet should remain in place. If the horse does not obey the pressure of the legs at first, open slightly the right rein.

If the horse steps his fore feet to the right, increase the effect of the left rein to keep them in place.

**340.** To turn the horse on his haunches, the instructor places the squad on the track facing the wall and commands: 1. *On haunches,* 2. *To the right* (or *left*); or, 2. *To the right* (or *left*) *about,* 3. MARCH.

Rein in to throw the weight on the haunches, and close the legs to prevent him from backing; then carry the bridle hand slightly forward and to the right, pressing the left rein on the horse's neck, without disturbing the normal pressure of the bit, to make him step with his fore feet to the right; at the same time support him with both legs, the left leg well behind the girth to keep the haunches in place.

### *To Passage.*

**341.** Being upon a long side, the squad is marched by the flank and halted, head to the wall or track, upon

arriving near the opposite side. The instructor then commands: 1. *Right* (or *Left*), *pass,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad,* 4. HALT.

At the first command, gather the horse and incline him to the right by carrying the bridle hand slightly to the right.

At the command *march,* rein in, close the legs, to force the horse to the bit; bear the hand well to the right, the left rein pressing the horse's neck, and close the left leg behind the girth, keeping the body erect. Continue the movement by a gentle application of the same means.

The horse's shoulder should precede the haunches, that is, he is held inclined to the right. Only a few steps should be taken at first.

At the command *halt,* replace the bridle hand; relax the pressure of the left leg as soon as the horse moves his haunches and is straight in line.

The application of the reins and legs should be in harmony with the sensibility of the horse; if the horse obliques too much, diminish the bearing of the reins; if he steps too quickly, moderate the effect of reins and legs; if he backs, force him up to the bit by pressure of the legs.

The passage in column may be executed by the application of the same means. The movement will be practiced at the trot and canter.

### *Jumping.*

**342.** For this exercise the height of the bar should at first be one foot, and the width of the ditch two feet. As the men and horses become used to jumping, the height of the bar and the width of the ditch are gradually increased, the bar to three feet, and the ditch to five feet; this exercise should generally be practiced near the end of each drill.

A horse that hurries or rushes will become an uncertain

and unsafe jumper. If impatient in going up to the bar, he should be halted, reined back, halted and tried again until he takes it coolly.

Horses are first taught to jump the ditch, then the bar. They are equipped with the watering bridle, and are led by a steady horse that is accustomed to jumping.

This instruction is also given on the longe.

The horses are taken in the open field and practiced at jumping shallow ditches, fallen logs, very low fences, etc. If the horse refuses to take the jump, the instructor may give aid with the whip, but in such a way as not to terrify him. If the horse be timid it is advisable to place the bar on the ground until he passes over it without alarm. Great discretion must be used in applying the whip, and the horses will not be required to jump repeatedly over the same thing or at the same place.

If the rider carry a switch or whip, it should be applied at the point of the shoulder to make him raise his fore feet, and at the instant he is braced or crouched for the jump.

**343.** The instructor forms the squad in line, about thirty yards from the obstacle, and commands: 1. *First trooper from the right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH, 3. NEXT.

The trooper on the right moves to the front at a walk; he takes the trot when he has passed over about one-third the distance and then the gallop.

After making the jump, he takes the trot, then the walk, and takes his place in the rank, which is re-formed about thirty yards beyond, and on the right or left of the obstacle, and facing it.

The other troopers move out successively from the right at the command *next.*

**344.** In the riding hall, the troopers are formed in two squads, in line, facing each other at opposite ends of the hall; two bars are placed across the track, one on each of the long sides of the hall. about midway.

1. *First trooper from the right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH, 3. NEXT. The trooper on the right of each squad moves out at a walk and marches diagonally across the hall; on passing each other both take the trot and when abreast of the flank of the opposite squad they take the track at a gallop (or canter), the horse leading with the right foot; after jumping both bars, each trooper takes the trot, then the walk, passes around the left flank of the opposite squad, marches at a walk diagonally across the hall, and forms on the left of his squad.

The other troopers move out successively from the right of each squad at the command *next. This rule is general for individual exercises.*

### *The Standing Jump.*

**345.** In making the standing jump, the horse is kept at a walk. Ride the horse up to the bar or other obstacle at an animated walk; rein in with a light hand and close the legs with energy to place him on his haunches, then yield the hand and legs as the horse rises, feeling the reins only enough to prevent them from becoming slack; grasp the horse firmly with the knees and legs without turning out the toes, keeping the seat close; hold the body erect by inclining forward; as the horse is grounding keep the body erect by leaning backward and gather the horse to support him; continue the march at a walk.

### *The Flying Jump.*

**346.** In making the flying jump, the same general principles are observed as when making the standing jump. The horse must not be hurried nor allowed to rush, but be held steady and straight for the bar or other obstacle, gathered about thirty or forty yards from it, and then given his head when ten or fifteen yards from it.

If the obstacle be high, bring the horse up at a col-

lected canter, rein in near the obstacle with a light hand, and close the legs, without turning out the toes, with a vigorous pressure to make him spring high enough to clear the obstacle.

### *To Jump the Ditch.*

**347.** Ride straight for the ditch at a steady animated gait, close the legs firmly without turning out the toes and keep a firm hand; the instant the horse springs, give the hand, and as he grounds sustain him with a light, steady pressure.

**348.** The instructor must observe that the trooper does not thrust his weight into the stirrups nor throw out his elbows, nor check his horse too abruptly. If the horse is checked with a sudden violence after making the jump, he takes it as a punishment and may thereafter try to avoid the obstacle.

Recruits are apt to try to sustain themselves by the reins; to prevent this the instructor may find it necessary to allow them to place the bridle hand on the horse's neck until they have gained confidence. If necessary the bar should be lowered to the height at which the recruit can easily keep his seat.

When the troopers have attained confidence, leap without checking, and maintain control over their horses after the jump, they may be exercised at jumping with sabers drawn, from line or column, by trooper, twos, fours, or line entire. When in column, the troopers, twos, fours, or platoon, may continue the march at a walk, and approach the obstacle by taking the trot and gallop in succession; they close distances after passing the obstacle, the head of the column continuing the march at a walk. The troopers will be practiced jumping obstacles without saddles, without stirrups, and with girths unfastened.

*To Leap the Bar, Dismounted, with the Horse.*

**349.** The squads are formed in line and the troopers move out as prescribed for jumping. The trooper dismounts four or five yards in front of the bar, takes the galloping step and the position of prepare to mount, jumps with the horse, comes to the ground at the same time as the forefeet, takes the galloping step and mounts; when the seat is assured, he takes the position of the trooper.

In leaping the bar, the trooper should be careful to spring, and not drag on the horse, which might turn him and make him fall.

After the troopers have become expert, they may be required to mount as soon as the horse raises his forehand to continue the gallop after leaping the bar.

The troopers will also be required to mount the horse while leaping the bar. These exercises are executed from both sides of the horse, and with or without saddles.

*The Wrestle.*

**350.** 1. *First trooper from the right,* 2. **MARCH.**

The right trooper of each squad moves out at a walk; the troopers approach each other by the right or left as directed; on coming together, each, retaining his seat on his own horse, endeavors to dismount the other. Each is permitted to put his arm around any part of his opponent's person, to seize him by the hand, arm, leg, or foot, but is prohibited from grasping the clothing of his opponent, the bridle or halter of his opponent's horse, or the mane of either horse.

He may support himself by the hand and arm against the right or left side of his horse's neck, but is prohibited from clasping around the horse's neck.

These rules may be modified or others added by the

instructor, in order to develop skill in wrestling and horsemanship.

The squads being in line with intervals, at opposite sides of the hall, facing each other, and the troopers in one rank being opposite those in the other, the instructor commands: WRESTLE.

The squads approach at a walk and each trooper wrestles with the one opposed to him.

At the command *attention,* they cease wrestling and resume the former formation.

The squad being in any formation.

At the command: 1. *At will,* 2. WRESTLE, the troopers wrestle with adversaries of their own selection.

At the command *attention,* they form as they were previous to the command *wrestle.*

### *The Pursuit.*

**351.** The objects of the pursuit are to test the trooper's skill in horsemanship and to confirm his confidence.

The instructor prescribes the limits or boundaries within which the pursued may ride; if he leaves these limits to avoid the pursuer, the pursuit ceases in favor of the pursuer, and both troopers return to the squad.

The instructor designates two troopers, one as the "pursued," or No. 1, and the other as the "pursuer," or No. 2; he indicates a point toward which No. 1 will march until the pursuit is ordered. The instructor commands: MOVE OUT. No. 1 leaves the squad and marches at a walk in the direction indicated, followed by No. 2 at a distance of about fifteen yards. At any time after they have this distance and before reaching the designated point, the instructor commands: 1. *The pursuit,* 2. MARCH.

No. 2 will endeavor to touch No. 1 on the body (excepting the arms, hands, legs, and feet) with the right hand, or to pluck a rosette or something of the kind fastened on the shoulder or breast of No. 1. No. 1 will endeavor

to prevent this by turning, circling, reaching, dismounting, etc.

At the signal or command *halt,* the pursuit ceases and the contestants return to the rank.

The instructor sees that the conditions laid down for the exercise are observed and that the horses are not overworked. The ground for this exercise should be selected with reference to obstacles to jump.

**352.** The wrestle may be combined with the pursuit.

*First.* The pairs being formed as for the pursuit, the instructor indicates the nature of the exercise and conducts it similarly to the pursuit; the pursuer to overtake and dismount the pursued.

*Second.* The squad being in any formation, the instructor commands: 1. *At will,* 2. PURSUE AND WRESTLE.

The exercise is conducted similarly to the wrestle at will.

### *Exercises at Will.*

**353.** Any of the exercises may be executed at will, *e. g.,* 1. *At will,* 2. DISMOUNT AND MOUNT (or 2. VAULT, or, 2. DROP SABER, 3. *Right and left low,* 4. REACH), etc.

At the command *attention,* the troopers re-form line or column.

AT WILL: The troopers will be permitted to do any or all the exercises herein, and to exercise their own ingenuity and fancy. The instructor must be on the alert to prevent disorders or improprieties.

At the command *attention* the troopers resume their places in the formation they had at the command *at will.*

The object desired by the exercises at will is to develop the individuality of the trooper.

### *Armament of Trooper for Garrison Duty, Mounted.*

**354.** For drill and inspection: As may be directed.

The saber belt is always worn with full dress, the cartridge belt with undress.

The saber is attached to the left side of the saddle, unless otherwise ordered.

Full dress: Saber and saber belt; the pistol and cartridge box when ordered.

Undress: Carbine (with sling), cartridge belt and saber; the pistol when ordered.

The spurs are worn on all mounted duty, except when otherwise ordered.

## MANUAL OF THE CARBINE, MOUNTED.

**355.** The trooper slings carbine before leading out (Par. 380). When the trooper has placed himself opposite the horse's shoulder after the command *prepare to mount,* he passes the carbine over his right shoulder, letting it rest against his back, muzzle downward.

After mounting, the trooper executes *return carbine* (Par. 357).

At the command *prepare to dismount,* the trooper takes the carbine from the boot with the right hand and passes it over the right shoulder in the same manner as at the command *prepare to mount;* as soon as he has dismounted, he takes the position of sling carbine.

**356.** 1. *Advance,* 2. **CARBINE.** Grasp the piece at the small of the stock with the right hand; raise it and place the butt upon the right thigh, barrel to the right, the piece inclined to the front at an angle of about thirty degrees.

**357.** 1. *Return,* 2. **CARBINE.** Lower the muzzle, carry the carbine to the rear, insert the muzzle in the boot, and drop the right hand by the side.

### *To Load.*

**358.** Being at advance carbine: **LOAD.**

Drop the piece into the left hand, muzzle to the front and left, barrel pointing downward at an angle of about forty-five degrees, supporting the carbine at the balance

Pl. 64, Par. 356.

by the thumb and forefinger, the other fingers closed on the reins, taking care not to change the feeling of the reins; load the piece as in Par. 81, and advance carbine.

The piece may be loaded from the position of return carbine, by the same command, first raising it from the boot.

**359.** Being at advance carbine: 1. *Squad,* 2. READY.

Cock the piece with the right thumb, and return the thumb to the small of the stock.

**360.** Being at the ready: AIM.

Drop the carbine into the left hand as in load, raise it with both hands, and aim as in Par. 89, well to the left of the horse's head.

In aiming, care should be taken not to disturb the horse by a change in the feeling of the reins; this may be effected by slipping the left hand along the stock and leaning the body forward a little.

**361.** FIRE.

Fire as in Par. 90, and resume advance carbine.

**362.** *Cease firing* is executed as in Pars. 158 and 159, except that the piece is brought to advance carbine.

**363.** *Cease firing, load,* is executed as in Par. 160, except that the piece is brought to advance carbine.

**364.** *Draw cartridge* is executed as in Par. 88, and advance carbine then resumed.

The cartridge is always drawn before executing *return carbine. This rule is general,* except for sentinels on post.

**365.** Being at return carbine: 1. *Inspection,* 2. CARBINE.

Raise the carbine and pass it into the left hand, as in load; open chamber, and advance carbine.

Each trooper, after the inspector has passed, lowers his carbine as in load, closes chamber, and returns carbine.

### *Manual of the Saber, Mounted.*

**366.** The instructor causes the recruits to take the saber when they can ride well.

When the saber is worn slung to the belt, it is unhooked when the trooper has placed himself opposite the horse's shoulder, after the command *prepare to mount* (see Par. 181).

Before beginning the manual a few mounted movements may be executed to quiet the horses.

**367.** The manual of the saber, mounted, is executed as when dismounted, except as herein provided.

The saber is drawn without using the left hand.

At the command *draw,* reach with the right hand over the bridle hand and pass it through the saber-knot, without quitting the reins with the left hand; seize the gripe and draw the blade six inches from the scabbard.

*Position of Carry Saber, Mounted.*

**368.** Back of blade against right shoulder, edge to the front, wrist resting on top of thigh, forearm near the body, little finger outside of the gripe.

The instructor sees that the position of the bridle hand is not deranged and that the right shoulder is not thrown back.

Pl. 65, Par. 368.

**369.** The saber is returned without using the left hand. In returning the saber while marching, the back of the blade rests against the left arm until the point enters the scabbard; but if the scabbard is attached to the saddle, the trooper may be permitted to assist with the left hand in inserting the point in the mouth of the scabbard.

### *To Take Distances.*

**370.** Before executing the saber exercise mounted, the instructor causes the troopers to take distances.

Being in line: 1. *Front take distance,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad,* 4. HALT.

At the command *march,* No. 1 of each four marches straight to the front; No. 2 marches straight to the front when No. 1 has a distance of four feet in front of his horse; No. 3 and No. 4 move off in succession in like manner; the command *halt* is given when No. 4 has his distance.

To form line again: 1. *Form,* 2. RANK.

No. 1 of each four stands fast: Nos. 2, 3, and 4 move up into their intervals and halt.

The instructor may form the squad in column of troopers, and then march it by the flank and halt it with intervals.

**371.** The saber exercise is executed as when dismounted, except that at the command *guard* the trooper moves the saber only, the hand resting on the thigh.

**372.** As the recruits become skilful in the use of their sabers they are practiced in the saber exercise while marching in column of troopers at all gaits, the distance being increased to two yards. They will also be exercised in leaping the ditch and the bar, at first with the saber in the scabbard, afterward with the saber drawn.

### *Inspection of Arms, Mounted.*

**373.** The troopers being fully armed and at return carbine: 1. *Inspection,* 2. ARMS.

At the command *arms,* all the troopers take the position of inspection carbine.

The carbines are then inspected as in Par. 365. Each trooper, after he returns carbine, unbuttons the flap of the pistol holster.

The pistols and sabers are inspected as in Pars. 101, 102, and 103.

**374.** To inspect the squad more minutely, the instructor may cause the troopers to take distances (Par. 370) and to dismount, or dismounts the squad, and without forming rank, commands: 1. *Inspection,* 2. ARMS.

The troopers take the reins off the horses' necks, pass the right arm through the reins, face to the front, and unsling carbine, and each, when the inspector approaches him, opens chamber and returns the hand to the small of the stock. The inspection is executed as in Pars. 101, 102 and 103.

The inspection begins on the right of each rank; the inspector then passes in rear of the rank from left to right, inspecting the horses and equipments.

When the saber is attached to the saddle, it is inspected before dismounting.

### *Running at Heads.*

**375.** After the troopers have been well instructed in riding and in the use of arms mounted, they will be taught to cut and thrust at heads and rings in the riding hall. The object is to give confidence and precision in the use of the edge and point, as well as the proper celerity and judgment of time and distance.

If the horses are unaccustomed to these exercises, they should first be ridden quietly around the posts at a walk; practice is then had first at a walk, and then at a canter, observing great care that the horses are not hurried nor frightened.

Two posts five feet six inches high, and two posts two feet six inches high, called *head posts,* and two *ring posts* are used. The ring posts are made with a horizontal arm to extend over the center of and about eight feet above the track; a ring four inches in diameter is suspended from this arm in such manner that it can be easily carried away by the saber.

The following is the usual order for running at heads, but it should not be constantly adhered to, the positions

of the posts being changed at the discretion of the instructor.

The posts are placed one yard inside the track on the long sides of the hall, a head post about twenty yards from each corner; on each is placed a leather or canvas head stuffed with hay. The ring post and a head on the ground near the track divide the spaces between the posts. A trooper is posted at each head and post to replace the head or ring.

**376.** The troopers are formed in two nearly equal squads, one at each end of the hall (Par. 344).

The troopers leave the ranks at a walk, raise pistol and take the trot, marching diagonally across the hall; each takes the canter as he turns the corner, taking care to gallop true; each trooper on turning the second corner fires his pistol, loaded with a blank cartridge, at the first head, and, continuing on the track, returns pistol, draws saber, takes the position of guard, and when on the opposite side of the hall takes the heads by such cuts and thrusts as directed by the instructor, and the ring by a tierce point; having turned the corner after taking the last head on that side, he leaves the track, takes the trot and walk, returns saber and forms on the opposite flank of the rank. The command *next* is given as the troopers on the track are about to take the heads with the saber.

After the troopers become skillful in the use of their sabers to the right, the instructor causes the exercise to be repeated to the left; then with stirrups crossed, and finally with the horses bareback. He may also cause hurdles to be placed on the track, one on each side in place of one of the heads, and when the troopers are well instructed, causes them in jumping to take a head on a tall post placed by the hurdle. The troopers will also be exercised in running at heads and in jumping with crossed stirrups; also with the girth unfastened.

The attention of the instructor will be especially directed to the following points besides the management of the saber: That the horse gallops true; that in cutting at the heads the seat is kept close; that when cutting and thrusting against infantry, the body is kept close to the horse and the leg on the opposite side well closed. If the horse is swayed off the track, he is not properly ridden and the faults must be pointed out and corrected.

An excellent exercise with saber mounted may be had by distributing a number of leather heads about the hall.

Being in column of troopers at a gallop, the instructor commands: 1. *At will,* 2. *Against infantry;* 3. POINT AND CUT. The troopers are not required to keep their formation.

At the command *attention,* the troopers re-form column.

## THE SQUAD, MOUNTED.

**377.** In this instruction, the troopers are divided into groups of from seven to eleven men to represent squads, under the command of non-commissioned officers, preferably corporals. This instruction has the same object as the instruction of the squad in the School of the Soldier, and is accomplished by the same means so far as they are applicable to the mounted drills. To further this object, it is proper that each group be composed of men from the same "squad," as provided in Par. 259, A. R., 1889.

**378.** Instructed troopers are placed on each flank and at the center of the squad; when the guide is announced, the man on the designated flank or the center conducts the march, but in no other respect acts as guide. *This rule is general.*

**379.** The depth of a horse is taken as three yards and his front in rank as one yard, which includes his width and interval of eighteen inches when at stand to horse, or six inches from knee to knee (or a light touch of stirrups) when mounted.

**380.** To form the squad, the corporal commands: LEAD OUT, and places himself at the point where the right of the squad is to be and faces in the direction in which it is to face.

The men lead out and form on the left of the corporal in single rank from right to left, taking the position of stand to horse, with intervals of eighteen inches between horses.

The instructor commands: 1. *Count,* 2. FOURS.

The troopers, commencing with the corporal, count fours. The squad is then mounted.

The four to which the corporal belongs moves as if a complete four, or it may be made a complete four (see Par. 13).

*Alignments.*

**381.** 1. *Two troopers from the right* (*left* or *center*) *three yards to the front,* 2. MARCH, 3. NEXT, 4. FRONT.

At the command *march,* the first two troopers from the right march three yards to the front, halt and execute *eyes right;* the instructor aligns them, and then causes the remaining troopers to move up successively, at the command *next.*

At the command *next,* the trooper on the right of the rank marches to the front, each trooper slackening the gait as he arrives nearly abreast of the new alignment, which must never be passed, executes *eyes right* and halts on the line so that his horse shall be square to the new front, and so that his eyes and shoulders shall be in line with those of the men on his right.

The instructor in front of his squad sees that each trooper observes the principles of the alignment, and when the last trooper has arrived verifies the alignment, placing himself two yards outside the right flank facing to the left, and orders up or back such men as may be in rear or in advance of the line, and that only the men designated move.

At the command *front*, given when the rank is aligned, the men cast their eyes to the front; all movement in the rank must then cease.

Dressing to the center, the base troopers are established and execute *front*.

At the command *next* the troopers next on the right and left of the center move to the front, and dress as explained; those on the right of the center dress as if the alignment were to the left, and those on the left of the center as if the alignment were to the right. The instructor verifies the alignment from either flank.

The instructor observes in the alignment: That each trooper gathers his horse at the proper time; moves his horse steadily and keeps him square to the front; that he sits squarely on his horse; dresses promptly as he arrives on the line; that he does not lean the head or body to the front or rear; that he keeps the interval of six inches from knee to knee (or touches lightly the stirrup of the trooper on his right); that he relaxes the reins and legs as soon as he has dressed.

In the first drills, the basis of the alignment is established parallel to the front of the squad, and afterward in oblique directions.

**382.** The troopers having learned to align themselves man by man, the instructor establishes the basis of alignment as before and aligns the squad by the commands: 1. *Right* (*Left* or *Center*), 2. DRESS, 3. FRONT.

At the command *dress*, all the men, except the base troopers, move forward and dress up to the line.

**383.** Alignment to the rear is executed on the same principles; the instructor commands: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *backward*, 2. DRESS, 3. FRONT.

All the men except the base troopers rein back, keeping their horses straight, halt in line with, or a little in rear of, the base and immediately dress up to the line.

**384.** When the squad dresses quickly and well, one trooper from the flank moves to the point of rest, or

without leaving the rank places his horse perpendicular to the required direction by a movement of the forehand or haunches.

In dressing, the first two or three troopers are accurately aligned as quickly as possible, in order to afford a base for the rest of the squad. *This rule is general.*

### *To March in Line.*

**385.** Being in line at a halt: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide right* (*left* or *center*), 3. MARCH.

The squad moves off promptly (Par. 295), the guide marching straight to the front (Par. 50).

The instructor observes in marching in line: That the squad marches straight to the front at an even gait; that the troopers keep their horses straight in the rank; that they maintain the interval of six inches from knee to knee (or light touch of stirrup) toward the side of the guide; that they yield to pressure from that side and resist pressure from the opposite direction; that if too much closed toward the guide, they carry the bridle hand from that side and close the leg on the side of the guide; that if the interval be too great, they carry the bridle hand toward the guide and close the leg on the opposite side; that while habitually keeping the head to the front, they occasionally glance toward the guide; if in advance, they rein in gradually; if in rear, they gradually increase the gait until the alignment is regained.

The instructor will impress upon the men that the alignment and interval can only be preserved by uniformity of gait and by keeping the horses straight in the line of direction. The interval, when lost, should be regained as much through the pressure of the legs as by the use of the reins.

To call attention to the loss of alignment or interval, the instructor commands: DRESS. At this command the troopers glance for an instant toward the guide and then make the necessary correction.

Marching in line, to effect a slight change of direction: *Incline to the right* (or *left*).

The guide turns his horse slightly to the right and marches in the new direction; the other troopers gradually conform to the movements of the guide, increasing or diminishing the gait, according as the change is toward or opposite the side of the guide.

### *To Halt.*

**386.** Whenever the squad is in motion, it is halted by the commands: 1. *Squad,* 2. **HALT.** *This rule is general,* the command *platoon, troop,* etc., being substituted for *squad.*

### *To March Backward.*

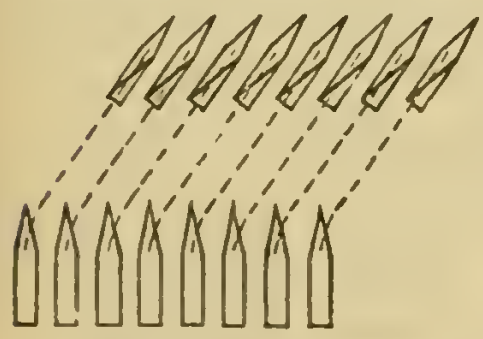
**387.** Being in line: 1. *Backward,* 2. *Guide right* (*left* or *center*), 3. **MARCH.**

All the troopers rein back, dressing on the guide.

This movement is used for short distances only.

### *Being in Line, to Oblique.*

**388.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *oblique,* 2. **MARCH.**



Pl. 66. Par. 383

At the command *march,* each trooper executes a turn of thirty degrees to the right. The squad moves in the new direction, dressing to the right, in a line parallel to the original front.

To resume the original direction: 1. *Forward,* 2. **MARCH.**

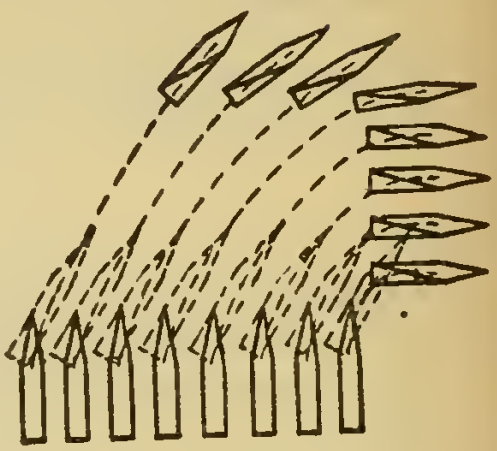
Each trooper turns thirty degrees to the left and marches straight to the front, regulating on the guide (Par. 132).

See Par. 303.

### *To Turn and Halt.*

**389.** Marching in line: 1. *Squad right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH 3. FRONT.

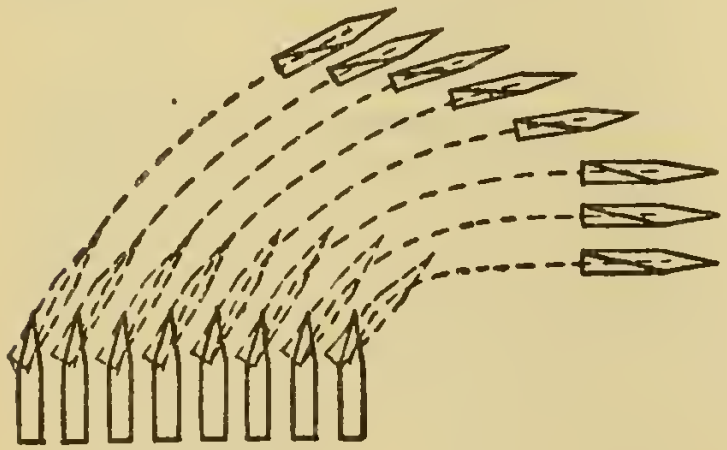
The first command is given when the squad is at least three yards from the turning point (Par. 9*d*).



Pl. 67, Par. 389.

At the command *march,* given the instant the squad is to turn, the trooper on the right, who is the pivot, turns his horse ninety degrees to the right on an arc with a radius of two yards, and halts; each of the other troopers turns his horse thirty degrees to the right as in the oblique, and moving by the shortest line without changing the speed, places himself upon the alignment established by the pivot man; all dress to the pivot without command.

The instructor verifies the alignment from the pivot flank.



Pl. 68, Par. 390.

If at a halt, the movement is executed in the same manner.

*Squad half-right* (or *half-left*) is executed in the same manner; the pivot makes a half-turn (forty-five degrees) to the right.

### *To Turn and Advance.*

**390.** Being in line at a halt or at a walk, the instructor commands: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *turn,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Guide* (*right, left* or *center*).

The trooper on the right turns his horse ninety degrees to the right on an arc with a radius of two yards and moves forward in the new direction without changing (increasing) the speed; each of the other troopers turns his horse thirty degrees to the right as in the oblique, and moving at a trot by the shortest line places himself on the new line, when he resumes the gait of the pivot trooper and dresses on him.

During the turn, the guide is, without command, on the pivot flank; the guide is announced when all the troopers have arrived on the line.

If marching at a trot, the pivot trooper continues at a trot; all the others move at a gallop.

If marching at a gallop, the pivot takes the canter; all the other troopers continue the gallop, each taking the canter on arriving in line; as soon as all the troopers have arrived on the line the instructor commands: 1. *Gallop,* 2. **MARCH,** 3. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

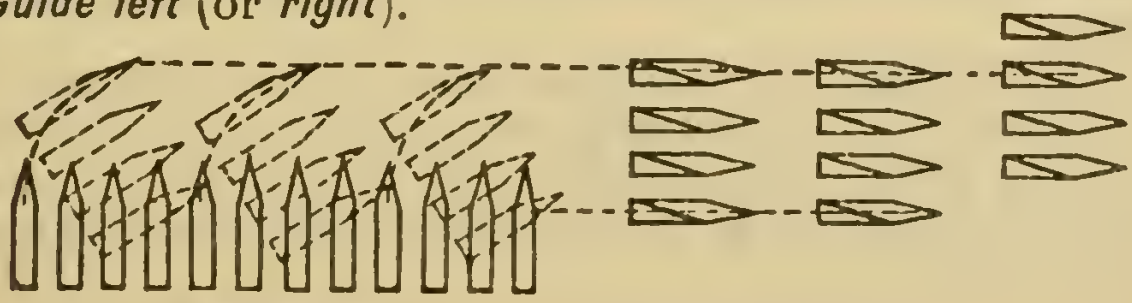
*Right* (or *Left*) *half-turn* is executed on the same principles; the pivot trooper makes a half-turn to the right.

### *Movements by Fours.*

**391.** In movements by fours, when there are no chiefs of platoons nor file-closers, the instructor announces the guide toward either flank (see Par. 485).

### *To March by the Flank.*

**392.** Being in line: 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH,** 3. *Guide left* (or *right*).



Pl. 69, Par. 392.

Each four wheels ninety degrees to the right on a fixed pivot; the pivot trooper gradually turns his horse on the fore-feet, without advancing, reining back or passaging to the right or left, conforming to the movement of the marching flank, which marches on an arc of a circle with the pivot as a center; each pivot trooper closes his right leg to insure the closing of his horse's haunches toward the marching flank. The troopers dress toward the marching flank, move in conformity with it, and keep the interval from the pivot. Upon the completion of the wheel, the troopers move straight forward in a direction parallel to the former front, dressing to the side of the guide, and preserving the distance of four feet from head to croup. The post of the instructor is by the side of the leading guide.

**393.** To form column of fours and halt: 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad,* 4. HALT.

The command *halt* is given as the fours complete the wheel.

**394.** In all wheelings by fours, the forward march is taken up on completion of the movement, unless the command *halt* be given.

In column of fours, the guide of the leading four is the guide of the column.

*These rules are general.*

**395.** Being in column of fours at a halt, to march: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide* (*right* or *left*), 3. MARCH.

**396.** To practice the troopers in wheeling by fours: 1. *Fours in circle right* (or *left*) *wheel*, 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad,* 4. HALT.

The fours wheel so as to form column or unite in line simultaneously, regulating on the marching flank of the four at the head of the column.

The command *halt* is given as the fours form column or unite in line.

The instructor observes that the troopers on the marching flank preserve the uniform gait, that each pivot turns

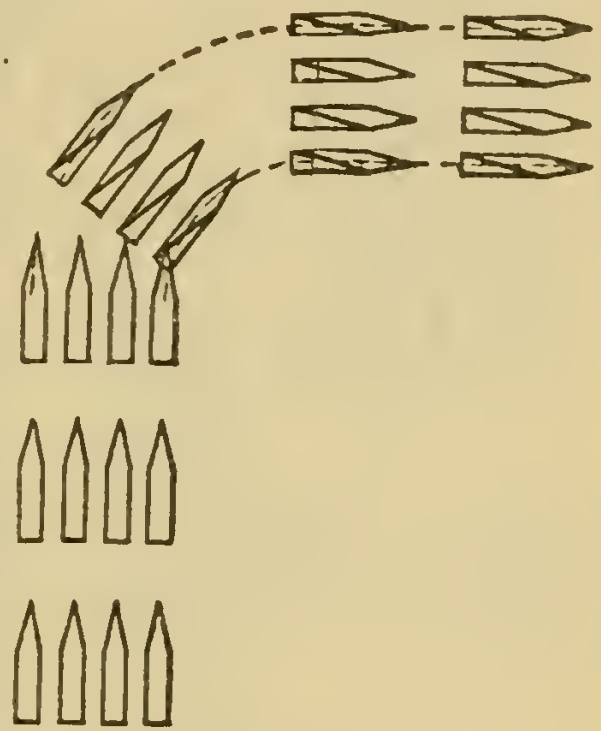
in his place and keeps his horse's haunches closed toward the marching flank so as not to interfere with the marching flank of the adjoining four.

*To Change Direction.*

**397.** Marching in column of fours: 1. *Column right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH.

The leading four wheels to the right on a movable pivot. The other fours move forward and wheel on the same ground as the first.

When wheeling on a movable pivot, the pivot passes over an arc of a circle whose radius is three yards, so as not to obstruct the march of the four in rear; the pivot trooper preserves the original gait, the others increase the gait, and all resume the original gait upon completing the change of direction.



Pl. 70 Par. 397.

*Column half-right* (or *half-left*) is similarly executed.

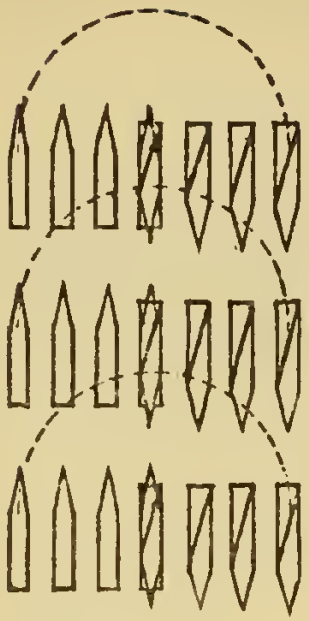
Being in column of fours at a halt, to march and change direction at the same time: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide right* (or *left*), 3. *Column right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.

To make a slight change of direction: *Incline to the right* (or *left*).

*Being in Line, to Form Column of Fours and Change Direction at the Same Time.*

**398.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. *Column right* (or *left*); or, 2. *Column half-right* (or *half-left*), 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide left* (or *right*).

### *To March the Column of Fours to the Rear.*



Pl. 71, Par. 399.

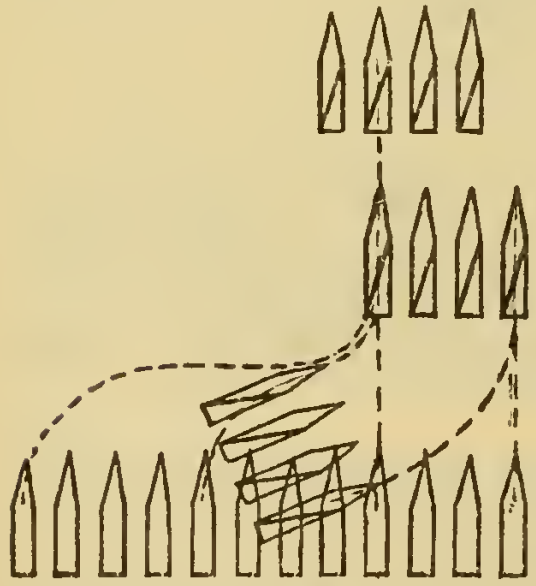
**399.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*) *about*, 2. MARCH, 3. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

Each four wheels to the right one hundred and eighty degrees on a fixed pivot. Great precision is required in wheeling about, that the flanks may not interfere.

### *Being in Line, to Break into Column of Fours to the Front.*

**400.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *forward*, 2. *Fours right* (or *left*), 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide left* (or *right*).

At the command *march*, the right four marches straight to the front, dressing to the left; the other fours wheel to the right on fixed pivots; the second four, when its wheel is two-thirds completed, wheels to the left on a movable pivot and follows the first four; the other fours having wheeled to the right, march forward, and each wheels to the left on a movable pivot so as to follow the second.



Pl. 72, Par. 400.

### *To Oblique in Column of Fours.*

**401.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *oblique*, 2. MARCH.

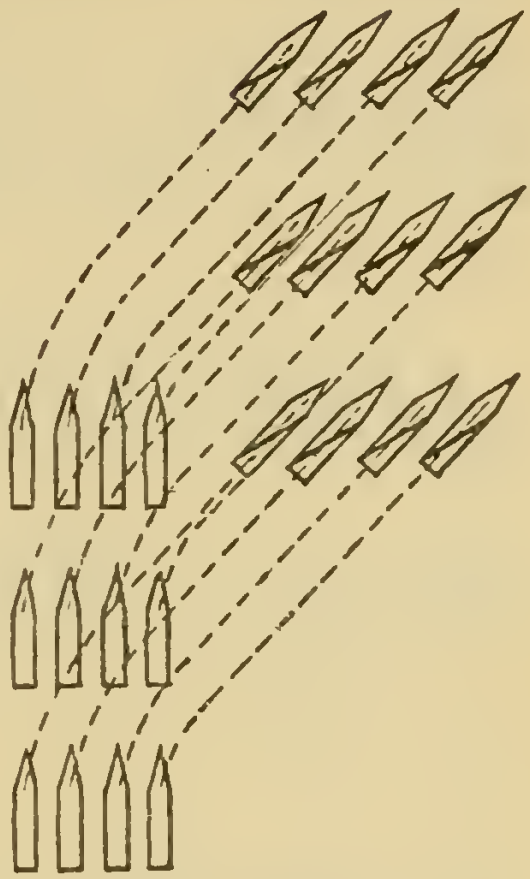
At the command *march*, the troopers execute individually a half-turn to the right, opening out slightly, and then march at an angle of forty-five degrees to the original direction.

The front of each four remains parallel to the original front (Par. 132).

The oblique in column of twos or troopers is similarly executed.

To resume the original direction: 1. *Forward,* 2. MARCH.

Each trooper executes individually a half-turn to the left, closes to and dresses on the guide of his four. See Par. 303.



Pl. 73, Par. 401.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Line to the Right or Left.*

**402.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad,* 4. HALT; or, 3. *Guide right* (*left* or *center*).

The fours wheel to the right and halt, or move forward, according to command.

The command *halt* is given or the guide announced as the fours unite in line.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form on Right or Left into Line.*

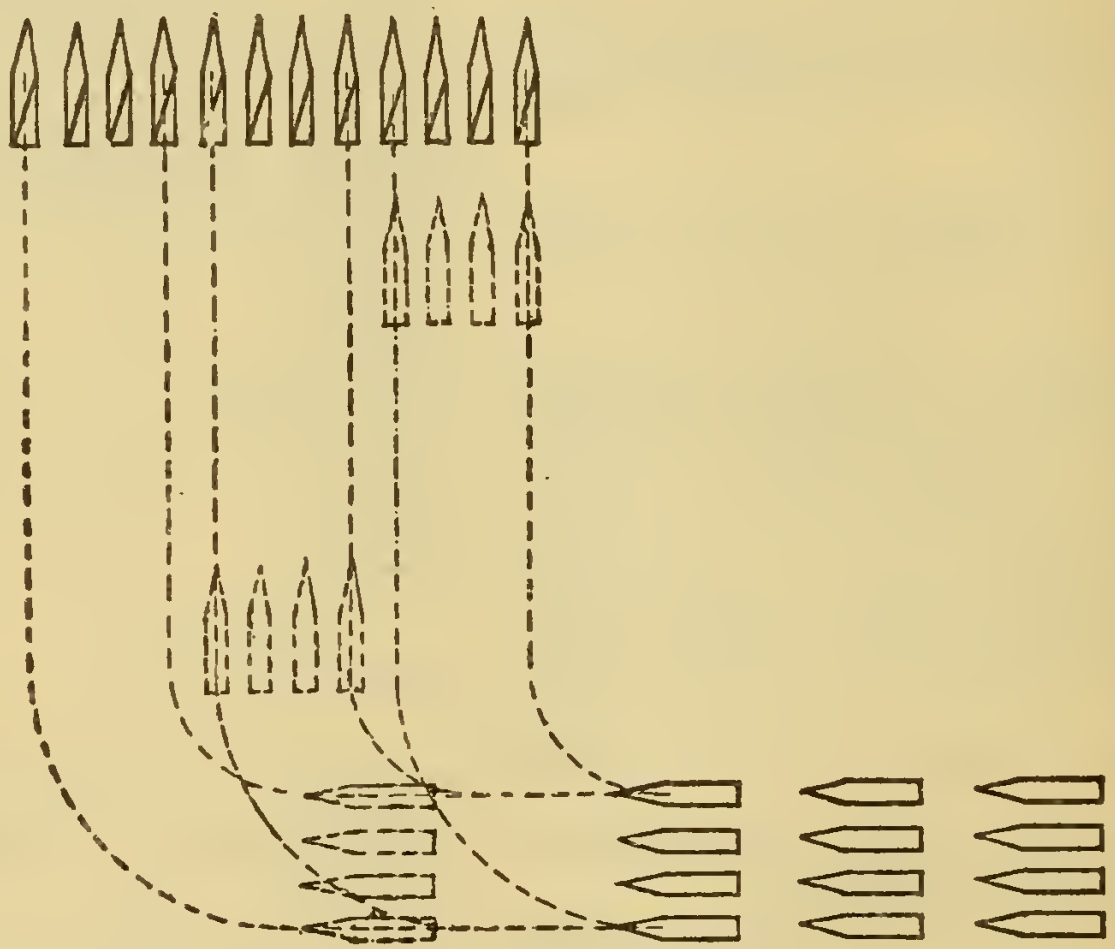
**403.** 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad,* 4. HALT, 5. FRONT.

The leading four wheels to the right on a movable pivot and marches forward in the new direction, dressing to the right.

At the command *halt,* given when the leading four has advanced thirty yards in the new direction, it halts and dresses to the right; each of the other fours marches four yards beyond the wheeling point of the next preceding four, wheels to the right, moves to the

new alignment, halts, and dresses as explained for the leading four.

If marching at a trot, or at a walk and the command be *trot,* the instructor commands: 3. *Guide right,* immediately after the command *march;* the leading four wheels at a trot, and upon completing the wheel takes the walk; the other fours move at a trot, each takes the walk upon



Pl. 74, Par. 403.

arriving abreast of the leading four and dresses to that side.

If marching at a gallop, or at a trot and the command be *gallop,* the same principle applies; the leading four wheels at a gallop and then takes the trot; the other fours

execute the movement at a gallop and take the trot upon arriving abreast of the leading four.

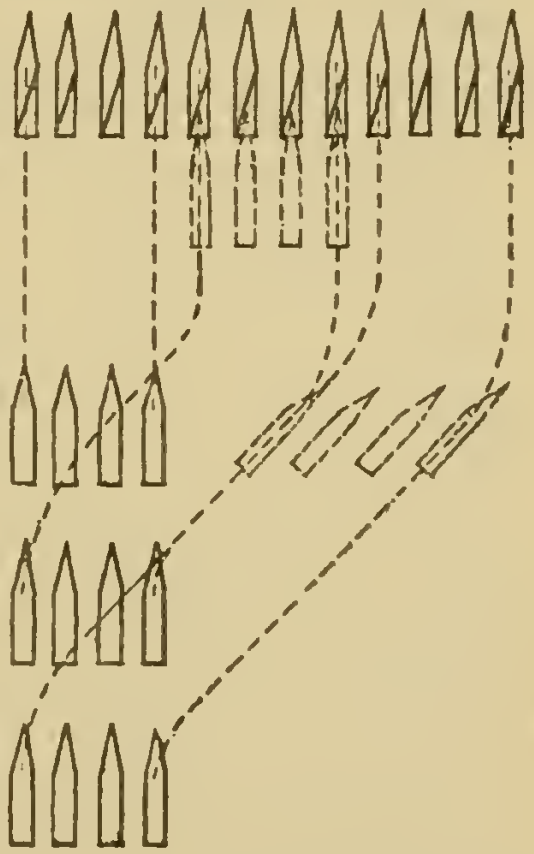
The principles of Par. 8 apply.

**404.** In movements where it is prescribed that the leading four or subdivision moves thirty yards to the front and is then halted, it may be halted at a less distance when necessary. *This rule is general*

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Front into Line.*

**405.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line*, 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad*, 4. HALT, 5. FRONT.

The leading four marches straight to the front, dressing to the left; the other fours oblique to the right: each four, when opposite its place in line, marches to the front.



Pl. 75, Par. 405.

At the command *halt*, given when the leading four has advanced thirty yards, it halts and dresses to the left; each of the other fours halts just short of the line and dresses to the left.

The principles of Par. 8 apply; for example:—

If marching at a trot or at a walk and the command be *trot*, the instructor commands: *Guide left*, immediately after the command *march;* the leading four moves at a walk, the other fours oblique at a trot, each taking the walk and dressing to the left upon arriving abreast of the leading four.

If marching at a gallop or at a trot and the command be

*gallop,* the same principles apply, the leading four moving at a trot.

*Being in Line, to Face to the Rear.*

**406.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*) *about,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad,* 4. HALT.

The fours wheel about to the right.

The command *halt* is given as the fours unite in line.

*Being in Line, to March to the Rear.*

**407.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*) *about,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

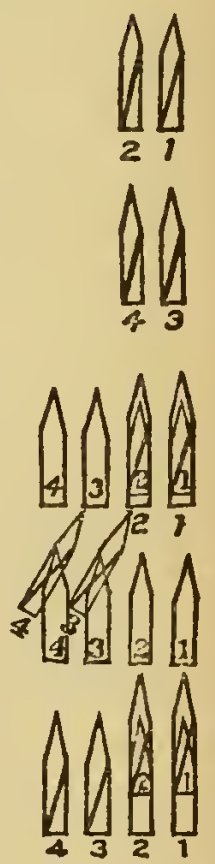
*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Column of Twos.*

**408.** Being at a halt: 1. *By twos,* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

The right two (Nos. 1 and 2) of the leading four move straight to the front; the left two (Nos. 3 and 4) of the leading four, keep their horses straight until their horses' heads are passed by the croups of the horses of the right two, when they oblique to the right, and follow the leading two at a distance of four feet. Each of the other fours breaks in the same manner as soon as the left two of the preceding four commences to oblique.

Nos. 3 and 4 always follow in rear of Nos. 1 and 2, no matter on which side the guide may be, or which flank be in front.

If marching at a walk, the right two of the leading four continues the walk; the other troopers halt at the command *march* and then execute the movement as before.



Pl. 76, Par. 408.

If marching at a trot, or at a walk and the command

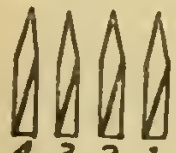
be *trot*, the right two of the leading four moves at the trot, the left two of the leading four moves at a walk till disengaged, when it obliques at a trot; the other fours move at a walk, and break successively at a trot.

If marching at a gallop, or at a trot and the command be *gallop*, the same principles apply, the fours moving at a trot, and breaking successively at a gallop.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Column of Troopers.*

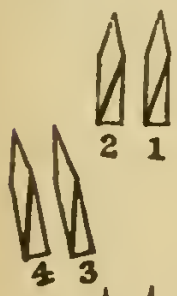
**409.** 1. *By trooper*, 2. **MARCH.**

The movement is executed according to the principles explained in Par. 408; No. 1 of the leading four moves forward and is followed successively by Nos. 2, 3, and 4, who preserve a distance of four feet from head to croup. When No. 4 commences to oblique, No. 1 of the succeeding four marches forward, or takes the increased gait.




Column of troopers from column of twos is formed in a similar manner, No. 1 leading the column.

*Being in Column of Twos, to Form Column of Fours.*




**410.** Being at a halt, or marching at a walk: 1. *Form fours*, 2. **MARCH.**

Nos. 1 and 2 of the leading four march three yards (one horse's length) to the front and halt; Nos. 3 and 4 of the leading four oblique to the left until uncovered, then march to the front and halt when abreast of Nos. 1 and 2; the other twos march forward and form fours successively as explained for the first four; Nos. 3 and 4 of each four commence the oblique to the left when Nos. 1 and 2 are at three yards from their position.

Pl. 77, Par. 410.

If marching at a trot, or at a walk and the command

be *trot*, the leading two (Nos. 1 and 2) moves at a walk, the rear two (Nos. 3 and 4) of the leading four obliques to the left at a trot, and takes the walk upon arriving abreast of the leading two; the other twos move at a trot, the fours successively forming and taking the walk as the leading two closes upon the preceding four.

If marching at a gallop or at a trot and the command be *gallop*, the same principles apply, the leading two moving at a trot. When executed at a trot or gallop, the instructor commands: *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

### *Being in Column of Troopers, to Form Column of Fours or Twos.*

**411.** 1. *Form fours*, 2. MARCH.

The movement is executed on the same principles as in forming fours from column of twos; No. 1 of each four being the base, and Nos. 2, 3, and 4 obliquing to the left and forming on the left of No. 1.

1. *Form twos*, 2. MARCH.

The movement is executed on the same principles as in forming fours; Nos. 1 and 3 being the base troopers, Nos. 2 forming on the left of Nos. 1, and Nos. 4 on the left of Nos. 3.

### *Movements in Column of Twos.*

**412.** The column of twos changes direction, halts and advances by the same commands and means as a column of fours.

**413.** The column of twos is marched to the rear by the commands: 1. *Twos right* (or *left*) *about*, 2. MARCH.

If the column of troopers or twos be marched to the rear, and the successive numbers inverted, to re-form twos or fours: 1. *Form twos* (or *fours*), 2. *Right oblique*, 3. MARCH.

No. 4 (or Nos. 3 and 4) advances three yards and halts; the other troopers oblique to the right and form in their proper order, according to the principles of Par. 410.

*Being in Column of Twos or Troopers, to Form Line.*

**414.** To the right or left: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *into line,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad,* 4. HALT, 5. FRONT.

The leading two (or trooper) wheel to the right and move forward, the command *halt* being given when they have advanced thirty yards; the others move forward and successively wheel to the right when three yards from the point opposite their places in line, forming to the right of the leading two or trooper, halt and align themselves.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

**415.** On right or left: 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line,* 2. MARCH.

The movement is executed according to the same principles as when in column of fours (Par. 403).

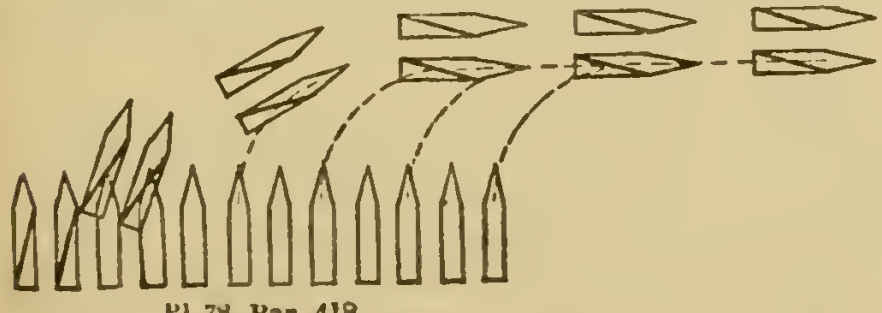
**416.** To the front: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Squad,* 4. HALT, 5. FRONT.

The movement is executed according to the same principles as when in column of fours (Par. 405).

**417.** After forming line from column of twos or troopers, if the numbers of the troopers be not in their proper sequence in the sets of fours, the instructor may cause the squad to count fours; but this is not necessary unless the squad is to be maneuvered by fours. This provision is made to save inconvenience when forming line for dismissal, or for exercises in which the fours are not considered.

*Being in Line, to Form Column of Twos.*

**418.** By the flank. Being at a halt: 1. *By twos,* 2. *By the right flank,* 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide left* (or *right*).



Pl. 78, Par. 418.

The right two wheels to the right on a movable pivot and marches forward in the new direction; each

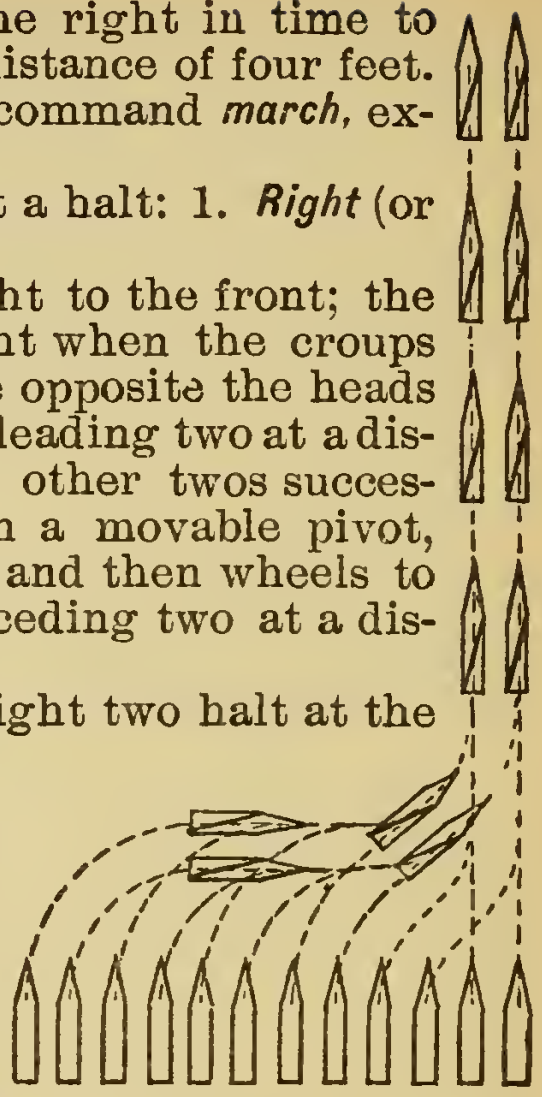
of the other twos wheels to the right in time to follow the preceding two at a distance of four feet.

If marching, all halt at the command *march*, except the right two.

**419.** To the front: Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *by twos*, 2. **MARCH.**

The right two march straight to the front; the second two oblique to the right when the croups of the horses of the first two are opposite the heads of their horses, and follow the leading two at a distance of four feet; each of the other twos successively wheels to the right on a movable pivot, moves forward as in Par. 418, and then wheels to the left so as to follow the preceding two at a distance of four feet.

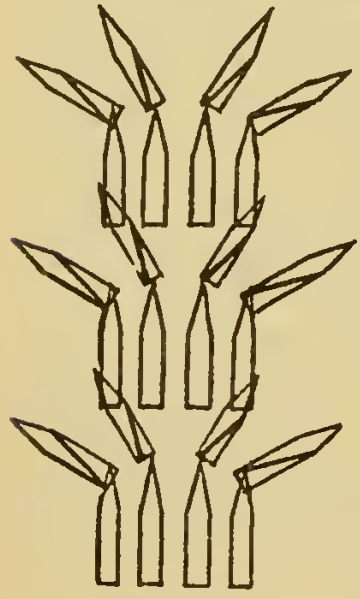
If marching, all except the right two halt at the command *march*.



Pl. 79, Par. 419.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Dismount.*

**420.** Being at a halt or marching: 1. **PREPARE TO DISMOUNT**, 2. **DISMOUNT.**



Pl. 80, Par. 420.

At the first command, Nos. 1 and 2 oblique to the right, Nos. 3 and 4 to the left, and all halt; the troopers oblique only so far as to allow room to dismount without interfering with each other; Nos. 1 and 4 oblique a little more than Nos. 2 and 3.

The column of twos dismounts by the same commands and means.

At the commands *forward, march*, either before or after mounting, the column moves forward, the troopers closing toward the center.

## THE CHARGE.

**421.** The charge is the decisive and most important and characteristic cavalry movement.

The main conditions for success are cohesion, rapidity, surprise, and impetuosity and vigor in the shock. To insure these conditions it is essential:

*First.* That the trooper have complete control over his horse.

*Second.* That the horse be thoroughly trained.

*Third.* That the trooper be taught to ride straight to the front.

*Fourth.* That the gait be uniform in speed, to secure cohesion and proper dressing.

*Fifth.* That the horses do not arrive at the charging point in a blown or distressed condition.

The squad is first drilled to march over long distances at the trot and gallop, the instructor giving special attention to the order and alignment and uniformity of gait. If necessary, the troopers may be required to take the reins in both hands.

If the ground will admit of it, the advance to the charge should be practiced over a distance of from twelve hundred to two thousand yards.

Habitually, the charge will not be given more than twice the same day.

The charge is always followed by a few movements in close order, executed with great precision.

### *To Charge.*

**422.** The squad is formed in line, with sabers drawn, at one extremity of the selected ground, which, in the first drills, should be free from obstacles.

The officer supervising the instruction goes to the farther extremity of the ground to observe the drill, sig-

nals to the instructor, who takes post as leader in front of the center of the squad, and commands or signals: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide center,* 3. MARCH.

The guide follows directly in the trace of the instructor at a distance of two yards; after advancing about ten yards the instructor commands: 1. *Trot,* 2. MARCH; when about four hundred to six hundred yards from the officer supervising the drill, the instructor commands 1. *Gallop,* 2. MARCH; the squad is conducted over the remaining distance at a gradually increasing gallop; when about fifty to seventy-five yards from the officer, the instructor commands: CHARGE.

All the troopers charge saber, and the speed is increased to that of the slower horses; when near the officer, the instructor commands: 1. *Trot,* 2. MARCH; the men resume carry saber and take the trot; after advancing between twenty and thirty yards, the instructor commands: 1. *Walk,* 2. MARCH, and soon after: 1. *Squad,* 2. HALT.

**423.** To accustom the troopers to form on their leader after the disorder which follows an attack, the instructor commands: DISPERSE.

The troopers leave the rank in disorder, but remain in the immediate vicinity, riding at and circling around each other, crossing sabers, etc.

After a short interval, the instructor commands or signals: RALLY.

The troopers rally in rear of the instructor without reference to their order before dispersing, faced in the same direction as the instructor. The rally will habitually be to the front, but may be to either flank, and may be at the halt or marching.

**424.** If, during the disorder, the instructor commands: 1. *To the rear,* 2. MARCH, all the troopers march to the rear at the gallop, the instructor leading; the troopers do not close to the regular intervals.

At the command *rally,* the instructor faces to the front, and the squad rallies in rear of him faced to the front.

*To Charge as Foragers.*

**425.** The charge as foragers is executed with intervals of three yards between troopers.

Marching in line, at the trot, with sabers drawn: 1. *As foragers,* 2. MARCH.

The center trooper advances at the trot; all the other troopers oblique to the right and left at a gallop, each marching to the front as soon as he has gained his interval of three yards from the trooper next toward the center, takes the trot, dressing to the center. The line moves forward, regulating on the leader, and the charge is conducted by the same commands and means as when in close order (Par. 422).

At the command *charge,* the troopers no longer preserve their position in rank, but charge the enemy *in couples,* and bear directly down upon him at full speed. If during the advance the command *rally* be given, the troopers quickly close to the center.

**426.** The charge with pistols is conducted in the same manner as with sabers, except that the leader takes his place on one flank or in rear of the squad, and then commands *raise pistol,* before giving the command *charge.* The troopers do not commence firing until after the command *charge.* The pistol as a charging weapon will habitually be confined to the charge as foragers and to small detachments.

**427.** The enemy is said to be *imaginary* when his position and force are merely assumed; *outlined* when his position and force are indicated by a few men only, and *represented* when a body of troops acting as such has his supposed force and position.

**428.** When the squad executes the charge satisfactorily to the officer supervising the drill, it is then taken to other and more difficult ground, and there required to execute the advance and charge against the imaginary, outlined, or represented enemy. These charges are always executed under the direct supervision of the officer,

who decides in each case whether the charge is a success or failure; he gives directions accordingly, as to whether the enemy (by retiring before the squad has arrived within charging distance) shall refuse to receive the attack, and directs the charging force to pursue, retire, disperse in the mêlée, halt or rally.

If the *pursuit* be intended, the signal *charge* is sounded; *to halt the pursuit* the *recall* is sounded; if *retire* be intended, *face to the rear* is sounded; if *disperse in the mêlée,* the signal *as skirmishers* is sounded; *to stop the mêlée,* the *rally* is sounded; to stop the progress of the charge at any moment, the *recall* and *halt* are sounded.

The officer supervising the drill is guided in his determination as to the success or failure of the charge, and as to the succeeding movement by the manner in which the charge has been conducted, *i. e.,* to what degree the conditions for success have been fulfilled (Par. 421). He then explains the defects of the charge, suggests improvements, etc.

When the enemy is represented and the charge is made as foragers, the troopers pass each other to the left through the intervals of the opposing line.

When the enemy is represented in close order, the opposing forces pull up at sufficient distance, or march by the flank to avoid collision and accident.

**429.** After the squad has been well instructed in the charge, the instructor will occasionally designate men to fall out during the advance and the charge, to represent men disabled in action; such men will follow at some distance and rejoin upon signal from the instructor.

## TRAINING HORSES.

**430.** The horse is considered as an animal of a single idea; that he has no reasoning faculties beyond the limits of his experience, and consequently we reason with him by acts alone, his natural movement being away from that which hurts him or excites his fear. Early im-

pressions are seldom forgotten, and it is important that each move be correctly begun. In familiarizing him with objects that excite his fear, the horse should be allowed to smell or touch them with his nostrils, for in a certain sense they are to him what the fingers are to man.

Invariable rules can not be laid down for the proper training of all horses, as it will be found that each horse requires peculiar treatment.

Horses are trained by the best horsemen, under the supervision of an officer or non-commissioned officer; and the men employed in this part of the horse's education are selected for their natural fondness for animals as well as for their patience, coolness, and intelligence.

The horse is made gentle and obedient, and his powers and qualities are best developed by patience kindness, encouragement, and fearlessness; punishment is resorted to only when necessary, and then only administered immediately after the commission of the offense, that he may know why he is punished. No punishment should ever be administered to the horse in anger. Under harsh treatment he will become timid, then sullen, and at length violent and unmanageable.

Restlessness and impatience frequently arise from exuberance of spirits or playfulness, which must be carefully distinguished from that which arises from viciousness and timidity. When restless, the horse should be handled quietly until he becomes calm; when submissive after punishment, he should be treated kindly.

As one horse is apt to be governed by the actions of another, trained horses that are indifferent to such sounds should be interspersed among the new ones when accustoming them to firing, beating of drums, etc.

The first object to be attained in training the horse is to gain his confidence and render him gentle and tractable. For this purpose, all proper means must be employed, such as feeding, handling, patting him, taking up his feet, etc., and the practice of the longe.

When the horse will quietly allow his feet to be handled and lifted, the trooper should practice gently tapping them to accustom him to the action of shoeing.

The trooper must endeavor to discover the horse's natural inclinations and to gain a knowledge of his abilities, that he may know how to take advantage of these qualities.

Every action of the trooper should tend to induce full confidence that no harm is intended and nothing but kind treatment is to be expected.

When new horses are first placed in stalls, the troopers approach them quietly, and always take care to speak to them before entering the stall; they should be carefully fed and gradually accustomed to the government forage ration; as many of them will be entirely unused to eating oats, corn, or barley, great care must be taken or serious trouble may follow. By commencing with the coarser part of the ration, consisting of hay and bran, and, where possible, crushing or grinding the grain, the horse will gradually be brought to the habit of eating the service ration without injury.

From their arrival, the horses should be exercised one or two hours daily in the open air. For this purpose the new horse will be equipped with the halter only, and led by the trooper mounted on a trained horse. After a few days a bit may be placed in the young horse's mouth, and the reins tied loosely and thrown over his neck.

### *The Cavesson and Longeing.*

**431.** The cavesson is a light halter with the brow band, throat-latch, and cheek pieces like the bridle headstall, and has a nose band that may be adjusted with a buckle; there is also a running ring on the chin strap for the longe. The longeing strap is from twenty to thirty feet long. The lariat may be used.

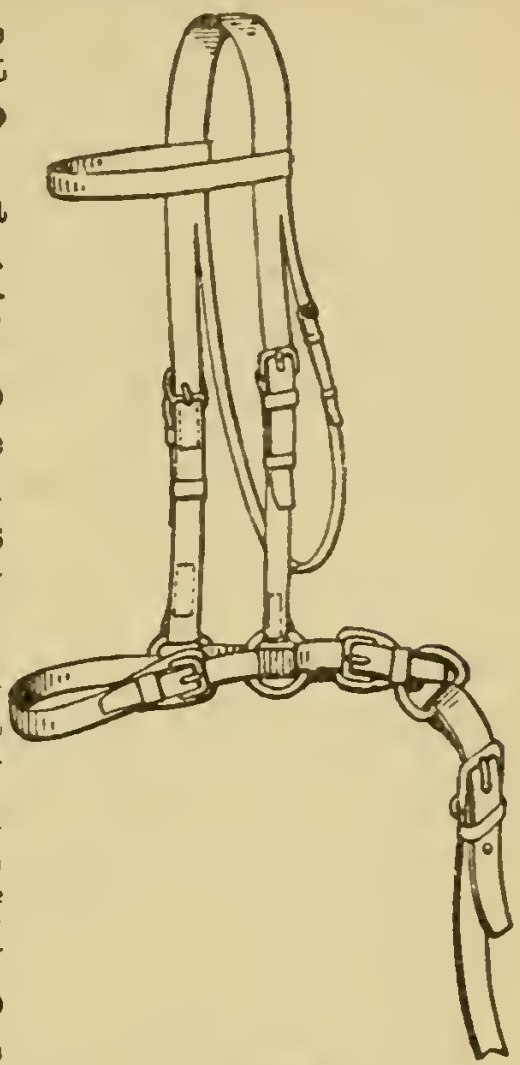
The cavesson is put on after the snaffle has been fitted; the nose band should be placed about three inches above

the nostrils, so as not to affect the breathing; it should act both as a nose band and curb, and be over the snaffle. It must not be buckled so tightly as to make the horse uneasy.

The first lesson to be taught a young horse is to go forward. Until he does this freely, nothing else should be required of him.

The practice of the longe is to supple and teach the horse the free and proper use of his legs. It thus aids in forming his gaits and in fitting him for the cavalry service.

The lesson should be begun on a circle from fifteen to twenty feet in diameter. As horses are usually fed, watered, saddled, and led from the near side, they are inclined to lead better from that than the off side. It will therefore generally be found necessary to give two lessons on the right to one on the left.



Pl. 81, Par. 431.

If a horse hesitates or stands still when he is ordered to move on, he should be encouraged, as such hesitation oftener comes from fear or ignorance as to what is required of him than from obstinacy or other vice.

The horse is first led several times around the circle at a walk. A man with a whip follows at a short distance and shows the whip occasionally when the horse bangs back; if this does not produce the desired effect he should strike the ground in rear of the horse or touch him lightly with the whip until he obeys. When he moves freely at the walk, the man holding the longe should gently urge him to trot, and gradually lengthen

the rein so that the horse may scarcely notice it; he should continue to go round the circle at an active pace, nearly opposite the horse's shoulder so as to keep him out and urge him forward.

If the horse takes kindly to this lesson, the man holding the longe may lengthen it by degrees until he has only to turn in the same spot, the man with the whip being careful to keep the horse out to the line of the circle.

When the horse breaks his pace or plunges, the rein should be shaken horizontally without jerking until he returns to the trot.

The trooper holding the longeing rein should have a light and easy hand. For the first two or three days the horse must not be urged too much; if he goes gently, without jumping or resisting, enough is accomplished. He should be longed to the right, left, and right again, changing from the trot to the walk and back again in each case. He should be frequently halted by gently feeling the rein and speaking to him; and at the conclusion of each lesson the rein should be carefully shortened and gathered up in the hand, and the horse brought to the center of the circle and caressed before being dismissed.

After a few days of the above practice, the horse may be urged a little more in the trot, but great care is requisite to teach him to use his limbs without straining them. Much harm may be done in this instruction by a sudden jerk or a too forcible pull on the longe.

Care must be taken that the lessons are not made so long as to fatigue or fret the horse, being gradually increased in length as the instruction progresses. The man holding the longeing rein should take it short in one hand, at the same time patting and rubbing the horse about the head and neck with the other; he should then try to bend the horse's neck a little to the right and then to the left by means of the longeing rein; the bend should be in the very poll of the neck, and should be cautiously

repeated at the end of each lesson until the horse responds easily; this will greatly facilitate the future instruction. The longe is used to instruct the new horses, especially if timid, to jump the bar and ditch.

**132.** The *running-rein* is of great value in teaching a horse to keep his head in a proper position, and affords valuable aid in his first handling. If judiciously used, it saves the rider a great deal of trouble and the horse much ill-usage, and simplifies the subject of "bits and bitting." It is especially useful in controlling horses that are inclined to bolt.

It should act directly on the snaffle bit itself and is wholly independent of the reins.

The running rein consists of three parts: the chin strap, rein, and martingale.

The *chin strap*, about six to eight inches long, on which is suspended a loose ring, is fastened to both snaffle bit rings.

The *martingale* has only one ring; the loop through which the girth passes is made adjustable by a buckle. The martingale is so adjusted that when taut, the ring will be on a level with the points of the horse's shoulders.

The *rein* is about eight and one-half feet long; one end is buckled into the rear pommel ring; the free end is then passed through the martingale ring from rear to front, thence through the chin strap ring from left to right, thence through the martingale ring from front to rear and is held in the rider's right hand.

A pull on this rein will act directly on the mouthpiece, drawing it back and somewhat downward toward the horse's breastbone.

**133.** Before commencing the bending lessons, it is well to give the horse a preparatory one in obedience to make him sensible of the power man has over him. This first act of submission will prove of great service, and gives the man such ascendency as to prevent the horse at the outset from resisting the means employed to bring him under control.

Go up to the horse, pat him on the neck, and speak to him; then take the reins off the horse's neck, and hold them at a few inches from the rings of the bit with the left hand; take such position as to offer as much resistance as possible to the horse, should he attempt to break away; hold the whip in the right hand, with the point down; raise the whip quietly and tap the horse on the breast; the horse naturally tries to move back to avoid the whip; follow the horse, at the same time pulling against him, and continuing the use of the whip; be careful to show no sign of anger nor of yielding. The horse, tired of trying ineffectually to avoid the whip, soon ceases to pull, and moves forward; then drop the point of the whip and make much of him. This repeated once or twice, usually proves sufficient. The horse, having found how to avoid the punishment, no longer waits for the application of the whip, but anticipates it, by moving up at a gesture.

**434.** *Bending lessons* should be given each day, so long as the snaffle bit is used alone; but the exercise should be varied, so that the horse may not become fatigued or disgusted.

The horse's balance and his lightness in hand depend on the proper carriage of his head and neck.

A young horse usually tries to resist the bit, either by bending his neck to one side, by setting his jaw against the bit, or by carrying his nose too high or too low.

The bending lessons serve to make the horse conform to the movements of the reins, and yield to the pressure of the bit. During the lessons, the horse must never be hurried.

**435.** *To bend to the right.* Take a position on the near side of the horse in front of his shoulder and facing toward his neck; take the off rein close against the bit in the right hand, the near rein in the same way in the left hand, the thumbs toward each other, the little fingers outward; bring the right hand toward the body, and at

the same time extend the left arm so as to turn the horse's head to the right.

The force employed must be gradual and proportioned to the resistance met with, and care must be taken not to bring the horse's nose too close to his chest. If the horse move backward, continue the pressure until, finding it impossible to avoid the restraint imposed by the bit, he stands still and yields to it.

When the bend is complete, the horse holds his head without any restraint, and champs the bit; then make much of him and let him resume his natural position by degrees, without throwing his head around hurriedly.

A horse, as a rule, champs the bit when he ceases to resist.

The horse's neck is bent to the left in a similar manner, the man standing on the off side.

**436.** *To arch the neck.* Being on the near side of the horse: Cross the reins behind the horse's jaw, taking the near rein in the right hand, the off rein in the left, at about six inches from the rings, and draw them across each other till the horse gives way to the pressure and brings his nose in. Prevent the horse from raising his head by lowering the hands. When the horse gives way to the cross-pressure of the reins, ease the hand and make much of him.

**437.** *To lower the head.* Being mounted: Take the right rein in the right hand, the left rein in the left, and feel lightly the mouth of the horse; then, holding the hands low, play with the bit, gently drawing in the reins as the horse drops his nose. When the horse, opening his mouth, yields the lower jaw to the bit, and brings in his head so that the face is vertical, release the tension of the reins, and caress the horse for his obedience. By degrees the horse can be taught to depress the head to any extent.

**438.** *To elevate the head.* Being mounted: Hold the reins separately, as prescribed above, and with arms ex-

tended forward, make light pulls upward upon the reins; when the horse has obeyed, lower the hands so that the horse can lower his muzzle, and then quietly demand that the face of the animal shall be brought into the vertical position.

**439.** *To carry the head to the right.* Being mounted: Hold the reins as previously prescribed, and, drawing the right rein toward the body, carry the head of the horse a little to the right, using the left hand to measure the effect of the right, to keep the face of the horse vertical, and to aid in keeping the jaw pliant. The rider should be satisfied with slow progress, but in time the head should be brought round so that the face, with the nose down, shall look to the rear. By this exercise the head and neck are suppled and made submissive. After the head has been carried to the right, the left hand, supported by the right, will carry the head back to the front, and the vertical position of the head demanded by a play of both reins. In a similar manner, the head will be carried to the left.

**440.** After the horse has submitted quietly to this instruction, he will be required to move forward.

For this purpose the rider takes the snaffle rein in each hand and feels lightly the horse's mouth; the man with the longe leads the horse forward and longes him first to the left and then to the right, at a walk; if the horse shows any disposition to kick or plunge, the longe is shaken lightly to engage his attention.

After a short lesson, the rider dismounts, the horse is petted and dismissed.

These lessons are continued until the horse can be made to go forward, to the right and left, to halt, and rein back by application of the aids.

### *Throwing the Horse, etc.*

**441.** The basis of the following system is the throwing of the horse, by which he is convinced of his own helplessness and of man's power over him. He is thus

made to submit to control without exciting his resentment or suffering physical pain other than that resulting from his own resistance.

The application of this system supposes the man to act with deliberation and good judgment; to speak in a kind voice and never use harsh treatment; also, that each trooper throws his own horse, that mutual benefit may result.

During each drill, every horse present is thrown or made to lie down three or four times, and in exceptional cases oftener. The application of the system will at first be confined to simply throwing the horse or making him lie down, and later to firing in the vicinity and then around and over him while lying down. These results are attained progressively. The system may also be applied for the purpose of disciplining refractory horses at mounted formations.

To attain the most satisfactory results, the system must be applied with persistence and without long intermissions.

**442.** This method is a modification of the one generally known as "Rarey's Method." The horse is equipped with the watering bridle and surcingle. The surcingle is buckled securely, not tightly, around the horse's body just back of the withers. The horse is taken to an open space, preferably covered with turf, free from stones, sticks, glass, etc., that might injure the horse's knees. The trooper is provided

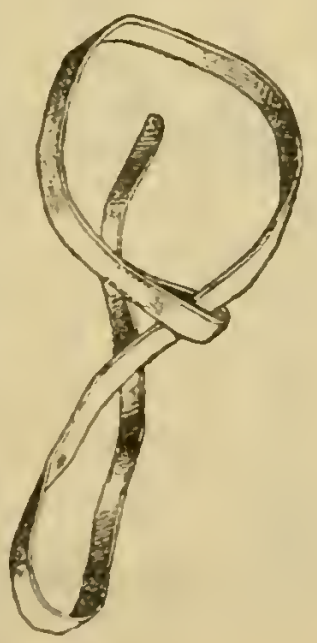


Fig. 1.

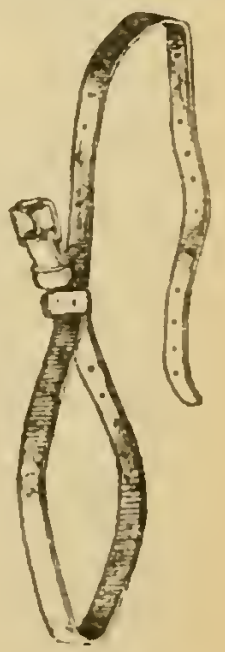


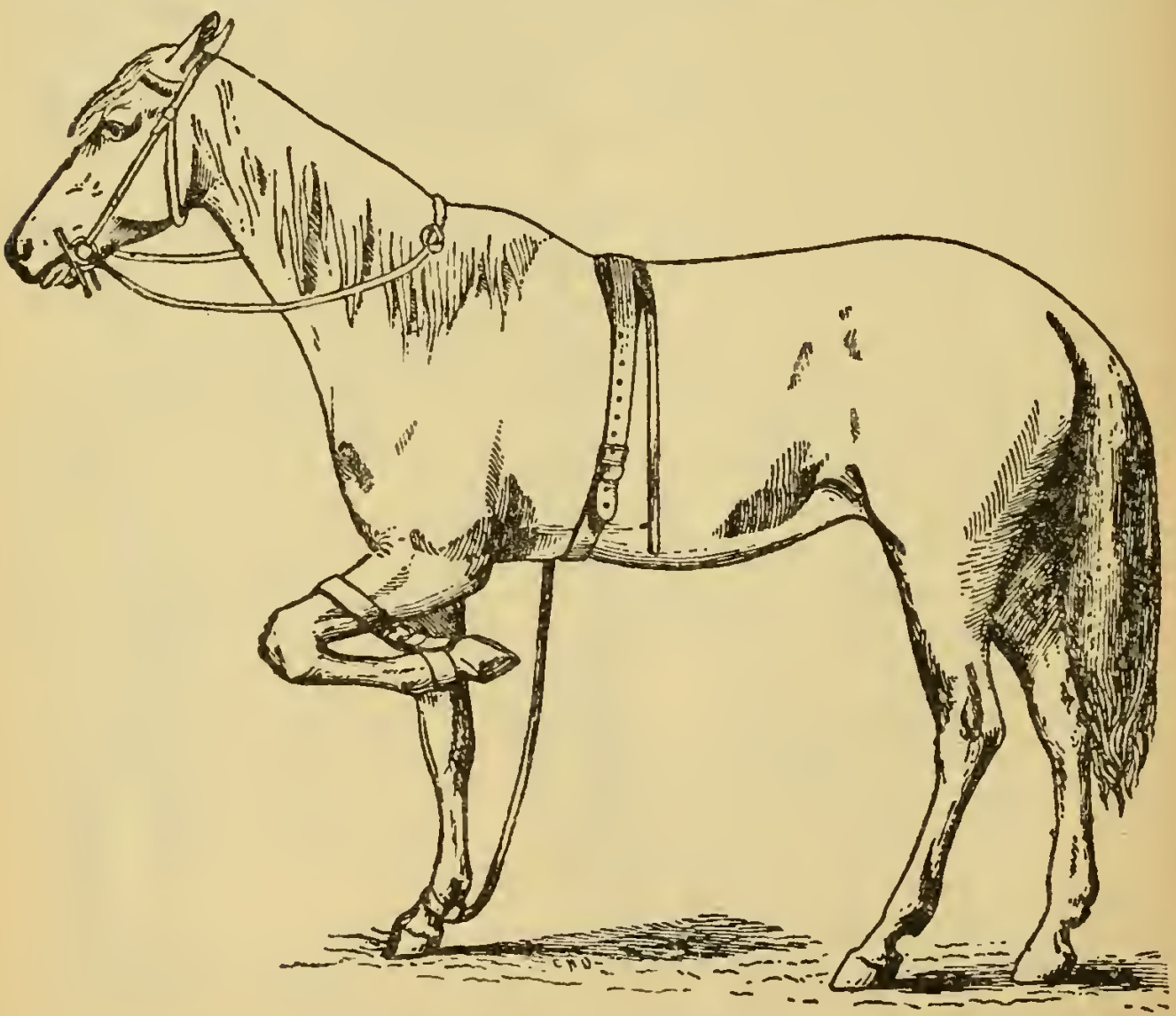
Fig. 2.

Pl. 82, Par. 442.

with two strong straps. "No. 1 (Fig. 1, Pl. 82)" is about ten feet long; one end of it, about one inch wide, is made in a loop or has an iron ring sewed fast. "No. 2 (Fig. 2, Pl. 82)" is about three feet six inches long and from one and a half to two inches wide, one end having a strong buckle and two keepers (one on each side of the strap).

In the absence of straps as specified, the halter strap may be substituted for "No. 1" and the stirrup strap for "No. 2."

Put No. 1 strap once around the off fore pastern, passing the free end of the strap through the loop or ring, making a slip loop; draw the strap taut and pass the free



Pl. 83, Par. 442.

end over the horse's back from the off side and under the surcingle from front to rear, the free end hanging down on the near side; see that the loop around the pastern has no twist in it. Pass the free end of No. 2 through the inside keeper and make a slip loop; raise the near forefoot, place the loop around the pastern with the buckle outside, and draw it snug; raise the heel against the forearm, pass the free end of the strap from the inside over the forearm, and buckle the strap sufficiently tight to hold the leg in this position. Let the bridle reins either hang down or place them on the neck; it is important that the off forefoot be kept from the ground after the horse first raises it, and this will be more surely secured if both hands are used at strap No. 1 during the first plunge, although the horse will be prevented from plunging so violently if the reins be held in the hand and pulled down to prevent raising the head.

The trooper takes his place on the near side of and close to the horse, behind the surcingle, the left foot in advance; the left hand grasps securely the free end of No. 1; if long enough, make a turn around the hand; the right hand grasps the same strap loosely, forefingers close to surcingle, back of the hand against the horse's back. Quietly and gently urge the horse to move; the instant he raises his foot pull the strap quickly downward with the left hand, bringing the heel against the forearm, the strap slipping through the right hand which should be kept in place, but which grasps the strap as soon as the foot is sufficiently raised, and holds it firmly; make a turn with the strap around the right hand and take both reins in the left hand on the near side of the horse. The horse is now brought to his knees; bring the horse's nose well to the left and raised, placing the right shoulder and arm against the horse's side, thus indicating to him that he is to lie on his right side. It is probable that he will rear and plunge to free himself from restraint, but as he moves so should the trooper maintain-

ing his position relative to the horse and a firm hold of the strap. Many horses will remain in the kneeling position for some time and this they should be permitted to do until ready, of their own volition, to lie down; the trooper should not urge his horse further than by commanding DOWN, in a deliberate but gentle voice, and this word is repeated at opportune times until the horse goes down; no other word should be permitted. The trooper will not be allowed to push the horse down, one object in this training being to teach the horse to lie down of his own volition, at command. After plunging about until exhausted, the horse will remain a short time in the kneeling position and then lie down. The trooper maintains his hold of the strap and reins until the horse is quiet and shows no immediate disposition to attempt to rise; or he has the strap and reins so placed that he can grasp them the instant the horse attempts to get up.

To dispel his fears and reconcile him to his new position, he should be petted, spoken to in a kindly tone of voice, and generally made much of. When he becomes quiet and ceases to struggle, the trooper should pass around him, handle his feet, straighten out and rub his legs. If the horse shows no inclination to rise before being told to do so, the strap may be unfastened and removed, but so long as the eye shows a wild, startled expression the strap should not be removed. *The eye is the index of the horse's feelings and disposition, and if closely observed will always betray his intentions.*

After remaining in the lying position for a short time after the straps have been removed and he no longer struggles or attempts to rise, or if he attempts to rise and can not be prevented from doing so, the trooper should raise the horse's head a little with the reins, and command: UP.

When the horse rises, he should be made much of and given to understand that he has done what was desired of him. Repeat this exercise three or four times at the

first drill; it will be found better not to have the exercise repeated too rapidly.

**443.** The horse having been thrown and handled on several successive days, and there being reason to suppose that he understands for what purpose the straps have been used, he may be taught to lie down without using them. The horse is equipped as before. The trooper with the left hand raises the near forefoot and holds it in the same position as when strapped up: the left hand also holds the reins; with the right hand he grasps the surcingle and pulls downward and commands: DOWN, holding the left foreleg until the horse drops on both knees. If the horse be slow in dropping on his knees, the trooper may lightly touch him on the off fore leg, at the same time commanding: DOWN; under no circumstances should the leg be kicked or force used to compel the horse to bend his knees. If the horse has been sufficiently and properly instructed, he will kneel and lie down, after which he should be caressed and made much of. If the horse refuse to lie down, the straps should at once be used, and the horse thrown several times before making another attempt to get him down without them.

**444.** To teach the horse to lie down at command, the trooper holds the reins in the left hand; he lightly taps the horse on the leg with the right hand and commands: DOWN; the horse will probably turn round on his forefeet a few times, with head lowered, to make an examination of the ground, then drop on his knees and lie down. He should then be made much of. If the horse refuses to obey the command, raise the forefoot as in Par. 443, and if still obdurate, throw the horse. The trooper must persevere until by one of the methods the horse is compelled to lie down. At this stage great care and patience must be exercised, as harsh treatment, ill-temper, or failure to compel the horse to obey may defeat the advantage of previous instruction.

**445.** It will be found that some horses, even after

having been repeatedly thrown, will refuse to lie down quietly after the straps have been removed. In such a case, after the horse has been thrown, the free end of strap No. 1 is brought down and fastened to No. 2 on the near leg, so as to keep the off foreleg in the bent position. Quit the horse and permit him to struggle until exhausted and willing to remain quiet. The trooper should now handle him; if the horse makes no further struggles to free himself, and the eye indicates submission, the straps should gradually be removed. This lesson is repeated until the horse remains quiet while down.

To hold the horse after the straps have been removed, place the knee against the horse's head just behind the ear, and securely holding the reins close to the bit, raise the horse's nose off the ground.

### *"Grace's Method."*

**446.** The horse is equipped with a surcingle, on which is securely fastened a ring placed over the horse's back. The trooper is provided with strap No. 2 and a rope fifteen to twenty feet long. Strap up the near forefoot; tie the rope around the horse's neck just behind the poll, place the rope in the horse's mouth from the near side, pass it back on the off side and through the surcingle ring, holding it sufficiently taut to keep it in the horse's mouth.

The trooper standing on the near side opposite and two or three yards from the croup, gently pulls on the rope until the horse turns his head a little to the off side, and then gives a quick, strong, and continuous pull until the horse goes down on his near side.

Keeping the rope taut prevents the horse from rising. Reverse the method to throw him on his off side.

### *To Accustom the Horse to the Report of Firearms.*

**447.** This part of the horse's education should not

be commenced until he has become so familiar with the straps that he makes no resistance when they are applied, and has become accustomed to lying down. The horse is thrown and secured (Par. 445). He is then shown the pistol, allowed to smell it, made familiar with the sound of the cocking and the falling of the hammer, the trooper at the same time talking to and caressing him to allay his fears. A blank cartridge is fired near him. The horse will be startled, but his fears will be dispelled by kind words and caresses. The horse's fears having been quieted, other shots will be fired, observing the same caution. At first, vicious or very timid horses will probably rise to a kneeling position after each shot.

Great care should be exercised that the pistol be not discharged too near the horse's ears, nor so close to him that the powder will burn him; a horse once injured in this way will nearly always be nervous while firing is going on.

This lesson is repeated several times. When the horse no longer flinches materially, nor struggles after a shot is fired, the straps may be removed and the drill continued; the trooper, however, places himself in a position to hold the horse down in case he attempts to rise.

The horses having been taught individually will be made to lie down on the skirmish line and accustomed to the firing by volley and at will.

A horse having been trained to remain quiet lying down during firing, will generally be indifferent to firing under other circumstances, provided he has not been injured by the firearm.

### *Management of Vicious Horses.*

**448.** After a stubborn horse has been thrown several times, it may happen that he will not permit his forefoot to be strapped up, or a vicious horse may resist by rearing, plunging, or kicking. In such cases another strap,

No. 3, may be nec essary. It is a leather surcingle to which two iron rings, two feet six inches apart, are securely fastened. Two long No. 1 straps are used. One is placed on each front pastern without raising the foot, the free end being run through one of the rings on the surcingle, and then both are held as a pair of driving lines by a trooper in rear of the horse; another trooper approaches and attempts to take up a forefoot. When the horse strikes, rears, or plunges, the trooper in rear pulls the lines taut and the horse is brought to his knees; after this is repeated several times the horse will allow his foot to be strapped up. Should the horse stand or refuse to move, the whip may be used.

**449.** The same principle is used for disciplining horses that rear, plunge, or buck when the trooper is mounted. In this case the mounted trooper retains hold of the straps and exerts sufficient force, when the horse is refractory, to bring him to his knees. The same means may be used to discipline horses that refuse to carry double, the trooper in front holding the straps.

**450.** To break him of kicking, the horse is first thrown. A No. 1 strap is secured to each hind pastern; the free end of each is passed through the rings of No. 3 and fastened to the bit rings. The horse is then made to rise and every provocation resorted to to make him kick. This is continued until he refuses to move his hind legs. The method used in Par. 448 is useful in this connection.

**451.** Another method for disciplining horses that balk, buck, etc., is to *whirl* them. The trooper being on the near side of the horse takes the halter strap or bridle reins in the left hand about one foot from the head, draws the head around to the left, passes the right hand over the rump, grasps the tail and makes the horse turn rapidly to the left several times, until the horse becomes dizzy and nearly ready to fall. To start him and give celerity to his movements, administer an occa-

sional blow with the top of the foot across the buttock. By this method the will of the horse is brought into submission by a few moderate efforts of the trainer.

**452.** Another method for throwing a horse for disciplinary purposes: Being mounted, reach forward with the right hand to the right of the horse's neck, grasp the left branch of the bit, pull the horse's head well around to the right, the nearer to his side the better, carry the right leg near to the left as in dismounting; make a sudden lurch to the horse's left, thus throwing him off his center of gravity and bringing him to the ground; as the horse falls, the rider must push himself away from the horse, else he may fall under him.

**453.** Horses that shy, etc., may be treated in this way: Tie a rope with a slip-knot around the body over the loins, the knot under the belly; the free end of the rope is passed under the horse between his forelegs and carried up through the halter ring and made fast to a suspended rope, sustained in place by guy ropes to prevent too much lateral motion.

The horse being thus secured, such articles as robes, blankets, etc., of which he may have shown fear, are brought into his sight, and he is encouraged to smell or touch them. Pistol-firing, etc., is practiced until he ceases to show signs of alarm.

The object in having a rope suspended is to prevent the horse from hurting himself and yet allow him freedom to move his haunches. The picket rope if high enough will do.

### *Gaits of Horses.*

**454.** The gaits are the walk, trot, canter, and gallop.

The *walk* is at the rate of four miles an hour, or one mile in fifteen minutes, or 117⅓ yards in a minute.

The *maneuvering trot* is at the rate of eight miles an hour, or one mile in seven and one-half minutes, or 234⅔

yards a minute. For purposes of individual instruction, the rate of the trot may be diminished to the rate of six or six and one-half miles an hour by the commands *slow trot.* At the command *trot out,* the rate is eight miles an hour.

The *canter* is at the rate of eight miles an hour and is generally used for individual instruction.

The *maneuvering gallop* is at the rate of twelve miles an hour, or one mile in five minutes, or 352 yards a minute. The length of the stride is about ten feet.

The *full* or *extended gallop* is at the rate of sixteen miles an hour.

The *charge* is at full speed, and is determined by the speed of the slower horses.

To instruct in the maneuvering cadences, stakes are placed on the drill ground, on a convenient line for a long track, 117⅓ yards apart. The troopers and guides are required to march over the spaces at the rate of one, two, three, or four per minute, according as the gait is the walk, the trot, canter, gallop, or full gallop.

Instruction in each gait should be practiced, individually and collectively, until each trooper knows whether he has the proper speed or cadence by the rhythm of motion.

Horses may be trained to walk in column under favorable conditions 4¼ miles an hour, making 125 steps a minute, the stride being 0.98 yard.

The average walk of a horse is a mile in sixteen minutes, 3.75 miles an hour, making 120 steps (110 yards) per minute, the stride being 0.916 yard.

The average trot of a horse is a mile in eight minutes, 7.5 miles an hour, making 180 steps (220 yards) per minute, the stride being 1.22 yards.

Multiply the number of yards passed over in one minute by .0341, or in one second by 2.046, and the result will be very nearly the rate in miles per hour.

### *Analysis of Gaits.*

**455.** The walk is a gait of four distinct beats, each foot being planted in a regular order of succession; *e. g.*, right forefoot, left hindfoot, left forefoot, right hindfoot, and so on.

The trot has two distinct beats; the horse springs from one diagonally disposed pair of feet to the other; between the steps, all the feet are in the air.

The canter has three beats, the regular order of succession being: *e. g.*, right hindfoot, left hindfoot and right forefoot, left forefoot, and so on. When cantering to the right hand, the horse goes into the air from the left forefoot.

The gallop has four beats, the regular order of succession being: *e. g.*, right hindfoot, left hindfoot, right forefoot, left forefoot, and so on. When galloping to the right hand, the horse goes into the air from the left forefoot.

### *Swimming Horses and Fording.*

**456.** As it is often necessary for cavalry to cross streams by swimming, the exercise is important, as it gives confidence to men and horses.

The horses are at first equipped with the watering bridle, and are barebacked. The reins are on the horse's neck just in front of the withers and knotted so that they will not hang low enough to entangle the horse's feet, care being taken to have them so placed as to permit the horse to push his nose well out and to have entire freedom of the head. The horse should be watered, but not too freely, before entering him into the stream.

The trooper mounts, rides into the stream, and when he gets into deep water, drops reins, siezes a lock of the mane with the upstream hand, allows his body to drift off quietly to the downstream side of the horse, and floats or swims flat on the water, guiding the horse, when necessary, by splashing water against his head,

only using the reins when the splashing fails. When the horse touches bottom at the landing, the trooper pulls himself on the horse's back and takes the reins. The horse is easily controlled when swimming; he is also easily confused; it is therefore necessary that the trooper should be gentle and deliberate. The trooper must be cautioned that pulling on the reins is apt to pull the horse over backward, and that when the horse touches bottom he may begin to plunge.

The trooper will also be required to swim holding the horse's tail, the horse towing him.

After the trooper and horse have gained confidence, the trooper will be required to be seated on his horse, with or without saddle, while swimming. The trooper's weight presses the horse down and impedes his movements, and when saddled, the trooper should hold the knees well up to lessen the resistance, and steady his seat by holding on the mane or the pommel of the saddle.

With some horses, especially those that swim low, it is advisable that the trooper sit behind the saddle, to allow the forequarters to float high.

The troopers will also be practiced in swimming the horses when fully armed and equipped. The stirrups are crossed and secured. The sling belt is taken off the person, but attached to the carbine, which is carried at advance carbine; the sling is left attached to assist in recovering the carbine if it should be dropped in the water; the horse is guided by the hands. The men are instructed in crossing swift running water to keep their eyes fixed on the opposite bank.

When large, swift rivers are to be swum, too hazardous for all the horses to be ridden, the bridle reins are secured to avoid the danger of their being caught by the horse's feet, or by those of another horse swimming close to him; the stirrups are crossed and secured; a trained horse is selected for a leader and is ridden without saddle; all the horses are led or driven to the approach and

can generally be made to take the water without much difficulty. The approach should be selected at some distance above the landing. If practicable, a few horses should be taken over and placed at the landing, and some men stationed to receive the horses as they land.

If there be a pontoon bridge in the immediate vicinity, the crossing should be below it.

When a horse is towed or led from a boat he should be held astern of the oars, and on the downstream side or in the wake.

To cross the men who can not swim, the horses may be placed in column, the halter strap of each horse tied to the tail of the horse preceding. Those men who can not swim are mounted on their horses. A trooper who can swim is mounted on a leader and leads the first horse in the column with a lariat.

This method is hazardous, and much depends upon the coolness and skill of the leading trooper and horse.

When a stream with a treacherous bottom is to be forded, stakes or bushes should be placed so as to mark the limits of the ford, or may be placed so as to mark the dangerous places only.

When the stream is to be forded at night, lighted lanterns should be fastened to the stakes and one displayed at the landing or a fire built there.

When the stream has a swift current and the water is above the horses' bellies, the subdivisions should cross with as wide a front as practicable, to permit a freer flow or prevent damming of the water, which might carry a horse off his feet; but in crossing a dangerous ford, the column of twos is less objectionable than the column of fours.

Cavalry should generally cross streams above infantry or so far below that the water will not be dammed against them.

# SCHOOL OF THE TROOP.

**457.** The management of the troop, and its effectiveness are dependent upon the grouping of the men into squads, under the leadership and immediate control of the non-commissioned officers, who are held responsible for the discipline and order in camp and quarters, and are trained as leaders of groups for battle.

**458.** When troops are small, two or more may occasionally be united, and the troop thus formed drilled by one of the captains; the lieutenants command the platoons and the sergeants and corporals are posted according to rank. One object of thus uniting troops is to give officers experience in handling a troop of the legal maximum or war strength.

**459.** Movements are first taught at the walk, that the mechanism may be thoroughly understood; habitually thereafter they will be at the trot. They will not be ordered so as to succeed each other too rapidly; that is, one movement must be completed before another is ordered.

**460.** Mounted drills will frequently be conducted without saddles or blankets, also with the saddles packed.

**461.** The captain may require the chiefs of platoons to repeat such commands as are to be immediately executed by their platoons. In successive movements, each chief will give his commands at the proper time and place.

**462.** The captain is held responsible for the theoretical and practical instruction of his officers and non-commissioned officers. He requires them to study and recite these regulations so that they can explain thoroughly every movement before it is put into execution.

The lieutenants will frequently drill the troop under the superintendence of the captain. Sergeants should be capable of drilling the platoons.

### *Formation of the Troop.*

**463.** The troop is formed in single rank and is divided into two, three, or four platoons, according to its strength; the division is so made that the platoons may be of nearly equal strength. Habitually the platoons should consist of not less than four nor more than six sets of fours.

When the rank is composed of less than twenty-four troopers, the division into platoons may be omitted.

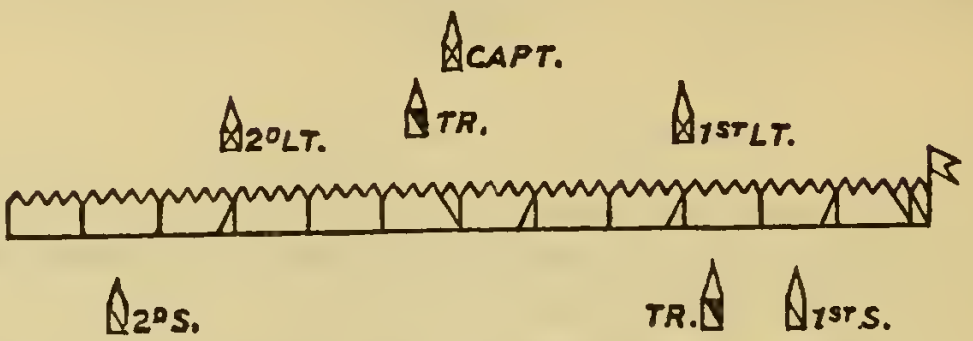
In whatever direction the troop faces, the platoons are designated from the right when in line, and from the head when in column, *first platoon, second platoon,* and so on.

**464.** When the platoon is composed of four or more sets of fours, it is divided into two squads of nearly equal strength, the division falling between sets of fours. A non-commissioned officer is assigned as the leader of each squad and placed as No. 1 of its right four. Non-commissoned officers and experienced privates are assigned as No. 1 of the other fours.

The squads, while in the rank with the troop, are designated as *right squad, first platoon; left squad, first platoon,* etc.; when in extended order or detached, each squad may be designated by the name of the non-commissioned officer in command for the time being; *e. g.,* Sergeant (or Corporal) ———'s squad.

**465.** The captain may require the troop to be formed so that men of the same squad, as provided in Par. 259, A. R., 1889, shall be in consecutive order; this arrangement in squads may be made according to size, so that when the troop is formed, the tallest men are in the center and the shortest on the flanks.

*Posts of Officers, Non-commissioned Officers, and Trumpeters in Line.*




Pl. 84, Par. 466.

**466.** The *captain* is six yards in front of the center of the troop (Par. 13).

When the troop is divided into two platoons the *first lieutenant* commands the first platoon and is two yards in front of its center; the *second lieutenant* commands the second platoon and is two yards in front of its center.

The *first sergeant* is two yards in rear of the second four from the right; the *second sergeant* is two yards in rear of the second four from the left. They are called respectively the *right* and *left principal guides;* in addition to their duties as principal guides, they perform the duties of file-closers.

When the troop is divided into three or more platoons, the center platoons, in the absence of officers, are commanded by the senior sergeants in the order of rank; when there are three platoons, the chief of the center platoon is two yards in front of the right or left four of his platoon. When there are four platoons, each chief of platoon is two yards in front of the center of his platoon.

One sergeant carries the guidon (see Par. 1001), and is posted on the right of the troop; he is not counted in the rank.

Absent officers and non-commissioned officers are generally replaced by the next in rank or grade.

When the trumpeters are not united, one trumpeter accompanies the captain and is one yard to the left and one yard to the rear of the captain's horse; the other trum-

peter is in the line of file-closers, in rear of the third four, to the left of the right principal guide.

On the march, when required to play, the trumpeter march at the head of the column.

### *To Form the Troop.*

**467.** In case of alarm or surprise, *to horse* is sounded. The men then saddle, pack, bridle, and mount with the utmost celerity, and repair to the place of assembly, which is always previously designated.

**468.** At the sounding of the *assembly,* the first sergeant takes his position in front of where the center of the troop is to form, and facing it, commands: FALL IN.

The guidon places himself facing to the front where the right of the troop is to rest, and at such a point that the center of the troop will be six yards from and opposite the first sergeant; the men fall in on the left of the guidon; the other sergeants assist in the formation and take their posts.

The first sergeant brings the troop to the right shoulder, he himself taking that position, and calls the roll; each man as his name is called answers "Here" and comes to the order. The first sergeant marches the troop, habitually in column of fours, to the stables, causes the men to saddle, bridle, and prepare to lead out.

**469.** When formed by squads (Par. 465), the senior non-commissioned officer of each squad may be required to call the roll of his squad; each chief of squad takes post two yards in front of his squad, calls the roll and faces to the front. When all have faced to the front, the first sergeant commands: REPORT. The chiefs of squads, commencing on the right, report the results to the first sergeant; each, as soon as he has reported, takes his post in line.

**470.** The first sergeant commands: LEAD OUT. The

troopers lead out: the guidon, habitually mounted, takes post where the right of the rank is to rest, and faces in the direction in which it is to face; the troopers form on the left of the guidon at stand to horse, in single rank and with intervals of eighteen inches between horses; non-commissioned officers, as far as practicable, take their places at once, or take post in rear of and near their places in line.

The first sergeant, mounted, commands: CALL OFF.

The troopers count consecutive numbers from right to left, commencing on the right of the rank. The first sergeant then divides the troop into platoons and squads, causes the non-commissioned officers to take their posts, and commands: 1. *Platoons,* 2. COUNT FOURS. If there be but one trooper in the left four of a platoon, he is ordered into the line of file closers, or assigned to an incomplete four in another platoon; if the left four consists of two or three troopers, it may act as if complete; or that number may be assigned to incomplete fours in other platoons or may be ordered into the line of file-closers.

The first sergeant, six yards in front of the center of the troop, turns about so as to face toward the captain, salutes with the right hand, reports the result of the roll call, and then without command takes his post, habitually at a trot or canter.

The chiefs of platoons, as soon as the first sergeant reports, take post ten yards in front of and facing their platoons, and draw saber.

The captain takes post twelve yards in front of and facing the center of the troop; he returns the salute of the first sergeant, draws saber, and commands: 1. PREPARE TO MOUNT, 2. MOUNT, 3. *Form,* 4. RANK.

At the command *rank,* the chiefs of platoons move forward, turn to the left about and take their posts.

In turning about, when moving to and from their posts,

officers mounted, habitually turn to the left about (Par. 301).

**471.** If the formal roll call is to be omitted, the troop may be assembled in column of fours; the first sergeant indicates the direction the column is to face; he may post the guidon for this purpose; at the assembly the first sergeant commands: 1. *In column of fours*, 2. FALL IN.

The men form in column of fours, the leading four abreast of the guidon and between him and the first sergeant.

*To Form the Troop for Dismounted Service.*

**472.** The men fall in, the roll is called, the troop is formed and turned over, and the officers and non-commissioned officers take posts as at mounted formations, except that, when armed with the carbine, the first sergeant salutes with the carbine salute and takes his post at quick time; the sergeants, who, in mounted formations have places in the rank, take post as file-closers between the first and second sergeants, and both trumpeters take post in the line of file-closers, between the principal guides.

Whenever a troop falls in without arms, the men form as when under arms.

Movements by the troop dismounted are executed as explained in the School of the Troop, conformably to the principles prescribed in the School of the Soldier (see Pars. 138 and 153).

*Alignments.*

**473.** The captain places himself on the flank toward which he wishes to align the troop, three yards from the point of rest, facing to the left or right according as the alignment is to be made to the right or left, and commands: GUIDES OUT.

The guidon moves quickly and takes post at the point of rest, facing to the front; the principal guide on the flank opposite the point of rest moves quickly and takes post,

a little more than the front of the troop from the guidon, on a line with the captain and guidon, facing to the front.

**474.** The alignments by trooper and troop are executed as explained in the School of the Trooper (Par. 381). The guidon and principal guide may first be established as in Par. 473. In the alignments by trooper, each chief of platoon moves up when his first trooper moves out; the captain may direct the chiefs of platoons to face their platoons; each chief of platoon faces to the front when the last man of his platoon has arrived on the line.

The captains, chiefs of platoons, and file-closers observe the requirements of Par. 381.

**475.** At the command *front*, the captain and principal guide take their posts.

In dressing, during drill movements, the troopers habitually align themselves without passaging.

Prompt alignment will be insisted upon.

*These rules are general.*

### *Being in Line, or Column of Platoons, to Dismount.*

**476.** At the command *prepare to dismount*, the chiefs of platoons move forward, turn to the left about and halt, so as to be about ten yards in front of their platoons.

*This rule is general.*

### *Being in Column of Fours or Twos, to Dismount.*

**477.** Being at a halt, or marching: 1. **PREPARE TO DISMOUNT**, 2. **DISMOUNT.**

Executed as in Par. 420.

The chiefs of platoons and file-closers turn outward from the column.

### *To Rest, and to Resume the Attention.*

**478.** The troop is rested and called to attention as in Pars. 286 and 287. After dismounting, the command *rest*, or *at ease*, may be given either before or after forming

rank; the chiefs of platoons dismount, and at the command *rest* may leave their places.

**479.** The troop executes the movements laid down in the The Squad Mounted on the principles therein explained, unless otherwise provided in this school, substituting *troop* for *squad* in the commands.

The same movements are applicable to platoons, detachments, details, etc., substituting their designation for *squad* in the commands.

### *To Dismiss the Troop.*

**480.** The captain causes the troop to dismount, and form rank, and directs the first sergeant: *Dismiss the troop;* the officers return saber and retire; the first sergeant salutes and the troop is dismissed (Par. 288).

### *To March in Line.*

**481.** When marching in line (Par. 385) if the guide be right or left, the guidon takes post by the side of the guide on the flank indicated; if the guide be center, the guidon takes post two yards in rear of the guide. He assists in regulating the march of the guide.

Marching in line, or in column of platoons, the guidon by his position indicates the direction of the guide. When the guide is changed by command, the guidon moves in rear of the rank to his new position.

According as the guide is right, left, or center, the chief of the right, left, center (or right center) platoon is responsible for the gait; the guide preserves the distance of two yards.

To halt the troop: 1. *Troop,* 2. HALT.

### *To Pass Obstacles.*

**482.** The captain breaks the troop into column of fours.

If the obstacle covers only one platoon, the chief of that platoon breaks it into column of fours to the front

on the most convenient flank; after passing the obstacle he re-forms line.

*Turnings.*

**483.** 1. *Troop right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH**, 3. **FRONT.**

Executed as in Par. 389.

The chiefs of platoons move by the shortest lines to their new positions; the guidon takes post abreast of the pivot trooper; each file-closer follows the trooper in front of him.

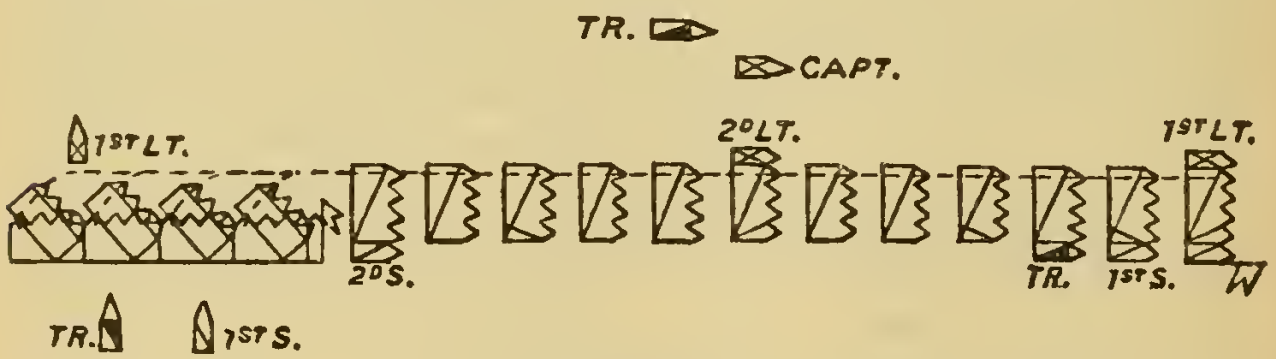
**484.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *turn*, 2. **MARCH**, 3. *Guide right* (*left* or *center*).

Executed as in Par. 390.

The guidon does not change position during the execution of the movement. The chiefs of platoons and file-closers move as in Par. 483.

*Movements by Fours, Twos, and Troopers.*

**485.** Being in line, to march in column of fours: 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH**; executed as in Par. 392; or, 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *forward*, 2. *Fours right* (or *left*), 3. **MARCH**; executed as in Par. 400.




Pl. 85, Par. 485.

Each chief of platoon takes post on the left of his leading four.

The guide is always, without indication, on the side toward the chiefs of platoons. The chief at the head of the column regulates the march of the leading guide.

The guidon marches abreast of the leading four, two, or trooper, on the side opposite the chiefs of platoons.

The principal guides march abreast of the second and rear fours, twos, or troopers; the other file-closers, if there be any, march abreast of the nearest fours, twos, or troopers; all on the side opposite the chiefs of platoons.

In column of fours, twos, or troopers, the captain marches opposite the center, on the side of the chiefs of platoons and six yards from the flank of the column.

**486.** In wheeling about in column of fours, twos, or troopers, the captain turns about and gains his interval; the chiefs of platoons and guidon turn about and hasten to their posts; the file-closers turn about individually and take their places abreast of their fours. All turn in the same direction as the fours wheel.

**487.** In wheeling about from line, the captain and chiefs of platoons pass around the flanks, or, when necessary, may pass between the fours. The guidon, moving by the shortest line, takes his place on the nearest flank or in rear of the center, according as he was posted before the about, or as may be directed by the captain; the file-closers pass around the flanks.

**488.** When the column is wheeled into line toward the side of the file-closers, each chief of platoon may pass between his leading four and the rear four of the preceding platoon; the trooper on the marching flank of the leading four slackens his gait to allow the chief of platoon to precede him; when necessary, the chiefs of platoons pass around the flanks; the captain and the file-closers pass around the flanks; if the line be halted, the guidon takes post on the marching flank of the leading four, unless otherwise directed by the captain.

**489.** When the column is formed on right (or left) into line toward the side of the chiefs of platoons, each file-closer follows the four nearest him, passing in front of the next following four; the guidon takes post abreast of the leading four at the point of rest.

**490.** When the column is formed front into line toward the side of the file-closers, each chief of platoon passes in front of his leading four, after the rear four of the preceding platoon ceases to oblique and begins to move forward; the file-closers pass around the flanks or between the fours; the guidon takes post abreast of the leading four at the point of rest.

**491.** The captain, in forming line from column of fours, goes to his position by the shortest line without passing between the fours.

**492.** Being in column of fours, twos or troopers, to change the guide or the chiefs of platoons to the opposite flank: 1. *Chiefs of platoons, on the right* (or *left*) *flank,* 2. MARCH.

The chief of the leading platoon, the guidon, and the leading principal guide pass by the head of the column to their new positions on the opposite flank; the other chiefs of platoons turn to the left about, the other file-closers to the right about, and passing by the rear of the column, change to the opposite flank and hasten to their posts.

The captain passes by the head or rear of the column.

When changing to the opposite flank of the column the chiefs of platoons pass between the column and the file-closers.

### *The Platoon Column.*

**493.** A *platoon column* is a troop in column of platoons.

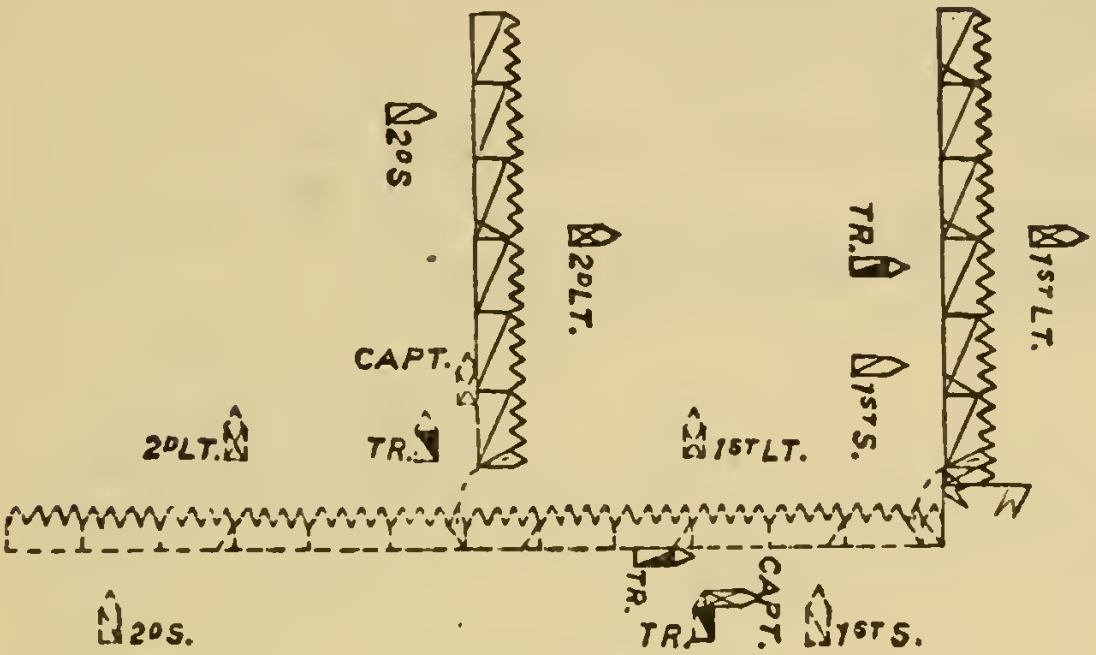
The distance between platoons, or platoon distance, is three yards less than platoon front.

The guidon is abreast of the leading platoon, on the side of the guide, or side toward which the column is dressed.

The captain is abreast of the center and six yards from the flank of the column, on the side of the guide, or side toward which the column is dressed.

*Being in Line, to Form Column of Platoons, Faced to the Right or Left.*

**494.** 1. *Platoons right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH.**




Pl. 86, Par. 494.

Each platoon executes the *turn and halt* as prescribed for the troop (Par. 483).

**495.** Each chief of platoon, as soon as his platoon is dressed, commands: **FRONT**, and takes his post in front of the center of his platoon, if not already there. *This rule is general for dressing a platoon column.*

*Being in Line, to March to the Right or Left in Column of Platoons.*

**496.** 1. *Platoons right* (or *left*) *turn*, 2. **MARCH**, 3. *Guide right* (or *left*).

Each platoon turns and advances as in Par. 484.

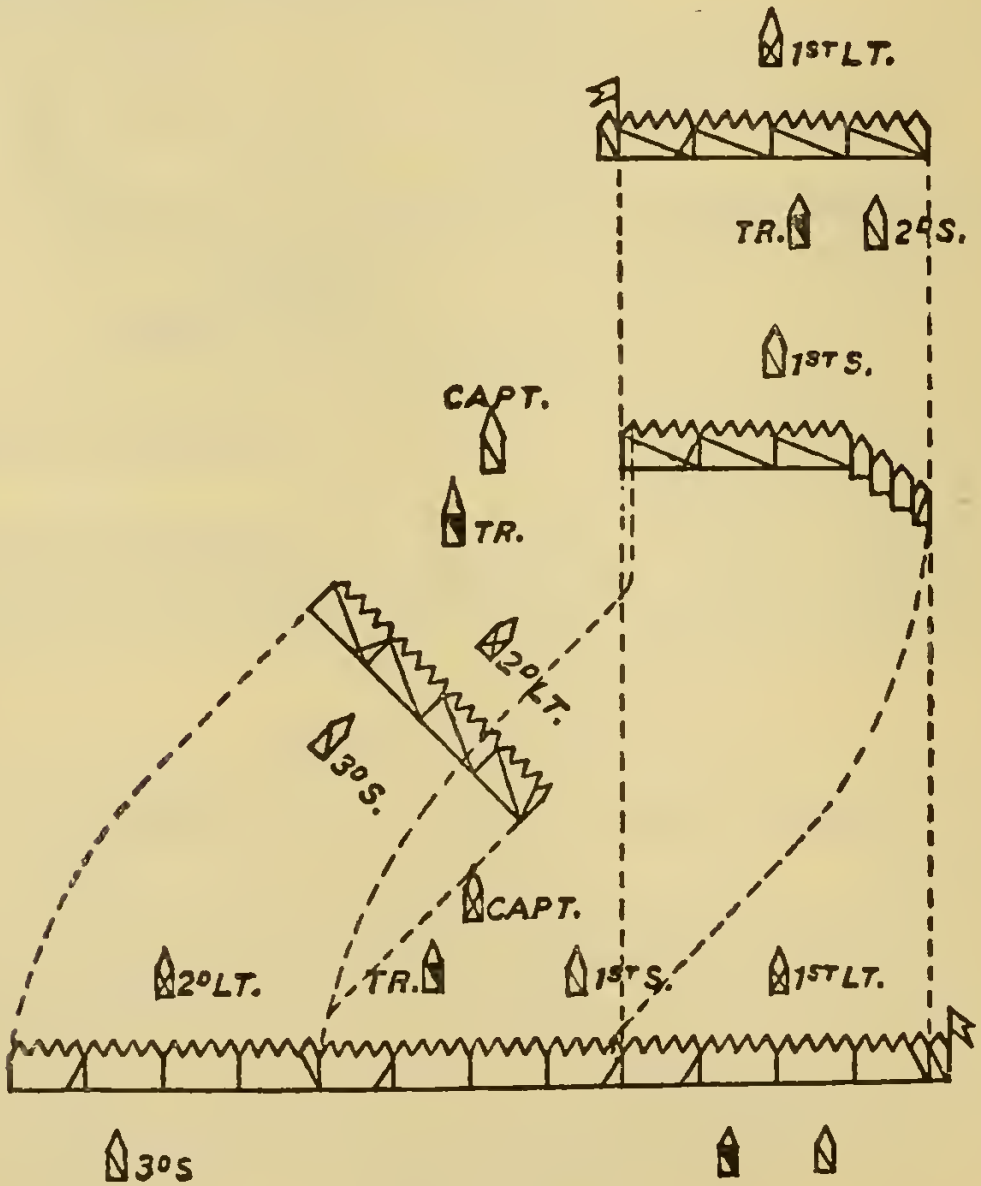
**497.** The chief of the leading platoon is responsible for the uniformity of the gait; the guide of that platoon maintains the distance of two yards from the chief of platoon and is responsible for the direction. The guidon assists in regulating the march of the leading guide. The guides of the platoons following the first follow in the trace of the one next in front at platoon distance.

The trace and distance, when lost, are gradually recovered. The trace is recovered by inclining slightly to the right or left. Distances are recovered by a slight increase or decrease of gait.

*These rules are general.*

*Being in Line, to March in Column of Platoons to the Front.*

**498.** Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *by platoons,* 2. **MARCH,** 3. *Guide left* (or *right*).




Pl. 87, Par. 498.

The right platoon advances at a walk; the other platoons successively execute *right half-turn*, each when the guide of the preceding platoon has advanced about half-platoon front; each chief of platoon, on the completion of the half-turn, commands: *Guide left,* and the platoon marches in the new direction until the left guide arrives near the trace of the leading platoon, when he commands: 1. *Left half-turn,* 2. MARCH.

If marching at a walk, at the command *march,* the right platoon continues the march; the other platoons halt, each chief giving the commands or signal; the movement is then completed as from a halt.

If marching at a trot, or at a walk and the command be *trot,* the right platoon moves at the trot; the others execute the *right half-turn,* the pivot troopers moving at the walk, and successively take the trot so as to follow at the proper distance.

If marching at the gallop, or at the trot and the command be *gallop,* the right platoon moves at the gallop; the others execute the *right half-turn,* the pivot troopers moving at the trot, and successively take the gallop so as to follow at the proper distance.

*Being in Column of Platoons at a Halt, to Advance.*

**499.** 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide right* (or *left*), 3. MARCH.

*Being in Column of Platoons, to Oblique.*

**500.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *oblique,* 2. MARCH.

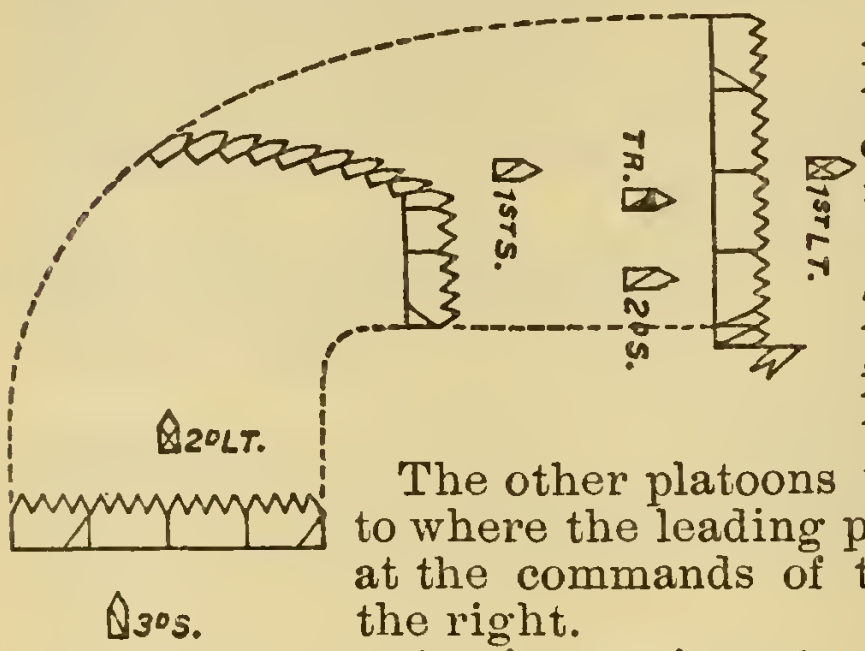
To resume the original direction: 1. *Forward,* 2. MARCH.

In obliquing in column of subdivisions, the subdivisions preserve their parallelism to their original front; if the subdivisions are unequal in size and the oblique is made toward the side opposite the guide, the guides during the oblique maintain the same relative positions they had when commencing the oblique.

*These rules are general.*

*Being in Column of Platoons, to Change Direction.*

**501.** Being in march: 1. *Column right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH.**




Pl. 88, Par. 501.

At the first command, the chief of the leading platoon commands: *Right turn.*

At the command *march,* repeated by the chief, the leading platoon turns to the right.

The other platoons march squarely up to where the leading platoon turned, and at the commands of their chiefs turn to the right.

As, in turning, the dress is always toward the pivot without command, each chief, upon the completion of the turn, cautions his subdivision: *Guide right* (or *left*), according as the guide was right or left before the turn.

*Column half-right* or *half-left,* is similarly executed; each chief giving the preparatory commands: *Right* (or *Left*) *half-turn.*

To put the column in march and change direction at the same time: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide right* (or *left*), 3. *Column right* (or *left*); or, 3. *Column half-right* (or *half-left*), 4. **MARCH.**

*To Face the Platoon Column to the Rear.*

**502.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*) *about,* 2. **MARCH,** 3. *Troop,* 4. **HALT.**

The command *halt* is given as the fours unite in line; the guidon turns about individually and moves up abreast of the leading platoon, on the nearest flank; the troopers dress to that flank and cast their eyes to the front without command. Should the platoons be unequal in size,

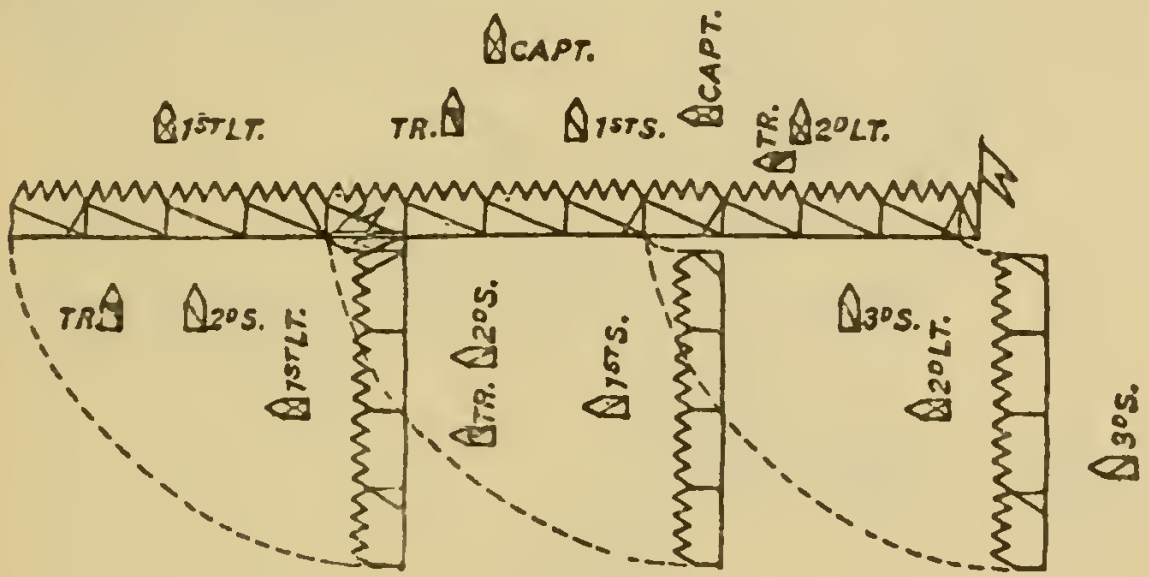
the guides regain the trace and distance when put in march.

*To March the Platoon Column to the Rear.*

**503.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*) *about*, 2. **MARCH**, 3. *Guide* (*left* or *right*).

*Being in Column of Platoons, to Form Line to the Right or Left.*

**504.** To form line and halt: 1. *Platoons right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH**, 3. **FRONT**.




Pl. 89, Par. 504.

The guidon takes post on the pivot flank of the rear platoon.

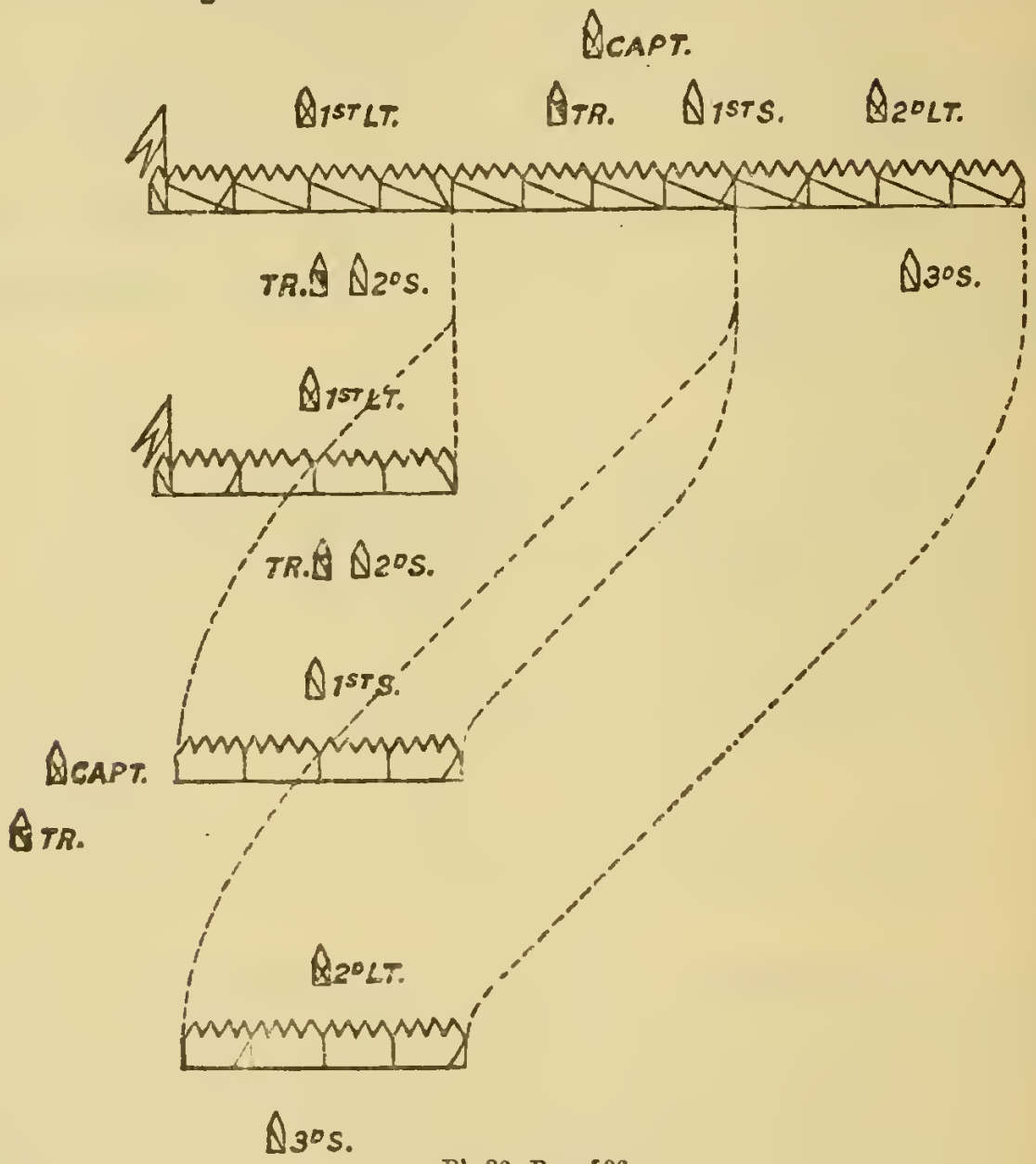
Before forming line, the captain, if necessary, may cause the guides to cover at the proper distance; this is usually done by putting the column in march and ordering the guide on the flank toward which the line is to be formed.

**505.** To form line and advance: 1. *Platoons right* (or *left*) *turn*, 2. **MARCH**, 3. *Guide right* (*left*, or *center*).

*Being in Column of Platoons to form Front into Line.*

**506.** Being at a halt: *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line*, 2. **MARCH**, 3. **FRONT**.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide left;* the other chiefs command: *Right half-turn.*




Pl. 90, Par. 506.

At the command *march,* repeated by the chiefs, the first platoon advances thirty yards, when its chief commands: 1. *Platoon,* 2. HALT, 3. *Left,* 4. DRESS; the other platoons execute *right half-turn;* on the completion of the half-turn each chief commands: *Guide left.* When the left guide of each platoon, marching in the new direction, arrives

one yard from the point opposite his place, the chief commands: 1. *Left half-turn,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Guide left.* Each chief halts his platoon just short of the line and commands: 1. *Left,* 2. DRESS.

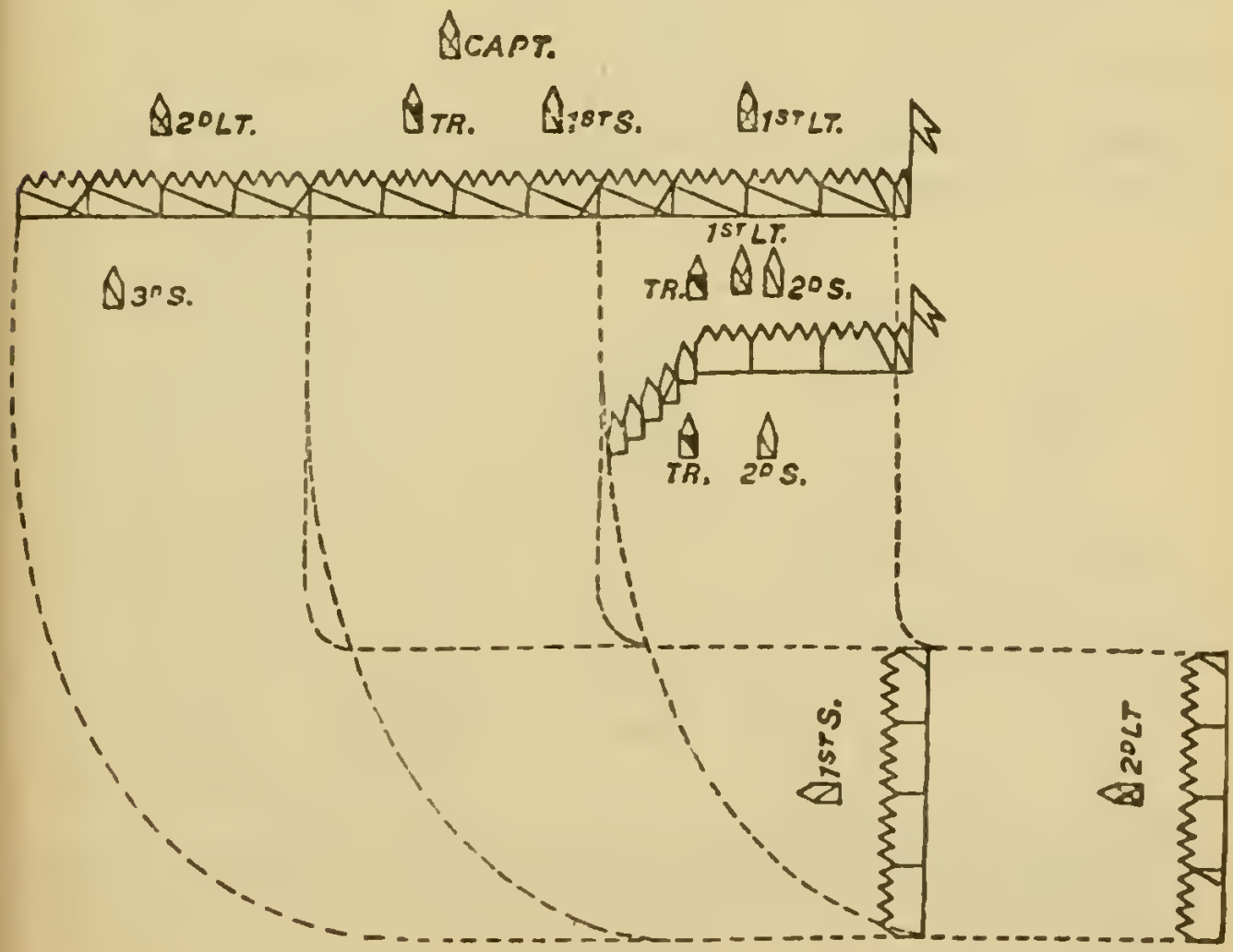
If marching, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Guide left.*

If executed at the trot or gallop, the captain commands: *Guide left,* immediately after the command *march.*

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

*Being in Column of Platoons, to Form on Right or Left into Line.*

**507.** Marching at a walk: 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line,* 2. MARCH, 3. FRONT.




Pl. 91, Par. 507.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Right turn.*

At the command *march,* repeated by its chief, the first platoon turns to the right; when the platoon has advanced thirty yards, the chief halts it and commands: 1. *Right,* 2. DRESS.

Each of the other platoons marches platoon front beyond the point where the one preceding began the turn, when, at the command of its chief, it turns to the right; the chief halts it near the line and then commands: 1. *Right,* 2. DRESS.

If executed from a halt, at the first command, the chiefs of platoons in rear of the first command: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide right,* and repeat the command *march.*

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

*Being in Line, to Advance in Line of Platoons in Columns of Fours.*

**508.** 1. *Platoons,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *forward,* 3. *Fours right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH, 5. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

Pl 92, Par. 508.

The captain takes post as in line. The announcement of the guide indicates the base platoon, but does not require a change of the position of the chiefs of platoons. The guidon takes post as in column of fours with the base platoon. If the guide be center, the center or right center platoon is the base platoon.

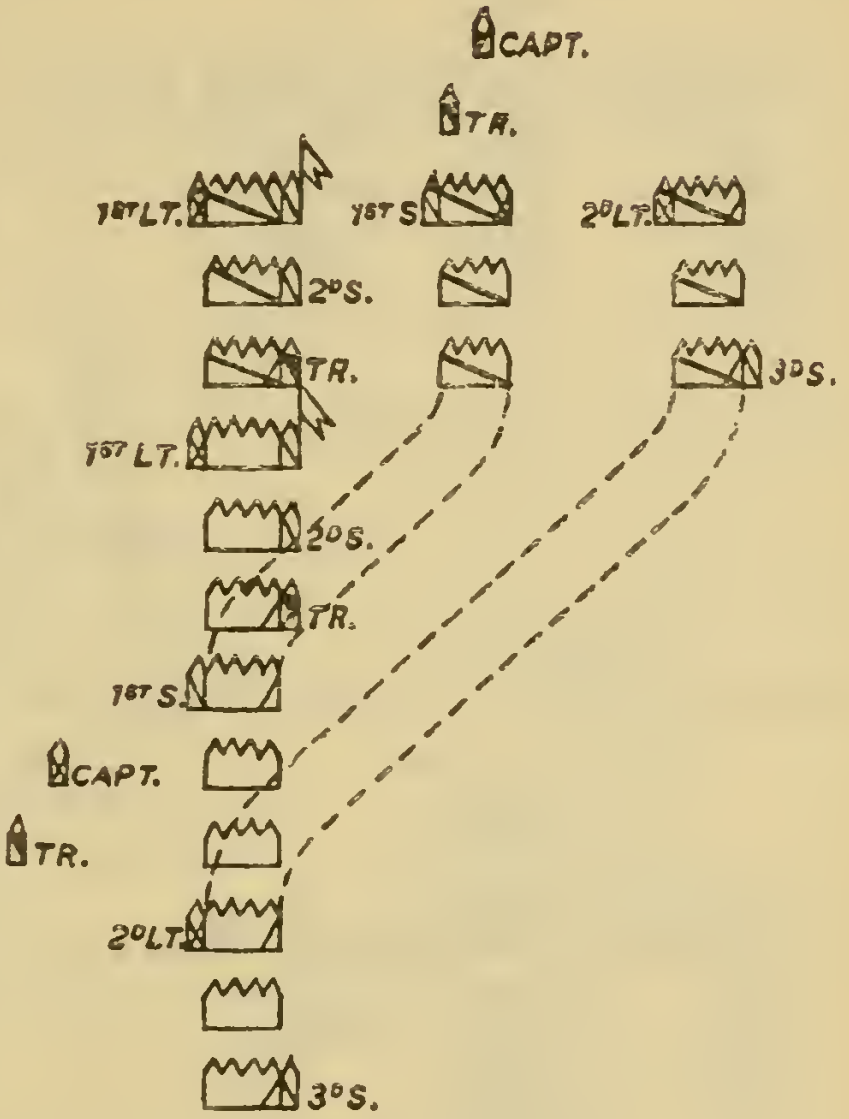
The interval between platoons is four yards less than platoon front.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Front into Line of Platoons in Columns of Fours.*

**509.** Being at a halt or marching at the walk: 1. *Right front into line,* 2. *Platoons in columns of fours,* 3. MARCH.

The chief of the first platoon marches his platoon thirty yards to the front and halts it; each of the other platoons is marched by the shortest line until platoon distance in rear of and opposite its place in line. Each chief halts his platoon when abreast of the first platoon.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

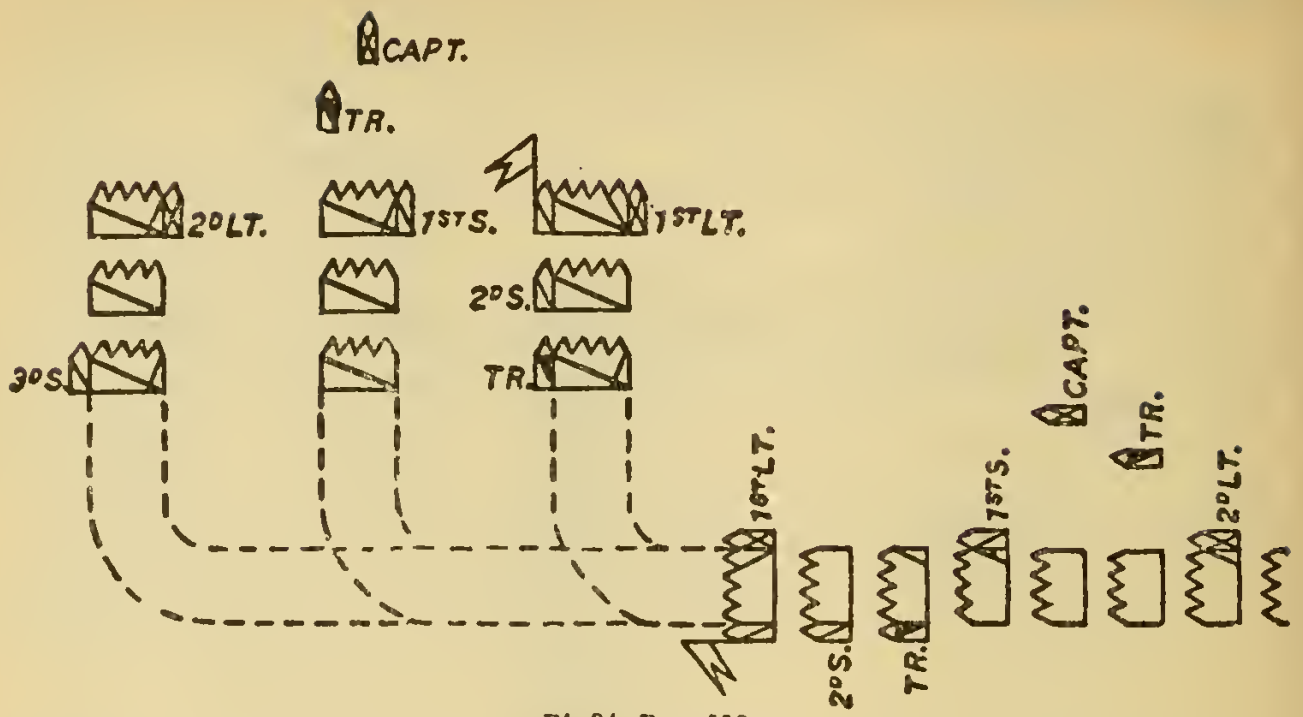



Pl. 93, Par. 509.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form on Right or Left into Line of Platoons in Columns of Fours.*

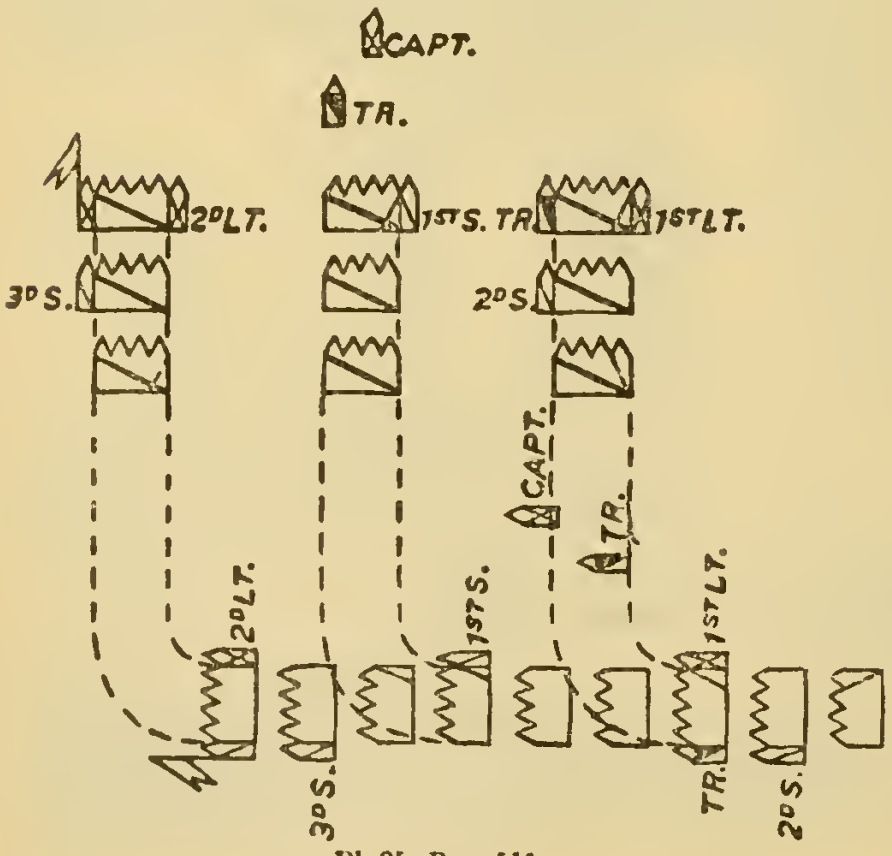
**510.** Being at a halt or marching at a walk: 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line,* 2. *Platoons in columns of fours,* 3. MARCH.

The chief of the leading platoon causes his platoon to change direction to the right and halts it after advanc-




Pl 94, Par. 510.

ing platoon distance and thirty yards in the new direction; each of the other platoons marches forward and beyond the preceding platoon, changes direction to the right when opposite its place, and is halted when abreast of the leading platoon.




Pl. 95, Par. 511.

The principles of Par. 8 apply, except that if marching at a trot or

gallop, or the command *trot* or *gallop* be given, the leading platoon completes its change of direction before decreasing the gait.

*Being in Column of Fours, to March in Line of Platoons in Columns of Fours to the Right or Left.*

**511.** 1. *Platoons*, 2. *Column right* (or *left*), 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide* (*right, left*, or *center*). (See Pl. 95.)

*Being in Column of Platoons, to March by the Flank in Columns of Fours.*

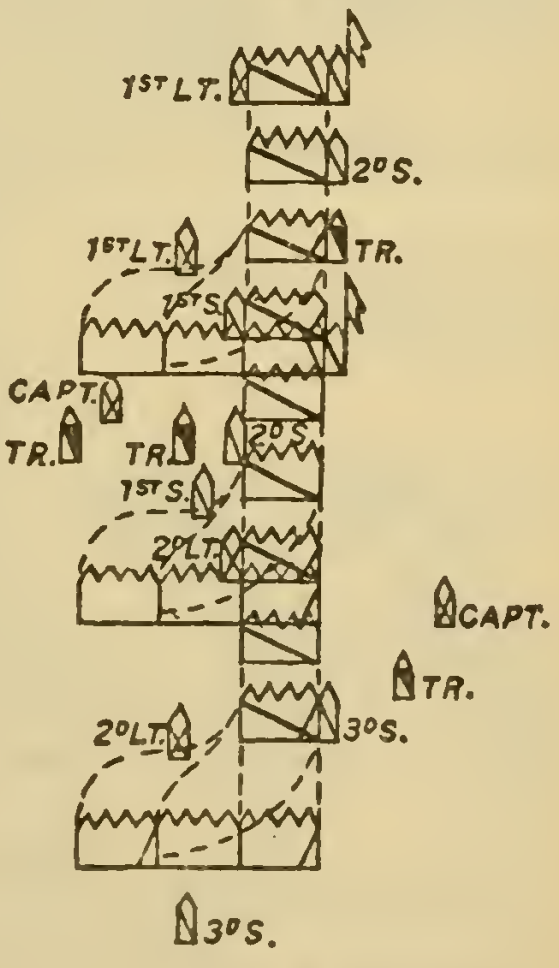
**512.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH, 3. *Guide* (*right, left*, or *center*).

*Being in Line of Platoons in Columns of Fours, to Form Line.*

**513.** 1. *Platoons*, 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line*, 3. MARCH, 4. *Troop*, 5. HALT, 6. *Left* (or *Right*), 7. DRESS, 8. FRONT.

The command *halt* is given when the leading fours have advanced thirty yards.

If executed at the trot or gallop, the captain, after the command *march*, adds: *Guide left* (*right*, or *center*).



Pl. 96, Pa . 514.

*Being in Column of Platoons, to Form Column of Fours.*

**514.** 1. *Platoons*, 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *forward*, 3. *Fours right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.

The platoons unite in one column of fours.

In breaking the column of platoons into column of fours from the side of the guide a platoon composed of a greater

or less number of fours than the one preceding will slightly increase or decrease its gait, to enable all the fours to take their proper distances in column.

If the platoons be broken from the side opposite the guide, the column of fours of the leading platoon marches straight to the front; the other platoons, after breaking into column, will, if necessary, slightly change direction so as to follow the first.

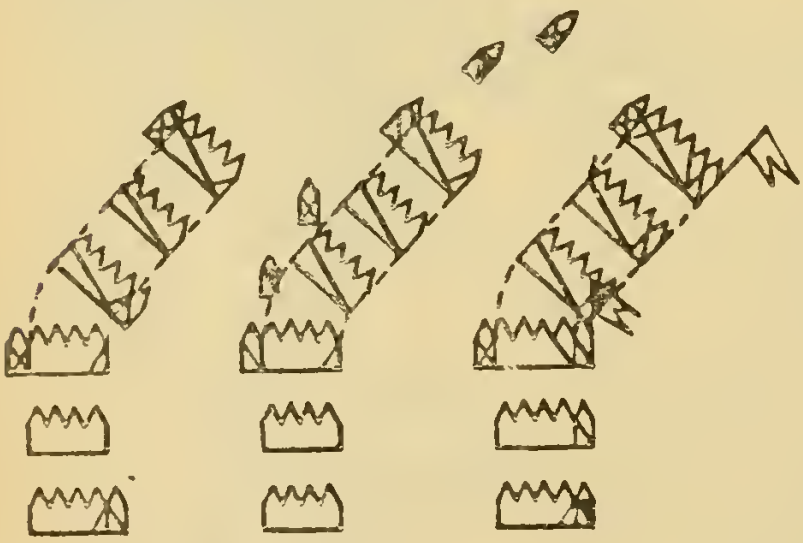
*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Column of Platoons.*

**515.** 1. *Platoons,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 3. **MARCH.**

Each platoon executes *right front into line.* If executed at a walk, the captain halts the column after advancing thirty yards. If executed at a trot or gallop, the captain commands: 4. *Guide left* (or *right*).

*Being in Line of Platoons in Columns of Fours, to Oblique by the Heads of Columns.*

**516.** 1. *Platoons,* 2. *Column half-right* (or *half-left*), 3. **MARCH.**



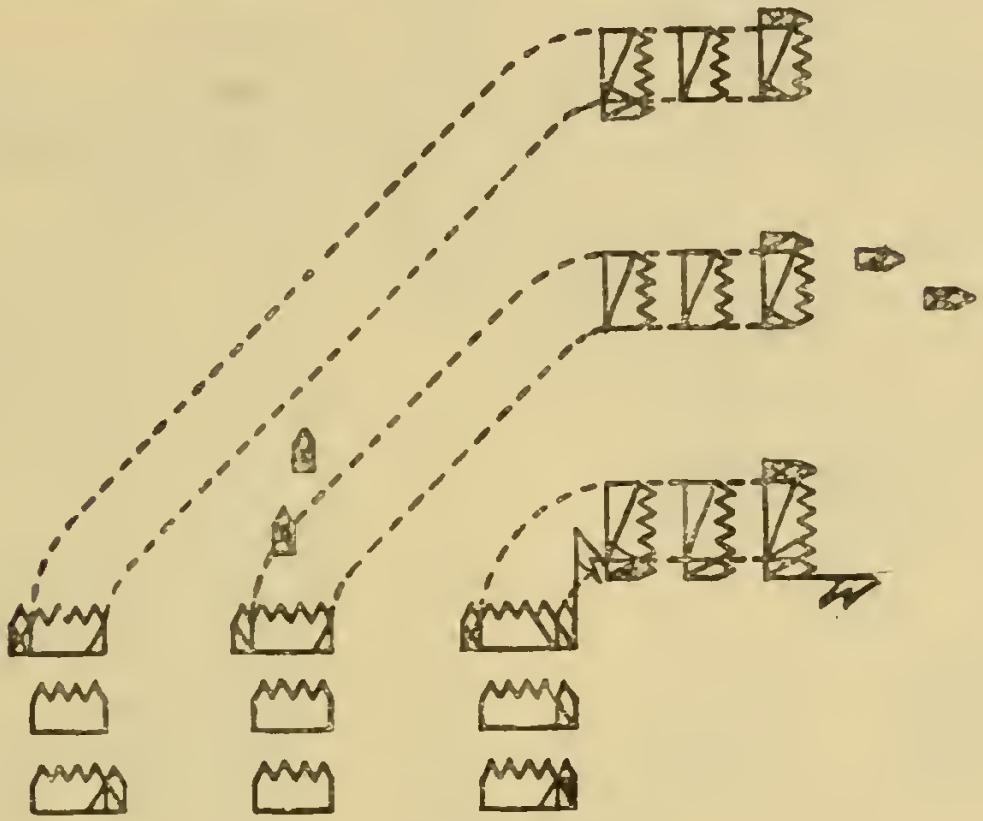
Pl. 97, Par 516.

The right platoon is the base platoon; the others march parallel to it; the line of chiefs of platoons should be parallel to the original front.

To resume the march in the original direction: 1. *Platoons,* 2. *Column half-left* (or *half-right*), 3. **MARCH,** 4. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

*Being in Line of Platoons in Columns of Fours, to Change Direction to the Right or Left.*

**517.** Being in march: 1. *Change direction to the right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH.**



Pl. 98, Par. 517.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Column right;* the other chiefs command: 1. *Column half-right,* 2. *Trot.*

At the command *march,* the first platoon changes direction to the right; the others take the trot; each chief marches his platoon by the shortest line to its place abreast of the first platoon and commands: 1. *Walk,* 2. **MARCH.**

The principles of Par. 8, *b, c,* and *d,* apply.

If at a halt, the chiefs of platoons give the command necessary to put their platoons in march.

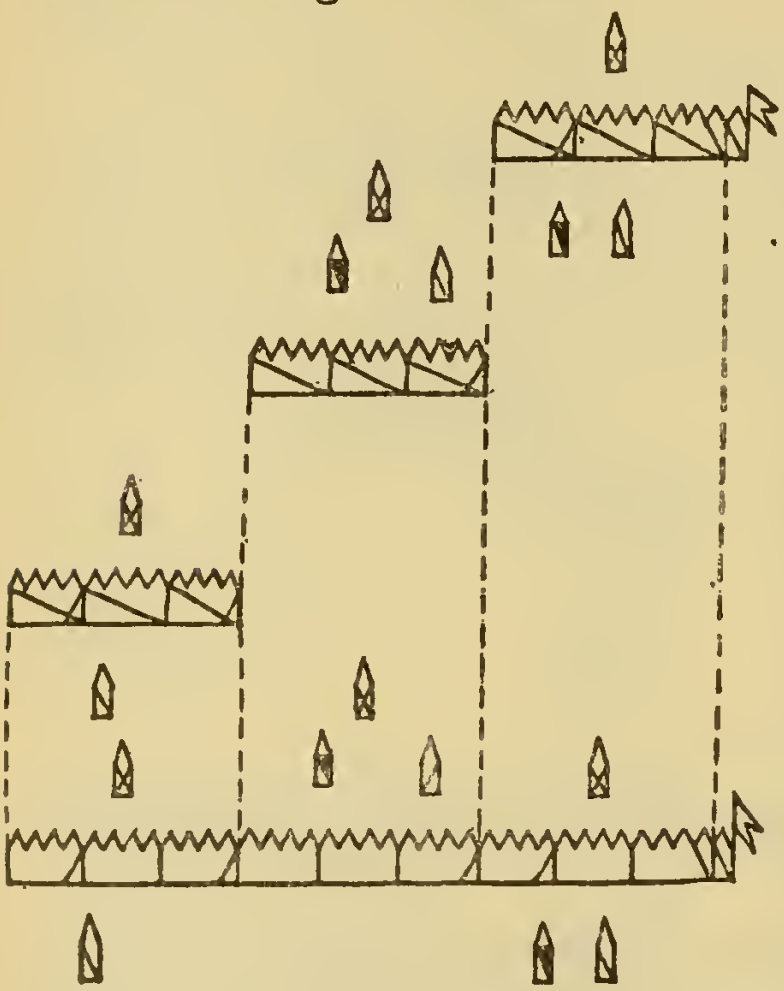
### *Order in Echelon,*

**518.** In echelon, subdivisions are designated from right to left, as when in line.

The leading subdivision is the base subdivision.

### *Being in Line, to Form in Echelon.*

**519.** Being at a halt: 1. *Form echelon,* 2. *First* (or *Fourth*) *the base platoon,* 3. MARCH.



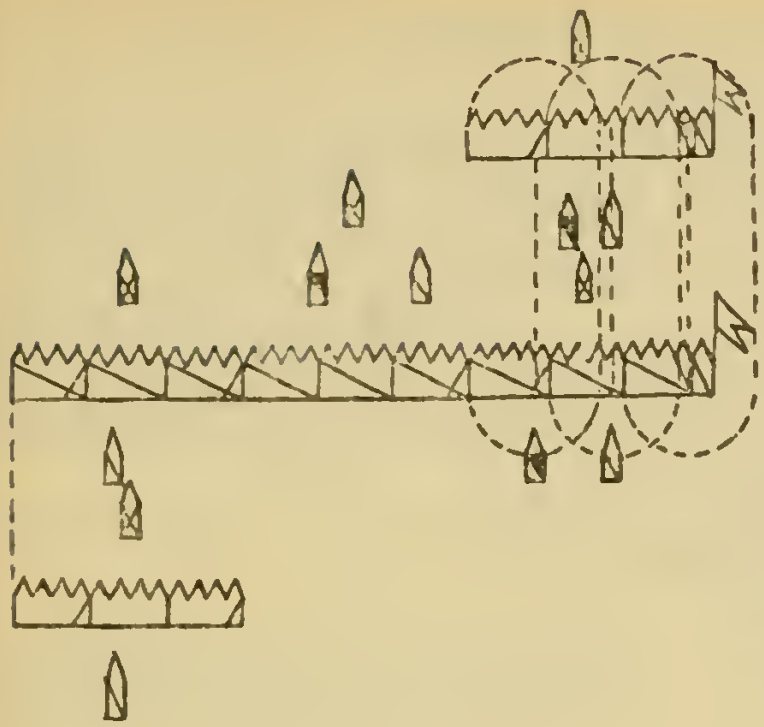
Pl. 99, Par. 519.

The designated platoon marches to the front; the second platoon, at the command of its chief, moves to the front when at platoon distance from the first; the other platoons successively advance as explained for the second.

If marching, the designated platoon continues to advance; the other platoons halt or take the next slower gait until they have platoon distance, when they successively advance at the same gait as the base platoon.

The post of the captain is six yards in front of the center or right center platoon.

**520.** Simultaneous movements of subdivisions when in echelon are executed by the same commands and means as when the subdivisions are united, as: *Fours right, Platoons right front into line, Platoons right turn,* etc.



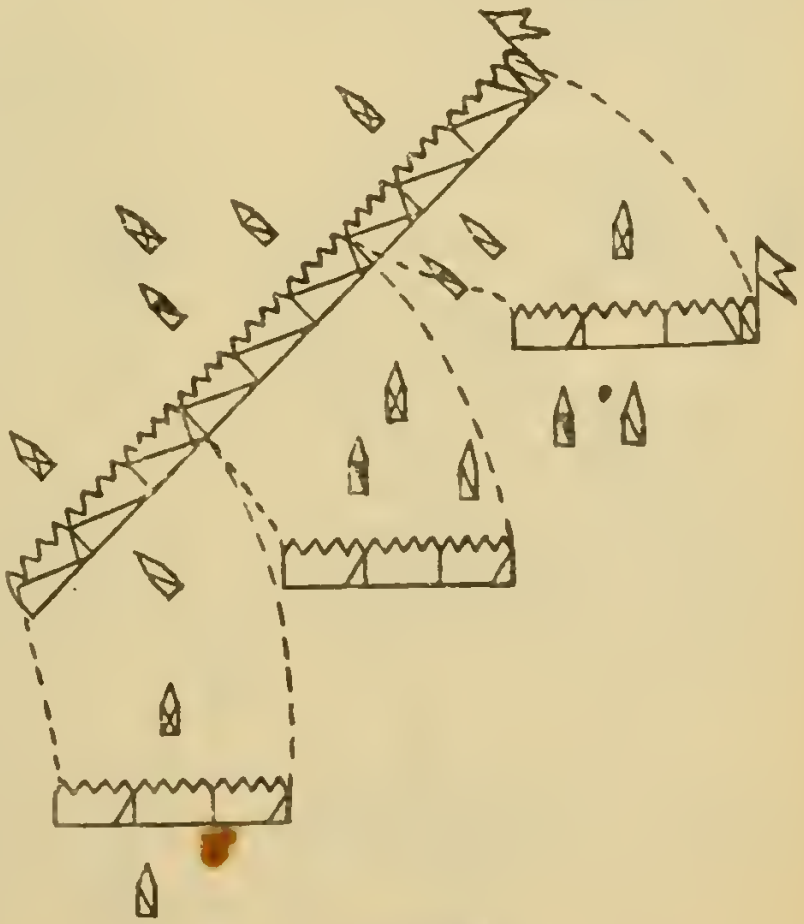
Pl. 100, Par. 521.

**521.** Being at a halt, to re-form the line: 1. *Form line on* (such) *platoon*, 2. MARCH, 3. FRONT.

The designated platoon stands fast.

At the first command, the chiefs of platoons in front of the designated platoon command: *Fours right about* or *Fours left about*, according as they are to the right or left of the designated platoon; those in rear command: *Forward.*

At the command *march*, the chiefs of platoons in front march them a little in rear of the line of the designated platoon and command: *Fours right* (or *left*) *about*, 2. MARCH, 3. *Platoon*, 4. HALT, 5. *Left* (or *Right*), 6. DRESS; the chiefs of rear platoons halt them on the line and command: 1. *Right* (or *Left*), 2. DRESS.



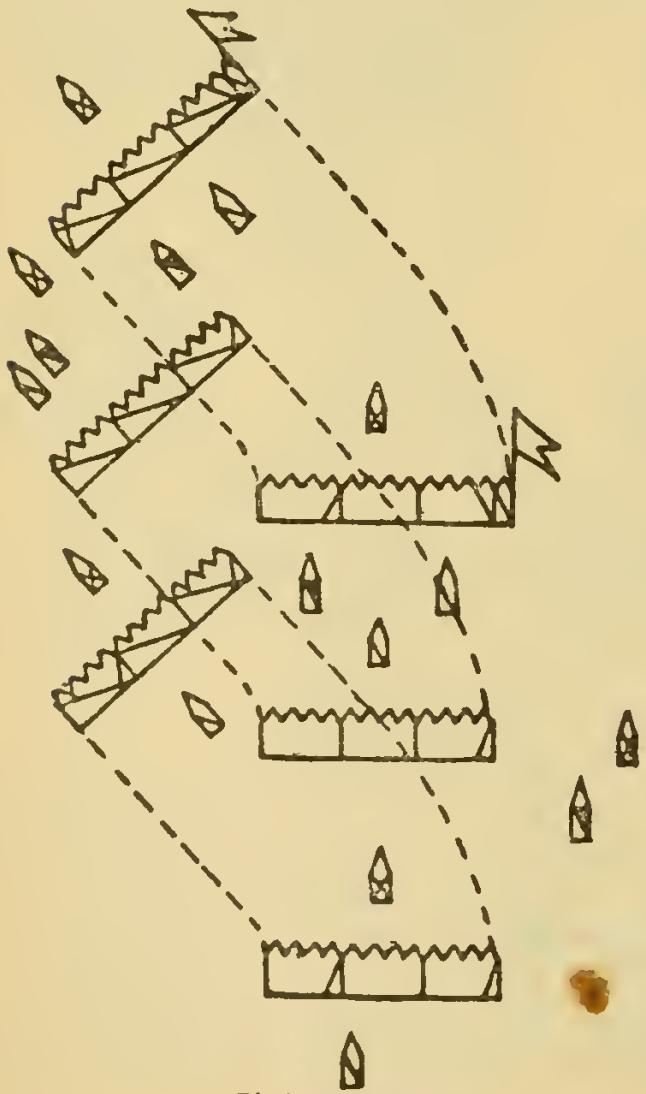
Pl. 101, Par. 522.

If marching, the designated platoon is halted by its chief at the command *march.*

**522.** Being in echelon, to form oblique line toward the inner flank of the leading platoon: 1. *Platoons,* 2. *Left* (or *Right*) *half-turn,* 3. **MARCH,** 4. *Guide center.* (See Pl. 101.)

The platoons execute *left half-turn;* at the fourth command, given immediately after the command *march,* the center or right center platoon marches straight to the front; the pivots of the other platoons direct their march so as to close to the center platoon.

The oblique line is formed to the left or right according as the right or left platoon is in front.



Pl. 102, Par. 523.

*Being in Column of Platoons or in Line, to Form Oblique Echelon.*

**523.** 1. *Platoons,* 2. *Left* (or *Right*) *half-turn,* 3. **MARCH.**

The guides march so as to cover about one-third of the platoon next in front, and to have a distance equal to about one-half the platoon front.

*Route Marches.*

**524.** Marching in column of fours or twos: 1. *Route order,* 2. **MARCH.**

See Pars. 200 and 286.

The captain and first lieutenant march at the head of the column; the trumpeters, guidon, and file-closers near the head of the column march in rear of the officers

and in front of the leading four; the file-closers near the rear of the column march in rear of the rear four; the chief of the rear platoon marches in rear of the column. Non-commissioned officers commanding platoons may march with the file-closers at the head and rear of the column. At the command: 1. *Troop,* 2. ATTENTION, all resume their posts.

Marching at attention or at route order, officers, non-commissioned officers, etc., do not change their positions when the commands: 1. *At ease,* 2. MARCH, are given.

## THE CHARGE.

**525**. Cavalry can not effectively preserve formation in charging *down hill* if the slope be greater than five degrees; it can preserve formation cantering down hill and charging *up hill* if the slope be not greater than ten degrees.

**526.** The ground over which a command is to charge should be reconnoitered; ground scouts should always precede the charging force.

Ground scouts look for information concerning the character of the ground; combat patrols, for information concerning the enemy.

The service of ground scouts and combat patrols requires most careful attention, and the men employed on this duty should be selected for their intelligence and daring, and should be fully instructed in their duties. They should reconnoiter the ground to a considerable distance in front of the command, taking care, however, not to get too far ahead to communicate information by signals.

When the charge is sounded or ordered, the ground scouts clear the front of the advancing line and join on the nearest flank.

Owing to the present general use of wire fences, the

ground scouts, in actual service against the enemy, should be equipped with wire nippers.

**527.** The platoons separately, and the troop entire, are instructed in the charge, according to the principles explained for the squad (Pars. 421 to 429).

When the troop entire executes the charge, the captain, or the troop leader, is in front of the center; he may require the guidon to act as guide; the center troopers make room for the guidon, who moves up into the interval between them.

During the instruction, when the captain does not personally lead the charge he goes wherever he can best observe the errors.

A non-commissioned officer and two or three men may be so placed as to outline a platoon of the enemy at a distance of one thousand to two thousand yards (Par. 427). The platoon is directed against the outlined enemy; when at eight hundred to twelve hundred yards from the enemy, the chief of platoon commands: 1. *Gallop,* 2. MARCH; the chief of platoon directs his march against the enemy's flank or center as he may have been directed. The center trooper follows directly in the trace of the leader.

The outlined enemy approaches the platoon and conforms to its gaits, preserving the skeleton formation of a platoon. When the platoon charges, the troopers outlining the enemy turn about individually and retire at full speed.

The further conduct of the troop or platoon is governed by Par. 428.

**528.** The charge as foragers is conducted upon the same principles.

The troop or platoon rallies and assembles as in Pars. 813 and 814.

While extended as foragers, the troop or platoon may be marched to the rear and by the flank by the same commands and means as when deployed as skirmishers (Pars. 808 and 809).

### *The Troop Acting Alone.*

**529.** As a rule, when the troop is acting alone in charging the enemy, it is divided into two or three parts, viz: into the *attacking line* and *support;* or, when the troop is of nearly full strength, into the *attacking line, support,* and *reserve.*

If the attacking line, support, or reserve consist of only one platoon, it is led by its chief; if it consist of two or more platoons, it is led by the senior chief of platoon or by the captain.

**530.** When a chief of platoon takes post as leader of two or more platoons, the principal guide on the nearest flank takes his place as chief of that platoon. The other principal guide goes with the support. The guidon joins the reserve, if there be one; if there be no reserve, the support. Whenever the *rally* or *assembly* is sounded the guidon goes at once to the position of the captain, or to the rallying or assembling point indicated by the captain.

### *To Charge.*

**531.** The captain designates the attacking line, the support, and, if there be one, the reserve.

Marching in line at the trot, when the troop arrives at the place to take the formation for the charge, the captain points out the direction or object of attack and commands: 1. *To the charge,* 2. MARCH.

The leader of the attacking line commands: *Gallop;* the leaders of the support and reserve caution: *Trot.*

At the command *march,* the attacking line takes the gallop and charges as in Par. 422.

When the support has a distance of about eighty yards from the attacking line, it takes the gallop and follows the movements of that line; when it arrives at the proper distance, it charges to support the first line.

The reserve, if there be one, follows the support at a distance not greater than one hundred and fifty yards,

unless otherwise ordered by the captain, and charges when at the proper distance.

The captain may give special instruction to govern the leaders of the support, or reserve, or both, such as, *To charge the support of artillery,* etc.

**532.** 1. *To the charge, as foragers,* 2. MARCH.

At the first command the leader of the attacking line commands: *As foragers.*

At the command *march,* the attacking line deploys (Par. 425), and when the deployment is completed, takes the gallop and charges. The support and reserve follow the attacking line in close order, as prescribed in Par. 531.

**533.** Marching in column of platoons at the trot, and no support or reserve having been designated, the captain commands: 1. *To the charge,* 2. MARCH; or, 1. *To the charge, as foragers,* 2. MARCH.

At the first command the chief of the first platoon commands: *Gallop* (or *As foragers*), and charges as in Par. 422 or 425, according to the command of the captain.

The platoons in rear of the first continue at the trot, each taking the gallop, or deploying as foragers when the preceding platoon has a distance of about eighty yards, and each charges over the same ground as the leading platoon.

As each platoon takes the gallop, the guidon joins the next succeeding platoon.

If the charge be made as foragers and the *rally* be ordered or signaled, each platoon that has charged rallies in rear of the column, the guidon taking position at the head of the column; the platoons that have not charged remain in column. If the remainder of the troop has been formed in line, the platoons that have charged rally in their places in line.

Each platoon counts fours as soon as rallied.

**534.** The charge may be made from column of fours.

Marching at the gallop, each four takes the extended gallop when the four next preceding has gained the dis-

tance of one horse's length. The fours rally in rear of the column.

### *The Troop in the Squadron.*

**535.** The troop in the squadron charges on the same principles as when alone, except that it does not have a support or reserve, unless so ordered by the major.

Except when charging from line of platoon columns, the captain puts as much of his troop in the attacking line as possible.

# SCHOOL OF THE SQUADRON.

**536.** In this school, a major is the instructor, but a captain may be substituted; a trumpeter accompanies the instructor.

**537.** If necessary, the instructor may preface the commands laid down in the text by the command *attention.*

**538.** Captains repeat such of the commands as are to be immediately executed by their troops, as, *forward, fours right, march, halt,* etc.; they do not repeat the major's commands in executing the manual, nor those commands which are not essential to the execution of a movement by their troops, as *close column, deploy column,* etc.

**539.** After the movements are understood, they will habitually be executed at the trot or gallop (see Par. 459).

**540.** In any movement, each captain gives his commands so as to insure its execution by his troop at the proper time.

If a command should not be heard by a captain, he will observe and conform to the movement.

**541.** When the formation will admit of the simultaneous execution of movements by troops or platoons, the major may cause them to execute movements prescribed in the School of the Troop by prefixing, when necessary, the command: *Troops* (or *Platoons*) to the commands therein prescribed; *e. g.*, 1. *Troops,* 2. *Right forward,* 3. *Fours right,* 4. MARCH; 1. *Troops,* 2. *Column right,* 3. MARCH; 1. *Troops,* 2. *Right front into line,* 3. MARCH, etc.

When line, line of columns, or column of subdivisions is formed, the major announces the guide if the marching is to be continued.

### *Instruction of Officers.*

**542.** The major is responsible for the instruction of his squadron. The officers are assembled for theoretical and practical instruction.

The instruction of officers embraces the drill regulations, and such other instruction as pertains to their duties in peace and war.

Each captain should be required to drill the squadron.

### *Formation.*

**543.** The interval between troops in line is eight yards.

The squadron consists of not more than four nor less than two troops. In this school, the squadron consists of four troops. Where troops are, from any cause, much depleted in officers and men, two or more may be consolidated for the purpose of drill or maneuver.

When forming the squadron, the troops are arranged according to the rank of their captains; the senior on the right, the second on the left, the third on the right center (or center, if there be but three troops), and the fourth on the left center.

Troops whose captains are absent take their places in line according to the relative rank of the officers present in command of them. A troop whose captain is absent for a few days only, or who is in command of the squadron, retains its place according to his rank, unless otherwise directed.

After the squadron is formed, no cognizance is taken of the relative order of the troops or of the platoons in the troops.

In whatever direction the squadron faces, the troops are designated numerically from right to left in line and line of columns, and from head to rear in column, *first troop, second troop,* and so on. When a new formation ne-

cessitates a change of numbers, the change takes effect upon the completion of the movement.

In designating their troops, the captains use the letter designation; as, *Troop "D,"* etc.

The troops to the right of the center of the squadron in line constitute the *right wing;* those to the left of the center, the *left wing.* If there be an odd number of troops in line, the center troop always belongs to the right wing.

### *Posts of the Major, Adjutant, and Sergeant Major.*

**544.** In line or line of columns, the major is thirty yards in front of the center; in column and in double column of fours, he is opposite the center, thirty yards from the column, on the side of the guide; if the guide be center, he takes post on either flank.

He is not, however, to confine himself to any particular position, but rides where he can best superintend the movements of his squadron.

The adjutant and sergeant major accompany the major, superintend the posting of the guides, and execute such orders as they may receive from him.

The adjutant is one yard to the left of the major.

The trumpeter and sergeant major ride two yards in rear of the major and adjutant respectively.

An adjutant or sergeant major may be detailed by the squadron commander whenever required.

In *route marches* the major and the adjutant are at the head of the column, the sergeant major is in rear of the adjutant, the trumpeter in rear of the major.

### *To Form the Squadron.*

**545.** The troops being formed and mounted on the ground designated, *adjutant's call* is sounded, at which the adjutant and sergeant major, the latter on the left, draw saber and proceed to the squadron parade and post them-

selves, facing each other, a few yards outside the points where the right and left of the right center troop are to rest in line.

The troops approach the line so as to arrive from the rear, and parallel to the line established by the adjutant and sergeant major. The right center troop (or center, if the number of troops be three) is first established on the line.

As the right center troop approaches the line, the guidon and the right principal guide detach themselves, and, preceding the troop by fifteen or twenty yards, place themselves between the adjutant and sergeant major, facing to the front; the guidon at the point where the left of the troop should rest in line, and the right principal guide at a distance from him a little greater than the front of the troop.

The adjutant rectifies the position of the right principal guide; the sergeant major rectifies the position of the guidon.

The line is prolonged in the right wing by the adjutant posting the guidon and right principal guide as prescribed for the right center troop, and similarly in the left wing by the sergeant major posting the guidon on the right and the left principal guide on the left of each troop.

Having rectified the positions of the guides of the troop which arrives first on the line, the adjutant turns right about, moves toward the right and again turns right about so as to place himself beyond the right principal guide of the troop next on the right.

The sergeant major turns left about, moves toward the left and again turns left about so as to place himself beyond the left principal guide of the troop next on the left.

The captain of the right center troop halts his troop short of the line, places himself on the line, facing to the front, at the point of rest, dresses the troop to the left

against the guidon and commands: FRONT; the captain and principal guide then take their posts (see Par. 475).

The other troops successively approach the line in their order, on the right and left of the right center troop.

Each captain conducts and halts his troop as prescribed for the base troop; he then dresses it toward the troop first established.

Captains, when dressing their troops in line, place themselves on the line, on the flank toward which they dress, facing to the front. *This rule is general.*

The major takes post in front of the center and facing the squadron, at a convenient distance, generally about half its front.

When the adjutant has posted the last guide in his wing, he turns to the front and passing in front of the line of officers, moves at the trot or gallop directly to a point midway between the line and the major, faces toward the line and halts.

The sergeant major having posted the last guide in his wing, turns to the front and joins the major at the trot or gallop.

When the dressing of the line is completed, the adjutant turns to the front, salutes the major, and reports: *Sir, the squadron is formed.*

The major returns the salute with the right hand, directs the adjutant: *Take your post, sir,* and draws saber.

The adjutant moves at the trot or gallop and joins the major, passing by his right and rear.

**546.** The squadron may be formed in line on the right or left troop on the same principles, the guides being posted as in the left or right wing.

The squadron may also be assembled in column of fours.

In both cases, the troops are arranged in the same relative order as when the formation is on the center troop. When assembled in column, the adjutant reports to the major as soon as the last troop has taken its place.

### *To Rest and Dismiss the Squadron.*

**547.** The squadron is *rested* and called to *attention* as in Pars. 286, 287, and 524, substituting *squadron* for *squad* or *troop* in the commands.

To dismiss the squadron: DISMISS YOUR TROOPS.

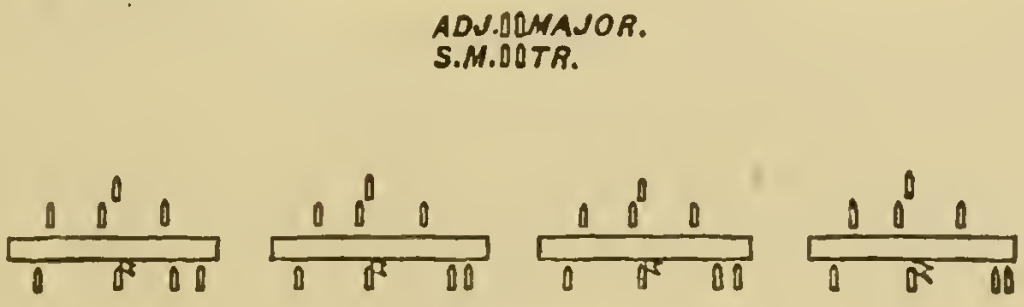
Each captain conducts his troop to its own parade ground, where it is dismissed as prescribed.

### *To March in Line.*

**548.** Being in line at a halt: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide center*, 3. MARCH.

The right center troop (or center, if there be but three troops) is the base troop. The center guide of that troop, under direction of the guidon, is the guide of the squadron. The chief of platoon is charged with the gait and moves steadily to the front as prescribed in the School of the Troop. The center guides of the other troops, under direction of the guidons, move so as to preserve the alignment and the interval.

The major may command: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide right* (or *left*), 3. MARCH.




Pl. 103, Par. 548.

The center guide of the right (or left) troop is then the guide of the squadron.

To make a slight change of direction, the major commands: *Incline to the right* (or *left*), or the major may indicate to the guide the point of direction. The guide of the directing troop, with the assistance of the guidon,

selects new points on the ground and directs his march a little to the right of his former direction. The base troop conforms gradually to the march of the guide; the captains of the other troops see that their guides conform to the movement of the base troop, and gradually quicken or slacken the gait according as they are in rear or in advance of the line, obliquing slightly when necessary to preserve the intervals.

**549.** The squadron being in line of columns, and at a halt, is put in march by the commands; 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide* (*center, right,* or *left*), 3. **MARCH.**

The squadron in line of columns marches on the same principles as when in line, unless specially provided for.

**550.** When line formation is used for advancing over considerable distances, the squadron habitually advances in line of troops or platoons in columns of fours, or in line of platoon columns.

### *Being in Line, to Face the Squadron to the Rear and to March it to the Rear.*

**551.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*) *about,* 2. **MARCH,** 3. *Squadron,* 4. **HALT**; or, 3. *Guide center.*

The command *halt* is given as the fours unite in line. Captains immediately take post in front of their troops.

In wheeling by fours, if the pivots cover and the fours wheel properly, no dressing is needed; the major will direct a captain to dress his troop when necessary.

If the squadron be not halted, the major commands: 3. *Guide center,* as the fours unite in line.

### *Alignments.*

**552.** Should the major wish to rectify the alignment after the squadron has halted, he commands: *Captains rectify the alignment.* The guidons take post at once on the inner flank of their troops. The captains of the right wing dress their troops successively to the left, the cap-

tains of the left wing to the right, the center troops being first dressed.

In this alignment, no effort is made to correct intervals should they have been lost.

**553.** To give a general alignment, the major orders the guidon and the right principal guide of the center or right center troop on the line, establishes them facing to the front in the direction he wishes to give the squadron and then commands: 1. *Guides on the line,* 2. *On the center,* 3. **DRESS.**

At the first command, the guidon and the principal guide on the side farthest from the point of rest of each troop are posted as in forming the squadron (Par. 545), on a line with the guides already established.

At the command *dress,* each captain conducts his troop, if not already there, to the line established by the guides, halts it, and dresses it up on the guides.

The troops are dressed to the left or right, according as they are to the right or left of the base troop.

The major may establish the guides of the right or left troop (Par. 546) and command: 1. *Guides on the line,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*), 3. **DRESS.**

In a general alignment, intervals between troops are corrected; the captains, if necessary, move their troops to the right or left so as to dress up on their own guides.

If any of the troops are in advance of the new line the major causes them to be moved to the rear before establishing the guides, so that in dressing on the guides no troop will have to rein back.

### *To Pass Obstacles.*

**554.** When marching in line or in column, captains will, without the command of the major, so conduct their troops as to pass obstacles with the greatest facility, and then resume the original formation.

### *Being in Line, to Oblique.*

**555.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *oblique*, 2. **MARCH.**

The interval between troops is preserved and the squadron continues parallel to its original line.

To resume original direction: 1. *Forward*, 2. **MARCH.**

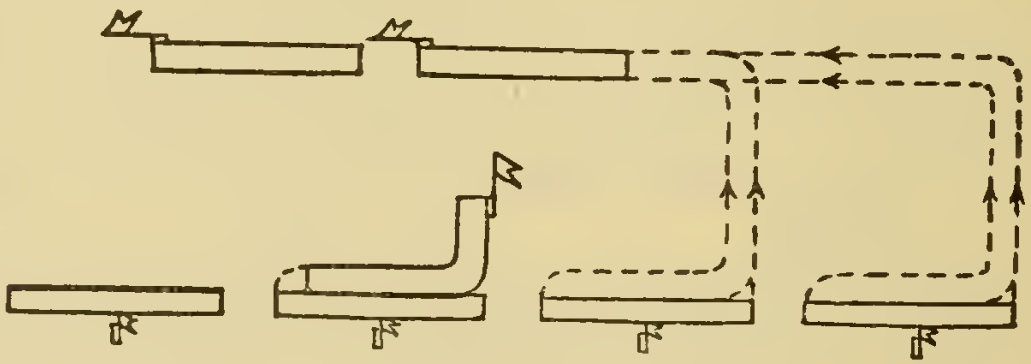
### *Being in Line, to March by the Flank.*

**556.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH.**

The distance between troops in column of fours is nine yards.

### *To Break into Column of Fours from the Right or Left, to March to the Left or Right.*

**557.** Being in line at a halt: 1. *Column of fours*, 2. *Break from the right* (or *left*) *to march to the left* (or *right*), 3. **MARCH.**



Pl. 104, Par. 557.

At the second command, the captain of the right troop commands: 1. *Right forward*, 2. *Fours right.*

At the command *march*, the right troop breaks into column of fours to the front: when the leading four has advanced thirty yards, the captain commands: 1. *Column left*, 2. **MARCH**; the guide directs his march parallel to the front of the squadron.

Each of the other troops executes the movements explained for the right troop in time to follow nine yards in rear of the one preceding.

**558.** The squadron in column of fours *advances, halts, obliques, changes direction, marches to the rear, forms column of twos and troopers,* and *re-forms in column of twos* and *fours* as prescribed for the troop, *squadron* being substituted for *troop* in the commands. In breaking by twos and troopers and in re-forming twos and fours, captains regulate the march of their troops so as to preserve the distance of nine yards.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Line to the Right or Left.*

**559.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH,** 3. *Squadron,* 4. **HALT.**

The squadron halts as the fours unite in line; each captain at once takes his post in front of the center of his troop.

If the squadron be not halted, the major commands: 3. *Guide center;* as the fours unite in line.

*General Rules for Successive Formations.*

**560.** Successive formations include formations either into line or column, in which the several subdivisions arrive in their places successively.

*a.* When line formations terminate at the halt, line will be formed on the principles prescribed for forming the squadron (Pars. 545 and 546). The troop first arriving on the line will be considered as the *base troop,* and the formation is prolonged under the supervision of the adjutant or sergeant major, or both, as may be directed by the major. The guidon is posted at the point of rest, and the principal guide of the opposite flank takes position a little more than troop front from him, both facing to the front.

*b.* In formations from a halt in which the command of the major indicates that the movement terminates at the halt, the guides are established at the preparatory command, and indicate the direction in which the line is to extend.

*c.* If marching, and the movement is to terminate at a halt, they hasten toward the point of rest at the preparatory command, and are established at the command *march.*

*d.* The troops are halted near the line and dressed up on the guides, toward the point of rest.

*e.* In formations into line by two movements, only the guides of the rear troops are posted.

*f.* In the deployments, the guides are posted on the line of the leading troop.

*g.* Should the captain from any position see that his troop is properly aligned, he may command *front* and take his post without going to the point of rest.

*h.* Should the command indicate a continued movement, the guides are not posted.

*i.* In forming front into line, the guides are established thirty yards to the front of the head of the column.

*k.* In forming on right or left into line, the guidon at the point of rest is established thirty yards to the right or left of the head of the column; the base is always halted.

*l.* In changes of front, the guidon at the point of rest is posted thirty yards from the right or left of the designated troop, according as the change of front is to the right or left.

*m.* When the line is to be formed facing to the rear, the guides of each troop are so posted as to permit the troop to pass between them, after which the one farthest from the point of rest closes to a little greater than troop front.

*n.* In forming line faced to the rear, each troop is wheeled about by fours toward the point of rest and halted.

*o.* All successive formations faced to the rear terminate at the halt.

*p.* In formations in which the guidon marks or takes post at the point of rest of his troop, he goes to this point

in the most direct and convenient manner; the captain does not necessarily wait for the guidon to take his post before dressing his troop.

*q.* The guides should be taught to post themselves without aid.

*r.* When the guides do not anticipate a movement promptly, the captain or adjutant commands: *Guides out* (Par. 473).

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form on Right or Left into Line.*

**561.** Being at a halt: 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line,* 2. MARCH.

At the first command the captains in rear of the first troop command: *Forward.*

At the command *march,* the first troop executes *on right into line* (Pars. 403 and 560*k*); each of the other captains commands: 1. *On right into line,* 2. MARCH, when the heads of the horses of his leading four have advanced seven yards beyond the left flank of the troop next preceding.

If marching, the captains following the first omit the command *forward.*

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Front into Line.*

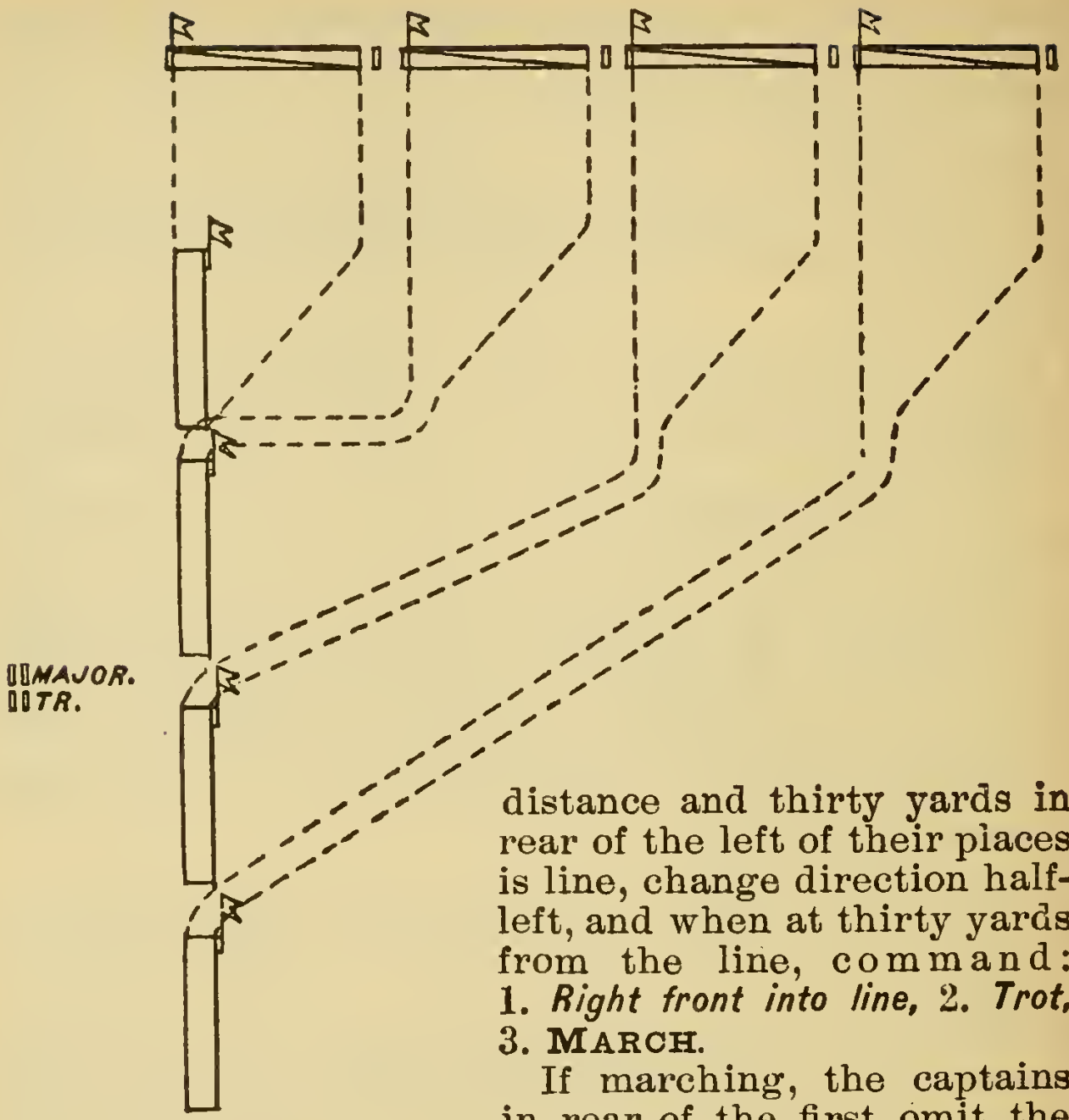
**562.** 1. Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the captain of the first troop commands: 1. *Right front into line,* 2. *Trot;* the captain of the second troop commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Column right;* the other captains command: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Column half-right.*

At the command *march,* the first troop executes *right front into line* (Par. 405).

The captain of the second troop conducts it opposite the left of its place in line, changes direction to the left, and, when thirty yards from the line, commands: 1. *Right front into line,* 2. *Trot,* 3. MARCH.

The other captains conduct their troops to points troop




Pl. 105, Par. 562.

distance and thirty yards in rear of the left of their places is line, change direction half-left, and when at thirty yards from the line, command: 1. *Right front into line,* 2. *Trot,* 3. MARCH.

If marching, the captains in rear of the first omit the command *forward.*

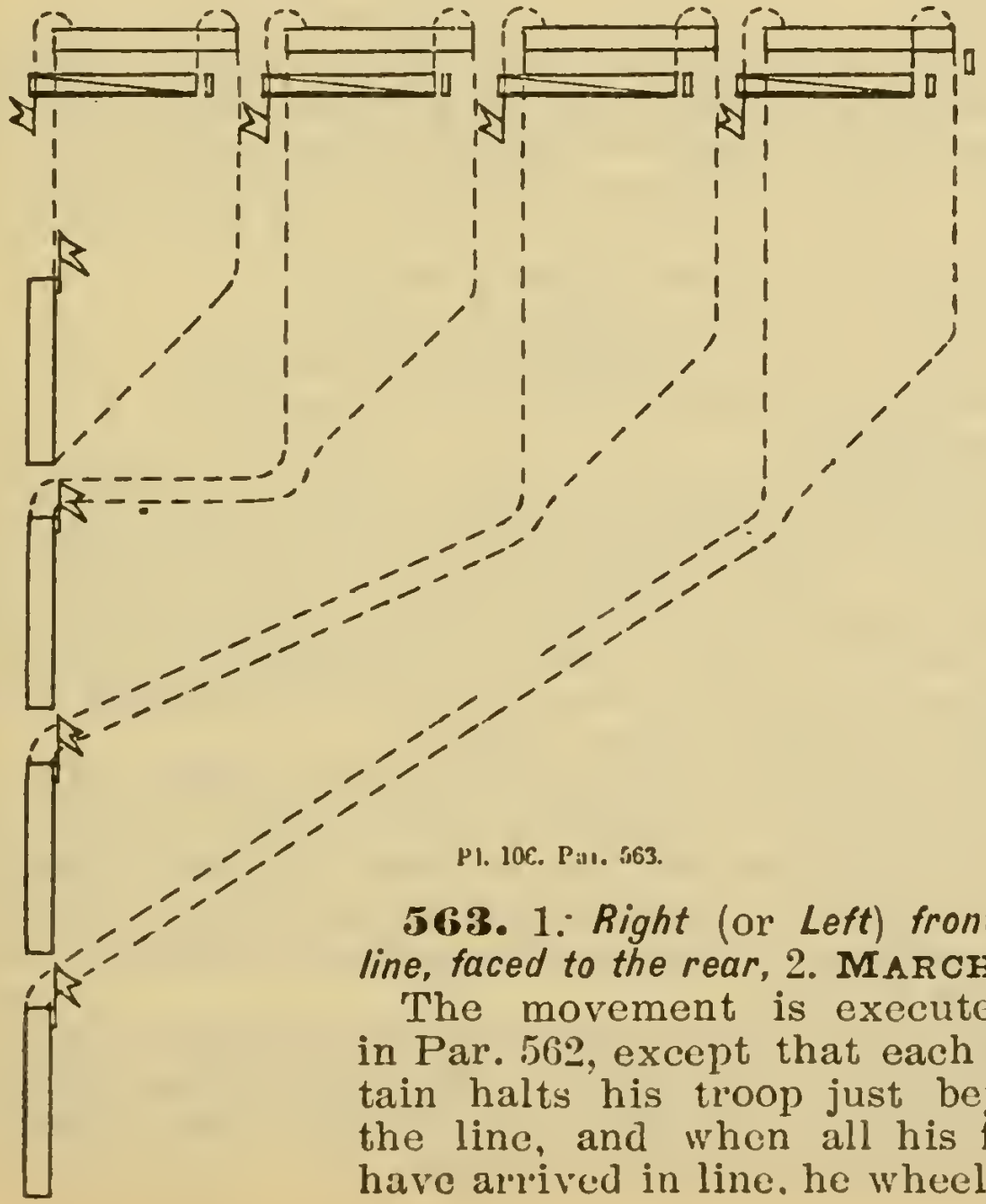
The principles of Par. 8 apply.

When executed at a trot or gallop, the leading troop continues to be the base troop until changed by the major, its captain commanding: *Guide center;* the other captains command: *Column half-right,* and the movement is completed as prescribed.

Front into line may be executed in a direction oblique

to that of the column, by first causing the leading troop to execute a partial change of direction. The line is formed at right angles to the new direction of the leading troop. The other troops are so marched, if possible, as to arrive opposite their positions at troop distance and thirty yards in rear of the line.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Front into Line, Faced to the Rear.*



Pl. 10C. Par. 563.

**563.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line, faced to the rear,* 2. MARCH.

The movement is executed as in Par. 562, except that each captain halts his troop just beyond the line, and when all his fours have arrived in line, he wheels his

troop to the left about by fours, halts it, and dresses it to the right.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Line by two Movements.*

**564.** In forming line by two movements, the command *march* is given as the head of a troop is about to change direction; intervals, if lost, will be regained subsequently.

A part of the column having changed direction to the right, to form line to the left the major commands: 1. *Fours left,* 2. *Rear troops, left front into line,* 3. **MARCH.**

The troops that have changed direction wheel by fours to the left; each captain halts his troop as the fours unite in line. The rear troops execute *left front into line,* the leading fours advancing only so far as to be in line with the troops that have wheeled into line.

To form line and advance without halting: 1. *Fours left,* 2. *Rear troops, left front into line,* 3. *Trot* (or *Gallop*), 4. **MARCH,** 5. *Guide center.*

The troops that have changed direction wheel by fours to the left and move forward at a walk. The captains of the rear troops repeat the command *trot,* and the movement is executed as before, each captain commanding *left front into line* in time to command *march* when his leading four arrives abreast of the line already formed.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

**565.** A part of the column having changed direction to the right, to form line to the right: 1. *Fours right,* 2. *Rear troops, left front into line, faced to the rear,* 3. **MARCH.**

The troops that have changed direction wheel to the right and halt. The rear troops execute *left front into line, faced to the rear.*

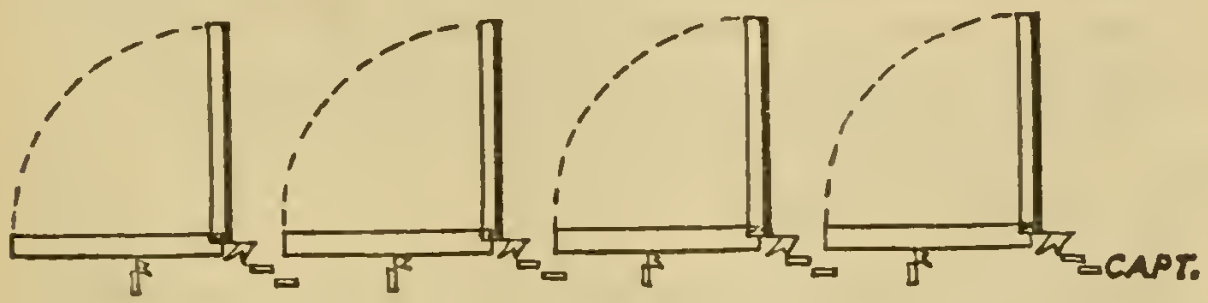
**566.** If the column has changed direction to the left, to form line to the right: 1. *Fours right,* 2. *Rear troops, right front into line,* 3. **MARCH**; or, 3. *Trot* (or *Gallop*), 4. **MARCH.**

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

To form line to the left: 1. *Fours left,* 2. *Rear troops, right front into line, faced to the rear,* 3. MARCH.

*Being in Line, to Form Column of Troops to the Right or Left and Halt*

**567.** 1. *Troops right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH.




Pl. 107, Par. 567.

Each troop executes the *turn and halt* (Par. 483).

In column of troops, each captain takes post on the side of the guide, six yards to the front and six yards to the right or left of his troop. If the guide be center, he takes post on the same flank as the major.

The distance between troops in column at full distance is troop front and five yards.

*Being in Line, to Form Column of Troops Without Halting.*

**568.** 1. *Troops,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *turn* 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide right* (*left* or *center*).

Each troop executes the *turn and advance* (Par. 484). The guide of the leading troop is charged with the direction.

**569.** To make a slight change of direction: *Incline to the right* (or *left*). The guide of the leading troop comes gradually into the new direction. the rank conforming to his movements. The troops in rear make a slight change

of direction on the same ground and in the same manner as the leading one.

Whenever a guide is forced out of the direction he recovers it gradually; the rear guides conform successively and gradually to his movements (Par. 497).

*Being in Column at Full Distance at a Halt, to Advance.*

**570.** 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide right* (*left* or *center*), 3. **MARCH.**

To halt the column: 1. *Squadron,* 2. **HALT.**

The column halts and the guides stand fast, though they may have lost their distances and be out of the direction of the guides in front.

*To Face the Column to the Rear and to March it to the Rear.*

**571.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*) *about,* 2. **MARCH,** 3. *Squadron,* 4. **HALT**; or, 3. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

The command *halt* is given, or the guide announced as the fours unite in line.

Should one troop be smaller than the others, the guides regain the trace and distance on the march.

*Being in Column at Full Distance, to Change Direction.*

**572.** Being in march: 1. *Column right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH.**

At the first command, the principal guide of the first troop, on the side toward which the turn is to be made, places himself abreast of the rank and two yards from its flank: the captain of the first troop commands: *Right turn.*

At the command *march,* the first troop turns to the right, the principal guide halts and remains in place, so as to mark the turning point; he returns to his post when the rear troop begins its turn.

The other troops march squarely up to where the leading troop turned, and each at the command of its captain turns to the right as explained for the leading troop.

In the turn, the dress is always toward the pivot without command; each captain, upon its completion, cautions

his troop, *guide* (*right, left,* or *center*), according as the guide was right, left, or center before the turn.

*Column half-right* (or *half-left*) is similarly executed; each captain giving the preparatory command: *Right* (or *Left*) *half-turn.*

To put the column in march and change direction at the same time: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*), 3. *Column right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.

*Being in Column at Full Distance, to Form Line to the Right or Left.*

**573.** To form line and halt: 1. *Troops right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH.

Before forming line by this movement, the major causes the guides to cover at the proper distance and on the flank toward which the line is to be formed.

To form line and advance: 1. *Troops,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *turn,* 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide center.*

*Being in Column at Full Distance, to Form on Right or Left into Line.*

**574.** Being in march: 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line,* 2. MARCH.

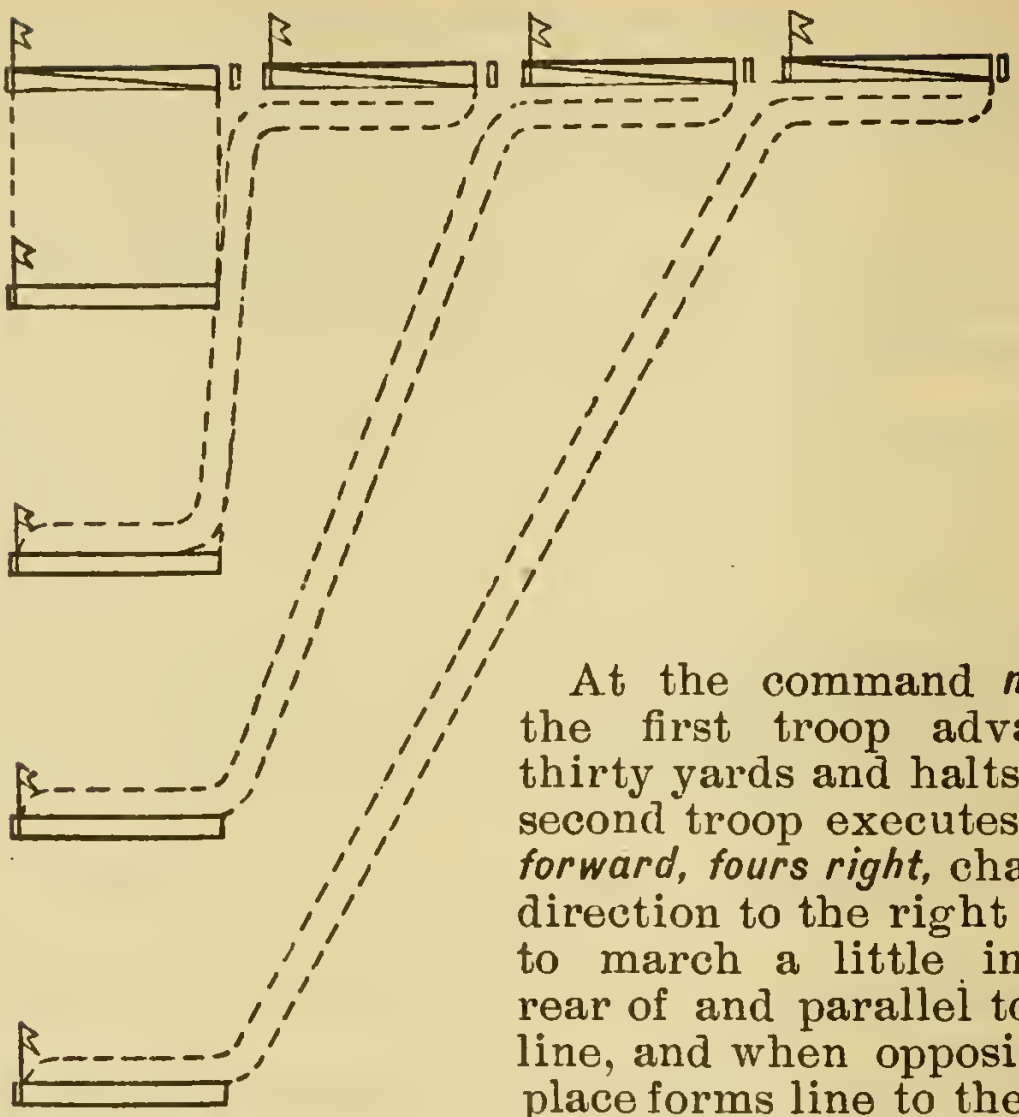
At the first command, the captain of the first troop commands: *Right turn;* he halts it and dresses it to the right, on its guides.

Each of the other captains commands: 1. *Right turn,* 2. MARCH, when his troop has advanced six yards beyond the left flank of the preceding troop, and completes the movement as prescribed for the first.

Being at a halt, at the first command, the captains of troops in rear of the first command: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide right.*

*Being in Column at Full Distance, to Form Front into Line.*

**575.** Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 2. MARCH.



Pl. 108, Par. 575.

At the command *march* the first troop advances thirty yards and halts; the second troop executes *right forward, fours right,* changes direction to the right so as to march a little in the rear of and parallel to the line, and when opposite its place forms line to the left; the other troops execute *fours right, column half-left,* and complete the movement as prescribed for the second.

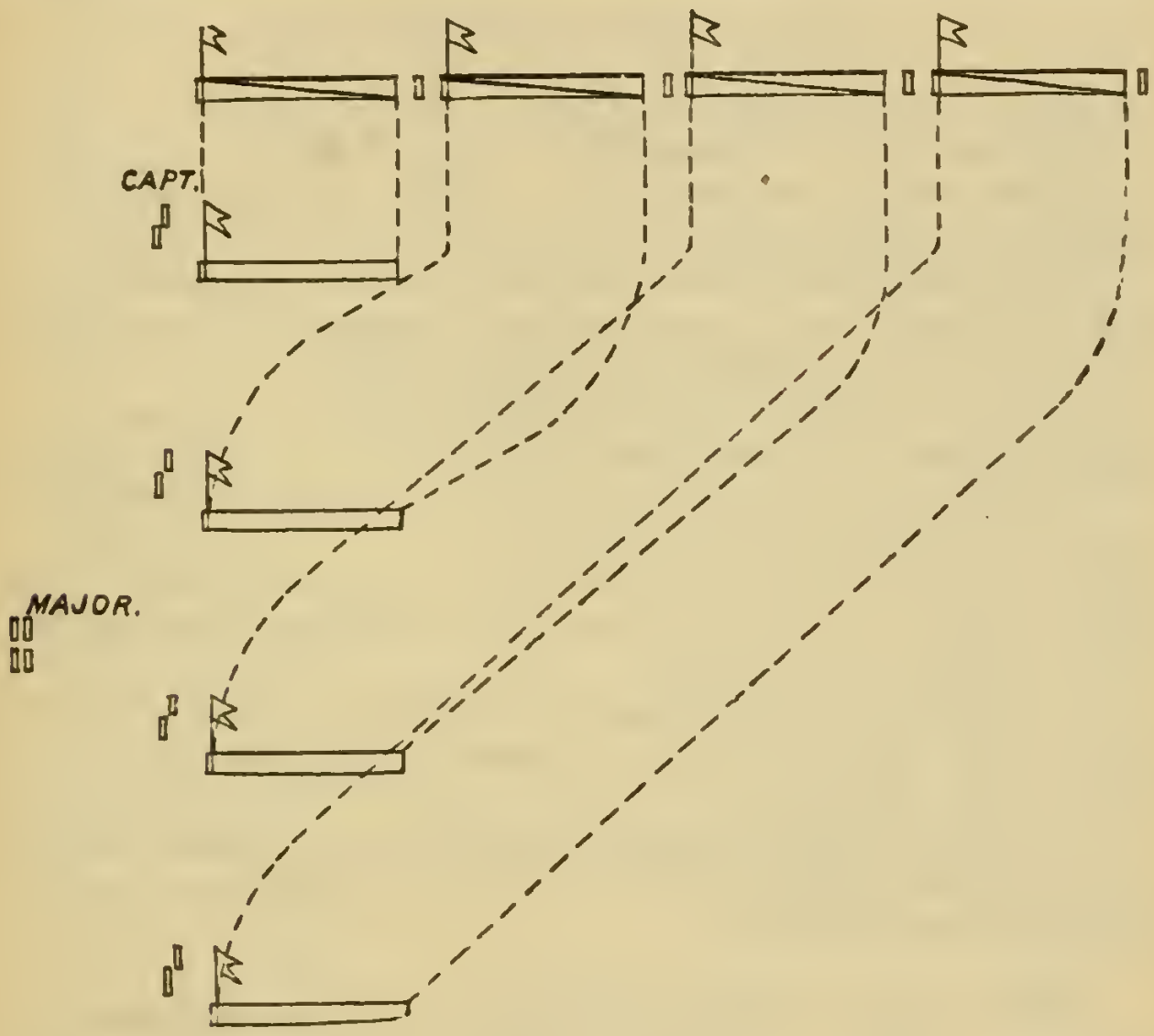
Marching at a walk, the first troop is halted after advancing thirty yards, and the movement is completed as before.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

### *To Form Front into Line without Reducing the Front of the Troops.*

**576.** Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 2. *Troops,* 3. *Right* (or *Left*) *half-turn,* 4. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the first troop commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide left;* the captains of the other troops command: *Right half-turn.*




Pl. 109, Par. 576.

At the command *march,* the first troop moves forward, and is halted near the line and dressed to the left; the other troops execute *right half-turn;* each captain upon the completion of the half-turn by his troop, commands: *Guide left;* when the left guide is opposite his place in line, the captain commands: 1. *Left half-turn,* 2. MARCH; the troop is halted and dressed as prescribed for the first.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

**577.** Front into line faced to the rear is executed as in Pars. 575 and 576, except that the troops march just beyond the line, wheel about by fours and halt.

### *Being in Line, to Change Front.*

**578.** 1. *Change front on first* (or *fourth*) *troop*, 2. *Troops*, 3. *Right half-turn*, 4. MARCH.

At the third command the captain of the first troop commands: *Right turn.*

At the command *march*, the first troop executes *right turn*, is halted near the line and dressed to the right. The other troops execute *right half-turn.*

The movement is then completed as in front into line from column of troops (Par. 576).

To change front faced to the rear, the major adds: *faced to the rear*, to the first command.

The major may direct the guides to be posted in an oblique direction; the movement is then executed as just prescribed.

The change of front may be effected by wheeling by fours to the right or left and then forming front into line (Par. 562).

To change front in rear of the line, the major causes the squadron to wheel about by fours, and then gives the commands as before.

### *Being in Line, to Advance in Line of Columns of Fours.*

**579.** 1. *Troops*, 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *forward*, 3. *Fours right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH, 5. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

Each troop executes *right forward, fours right.* The guides preserve the alignment and interval. The major takes post as in line; the captains take post on the side of the chiefs of platoons six yards to the front of their leading fours and six yards from the flank of the column.

*Being in Line, to Retire in Line of Columns of Fours.*

**580.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. *Troops*, 3. *Column right* (or *left*), 4. **MARCH**, 5. *Guide* (*right*, *left*, or *center*).

*Marching in Line of Columns of Fours, to Oblique to the Right or Left by the Heads of Columns.*

**581.** 1. *Troops*, 2. *Column half-right* (or *half-left*), 3. **MARCH**. (Par. 516.)

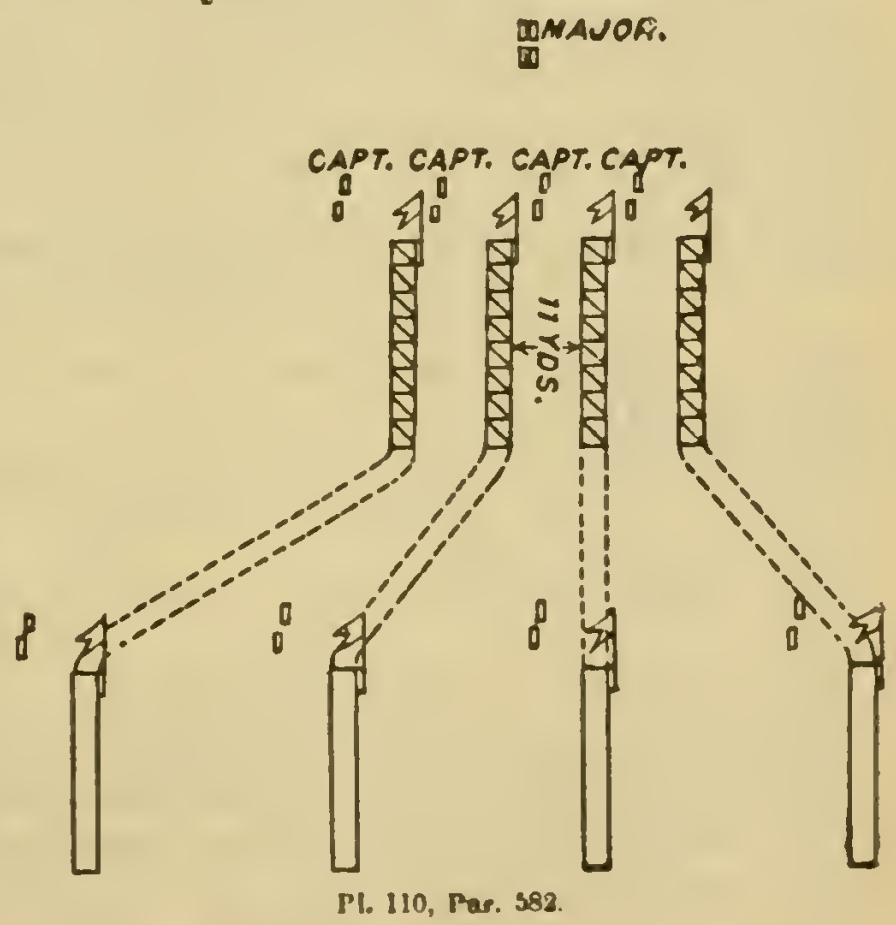
To resume the original direction: 1. *Troops*, 2. *Column half-left* (or *half-right*), 3. **MARCH**, 4. *Guide center*.

*Being in Line of Columns of Fours, to Close and Extend Intervals, Gaining Ground to the Front.*

**582.** The *full interval* is troop front and four yards. The *close interval* is eleven yards.

Marching at the walk (or trot): 1. *On second* (or such) *troop*, 2. *Close intervals*, 3. **MARCH**, 4. *Guide center* (*right* or *left*).

At the second command, the captain of the second troop cautions: *Continue the march*; the captains to the right command: 1. *Column half-left*, 2. *Trot* (or *Gallop*); the captains to the left command: 1. *Column half-right*, 2. *Trot* (or *Gallop*).




Pl. 110, Par. 582.

At the command *march,* the designated troop moves forward; the other troops move diagonally at the increased gait, each changes direction half-right or half-left when it has the close interval, moves abreast of and takes the gait of the designated troop.

If at a halt, the captains give the necessary commands for putting their troops in march. If marching at a gallop, the designated troop takes the trot.

Intervals are extended gaining ground to the front in a similar manner; the major commands: 1. *On* (such) *troop,* 2. *Extend intervals,* 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide center* (*right* or *left*).

**583.** To close intervals without gaining ground to the front, the major wheels the fours to the right or left; the column is then closed in mass (Par. 590), after which the squadron is wheeled by fours to the left or right.

Intervals may be extended on the same principles, the squadron is wheeled by fours to the right or left, and full distance taken as in Par. 592, after which the squadron is wheeled by fours into line of columns of fours.

### *Being in Column of Fours, to Form Front into Line of Troops or Platoons in Columns of Fours.*

**584.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 2. *Troops in columns of fours,* 3. MARCH.

The movement is executed as explained for forming front into line of platoons in columns of fours, School of the Troop (Par. 509).

The troops form at intervals of troop front and four yards.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

To form the column of fours front into line of columns of fours at close interval, the major adds: *At close interval,* to the second command. The troops form at intervals of eleven yards.

**585.** The squadron executes *right* or *left front into line*

*of platoons in columns of fours* on the same principles, except that each troop approaches the line perpendicularly and when thirty yards from it, its captain commands: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 2. *Platoons in columns of fours,* 3. MARCH. (Par. 509.)

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form on Right or Left into Line of Troops or Platoons in Columns of Fours.*

**586.** 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line,* 2. *Troops in columns of fours,* 3. MARCH.

The first troop executes *column right,* advances troop distance and thirty yards in the new direction and is halted; each of the other troops marches beyond the preceding troop, executes *column right* when opposite its place, and is halted abreast of the first troop.

To form at close interval, the major adds: *At close interval* to the second command.

On right or left into line of platoons in columns of fours is executed in the same manner, except that each captain commands: 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line,* 2. *Platoons in columns of fours,* 3. MARCH, so as to have the interval of platoon front and four yards (see Par. 510).

*Being in Line of Troops in Columns of Fours at Close Interval, to Form Column of Fours.*

**587.** 1. *Column of fours,* 2. *First* (or *Fourth*) *troop,* 3. *Forward,* 4. MARCH.

The designated troop moves out and is followed by the other troops at the proper distance.

**588.** The line of troops or platoons in columns of fours, whether at full or close interval, *advances, halts, obliques, marches to the rear, by the flank,* and *changes direction* by the commands and means prescribed for the troop.

### *Close Column,* or *in Mass.*

**589.** The distance between troops in close column is twelve yards. Close column is always formed with the leading troop, or the one designated, in front.

The posts of the captains are the same as in column at full distance.

The major takes post twenty yards from the flank, on the side of the guide.

### *Being in Column of Troops at Full Distance, to Form Close Column.*

**590.** Being at a halt: 1. *Close in mass,* 2. *Guide right* (*left,* or *center*), 3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the first troop cautions: *Stand fast;* the other captains command: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide right.*

At the command *march,* the rear troops move forward; each is halted when it arrives twelve yards from the one that precedes it.

If necessary, the captains dress their troops toward the side of the guide.

If marching, the major omits the command for the guide, and the captains of the rear troops omit the commands for putting them in march.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

If executed at a walk, the leading troop is halted at the command *march.*

**591.** To close the column on the rearmost troop, the major wheels the squadron about by fours, and the column is then closed as before; when the column has closed, the squadron is again wheeled about by fours.

### *Being in Close Column, to take Full Distance.*

**592.** Being at a halt: 1. *Take full distance,* 2. *Guide right* (*left,* or *center*), 3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the first troop commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide right.*

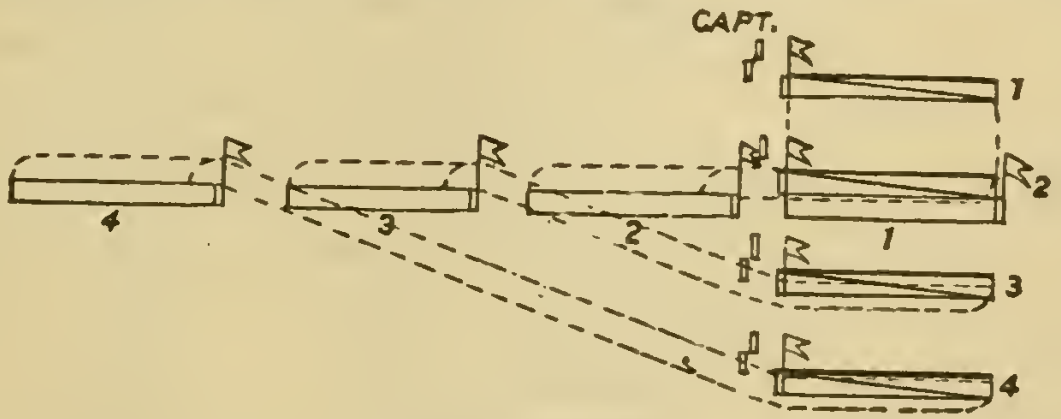
At the command *march,* the first troop advances; each of the other captains commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide right,* 3. MARCH, when his troop has full distance.

If marching, the major omits the command for the guide, and the first troop continues the march; if at a walk, the other troops halt; if at a trot or gallop, they take the next slower gait and successively take the gait of the leading troop when at full distance.

If the major commands a more rapid gait, the first troop takes that gait at the command *march,* each of the other troops when at full distance.

### *Being in Line, to Ploy into Close Column.*

**593.** Being at a halt: 1. *Close column on first* (or *fourth*) *troop,* 2. *Fours right* (or *left*), 3. MARCH.




Pl. III, Par. 593.

At the first command, the captain of the first troop commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide left.*

At the command *march,* the first troop advances eighteen yards, is halted and dressed to the left; the other troops execute *fours right.*

The captain of the second troop halts in rear of the left of the first, and as his rear four passes him, commands: 1. *Fours left,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Troop,* 4. HALT, 5. *Left,* 6. DRESS, 7. FRONT.

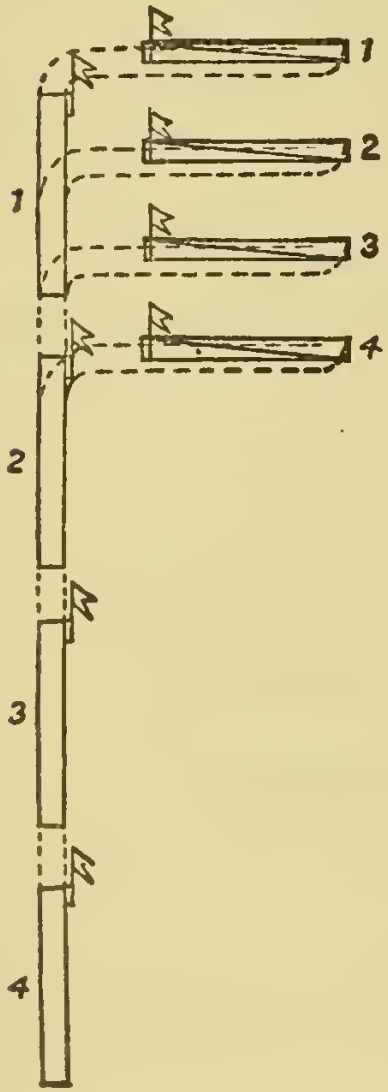
The left trooper of the second troop is established directly in rear of the left trooper of the first troop, and twelve yards from him.

The other troops incline to the right, and each moves by the shortest line so as to enter the column and form line to the left, halts and dresses to the left, twelve yards in rear of and parallel to the preceding troop.

If marching at a walk, the movement is executed in the same manner; the captain of the first troop cautions: *Continue the march* and adds: *Guide left.*

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

If ployed on the fourth troop, the troops are dressed to the right.




Pl. 112, Par. 594.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Ploy into Close Column, Faced to the Front.*

**594.** 1. *Close column,* 2. *First troop,* 3. *Column right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.

The first troop executes *column right;* when twelve yards from the flank of the column, the captain halts, and as his rear four passes him, he commands: 1. *Fours left,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Troop,* 4. HALT, 5. *Left,* 6. DRESS, 7. FRONT.

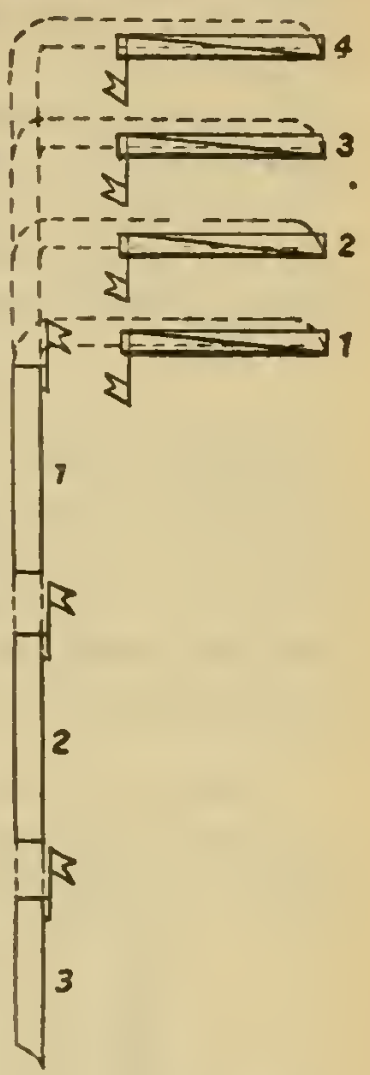
Each of the other troops moves forward, enters the column, forms line to the left, and is dressed to the left, twelve yards in rear of the preceding troop.

If at a halt, captains give the necessary commands for putting their troops in march.

Close column may be formed in an oblique direction by substituting the commands: 3. *Column half-right* (or *half-left*) for 3. *Column right* (or *left*).

**595.** To form the close column, faced to the rear, the major adds: *faced to the rear,* after *close column*, in his commands.

The movement is executed as in Par. 594, except that the troops in rear of the first successively enter the column beyond the point where the first changed direction, and each captain forms his troop in line to the right or left, according as the troop changed direction to the right or left, and halts it.




Pl. 113. Par. 595.

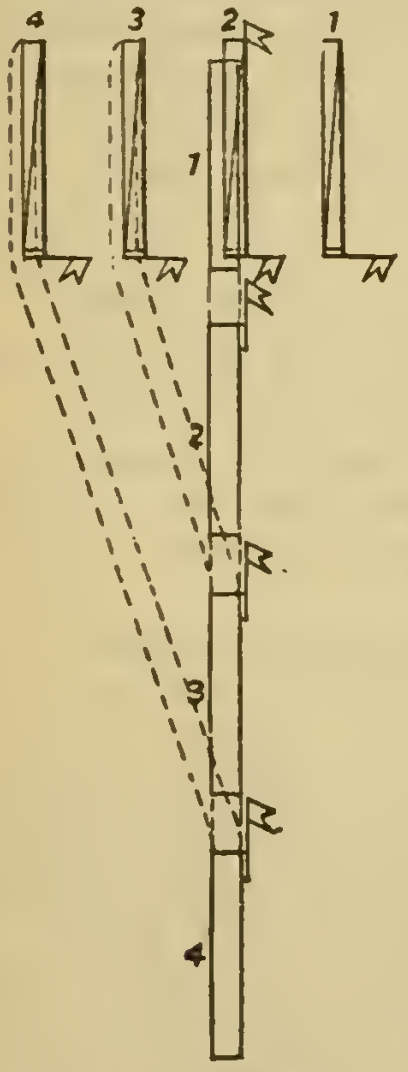
*Being in Column of Fours, to Ploy into Close Column Faced to the Right or Left.*

**596.** 1. *Close column,* 2. *First troop,* 3. *Fours right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.

The first troop executes *fours right,* and when it has advanced fifteen yards, the captain halts it and dresses it to the right; the other troops form close column as from line (Par. 593).

If at a halt, the captains give the necessary commands for putting their troops in march.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.




Pl. 114, Par. 596.

*Being in Close Column, to Form Column of Fours.*

**597.** Being at a halt: 1. *Column of fours,* 2. *First troop,* 3. *Right* (or *Left*) *forward,* 4. *Fours right* (or *left*), 5. MARCH.

The first troop executes *right forward, fours right.*

Each of the other troops executes the same movement in time to follow the one preceding.

**598.** 1. *Column of fours,* 2. *First* (or *Fourth*) *troop,* 3. *Fours right* (or *left*), 4. **MARCH.**

The designated troop executes *fours right.*

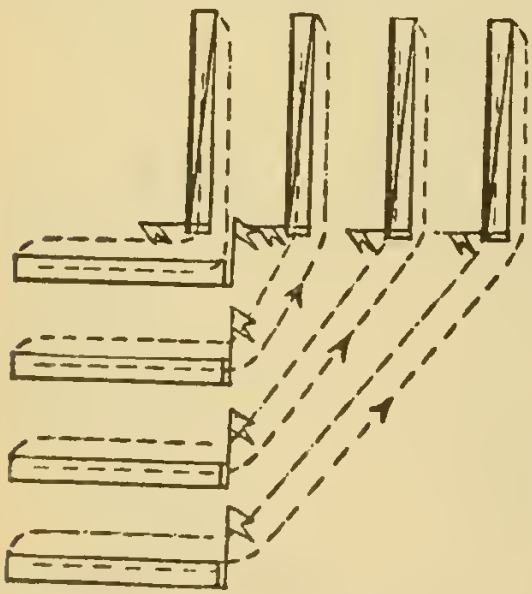
Each of the other troops executes *fours right,* or *right forward, fours right,* in time to follow the one preceding.

### *Movements in Close Column.*

**599.** A close column *advances* and *halts, obliques, marches by the flank,* and *resumes the march in column, gains ground to the right* or *left* when marching by the flank, and *resumes the original direction, faces to the rear, marches to the rear,* and *changes direction,* by the same commands and means as a column at full distance.

### *Being in Close Column, to Change Direction by the Flank.*

**600.** 1. *Change direction by the right* (or *left*) *flank,* 2. *Fours right* (or *left*), 3. **MARCH.**



Pl. 115, Par. 600.

At the second command, the captain of the first troop commands: 1. *Right forward,* 2. *Fours right.*

At the command *march,* the first troop executes *right forward, fours right;* the captain, as his rear four completes its wheel to the front, commands: 1. *Fours left,* 2. **MARCH,** 3. *Troop,* 4. **HALT,** 5. *Left,* 6. **DRESS,** 7. **FRONT.**

The other troops execute *fours right,* and are so marched as to enter the new column in rear of and parallel to the first.

As each troop arrives in rear of the one next preceding, it is formed in line to the left and dressed to the left.

The major may order the first troop to be inclined at any angle to the original front. By this method any direction may be given to a close column.

**601.** The movements of the close column marching by the flank are as prescribed for a line of columns of fours (Par. 588).

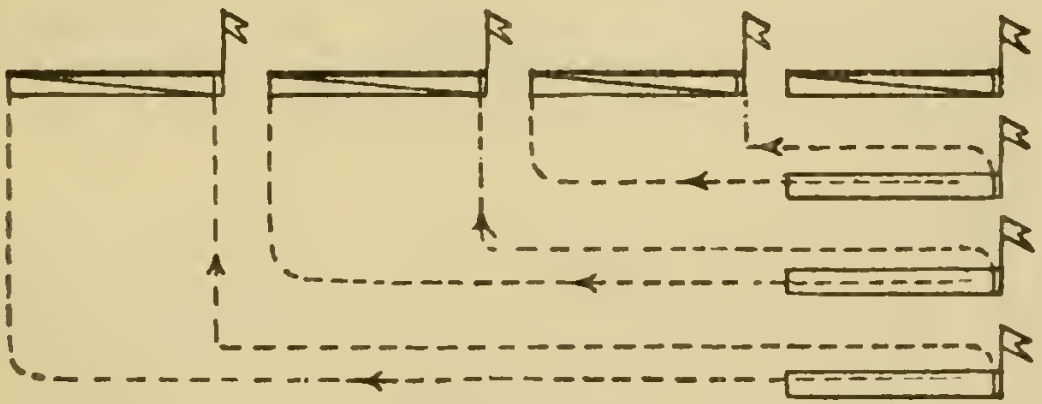
*Being in Close Column, to Form Line.*

**602.** To the right or left: The major first causes the column to take full distance (Par. 592), or forms column of fours (Pars. 597 and 598), and then forms line.

**603.** On right or left: The movement is executed by the same commands and means as from column at full distance.

*To Deploy the Close Column.*

**604.** Being at a halt: 1. *Deploy column,* 2. *Fours left* (or *right*), 3. MARCH.



Pl. 116, Par. 604.

At the second command, the captain of the first troop cautions: *Stand fast.*

At the command *march,* the first troop is dressed to the right; the other troops execute *fours left;* each captain halts when eight yards beyond the left of the preceding troop and as the rear of his troop passes him, commands: 1. *Fours right,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Guide right,* halts the troop near the line, and dresses it to the right.

The principles of Par. 8 apply; when deploying, at an increased gait, the rear troops move diagonally to their positions in line.

The same result may also be accomplished by first forming column of fours (Par. 598), and then forming line to the right or left.

**605.** To deploy the close column faced to the rear, the major adds: *faced to the rear*, after *deploy column.*

The first troop wheels about by fours; the other troops deploy as before and form on the line faced to the rear.

**606.** Close column of wings is ployed and deployed by the same commands as close column of troops, substituting *right* (or *left*) *wing* for *first* (or *fourth*) *troop* in the commands, the close distance being troop front and five yards.

The captains take post as in line.

In ploying on the right wing from line, both troops of the right wing move forward, each is halted and dressed to the left by the command of its captain, the right troop regulating on the left; the troops of the left wing execute the movement at the commands of their captains, each being halted in rear of the corresponding troop of the right wing.

The ployment on the left wing is made on the same principles, by inverse means.

If there be but three troops, close column of wings is formed on the right wing only; the left wing forms line so that its center shall be about opposite the interval between the troops of the right wing.

### *Movements by Platoons.*

**607.** The squadron being in line, forms into column of platoons to the right or left, by the commands and means prescribed in the School of the Troop.

Being in column of platoons, the squadron executes all the movements by platoon prescribed in the School of the Troop, with the following modifications in executing *on right or left into line*, and *front into line* :—

*Being in Column of Platoons, to Form on Right or Left into Line.*

**608.** Being in march: 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line,* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march,* the first troop executes *on right into line;* the other troops march beyond the first, each captain commanding: 1. *On right into line,* 2. MARCH, when his leading platoon is six yards beyond the left flank of the preceding troop (Pars. 507 and 560).

Being at a halt, the captains of troops in rear of the first command: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide right.*

*Being in Column of Platoons, to Form Front into Line.*

**609.** Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the captain of the first troop commands: *Right front into line;* the captain of the second troop: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide left,* 3. *Column right;* the other captains: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide left,* 3. *Column half-right.*

At the command *march,* the first troop forms right front into line (Par. 506); the second troop changes direction to the right, moves forward, changes direction to the left so as to approach the line opposite the position of its left platoon, and, when at thirty yards from the line, the captain commands: 1. *Right front into line,* 2. MARCH; the third and fourth troops march diagonally to the front so as to change direction half-left when at a distance from the line equal to the depth of the troop in column of platoons increased by thirty yards, and complete the movement as explained for the second.

If marching, the captains of troops in rear of the first omit the commands for putting them in march.

The leading troop remains the base troop until changed by the major.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

**610.** Front into line faced to the rear is formed in a similar manner; each troop passes just beyond the line

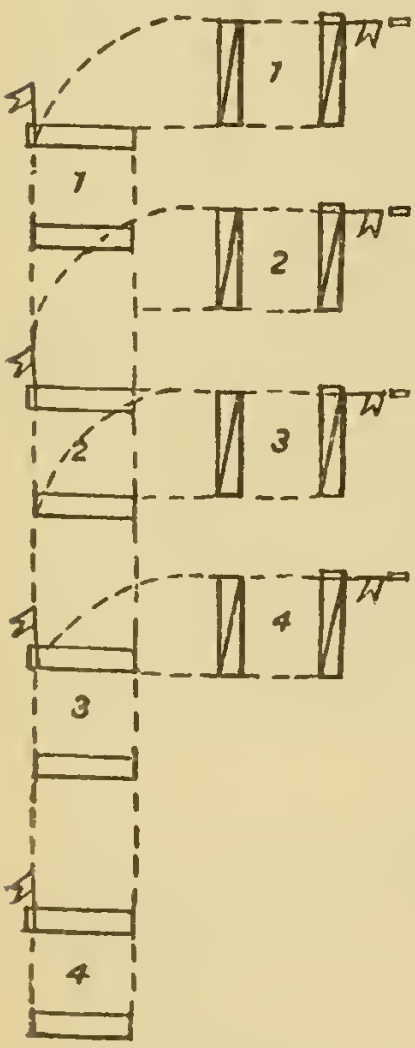
and halts, wheels about by fours when the last platoon has arrived in line, and dresses up on the line.

### *Platoon Columns.*

**611.** The interval between troops in line of platoon columns, except when full interval is stated, is twelve yards.

In line of platoon columns, the position of the major is the same as in line. The captain takes post six yards in front of his guidon.

In forming line of platoon columns, should the movement terminate at a halt, the guidon of each troop precedes it on the line and is established at the point of rest, facing to the front.




Pl. 117, Par. 612.

### *Being in Column of Platoons, to Form Line of Platoon Columns to the Right or Left.*

**612.** Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *into line of platoon columns,* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the captain of the leading troop commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide left,* 3. *Column right;* the other captains command: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide left.*

At the command *march,* the leading troop changes direction to the right; when its rear has cleared the column by twelve yards, the captain commands: 1. *Troop,* 2. HALT, 3. *Left,* 4. DRESS. (Par. 495.)

The rear troops move forward and each changes direction to the right, so as to arrive abreast of and to the

right of the leading troop, with the prescribed interval from the one that preceded it, completing the movement as explained for the first.

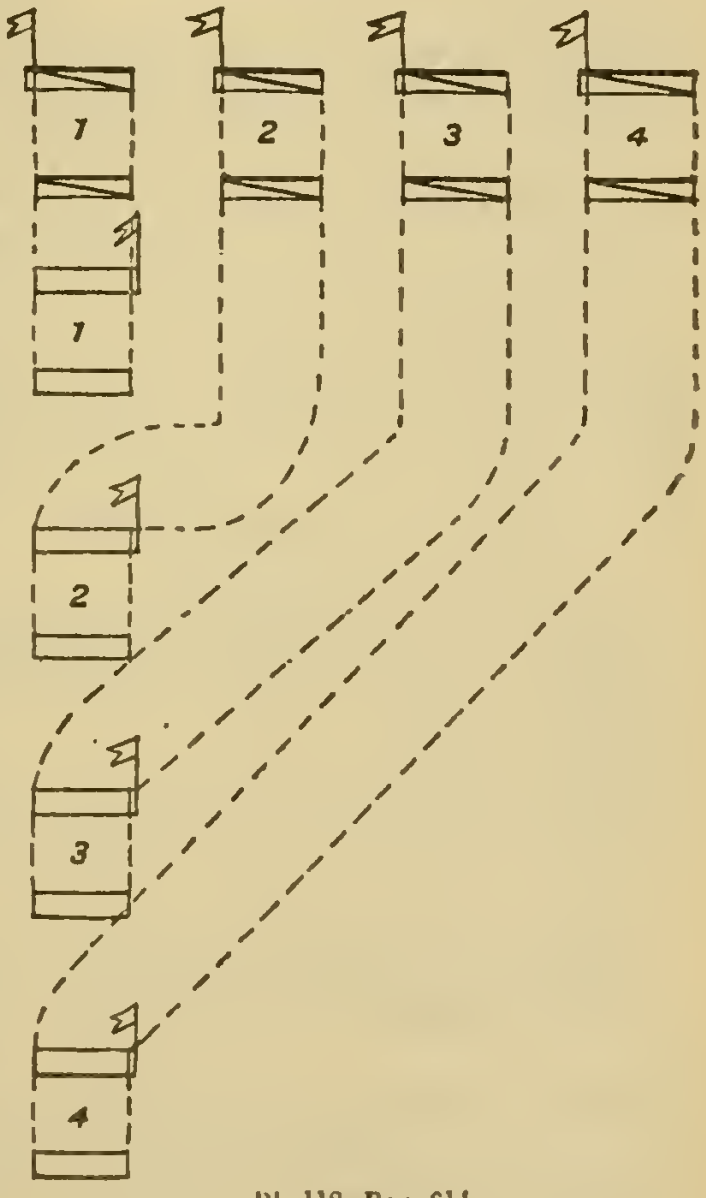
If marching, the captains omit the commands for putting their troops in march.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

*Being in Column of Platoons, to Form on Right or Left into Line of Platoon Columns.*

**613.** 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line of platoon columns,* 2. MARCH.

Executed as in Par. 612, except that each of the rear troops changes direction beyond where the one preceding it entered the line of platoon columns, and the principles of Par. 8 do not apply.




Pl. 118, Par. 614.

*Being in Column of Platoons, to Form Front into Line of Platoon Columns.*

**614.** Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line of platoon columns,* 2, MARCH.

At the first command, all the captains command: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide left;* the captain of the second troop adds: *Column right;* the captains of troops in rear of the second add: 3. *Column half-right.*

At the command *march,* the first troop advances thirty yards, when the captain commands: 1. *Troop,* 2. HALT, 3. *Left,* 4. DRESS; the second troop changes direction to the right, moves forward, and then changes direction to the left, so as to be opposite its position in line, halts abreast of the first troop with the proper interval, and dresses to the left; the other troops move diagonally until by changing direction half-left they are brought opposite their places in line, and complete the movement as explained for the second.

Being in march, the captains omit the commands for putting their troops in march.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

When the movement is executed at the trot or gallop, the second troop moves diagonally to its new position.

**615.** Being in column of fours, right or left front into line of platoon columns is executed on the same principles (Par. 614); each troop approaches the line perpendicularly, and when at thirty yards from the line, its captain commands: 1. *Platoons,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 3. MARCH, 4. *Troop,* 5. HALT, 6. *Left* (or *Right*), 7. DRESS; or, 4. *Guide left* (or *right*).

*Being in Line of Platoon Columns, to March by the Flank.*

**616.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH, 3. *Guide right* (*left*, or *center*).

The captains take post as in column of troops (Par. 567).

*Being in Line of Platoon Columns, to Form Column of Troops.*

**617.** 1. *Platoons right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH; or, 1. *Platoons right* (or *left*) *turn,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

*Being in Column of Troops at Full Distance, to Form Line of Platoon Columns at Full Intervals.*

**618.** 1. *Platoons right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH; or, 1. *Platoons right* (or *left*) *turn,* 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide* (*center, right,* or *left*).

*Being in Line of Platoon Columns at Full Interval, to March in Column of Platoons.*

**619.** Being in march: 1. *Troops,* 2. *Column right* (or *left*), 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide right* (or *left*).

*Being in Column of Platoons, to March in Line of Platoon Columns at Full Interval.*

**620.** 1. *Troops,* 2. *Column right* (or *left*), 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide* (*center, right,* or *left*).

*Being in Line, to Advance in Line of Platoon Columns at Full Interval.*

**621.** 1. *Troops,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *by platoons,* 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide* (*center, right,* or *left*).

*Being in Line of Platoon Columns at Full Interval, to Form Line.*

**622.** 1. *Troops,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 3. MARCH. (See Par. 506).

*To Extend and Close Intervals.*

**623.** Being in line of platoon columns, intervals are extended and closed by the same commands and means as prescribed when in line of troops in columns of fours (Pars. 582 and 583).

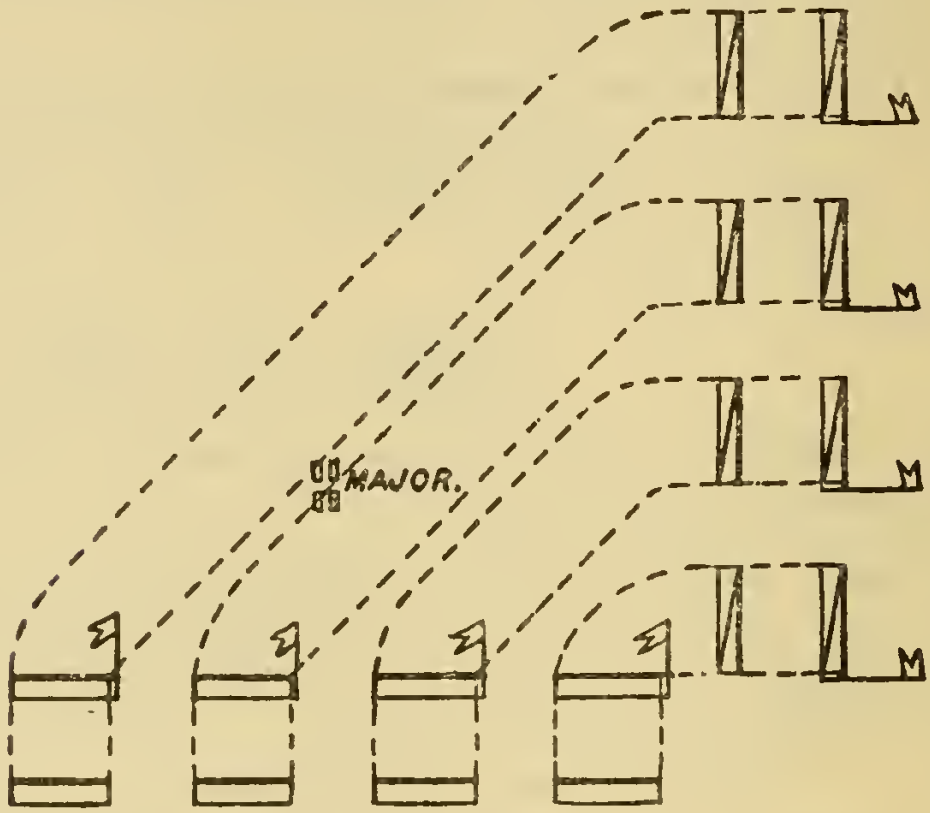
When closing without gaining ground to the front, each rear troop closes to thirteen yards from the rear of the one preceding.

*Being in Line of Platoon Columns, to Change Front.*

**624.** Being at a halt: 1. *Change front on first* (or *fourth troop,* 2. MARCH.

At the first command the captain of the first troop commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide right,* 3. *Column right;* the other captains command: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide right,* 3. *Column half-right.*

At the command *march*, the first troop changes direction to the right and is halted when the pivot trooper of its rear platoon has advanced twelve yards in the new




Pl. 119, Par. 624.

direction; the other troops change direction half-right, and each is so conducted that by again changing direction half-right it will move parallel to the column next on the right, and is halted on the line.

If marching, the captains omit the commands for putting their troops in march.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

*Being in Line of Platoon Columns, to Form Column of Platoons.*

**625.** Being at a halt: 1. *Column of platoons*, 2. *First* (or *Fourth*) *troop*, 3. *Forward*, 4. *Guide* (*right* or *left*), 5. MARCH.

The first troop moves forward; each of the other captains puts his troop in march and makes a partial change

of direction to the right, so as to follow the troop next on the right at a distance equal to platoon front and five yards.

Or, 1. *Column of platoons,* 2. *First* (or *Fourth*) *troop,* 3. *Forward,* 4. *Guide right* (or *left*), 5. *Column right* (or *left*), 6. MARCH.

The first troop moves forward and changes direction at the same time, and is followed successively by the other troops at the proper distance.

*Being in Line, to Break from the Right or Left to March to the Front in Column of Fours.*

**626.** 1. *Column of fours,* 2. *First* (or *Fourth*) *troop,* 3. *Right* (or *left*) *forward,* 4. *Fours right* (or *left*), 5. MARCH.

At the fourth command, the captain of the first troop commands: 1. *Right forward,* 2. *Fours right;* the other captains command: *Fours right.*

At the command *march,* the first troop executes *right forward, fours right;* the other troops execute *fours right,* move forward and change direction to the front on the same ground as the first troop.

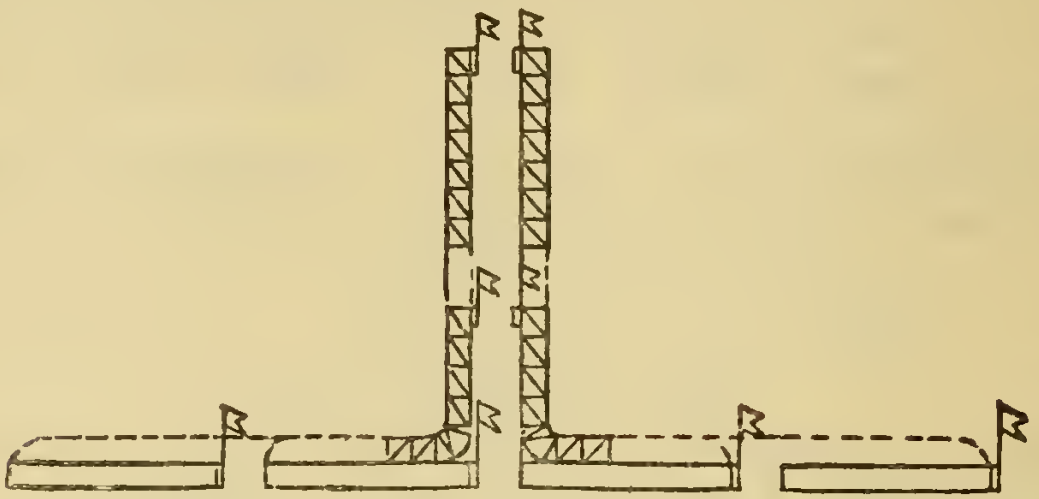
*Being in Line, to Form Double Column of Fours.*

**627.** 1. *Double column of fours,* 2. *Center forward,* 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide right* (or *left*).

At the second command, the captain of the center or right center troop commands: *Left forward, fours left;* the captain of the right troop commands: *Fours left;* the captain of the left center troop commands: *Right forward, fours right,* and the captain of the left troop commands: *Fours right.*

At the command *march,* the center troops break to the front in column of fours; the first troop wheels by fours to the left and follows the second, the fourth troop wheels by fours to the right and follows the third. The left column regulates on the right and preserves the interval.

The interval may be reduced or extended as circumstances may require or as directed by the major.



Pl. 120, Par. 627.

The double column of fours *advances, halts, obliques, faces to the rear, marches to the rear* and *by the flank,* and *changes direction* as prescribed for the line of columns of fours.

When the double column of fours consisting of an odd number of troops is faced to the rear, or marched a short distance to the rear, the major may require that the shorter column shall not move up abreast of the other.

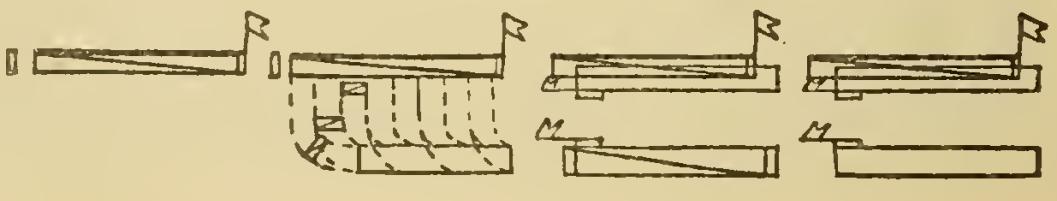
*Being in Double Column of Fours, to Form Line to the Front.*

**628.** 1. *Right and left front into line,* 2. MARCH.

The right column forms right front into line and the left column forms left front into line (Par. 562).

*Being in Double Column of Fours, to Form Line to and on the Right or Left.*

**629.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. *Left* (or *Right*) *fours on right* (or *left*) *into line,* 3. MARCH.



Pl. 121, Par. 629.

The right column forms line to the right and halts; the left column forms on right into line, on the left of the leading troop of the right column (Par. 561).

*Order in Echelon.*

**630.** The distance between troops in the order in echelon is troop front and five yards.

The squadron being in line, forms echelon on the first or fourth troop as prescribed in the School of the Troop, substituting *troop* for *platoon,* and *squadron* for *troop.*

**631.** Being in echelon of troops or of troops in columns of fours, the squadron executes the movements in echelon as prescribed in the School of the Troop, regard being paid to intervals and the distances between troops and platoons.

**632.** Line of platoon columns and line of troops in columns of fours are formed in echelon on the same principles as from line. The distances between troops in echelon in any formation, are the same as in column.

**633.** The squadron in echelon of platoon columns, or of troops in columns of fours, marches to the front, to the rear and by the flank, and forms line of columns by the same commands and means as when the subdivisions are in line.

*Instruction.*

**634.** The major, by markers or in some other manner, indicates a line to be occupied by the squadron, and also indicates the position of a supposed enemy; he designates the officer to command, indicates to him the formation at the close of the movement, and directs him to place the squadron on the new line. Upon completion of the movement, the major gives his judgment upon the following:

Was the squadron marched to its position by the best and shortest route, in the simplest manner and the most suitable formation, under the conditions supposed?

Was it halted at the proper time, and is it in the formation designated?

No movement for the purpose of correction is permitted after the command *halt* is given until after the major gives his observations.

In accordance with the principles laid down in Pars. 427 and 428, various exercises may be devised looking to the prompt and proper maneuvering of the squadron.

## THE CHARGE.

**635.** The squadron, in line, in line of platoon columns, in column of troops, or column of platoons, charges according to the principles prescribed in the School of the Troop.

In charging by squadron, the major takes post in the line of captains.

In charging the enemy by subdivision, the subdivisions charge successively, each at such distance from the one preceding as to support it promptly or to enable it, if repulsed, to clear the flanks of the column and re-form in its rear. The successive subdivisions continue the attack, break through the enemy's line, rally in his rear, and charge again as they return.

When troops charge separately from line, they re-form in their places in line, passing by the flank and rear.

All movements for formation should, if possible, be made beyond the range of the enemy's fire.

The weak points of a line or column are the flanks. The flanks may be protected by forming the flank troops in the order in echelon.

If time will permit, officers and men should be given instructions as to the particular objective for each troop, its rallying point, and its renewal of the attack.

### *The Squadron Acting Alone.*

**636.** In the instruction of the squadron in the charge, the major will be governed by the principles of Pars. 427 and 428; a definite tactical object should be given.

The squadron when alone is formed in two or three lines, as prescribed for the troop (Par. 531).

The senior officer with each of the lines is leader of the line and takes post as such.

The attacking line may consist of one, two, or three troops.

When necessary, the major designates the formation to be taken by each line and directs the relative positions of the support and reserve, with reference to the attacking line, and prescribes the special part each is to take in the attack.

Each troop in the attacking line will be complete; that is, parts of each will not be detached for the support or reserve; one or more platoons of the flank troops may, however, be placed in echelon on the outer flanks.

The reserve and support may be taken from the same troop.

### *To Charge.*

**637.** The major designates the attacking line, the support, and the reserve; if the pistol is to be used he designates that arm.

When the squadron has arrived at the position for taking the formation, the major commands: 1. *Form for attack,* 2. MARCH.

Each captain in the attacking line causes his troop to draw saber, or raise pistol if that arm has been designated by the major. The captains of the support and reserve cause their troops to draw saber.

The attacking line takes the trot; the support and reserve move toward their positions on the flanks, and each takes the trot when the attacking line has gained the proper distance (Par. 531).

When the attacking line has arrived at the proper place to begin the rapid advance, the major commands: 1. *To the charge,* 2. MARCH.

The attacking line advances, regulating on the center; the gallop is increased progressively and the charge is made by each troop as explained for the troop (Par. 531).

Foragers may be deployed on the flank or flanks of the attacking line, the captain designating the platoon to deploy.

At the command *to the charge, march,* the platoon deploys.

At the command *charge,* the foragers swarm around the flank and rear of the enemy.

If the enemy avoid the charge, the major may send a troop in pursuit, as foragers or in compact line. The remainder of the line, held in compact order, follows the pursuit.

# EVOLUTIONS OF THE REGIMENT.

**638.** The regiment is supposed to consist of three squadrons, of four troops each. The instruction prescribed is applicable to a less number of squadrons, composed of a less number of troops, squadron commanders making the necessary allowance in distance.

**639.** In whatever direction the regiment faces, the squadrons are designated from the right in line, and from the head in column, *first squadron, second squadron,* and *third squadron.* The troops are designated by the colonel according to their squadron and position in the squadron; as *second* (or such) *troop, first* (or such) *squadron,* etc.

If in two lines, the squadrons of each line are designated from the right in the first line, *first* and *second;* in the second line, *third.*

**640.** All movements should be executed at the trot, unless the colonel commands or signals *walk* or *gallop.*

### *The Colonel.*

**641.** The colonel is the instructor. In line, and in line of columns, he takes post sixty yards in front of the center of the regiment; in line of masses, thirty yards in front of the center of the regiment. In column, sixty yards, and in column of masses, thirty yards from the center of the column, on the side of the guide. Generally, he should be where he can best superintend his regiment and make his commands heard.

### *The Lieutenant Colonel.*

**642.** In line, in line of columns and in line of masses, the lieutenant colonel takes post thirty yards in rear of the center of the regiment. In column, he is abreast of

the center and on the side opposite the guide, thirty yards from the flank.

During field movements, the duties of the lieutenant colonel are to assist the colonel, as the latter may direct, and he is not restricted to any particular post.

### *The Squadron Commanders.*

**643.** Each squadron is commanded by a major.

**644.** The major takes post as in the School of the Squadron, except in line of masses, but much latitude must be allowed in regard to his position. He must ride wherever he can best hear the colonel's commands, make his own heard, and superintend his squadron.

**645.** Each major gives the commands necessary to insure the execution of movements by his squadron at the proper time.

**646.** Unless otherwise ordered, latitude will be allowed the squadron commander in maneuvering his squadron into position. Methods given in the text should be followed, unless circumstances, such as the configuration of the ground, etc., suggest shorter and safer ones to accomplish the object of the movement, when he should not be required to comply literally with the text, so long as he uses movements prescribed in the School of the Squadron; *e. g.:* In the maneuvers for forming line from column of fours, where it is prescribed that the squadrons shall move opposite to their places in line by obliquing by the heads of columns, the major may move the squadron in column of fours, and *vice versa.*

**647.** A squadron may stand *at ease* (Par. 286) while awaiting the completion of a movement by the other squadrons.

### *Staff and Non-Commissioned Staff.*

**648.** The staff officers, sergeant major, and chief trumpeter accompany the colonel; the adjutant rides on his left; the other staff officers are in line, in the order of

rank from right to left, six yards in rear of the colonel and adjutant; the sergeant major, chief trumpeter, and and orderlies, three yards in rear of the staff officers.

In line, the non-commissioned staff except the sergeant-major, and the regimental non-commissioned officers except the chief trumpeter, are in one line in the order of rank, the senior on the right, abreast of the rank and six yards from the left flank; when the regiment faces about, they turn about individually, but do not change to the other flank. In column, they are six yards in front of the chief of the leading subdivision or twelve yards in rear of the rear subdivision, according as the column was formed toward or away from their flank. In line of columns, they are abreast of the leading rank of the nearest subdivision.

Except the adjutant and sergeant major, the staff, non-commissioned staff and regimental non-commissioned officers may be excused from the regimental maneuvers other than ceremonies.

### *The Band.*

**649.** In line, the left of its front rank is sixteen yards to the right and in line with the rank of the first squadron.

In column, it is sixteen yards in front of the officers of the leading subdivision.

The band may be excused from regimental maneuvers, or it may be assigned a position on the ground.

### *The Guard of the Standard.*

**650.** The guard is posted as the left four of the center or right center troop of the center squadron, or of a single squadron; if there be but two squadrons, it is posted as the left four of the left troop of the first squadron.

### *Route Marches.*

**651.** In route marches, the colonel is at the head of

the column accompanied by the staff, except the surgeons and quartermaster, and by the non-commissioned staff, regimental non-commissioned officers, and orderlies.

The lieutenant colonel and the surgeons are in rear of the column, or as the colonel may direct.

The quartermaster and quartermaster sergeant are with the train.

The colonel may direct the standard and its guard to march at the head of the regiment, in rear of the orderlies.

### *General Rules for Command.*

**652.** The commands of the colonel may be given by message.

In the evolutions of the regiment, the lieutenant colonel, if commanding a separate line, and the majors unless otherwise directed, repeat the commands of the colonel. The preparatory command of the colonel is repeated as soon as given; each major then adds such commands and causes his squadron to execute such movements as are necessary to the execution of the general movement.

The colonel may preface the commands for each movement by the command: ATTENTION.

When the regiment is in more than one line, if a movement is to be executed by one of the lines, *first line, second line,* or *third line* is specified in the preparatory command of the colonel; the squadron commanders in the designated line repeat the commands of the colonel.

When the formation will admit of the simultaneous execution of movements by squadrons, the colonel may have them execute the movements prescribed in the School of the Squadron by prefixing the command *squadrons* to the commands therein prescribed.

The colonel may designate a squadron to execute a separate movement by prefixing the command: (Such) *squad-*

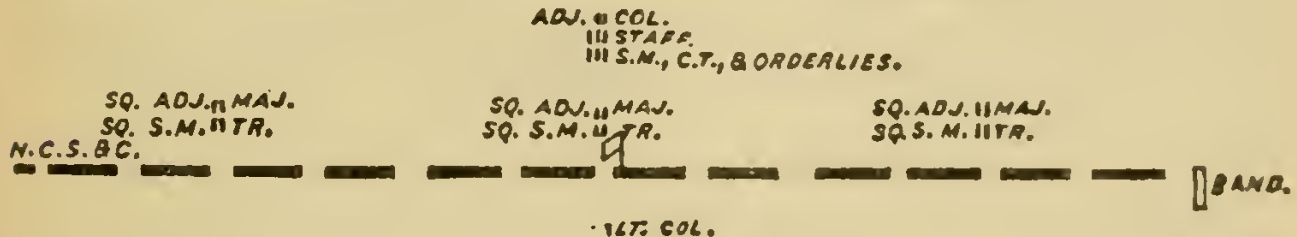
*ron* to the commands prescribed in the School of the Squadron.

When the formation will admit of the simultaneous execution of movements by troops or platoons, the movements are executed as in the School of the Squadron, the colonel giving the commands prescribed for the major, except that in announcing the guide, in line or in line of columns, he commands: (Such) *the base squadron.*

### *To Form the Regiment.*

**653.** The regiment is formed by squadrons according to the principles for successive formations. It may be formed in line, in line of platoon columns, or in line of masses, at the discretion of the colonel.

It may also be formed in separate lines, or in echelon in any combination of the above formations.




Pl. 122, Par. 653.

When forming, the squadrons are posted in line from right to left in the order of the rank of their squadron commanders present, the senior on the right; or are posted in such order as the colonel may direct. A squadron whose major is in command of the regiment retains its place.

The interval between squadrons in line is sixteen yards.

To receive the regiment, the colonel takes post facing the center; the lieutenant-colonel, non-commissioned staff, and regimental non-commissioned officers then take their posts.

The adjutant indicates to the adjutant of the base squadron the point of rest and the direction of the line,

and takes post about thirty yards in front of the center of the regiment.

The formation completed, the adjutant commands: 1. *Squadrons,* 2. ATTENTION, 3. *Draw,* 4. SABER, 5. *Present,* 6. SABER, turns to the front, salutes the colonel, and reports: *Sir, the regiment is formed.*

The colonel returns the salute with the right hand, directs the adjutant: *Take your post, sir,* and draws saber.

The adjutant moves at a trot or gallop and joins the colonel, passing by his right and rear.

### *To Rest and Dismiss the Regiment.*

**654.** The regiment is rested and called to attention as in Pars. 286, 287, and 524, substituting *squadrons* for *squad* or *troop* in the commands.

To dismiss the regiment, the colonel commands: *Dismiss your squadrons.*

Each major conducts his squadron to its parade ground, where it is dismissed as prescribed.

### *To March in Line, or Line of Columns.*

**655.** The colonel may designate the point of direction (Par. 50).

Being at a halt: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Second* (or Such) *the base squadron,* 3. MARCH.

The major of the designated squadron commands; *Guide center;* majors of squadrons on its right command: *Guide left;* majors of squadrons on its left command: *Guide right.*

The guide of the designated squadron selects new points on the ground as he advances; the other squadrons regulate their march upon the base squadron so as to preserve the intervals and the alignment.

**656.** In changing front, or in obliquing, the squadron on the flank toward which the movement is being made is the base squadron for the time being.

*To Face the Line to the Rear.*

**657.** 1. *Face to the rear,* 2. *Fours right* (or *left*) *about,* 3. **MARCH.** Each major halts his squadron as the fours unite in line.

*To March the Line to the Rear.*

**658.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*) *about,* 2. **MARCH,** 3. (Such) *the base squadron.*

*To Halt the Regiment.*

**659.** Being in march: 1. *Squadrons,* 2. **HALT.**

*Alignments.*

**660.** Being in line at a halt, to give a general alignment the colonel selects a base troop, posts its guidon and principal guide opposite the point of rest in the desired direction, and commands: 1. *Guides on the line.* 2. *On the center,* or 2. *Right* (or *Left*), 3. **DRESS.**

At the first command, the guidon and principal guide of each troop post themselves as in forming the squadron taking care to preserve the intervals.

At the command *dress,* each squadron is dressed as in Par. 553.

If a squadron be at a considerable distance from or in front of the position it is to occupy, its major will, at the first command, move it into proper position for dressing

*Being in Line, to March by the Flank.*

**661.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH.**

*Being in Line at a Halt, to Break into Column of Fours from the Right or Left, to March to the Left or Right.*

**662.** 1. *Column of fours,* 2. *Break from the right* (or *left*), *to march to the left* (or *right*), 3. **MARCH.**

The first squadron executes the movement (Par. 557);

the other squadrons follow successively at the command of their majors, each seventeen yards in rear of the one preceding.

**663.** The regiment in column of fours *forms line to the right* or *left, advances, obliques, changes direction,* and *marches to the rear* as prescribed in the School the Squadron.

**664.** The movements from column of fours are explained for execution on the march, but they may be executed from a halt.

### *Successive Formations.*

**665.** In successive formations of the regiment, the completion of the movement should find the regiment halted.

The adjutant or sergeant major of each squadron precedes it to indicate its point of rest.

The guidon and principal guide of the base troop of the base squadron are first established.

The guidon and principal guides of the leading troops of the rear squadrons are established on the general line, the nearest guidon being at the proper interval from the flank of the squadron next preceding.

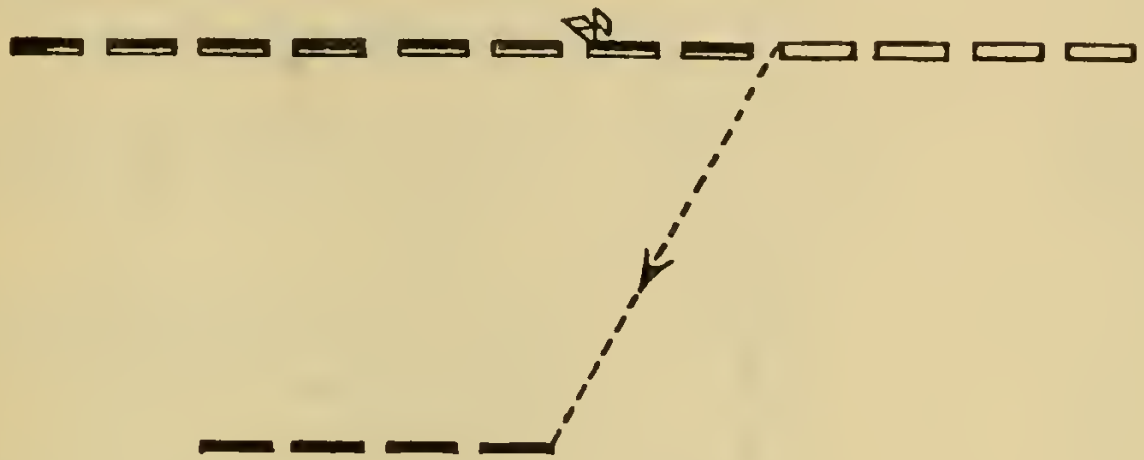
### *Distances.*

**666.** When in two or more lines or in column of squadrons, the normal distance is squadron front and seventeen yards; this may be increased or diminished, the colonel adding to his first command: *At* (so many) *yards distance;* or the colonel may send orders to commanders of the second and third lines specifying the distance; or may send a staff officer to indicate the points of rest.

When in two lines, the second line in all maneuvers preserves its position relative to the first and conforms to its movements.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form in Two Lines to the Right or Left.*

**667.** 1. *In two lines,* 2. *Fours right* (or *left*), 3. *Third* (or Such) *squadron, second line,* 4. MARCH.



Pl. 123, Par. 667.

The first and second squadrons form line to the right and halt. The third squadron inclines to the left until it gains the required distance, when it resumes the original direction, and is formed in line to the right and halted with its center in rear of the center of the first line.

*Being in Two Lines, to March in Column of Fours.*

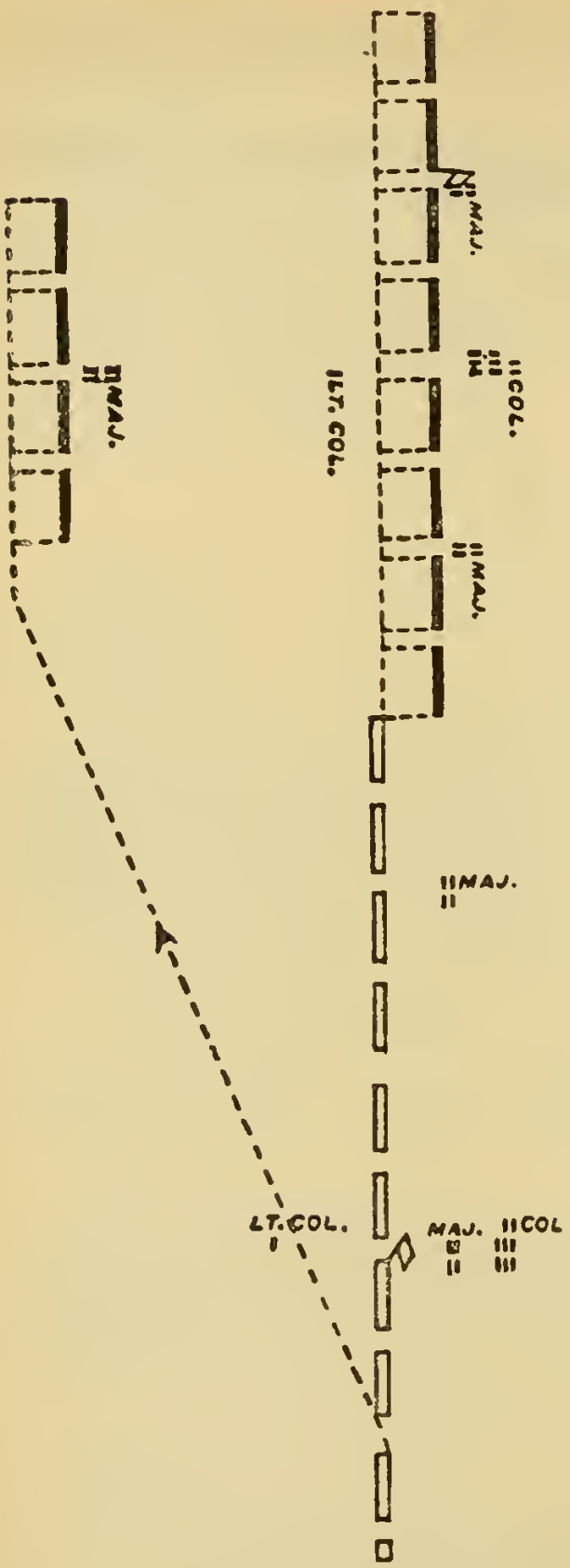
**668.** 1. *Column of fours,* 2. *First Line,* 3. *Fours right* (or *left*); or, 3. *Right* (or *Left*) *forward, fours right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.

The squadron commander of the second line adds: 1. *Fours right,* 2. MARCH, or breaks into column of fours to the front (Par. 626) in time to follow the preceding squadron at the proper distance. The squadron is marched by the shortest line to its place in column.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form on Right or Left into Line.*

**669.** 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line,* 2. MARCH.

The leading squadron executes *on right into line;* each




Pl. 124, Par. 670.

of the other squadrons, at the commands of its major, executes the same movement when its leading four has passed thirteen yards beyond the left flank of the squadron preceding.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form in Two Lines on Right or Left.*

**670.** 1. *In two lines,* 2. *On right* (or *left*) *into line,* 3. *Third* (or such) *squadron, second line,* 4. MARCH.

The first and second squadrons execute the movement as in Par. 669. The third squadron inclines to the left until it gains its distance (Par. 666), when it resumes the original direction, and forms on right into line in rear of the center of the first line.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form on Right or Left into Line by Squadrons.*

**671.** 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line by squadrons,* 2. MARCH.

The first squadron is wheeled by fours to the right and is halted after advancing thirty yards; each of the other squadrons

marches beyond the one preceding, is wheeled by fours to the right at its proper interval, and is halted on the line.

### *Being in Column of Fours, to Form in Two Lines, on Right or Left by Squadrons.*

**672.** 1. *In two lines*, 2. *On right* (or *left*) *into line by squadrons*, 3. *Third* (or such) *squadron, second line*, 4. MARCH.

The first and second squadrons execute the movement as in Par. 671. The third squadron inclines to the left until it gains its distance, when it resumes the original direction, and forms line to the right in rear of the center of the first line.

### *Being in Column of Fours, to Form Front into Line.*

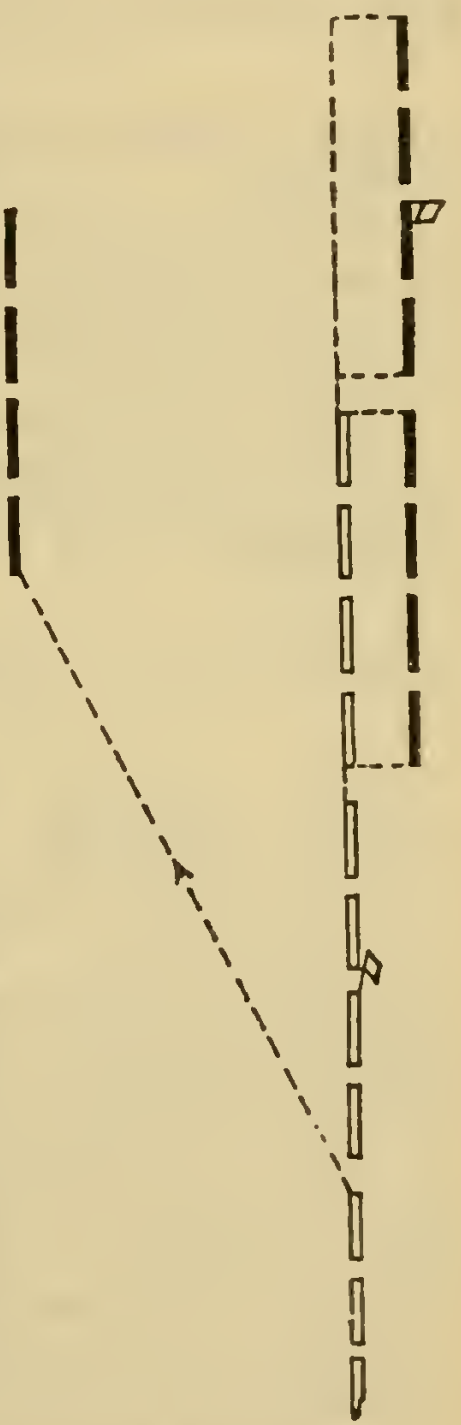
**673.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line*, 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the majors of the rear squadrons command: *Column half-right.*

At the command *march*, the first squadron executes *right front into line.*

Each of the other majors so marches his squadron that when the head arrives opposite its point of rest, it will be at least troop distance and thirty yards in rear of the line, then changes direction half-left, and when thirty yards from the line, forms it right front into line.

In forming front into line, the majors of the second and third



Pl. 125, Par. 672.

squadrons may march their squadrons diagonally toward their positions by the heads of troops; *e. g.*: The majors command: 1. *Troops,* 2. *Column half-right* (or *half-left*) (Par. 646).

### *Being in Column of Fours, to Form Front into Line, Faced to the Rear.*

**674.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line, faced to the rear,* 2. MARCH.

The first squadron executes *right front into line, faced to the rear;* the others are marched toward their points of rest and formed right front into line, faced to the rear, on the left of the first.

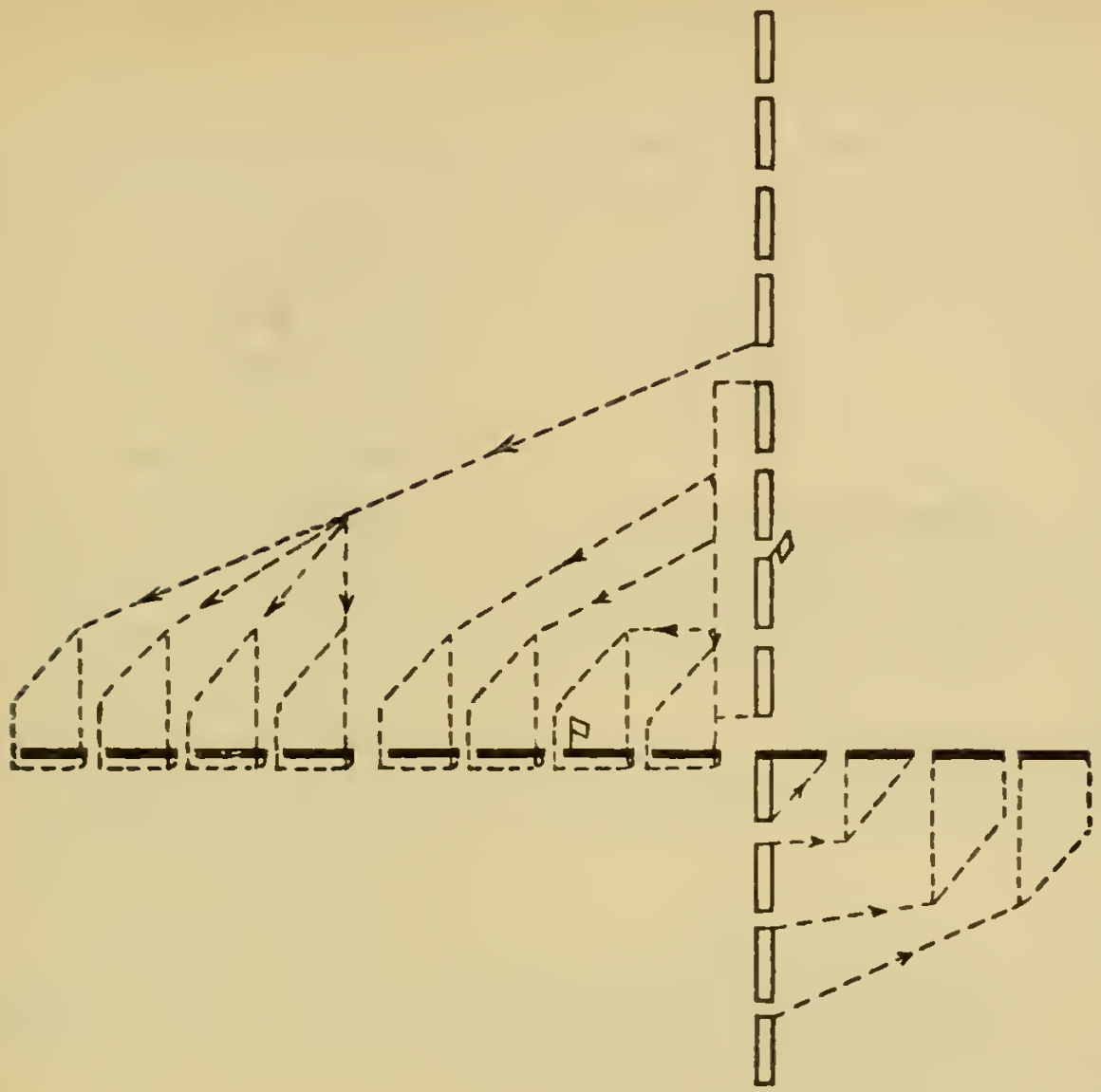
**675.** Front into line and front into line, faced to the rear, may be executed on the rear of the column, by first wheeling about by fours and then using the means already explained.

### *Being in Column of Fours, to Form Front into Line on the Head of a Rear Squadron.*

**676.** 1. *On third* (or such) *squadron,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 3. MARCH.

At the second command, the major of the first squadron commands: 1. *Fours left about;* the major of the second: 1. *Fours left.*

At the command *march,* the third squadron executes *right front into line.* The second squadron marches in line until it has cleared the left flank of the third squadron by eighteen yards, when the major wheels it by fours to the left, and commands: 1. *Right front into line, faced to the rear,* 2. MARCH. The first squadron wheels about by fours, upon the completion of which the major commands: 1. *Column half-right,* 2, MARCH, and marches his squadron so as to form it right front into line, faced to the rear on the left of the second.



Pl. 126, Par. 676.

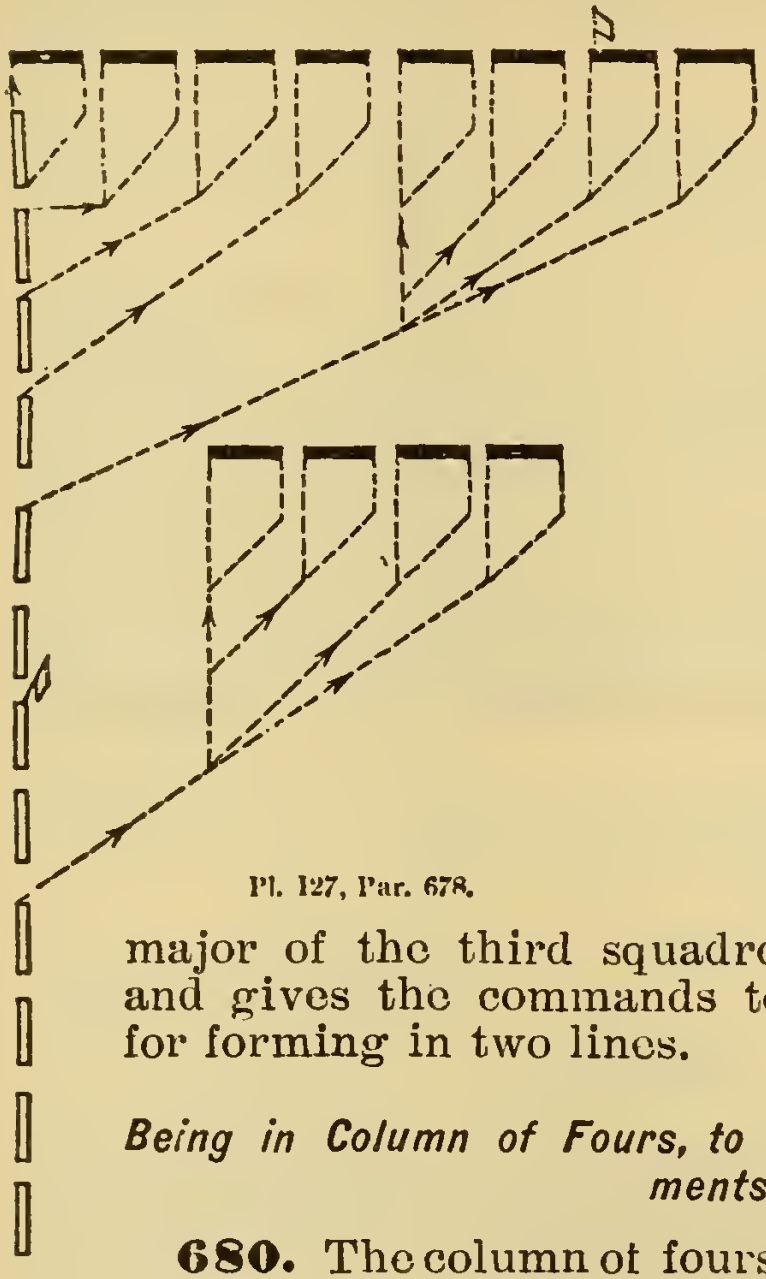
**677.** Front into line on the second squadron is similarly executed; the first squadron then forms as prescribed for the second (Par. 676); the second and third squadrons execute *right front into line* (Par. 673).

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Front into Line, in Two Lines.*

**678.** 1. *In two lines,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 3. *Third* (or such) *squadron, second line,* 4. MARCH.

The first and second squadrons execute *right front into line* (Par. 673). The third squadron inclines to the right,

and forms right front into line in rear of the center of the first line.



Pl. 127, Par. 678.

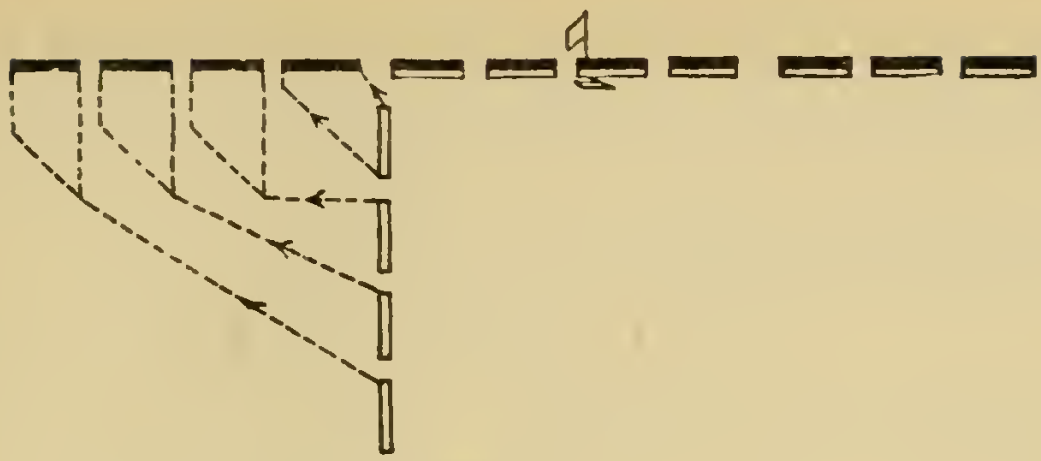
Front into two lines faced to the rear may be executed according to the same principles. The second and third squadrons form front into line faced to the rear, forming the first line: the first squadron forms line faced to the rear, by two movements, in rear of the center of the first line.

**679.** To form in three lines, the third in close column, or line of platoon columns, the colonel sends special instructions to the major of the third squadron as to its formation, and gives the commands to the other squadrons for forming in two lines.

### *Being in Column of Fours, to Form Line by Two Movements.*

**680.** The column of fours having partly changed direction to the right, to form line to the left: 1. *Fours left,* 2. *Rear squadrons, left front into line,* 3. MARCH.

The squadron that has changed direction to the right forms line to the left and halts; the squadrons in rear execute *left front into line,* the leading fours advancing only so far as to be in line with the squadron that formed line to the left.



Pl. 128, Par. 680.

**681.** To form line to the right: 1. *Fours right*, 2. *Rear squadrons left front into line, faced to the rear*, 3. MARCH.

The squadron that has changed direction forms line to the right and halts; the squadrons in rear form left front into line faced to the rear.

**682.** The column, having partly changed direction to the left, is formed *to the right* and *right front into line*, or *to the left* and *right front into line, faced to the rear*, by similar commands and means.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Right and Left Front into Line*

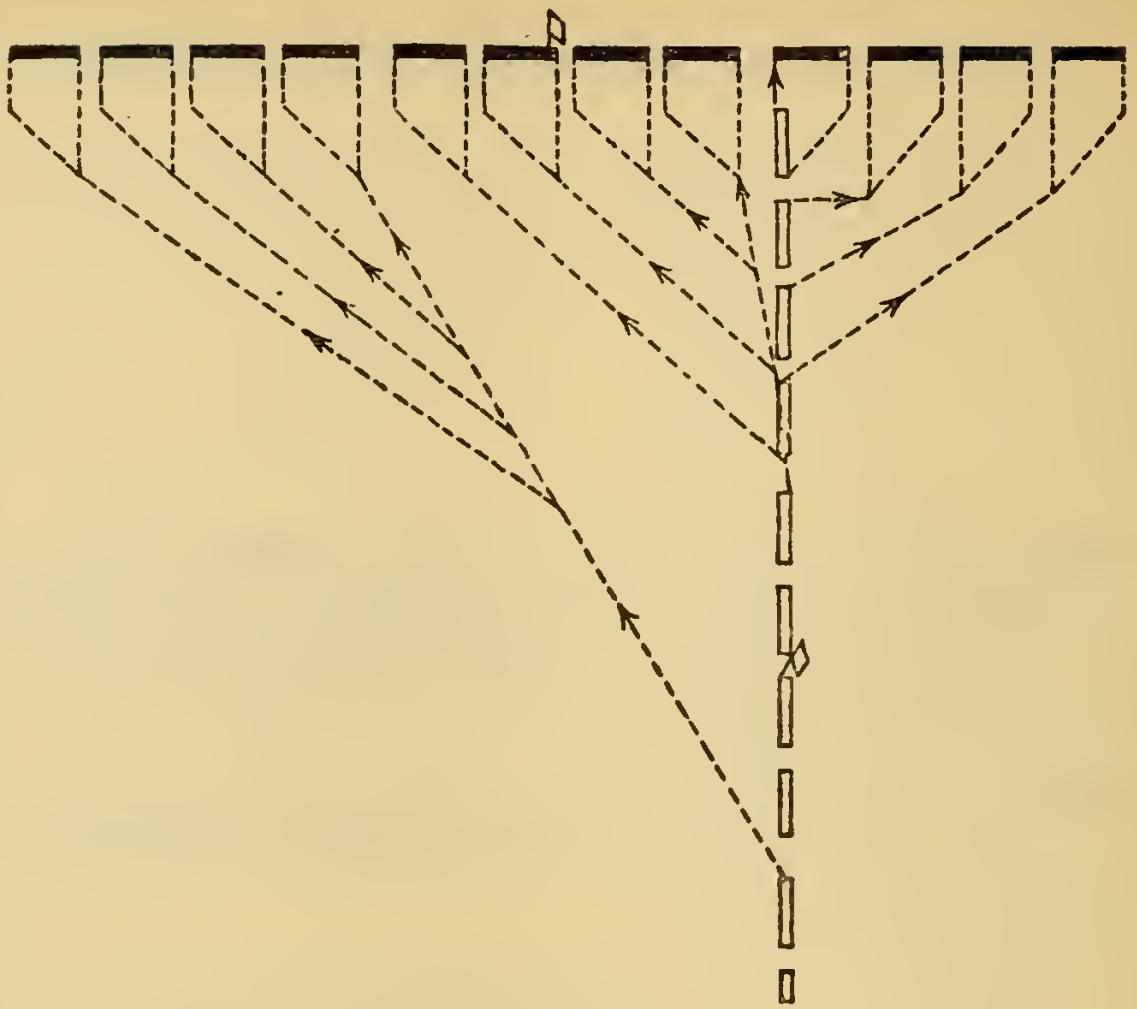
**683.** 1. *Right and left front into line*, 2. MARCH.

The first squadron forms right front into line; the second forms left front into line, on the left of the first, and the third forms left front into line on the left of the second. (See Pl. 129.)

If the colonel commands *left and right front into line*, the first squadron forms left front into line, and the rear squadrons form right front into line on the right of the first.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Right and Left Front into Line, in Two Lines.*

**684.** 1. *In two lines*, 2. *Right and left front into line*, 3. *Third* (or Such) *squadron, second line*, 4. MARCH.



Pl. 129, Par. 683.

The first squadron forms right front into line; the second forms left front into line, on the left of the first; the third forms line by two movements (Pars. 564 and 566), and is established in rear of the center of the first line.

If the second command of the colonel be: *Left and right front into line,* the first squadron forms left front into line and the second forms right front into line on the right of the first.

**685.** Being in column of fours, the regiment forms *line of troops in columns of fours* according to the principles for forming line; each major marches his squadron opposite its point of rest on the principles explained for forming the regiment front into line, or on right or left into line,

and then forms it into line of columns of fours as in the School of the Squadron.

The interval between squadrons in line of columns of fours at closed intervals is troop front.

**686.** All movements in line of columns of fours, School of the Squadron, may be executed by the regiment by similar commands and means, the colonel designating: (Such) *squadron,* when necessary.

**687.** The regiment in line of battle, advancing considerable distances or over broken ground, marches in line of squadrons or other subdivisions in columns of fours, or in line of platoon columns.

### *Column at Full Distance.*

**688.** The regiment being in line, forms *column of troops* or *platoons to the right* or *left*, as prescribed in the School of the Squadron.

**689.** The regiment being in column at full distance, *forms line to the right* or *left, marches to the rear, advances,* and *halts* as prescribed in the School of the Squadron.

To form line to the front, the first squadron forms front into line as prescribed in the School of the Squadron; each of the other squadrons is marched in column of fours opposite its position, and is then formed front into line (Par. 673).

To form on right or left into line, the first squadron forms on the right (or left) into line as prescribed in the School of the Squadron; the others successively execute the same movement, each sixteen yards beyond the one preceding.

### *Being in Column at Full Distance, to Change Direction.*

**690.** Being in march: 1. *Column right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH

The first squadron changes direction to the right (Par. 572); the others move forward and each, at the command of its major, changes direction on the same ground as the first.

The principal guide marking the turning point of the first squadron is relieved by a principal guide from the second, and he in turn by one from the third, each as soon as his squadron has passed him.

Being at a halt: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*), 3. *Column right* (or *left*), 4. **MARCH.**

*Being in Column at Full Distance, to Face the Column to the Rear.*

**691.** 1. *Face to the rear*, 2. *Fours right* (or *left*) *about*, 3. **MARCH.** The majors add: 4. *Squadron*, 5. **HALT**, as the fours unite in line.

*Column of Masses.*

**692.** In column of masses, the distance of each squadron from the one preceding is equal to the front of its first troop.

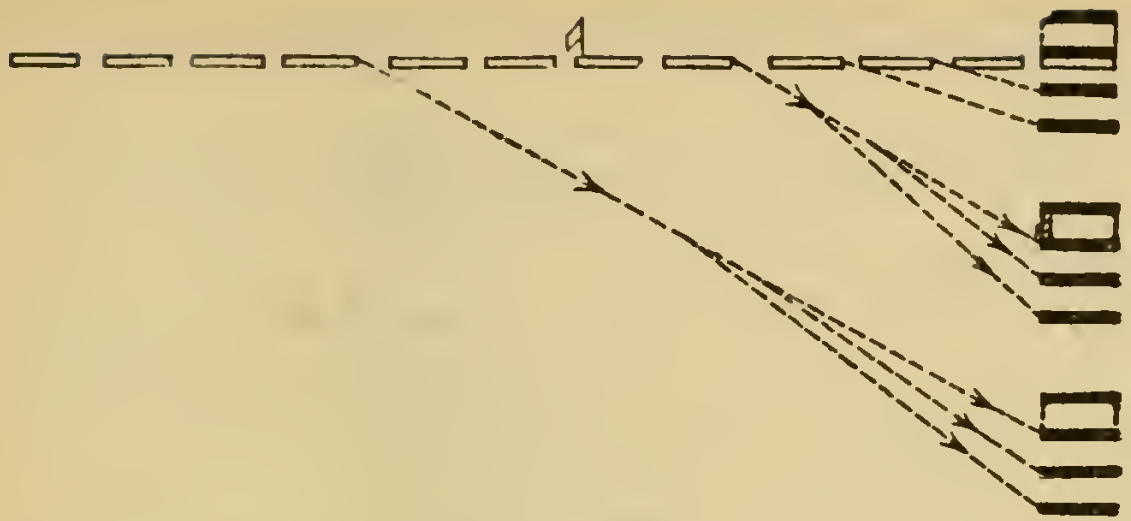
**693.** In forming column of masses from line, the designated squadron ploys into close column; the others ploy in rear of the one designated, the squadron nearest the point of rest taking precedence in the column. The rear squadrons are dressed to the same flank as the designated or leading squadron.

**694.** Column of troops at full distance is closed in mass by the commands and means prescribed for the squadron (Par. 590); each squadron in rear of the first is closed in mass when at troop distance from the one preceding.

**695.** Being in column of masses, full distances are taken by the commands and means prescribed for the squadron (Par. 592); each squadron in rear of the first takes full distance when its leading troop has troop front and thirteen yards from the preceding squadron.

*Being in Line, to Ploy into Column of Masses on the First Troop of the First Squadron.*

**696.** 1. *Column of masses*, 2. *On first troop, first squadron*, 3. **MARCH.**



Pl. 130, Par. 696.

The first squadron ploys into close column on its first troop (Par. 593); the other squadrons wheel by fours to the right, incline to the right, and each marches so that its leading troop may enter the column at troop distance and fifteen yards in rear of the rear troop of the preceding squadron. The second squadron ploys faced to the left in rear of the first (Par. 596), and the third ploys in rear of the second; the left guides cover.

The regiment is ployed on the fourth troop, third squadron, on the same principles.

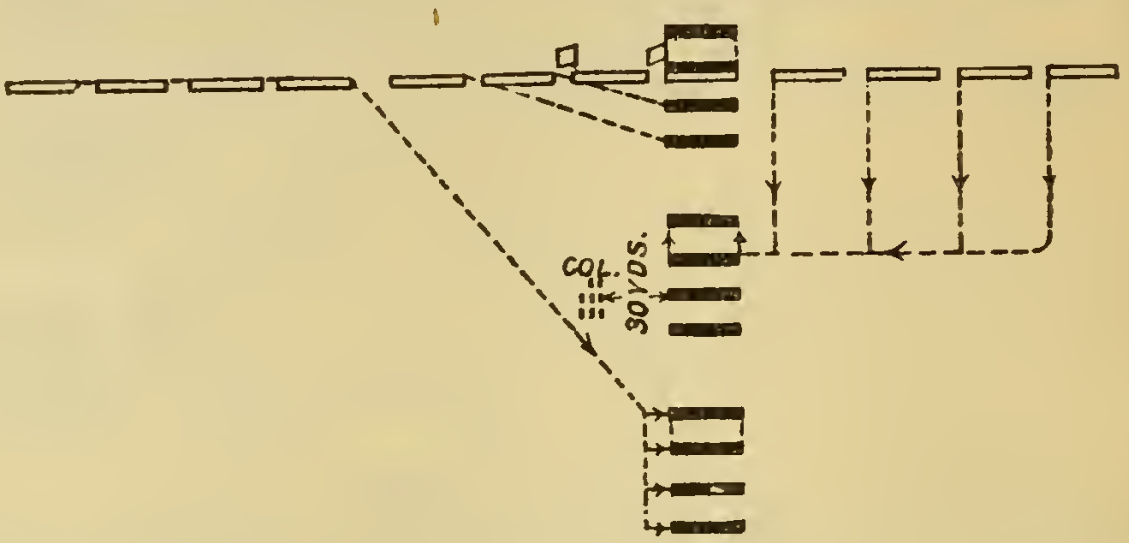
### *Being in Line, to Ploy into Column of Masses on an Interior Squadron.*

**697.** 1. *Column of masses,* 2. *On first troop, second squadron,* 3. **MARCH.**

The second squadron ploys on its first troop (Par. 593).

The major of the first squadron commands: 1. *Fours left,* 2. *Troops,* 3. *Column left,* 4. **MARCH,** 5. *Guide right,* and when his leading fours are troop distance and twelve yards beyond the rear of the second squadron, commands: 1. *Troops,* 2. *Column right,* 3. **MARCH,** and then ploys his squadron faced to the right in rear of the second; the troops are dressed to the left; in a similar manner, the major of the third ploys his squadron faced to the left in rear of the first.

The major of the first squadron may command: 1. *Fours left*, 2. MARCH, 3. *Column left*, 4. MARCH, and when the



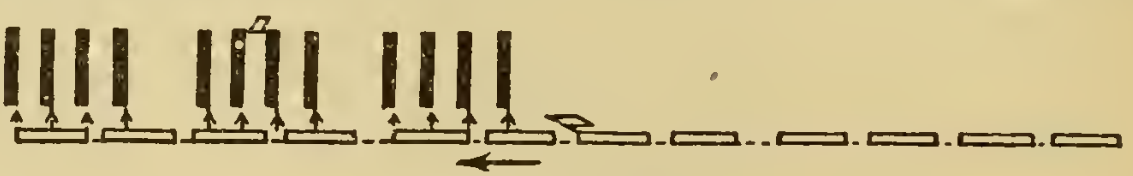

Pl 131, Par. 697

head of the column has advanced troop distance beyond the rear of the second squadron, he commands: 1. *Close column, faced to the rear*, 2. *First troop, column right*, 4. MARCH.

Should the command of the colonel be: 1. *Column of masses*, 2. *On fourth troop, second squadron*, 3. MARCH, the movement is executed on the same principles. The third squadron ploys in rear of the second, and the first in rear of the third.

### *Being in Column of Fours, to Ploy into Column of Masses, Faced to the Front.*

**698.** 1. *Column of masses*, 2. *First troop, first squadron*, 3. *Column right* (or *left*); or, 3 *Column half-right* (or *half-left*), 4. MARCH.



Pl. 132, Par. 698

The first squadron ploys faced to the front (Par. 594);

the others successively execute the same movement, each in rear of the one preceding.

*Being in Column of fours, to Ploy into Column of Masses, Faced to the Rear.*

**699.** 1. *Column of masses, faced to the rear,* 2. *First troop, first squadron,* 3. *Column right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.

The first squadron ploys faced to the rear (Par. 595); the others move forward and successively execute the same movement, each major giving his command so that his first troop may enter the column at a point troop distance beyond the point where the last troop of the preceding squadron entered it.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Ploy into Column of Masses, Faced to the Right or Left.*

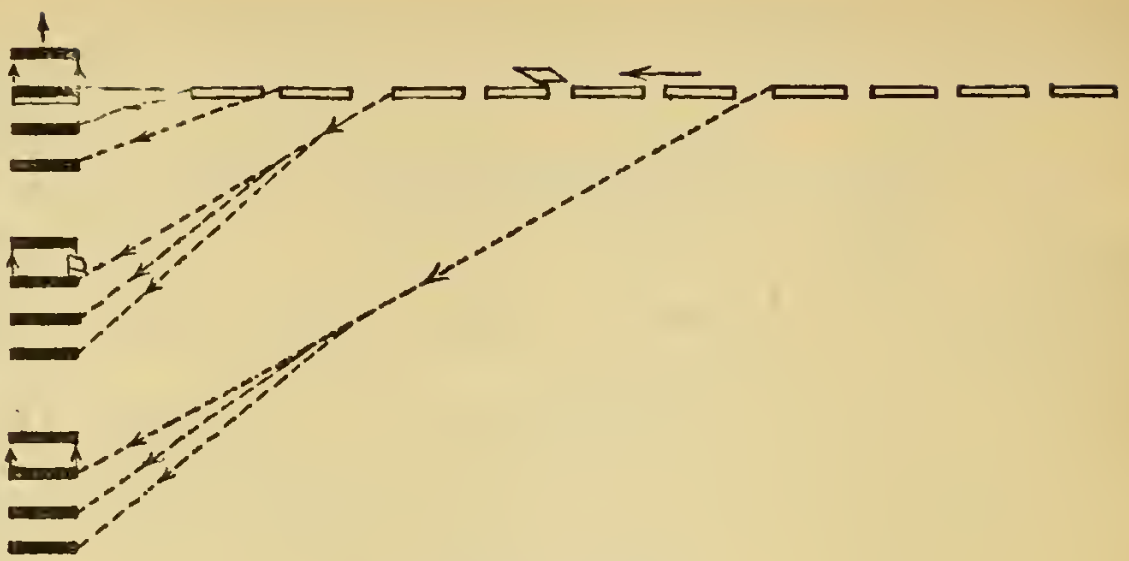
**700.** 1. *Column of masses,* 2. *First troop, first squadron,* 3. *Fours right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.

The first squadron ploys faced to the right (Par. 596); the others incline to the left and successively execute the same movement, each major giving his commands so that his first troop may enter the column at troop distance and fifteen yards in rear of the rear troop of the preceding squadron. (Pl. 134.)

**701.** Being in column of troops or fours, column of masses is formed on the rearmost troop by first wheeling about by fours and then closing in mass; when the column has closed, the regiment is again wheeled about by fours.

**702.** The column of masses *advances, halts, marches by the flank, resumes the march in column, faces to the rear, marches to the rear,* and *changes direction* on the march, by the same commands as the column at full distance.

Pl. 133, Par. 699.

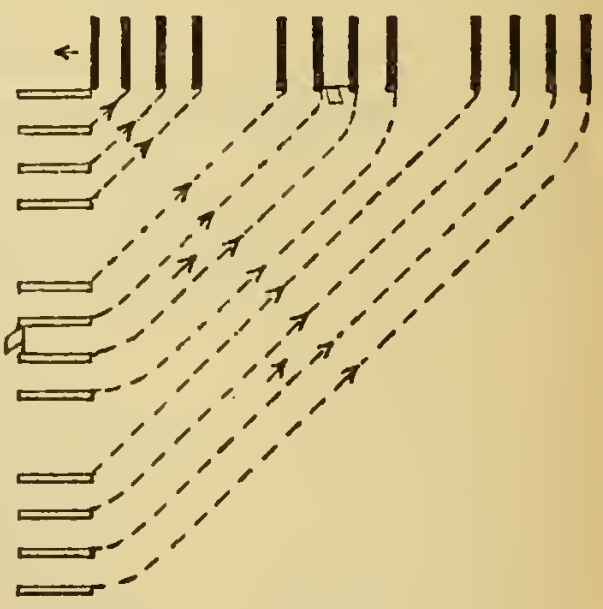


Pl. 134, Par. 700.

*Being in Column of Masses, to Change Direction by the Flank.*

**703.** 1. *Change direction by the right* (or *left*) *flank*, 2. MARCH.

The first squadron changes direction by the right flank (Par. 600); each of the others wheels by fours to the right, is marched with the guide to to the left, by two partial changes of direction to the left, to its position in the new column, and is then wheeled by fours to the left and halted.



Pl. 135, Par. 703.

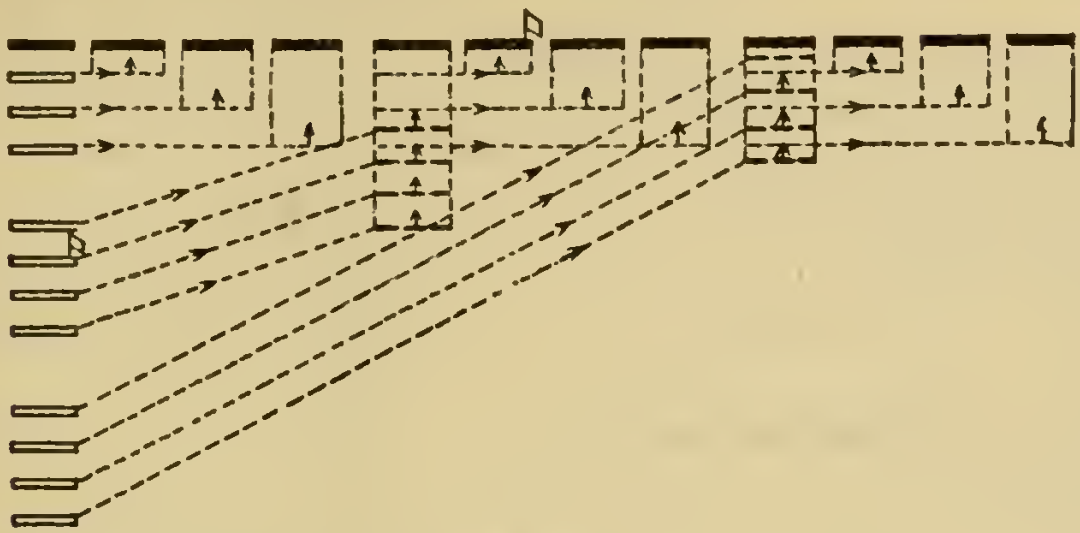
*To Deploy the Column of Masses,*

*Being in Column of Masses, to Deploy to the Right or Left.*

**704.** 1. *Deploy column*, 2. *Fours right* (or *left*), 3. MARCH.

The first squadron deploys to the right (Par. 604); the second is marched in close column to its position on the line, on the right of the first, and then deployed in the same

manner as the first; the third, in a similar manner, is deployed on the right of the second.



Pl. 136, Par. 704.

The second and third squadrons may be marched in column of fours (Par. 598) to their places on the line.

To deploy faced to the rear, the colonel adds: *Faced to to the rear,* after *deploy column.* The first squadron deploys faced to the rear (Par. 605); the others form on the line faced to the rear.

**705.** To form line on the rear of the column, facing either to the front or to the rear, the colonel first faces the column to the rear, and then executes the movement as explained

*Being in Column of Masses, to Deploy to the Right and Left.*

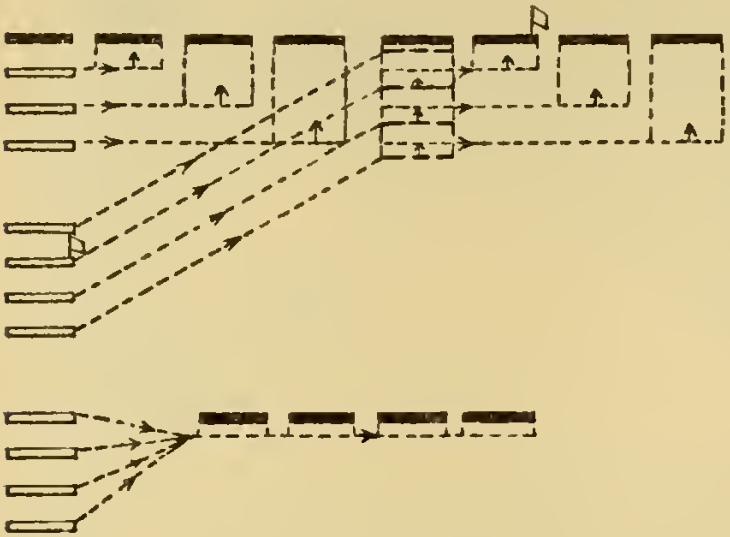
**706.** 1 *Deploy column,* 2. *Fours right and left* (or *left and right*), 3. MARCH.

The first squadron deploys to the right; the second and third deploy on the line, the second to the left of the first, and the third to the left of the second.

*Being in Column of Masses, to Deploy in Two Lines.*

**707.** 1 *In two lines* 2. *Deploy column,* 3. *Third* (or Such) *squadron, second line,* 4. *Fours right* (or *left*), 5. MARCH.

The first squadron deploys to the right; the second forms line on the line of the first and to its right; the third moves in column of fours and forms line in rear of the center of the first line.



Pl. 137, Par. 707.

If the colonel commands: 4. *Fours right and left,* the first squadron deploys to the right; the second forms line on the line of the first and to its left; the third deploys to the left.

If the colonel commands: 4. *Fours left and right,* the first squadron deploys to the left; the second forms line on the line of the first and to its right; the third deploys to the right.

*Being in Column of Masses, to Deploy in Three Lines.*

**708.** 1. *Squadrons,* 2. *Deploy column,* 3. *Fours right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.

*Being in Column of Masses, to March to the Right or Left in Line of Squadrons in Columns of Fours.*

**709.** 1. *Squadrons,* 2. *Columns of fours,* 3. *First* (or *Fourth*) *troop,* 4. *Fours right* (or *left*), 5. MARCH, 6. (Such) *the base squadron.*

*Column of Squadrons.*

**710.** Being in line, or column of fours, the regiment ploys into column of squadrons by approximating the principles for forming close column, School of the Squadron, except that the leading squadron halts upon forming line, and that the colonel, when necessary, specifies the distance (Par. 666).

*Being in Line, to Ploy into Column of Squadrons.*

**711.** 1. *Column of squadrons,* 2. *On first* (or *third*) *squadron,* 3. *Fours right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.

The first squadron stands fast. The second executes *fours right, column right,* marches squadron distance or the specified distance to the rear, changes direction to the left, and forms line to the left in rear of and parallel to the first squadron. The third squadron executes *fours right, column half-right,* and forms in rear of the second as explained for the second; the left flanks cover.

*Being in Line, to Ploy into Column of Squadrons on Second Squadron.*

**712.** 1. *Column of squadrons,* 2. *On second squadron,* 3. *Fours left and right,* 4. MARCH.

The second squadron stands fast; the first squadron executes *fours left* and forms line to the right in rear of the second; the third executes *fours right* and forms line to the left in rear of the first; the right flanks cover.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Column of Squadrons, Faced to the Right or Left.*

**713.** 1. *Column of squadrons,* 2. *First squadron,* 3. *Fours right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.

The first squadron forms line to the right and is halted; the others incline to the left and each enters the column, forms line, and halts at the prescribed distance in rear of and parallel to the one preceding; the right flanks cover.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Column of Squadrons, Faced to the Rear.*

**714.** 1 *Column of squadrons, faced to the rear,* 2. *First squadron,* 3. *Column right* (or *left*), 4. MARCH.

The first squadron changes direction to the right, and when its rear has cleared the flank of the column by twelve yards. forms line to the right and halts.

The squadrons in rear move forward, and each, when it has passed squadron front and seventeen yards, or the specified distance, beyond the one preceding, changes direction to the right, forms line and halts as prescribed for the first; the right flanks cover.

*Being in Column of Squadrons, to Form Front into Line.*

**715.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 2. MARCH.

The first squadron stands fast; the second forms line on the right of the first, and the third on the right of the second.

The colonel may direct that the third squadron shall form on the left (or right) of the line.

**716.** To form line faced to the rear, the colonel adds: *Faced to the rear,* to the first command. The first squadron is faced to the rear; the others form on the line faced to the rear.

*Line of Masses.*

**717.** The interval between squadrons in line of masses is forty-eight yards.

In line of masses, each major takes post twenty yards in front of the center of his first troop.

In all formations into line of masses, whether by a simultaneous or successive movement, the adjutant or sergeant major of each squadron posts the guidon and principal guide of its leading troop.

*Being in Line of Masses, to Extend and Close Intervals.*

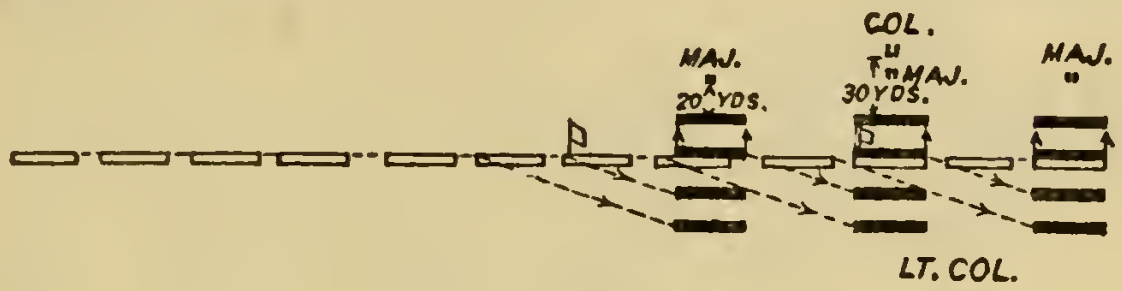
**718.** To extend intervals: 1. *On* (such) *squadron,* 2. *Take deploying intervals,* 3. MARCH.

The designated squadron stands fast; the squadrons to the right are marched by the right flank, and those to the left by the left flank, inclining slightly to the rear; each squadron, when it has its interval, is halted in close column on the line.

Intervals are closed on the same principles: 1. *On* (such) *squadron*, 2. *Close intervals*, 3. MARCH.

*Being in Line, to Form Line of Masses.*

**719.** 1. *Line of masses*, 2. *On first troop, first squadron*, 3. MARCH.




Pl. 138, Par. 719.

The first squadron ploys into close column on its first troop (Par. 593); the second squadron moves by the right flank and ploys into close column faced to the left so as to have forty-eight yards interval from the left flank of the first; in the same manner the third ploys on the left of the second.

Line of masses on the fourth troop, third squadron, is formed according to the same principles.

**720.** Line of masses may be formed on the second squadron, the colonel designating the first or fourth troop. The second squadron ploys on the designated troop; the others ploy on the troop nearest the point of rest. Unless directed by the colonel, the squadron with the interval of sixteen yards does not correct it until the next movement; the other squadron ploys at its proper interval.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Line of Masses, Faced to the Right or Left.*

**721.** 1. *To the right* (or *left*) *into line of masses*, 2. MARCH.

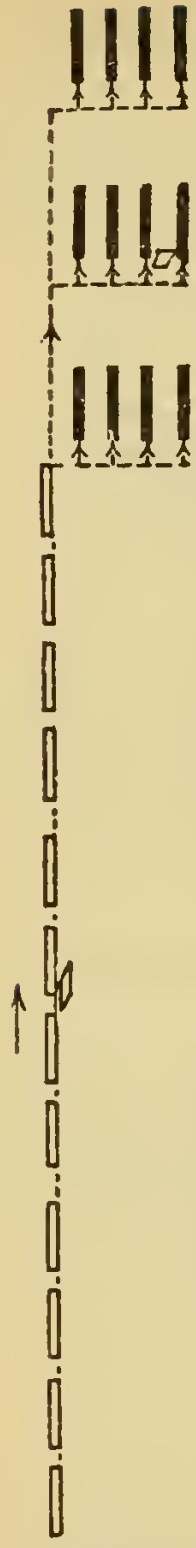
The first squadron ploys into close column faced to the right (Par. 596); each of the others executes the same

movement so as to have its interval of forty-eight yards from the right flank of the squadron preceding.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form On Right or Left into Line of Masses.*

**722.** 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line of masses,* 2. MARCH.

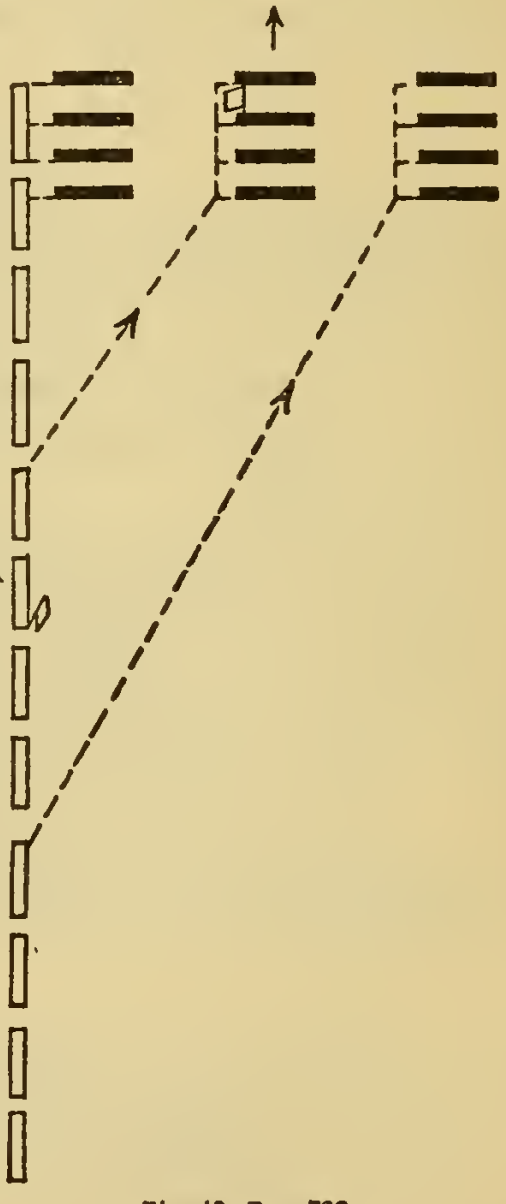
The major of the first squadron commands: 1. *Column right,* 2. MARCH, and his first troop having advanced sixty yards in the new direction, he commands: 1. *Close Column,* 2. *First troop,* 3. *Column left,* 4. MARCH (Par. 594); each of the other squadrons passes in rear of and beyond the one preceding, and executes the same movement as explained for the first, so as to have the interval of forty-eight yards from the squadron on its right.



Pl. 139, Par. 722

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Front into Line of Masses.*

**723.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line of masses,* 2. MARCH.



Pl. 140, Par. 723

The major of the first squadron commands: *Close Column*, 2. *First troop*, 3. *Column right*, 4. MARCH; the other majors command: 1, *Column half-right*, 2. MARCH.

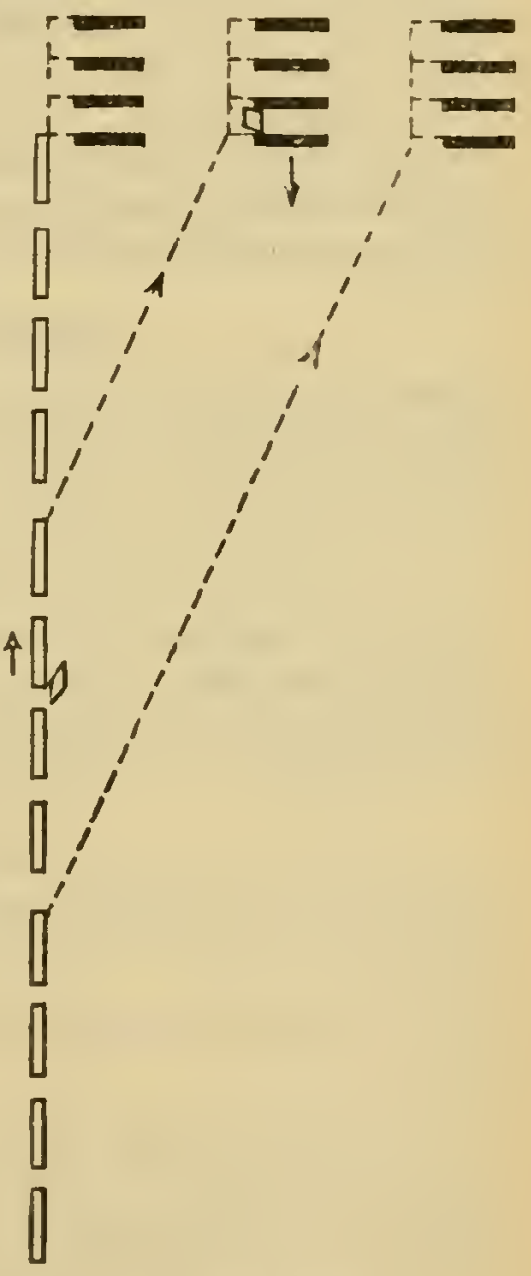
The first squadron ploys into close column faced to the front (Par. 594); each of the other squadrons is marched to the right front and executes the same movement so as to have the interval of forty-eight yards from the one preceding.

**724.** *Right and left* (or *Left and right*) *front into line of masses* is executed on the same principles; the first squadron ploys into close column, as in executing right front into line of masses; the second and third execute *left front into line of masses*, to the left of the first.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Front into Line of Masses, Faced to the Rear.*

**725.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line of masses, faced to the rear*, 2. MARCH.

The first squadron ploys into close column faced to the rear (Par. 595); each of the other squadrons is marched to the right front and executes the same movement so as to have the interval of forty-eight yards from the one preceding.



Pl. 141, Par. 725.

*To Align the Line of Masses.*

**726.** If necessary to rectify the line, the colonel assures the

guidon and principal guide of the first troop of one of the squadrons in the desired direction and then commands: *Guides on the line.*

The adjutant or sergeant major of each of the other squadrons posts the guidon and a principal guide of its leading troop on the line of those established by the colonel, the guidon on the side of the base squadron; the majors dress their squadrons toward the point of rest.

The first troop of each squadron is dressed on the guides; each of the other troops is successively dressed at close distance.

If the new line be established at a considerable distance from the squadrons, each major will move his squadron to its new position before dressing it.

### *Movements of Masses.*

**727.** The line of masses *advances, halts, faces to the rear,* and *marches to the rear* by the same commands and means as the regiment in line.

### *Being in Line of Masses to Change Front.*

**728.** 1. *Change front on first* (or *third*) *squadron,* 2. **MARCH.**

The movement is executed on the principles explained for the squadron changing front in line of platoon columns (Par. 624)

### *Being in Line of Masses, to March by the Flank.*

**729.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. **MARCH,** 3. *Guide* (*right or left*).

The squadrons preserve the distance of forty-nine yards.

### *The Line of Masses Marching by the Flank, to Change Direction.*

**730.** 1. *Change direction to the right* (*or left*), 2. **MARCH.**

The first squadron changes direction to the right (Par. 517); the others move forward, and, at the command of

their majors, change direction on the same ground as the first.

If the regiment be marching at a gallop, the colonel reduces the gait to a trot before executing this movement.

*The Line of Masses Marching by the Flank, to Form Line of Masses to the Right or Left.*

**731.** 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH, 3. (Such) *the base squadron;* or 3. *Squadrons,* 4. HALT.

*Being in Line of Masses, to Form Column of Fours.*

**732.** Being at a halt: 1. *Column of fours,* 2. *First troop, first* (or *third*) *squadron,* 3. *Right* (or *Left*) *forward,* 4. *Fours right* (or *left*), 5. MARCH.

The first squadron forms column of fours to the front (Par. 597); each of the others successively executes the same movement and inclines to the right or left so as to follow the squadron preceding at the prescribed distance.

The colonel may command: 1. *Column of fours,* 2. *First* (or *Fourth*) *troop, first squadron,* 3. *Fours right;* or, 2. *First* (or *Fourth*) *troop, third squadron,* 3. *Fours left,* 4. MARCH.

The designated squadron forms column of fours to the right (Par. 598); each of the others successively executes the same movement in time to follow the squadron preceding at the prescribed distance.

*Being in Line of Masses, to Form Column of Masses, Faced to the Right or Left.*

**733.** 1. *Squadrons,* 2. *Change direction by the left* (or *right*) *flank,* 3. MARCH.

Each squadron changes direction by the left flank (Par. 600).

*Being in Column of Masses, to Form Line of Masses, to the Right or Left.*

**734.** The colonel causes the squadrons to change direc-

tion by the left or right flank (Par. 600); or, to continue the march, commands: 1. *Squadrons,* 2. *Column right* (or *left*), 3. MARCH, 4. (Such) *the base squadron.*

### *Being in Line of Masses, to Form Column of Masses, Faced to the Front.*

**735.** 1. *Column of masses on first* (or such) *squadron,* 2. MARCH.

The first squadron stands fast or is halted; the second is placed in close column in rear of the first, and the third in rear of the second.

If the third squadron be designated, the second takes position in rear of the third, and the first in rear of the second.

If the second squadron be designated, the first takes position in rear of the second, and the third in rear of the first.

Each major may maneuver his squadron into position in mass or in column of fours.

The adjutant or sergeant major of each squadron moves in advance to indicate the point where his squadron moves by the flank, or changes direction, to enter the column.

**736.** Being in line of masses, to form the column of masses facing to the rear, the colonel first causes the squadrons to wheel about by fours, and then gives the same commands as before.

### *Being in Column of Masses, to Form On Right or Left into Line of Masses.*

**737.** Being in march: 1. *On right* (or *left*) *into line of masses,* 2. MARCH.

The first squadron changes direction to the right and is halted when its rear has cleared the column by twelve yards; each of the other squadrons marches beyond the preceding one, changes direction to the right, is halted and established abreast of the first, with the interval of forty-eight yards.

*Being in Column of Masses, to Form Front into Line of Masses.*

**738.** 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line of masses*, 2. MARCH.
The first squadron stands fast or is halted. The second and third squadrons are moved in masses into their places, the second on the right of the first, the third on the right of the second. The colonel may direct that the third squadron shall form on the left (or right) of the line.

*Being in Line, to Change Front.*

**739.** To change front, the colonel forms column of fours to the right or left and then executes *front into line* on the head of any squadron, or *front into line faced to the rear.*

*Movements of Platoons.*

**740.** The interval between squadrons in line of platoon columns is twenty-four yards.

**741.** All movements in column of platoons, and line of platoon columns, School of the Squadron, may be executed by the regiment by similar commands and means; the colonel designates: (Such) *squadron*, when necessary.

**742.** In forming line, or line of platoon columns, each major first moves his squadron into position on the principles for forming line from column of fours, and at the proper time gives the commands for forming line or line of platoon columns.

*Being in Line of Platoon Columns, to Extend or Close Intervals*

**743.** Being in march: 1. *On* (such) *troop* (such) *squadron*, 2. *Extend* (or *Close*) *intervals*, 3. MARCH.
The designated squadron extends intervals (Par. 582) the squadrons to the right oblique to the right by the heads of columns, each major giving the commands to extend intervals when his left troop has its interval from the squadron next on its left; the left troop changes direction half-left, moves up on the line, takes the gait of

and dresses toward, the designated squadron. The squadrons to the left of the designated squadron extend intervals in the same manner to the left.

**744.** Intervals are extended and closed without gaining ground to the front by the commands and means prescribed for the squadron (Par. 623).

*Being in Line of Platoon Columns, to March in Column of Platoons.*

**745.** 1. *Column of platoons,* 2. *First* (or *Fourth*) *troop, first* (or *third*) *squadron,* 3. *Forward,* 4. *Guide* (*right* or *left*), 5. **MARCH**; or, 5. *Column right* (or *left*), 6. **MARCH.**

The designated squadron executes the movement, and is followed by the others at the proper distance.

*Being in Line, to Form Double Column of Fours.*

**746.** 1. *Double column of fours,* 2. **MARCH.**

To the first command the major of the center squadron adds: *Center forward;* the major of the first adds: *Fours left;* the major of the third adds: *Fours right.*

The second squadron forms double column of fours as in Par. 627. The first squadron follows the right column, and the third squadron follows the left column of the second squadron.

If the regiment consist of but two squadrons, the right squadron breaks from the left, and the left squadron breaks from the right to march to the front in column of fours (Par. 626).

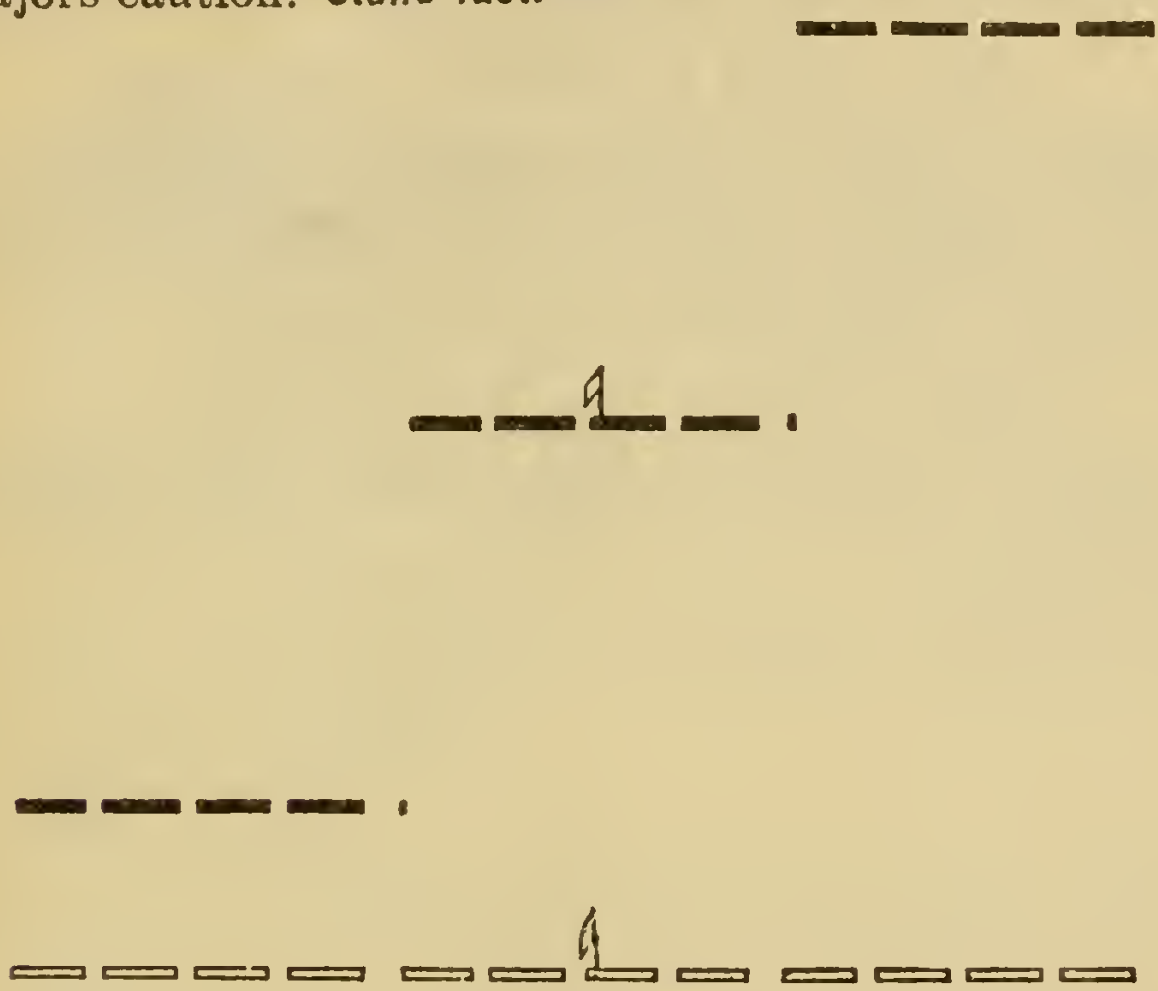
If the regiment be in two lines, each line forms double column of fours.

**747.** Being in line: 1. *Squadrons,* 2. *Double column of fours,* 3. **MARCH,** 4. (Such) *the base squadron.* Each squadron forms double column of fours.

*Being in Line at a Halt, to Advance in Echelon.*

**748.** 1. *Form echelon, at* (so many) *yards,* 2. (Such) *the base squadron,* 3. **MARCH.**

At the second command, the major of the designated squadron commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide center;* the other majors caution: *Stand fast.*



Pl. 142, Par. 748.

At the command *march,* the designated squadron advances; the others take up the march, each when it has the specified distance from the one next preceding.

A principal guide from each rear squadron marches at the specified distance directly in rear of the nearest flank of the preceding squadron. Each rear squadron marches abreast of and preserves the interval of sixteen yards from its principal guide thus posted.

**749.** The regiment in echelon *advances, halts, obliques, marches to the rear* or *by the flank,* by the same commands as when in line (see Par. 518).

**750.** The regiment being in echelon of squadrons may be formed into echelon of troops or platoons as explained in the School of the Squadron.

*Being in Echelon of Squadrons, to Form Line.*

**751.** 1. *Form line on* (such) *squadron*, 2. MARCH.

The designated squadron halts or stands fast; the others form on the line of the one designated, by moving to the front or rear.

A general alignment is given if necessary.

*Being in Echelon of Troops, to Form Line.*

**752.** 1. *Form line on* (such) *troop*, (such) *squadron*, 2. MARCH.

# THE BRIGADE.

**753.** The brigade consists of three regiments, but the rules prescribed are applicable to a less or greater number; it is commanded by a brigadier general.

An independent brigade should consist of at least three regiments and a battery of horse artillery.

**754.** Regiments in line are designated *right, center,* and *left;* or, if one be in rear, *right, left,* and *rear;* in column, they are designated *leading, center,* and *rear.*

Unless otherwise directed by the general, the regiments are posted according to the rank of the colonels; in line, from right to left, the senior on the right; in two or three lines by regiments, the senior in the first line, the junior in the rear line; in column, from head to rear, the senior at the head.

**755.** The interval between regiments is sixty-four yards.

An additional interval of one hundred yards between regiments or squadrons should be allowed for the battery.

**756.** In line, the general takes post one hundred yards in front of the center of the brigade; in column, at the head of the brigade.

The general is attended by the adjutant general, riding on his left, and his aids, six yards in rear. When the remaining officers of his staff are present, they ride on the left or in rear of the aids, according as they form in one or more ranks, the senior on the right. The flag and orderlies ride three yards in rear of the staff.

**757.** The drill exercises should be limited to movements used in campaign.

The regulations for the evolutions of the regiment are applicable to the brigade.

In moving into position, the regiments and squadrons

are habitually marched in column of fours and by the shortest practicable routes.

The battery conforms to the Light Artillery Drill Regulations and is marched by the shortest practicable route to the position assigned it.

**758.** When the orders of the general to a regimental or battery commander are communicated through staff officers, the name of the commander or the permanent designation of the regiment will be mentioned.

These orders should be explicit and should cover the following points:—

*First.* The maneuver to be executed by the brigade.

*Second.* The particular formation the regiment is to take; as, *in two lines, line of masses,* etc. When the formation is not specified, the regiment forms in line.

*Third.* When forming the brigade in two or more lines by regiment, the order should state the number of lines, the distance between the lines, the line in which the regiment is to form, and its point of rest.

When necessary, staff officers are sent to indicate the point of rest for each line.

*Fourth.* Whether the right or the left of the regiment is to connect with the left or right of another regiment that precedes it on the line.

*Fifth.* Whether the battery is to be on the right or left of the regiment.

*Sixth.* Whether the right or left flank of the regiment will be exposed.

### *Being in Column of Fours, to form Front into Line.*

**759.** The general sends orders as follows:—

To each colonel: *The brigade to form front into line;* to the leading regiment: *Form right front into line;* to the center regiment: *Form left front into line, your right, with interval for battery, connecting with left of leading regiment;* to the rear regiment: *Form right front into line, your left connecting*

*with right of leading regiment, your right flank exposed;* to the battery: *Take position on left of* (such) *regiment.*

The colonel of the leading regiment forms it right front into line; the colonel of the center regiment marches it forward to the line, to the left of the leading regiment, so as to have an interval of one hundred and sixty-four yards, and forms it left front into line; the colonel of the rear regiment marches it forward to the line, to the right of the leading regiment, and forms it right front into line; the captain of the battery marches it to its position to the left of the leading regiment.

On the same principles the regiments may be formed right or left front into line in any order.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Line to the Right or Left.*

**760.** The general sends orders: *Form line to the right* (or *left*).

The colonels command: 1. *Fours right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH, 3. *Squadrons,* 4. HALT.

**761.** To form each regiment in two or three lines, the general sends orders: *Form in two* (or *three*) *lines to the right* (or *left*), or adds: *At* (so many) *yards distance.*

The colonel of the leading regiment forms his regiment in two lines to the right and halts it; the colonels of the rear regiments give the commands for forming in two lines, each when his first squadron has closed to sixty-four yards from the right flank of the first line of the regiment preceding.

**762.** Being in column of fours, *on right* or *left into line* is executed on similar principles, each regiment passing beyond the one preceding.

When the regiments are formed in two or three lines, the movement is executed by squadrons (Par. 672); the first line advances far enough to allow the second or third line to clear the line of march.

**763.** Being in column of platoons, line is formed *to*

*the right* or *left, to the front*, and *on right* or *left,* according to the same principles.

According to the same principles, the brigade may be formed in one, two, or three lines of *platoon columns,* lines of *masses,* or lines of *columns of fours;* or one or two regiments may be given a designated formation.

### *To March in Line.*

**764.** The general sends orders: *Advance in line* (or such formation), (such) *squadron,* (such) *regiment, the base squadron.*

The orders having been communicated, and the proper dispositions having been made in each regiment, the general causes the *forward, march,* to be sounded.

When in two or three lines, the second and third lines preserve their positions relative to the first line. The battery conforms to the movements of the first line.

### *To Halt*

**765.** The general causes the *halt* to be sounded, which is repeated and each regiment is halted.

### *To March to the Rear.*

**766.** The general sends orders: *March to the rear,* (such) *squadron,* (such) *regiment, the base squadron.*

Each colonel causes his regiment to face to the rear and gives the preparatory commands to march in line.

The general then causes the *forward, march*, to be sounded.

The brigade being in two lines, the base squadron will be in the late second line, now the first; the reserve squadron of this line, if there be one, will be the base squadron. The designation of the squadron and regiment refers to its position in line when marching to the rear.

**767.** The line of platoon columns, line of masses, line of columns of fours, or line of double columns marches according to the same principles as when in line.

*To March by the Flank*

**768.** The general sends orders: *March by the right* (or *left*) *flank.*

Each colonel commands: 1. *Fours right,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Squadrons,* 4. HALT. The general then causes the *forward, march,* to be sounded.

When in more than one line, the lines retain their former designations; the first squadron of the first line is the base squadron; the other line or lines maintain the same relative positions as at the beginning of the movement.

**769.** Being at full interval in line of platoon columns, line of masses, line of columns of fours, or line of double columns of fours, to re-form line, the general sends orders: *Re-form line.*

Each colonel forms line.

**770.** When at close interval, the general sends orders: *Re-form line* (such) *squadron,* (such) *regiment, the base squadron.*

The colonel of the designated regiment causes it to take deploying intervals and form line; the other colonels cause their regiments to move by the flank until opposite their positions, take deploying intervals, and form line.

**771.** When the configuration of the ground will not admit of convenient movements by masses, the general may send orders to the regiment on the right: *Deploy by the right flank on* (such) *squadron, center,* (or such) *regiment;* to the center regiment: *Deploy by the right and left* (or *right,* or *left*) *flanks on* (such) *squadron;* to the regiment on the left: *Deploy by the left flank on* (such) *squadron, center* (or such) *regiment.*

Each colonel causes his regiment to form column of fours. The center regiment moves by both flanks; the major of the base squadron forms it in line, faced to the former front, as soon as it forms column; each of the other majors forms his squadron in line, faced to the

former front, as soon as he has his squadron interval from the base squadron; the colonel of the right regiment forms his regiment on left into line by squadrons (Par. 672) as soon as the rear of the leading squadron has arrived opposite the point of rest of the regiment. In the same manner the left regiment is formed on right into line by squadrons, to the left of the center regiment.

The heads of the squadrons of the center regiment are inclined a little toward the front, so as not to interfere with the movements of the flank regiments.

### *Change of Front.*

**772.** Changes of front are usually executed by forming in columns of fours and then forming front into line, or front into line faced to the rear.

If in two or three lines the simplest means are used for moving the second and third lines to their new positions.

**773.** In reports of military operations, the brigade is designated by the name of the brigade commander.

During marches and all active operations, brigade commanders keep themselves informed of the exact strength of the regiments.

In action, the general has no fixed position, but will always indicate where reports may be received.

If compelled to give an order to a squadron commander, the general should so inform his colonel.

If, during a movement, a squadron be forced from its position in the general line, its commander will cause it to regain its proper place as soon as practicable.

The general may direct when troops comprising the first line shall pass from close to extended order, or this may be left to the colonels and majors.

## THE DIVISION.

**774.** The division consists of three brigades of cavalry and two or more batteries of horse artillery; it is commanded by a major general.

**775.** In line, the division commander takes post one hundred and fifty yards in front of the center of the division; in column, at the head of the division.

**776.** The brigades are designated: in line, *right, center,* and *left;* or if one be in rear, *right, left,* and *rear;* in column, *leading, center,* and *rear.* Unless otherwise directed by the division commander, the brigades are posted according to the rank of the brigade commanders, in the manner prescribed for posting regiments in the brigade.

**777.** The principles prescribed for the evolutions of the brigade apply to the division.

**778.** The division is formed in one, two, or three lines by brigade, and each brigade is given one of the formations prescribed in brigade drill.

The interval between brigades is ninety-six yards, which is increased whenever necessary for artillery.

**779.** The orders of the division commander are communicated through staff officers, and should cover the following points: The particular formation for each brigade and its point of rest; the direction in which the line is to extend; the distance between lines and the point of rest for each line; the name of the brigade commander or the permanent number of the brigade will be mentioned.

---

## THE CORPS.

**780.** The corps consists of three divisions of cavalry.

The principles prescribed for the evolutions of the division apply to the corps or a larger command.

# EXTENDED ORDER.

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

**781.** The squad is the basis of extended order.

Men will be taught to regard the squad as the unit from which they ought never to be separated; but if the squad should be broken up or the men become separated, they place themselves under the orders of the nearest leader and remain with his squad as if it were the one to which they originally belonged.

Officers and non-commissioned officers will give their attention to preserving the integrity of the squads; they appoint new leaders to replace those disabled, organize new squads when necessary, and see that every man is placed in a squad.

**782.** This instruction, on account of its importance, will be given as soon as the recruits have had a few drills in close order. The mechanism of the movements is taught on the drill ground (Pars. 113, 114, 377, and 378), with every attention to detail; afterward the movements are executed on varied ground, making use of the accidents of the surface for cover, etc., and observing the conditions of battle.

**783.** In all instruction in extended order, the movements must be made with reference to an enemy supposed to be in an indicated direction (see Par. 427).

**784.** Men in extended order fix their attention at the first word of command, the first note of the trumpet, or the first motion of the signal; the movement commences immediately upon the completion of the command, trumpet call, or signal.

**785.** Extended order may be taken from any formation.

**786.** Upon arriving on the line and upon halting, men

in extended order face to the front, whether in squads or as individual skirmishers.

**787.** Upon halting, skirmishers take the position of *advance carbine*. If the pistol is to be used, that arm will be designated by the instructor before deploying, and the skirmishers take the position of *raise* or *lower pistol*.

**788.** No commands for dressing are given in extended order; the general alignment is taken toward the base file; the men stand and march *at ease* (see Pars. 68 and 286), and pay close attention.

**789.** When necessary for any chief to leave his post, he will return to it as soon as possible.

### *Leading the Squad.*

**790.** In the exercises in leading, the movements are executed at signals from the corporal, and as far as possible without commands or cautions; the object being to prepare the squad for the battle exercises by training the men to coöperate with their leader and to conform instantly to his wishes.

**791.** The movements are executed in the most direct manner, at first at a walk, then at a trot, and finally at a gallop; the movements should not succeed each other so rapidly as to produce confusion.

**792.** The corporal is posted two yards in front of the squad, which conforms to his signals and movements.

**793.** The squad is exercised in turning, marching to the front, rear, and by the flank, obliquing, halting, assembling, etc.

**794.** The man in front of whom the corporal places himself is the guide of the squad, and follows in the trace of the corporal at a distance of two yards.

**795.** When the corporal does not wish the squad to follow him, he commands: *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*), and indicates the point of direction; if marching by the flank, he indicates the direction.

**796.** When the squad is marched to the rear, the corporal takes post in front of the squad.

# THE SQUAD.

### *General Rules.*

**797.** The squad is deployed *forward* when it is in rear of the line to be occupied; *by the flank* when it is already on that line. The deployments forward will habitually be executed at the gallop; by the flank, at the trot.

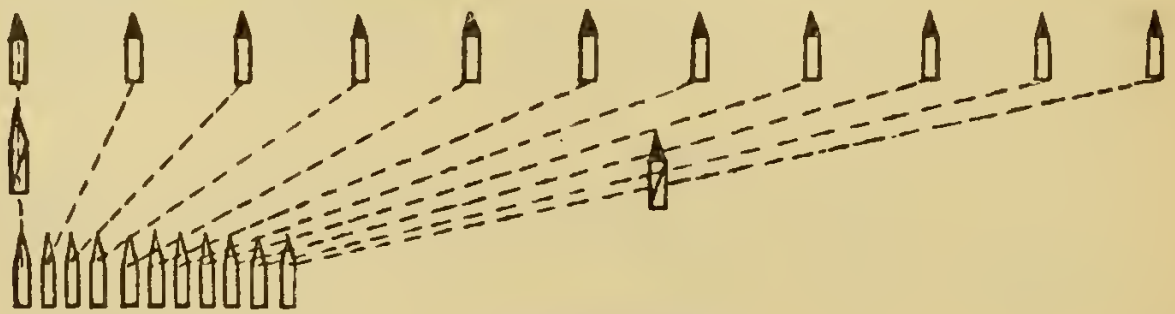
**798.** The normal interval between mounted skirmishers is four yards; when a greater or less interval is used it will be stated in the preparatory command.

**799.** Before giving the commands for marching, deploying, or assembling, or for increasing or diminishing intervals, the corporal places himself two yards in front of the trooper that is to be the base or guide, and indicates the direction.

On halting, the corporal places himself two yards in rear of his squad.

### *To Deploy to the Front.*

**800.** The squad being in line, to deploy forward on the left or right skirmisher: 1. *As skirmishers,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 3. MARCH.



Pl. 143, Par. 800.

The left trooper marches at the trot straight to the front, or in the direction indicated by the corporal; the other troopers oblique to the right at the gallop, each

taking the direction and gait of the left trooper when at his interval from the trooper on his left and when on the alignment.

The troopers near the right increase the angle of obliquity to more than forty-five degrees.

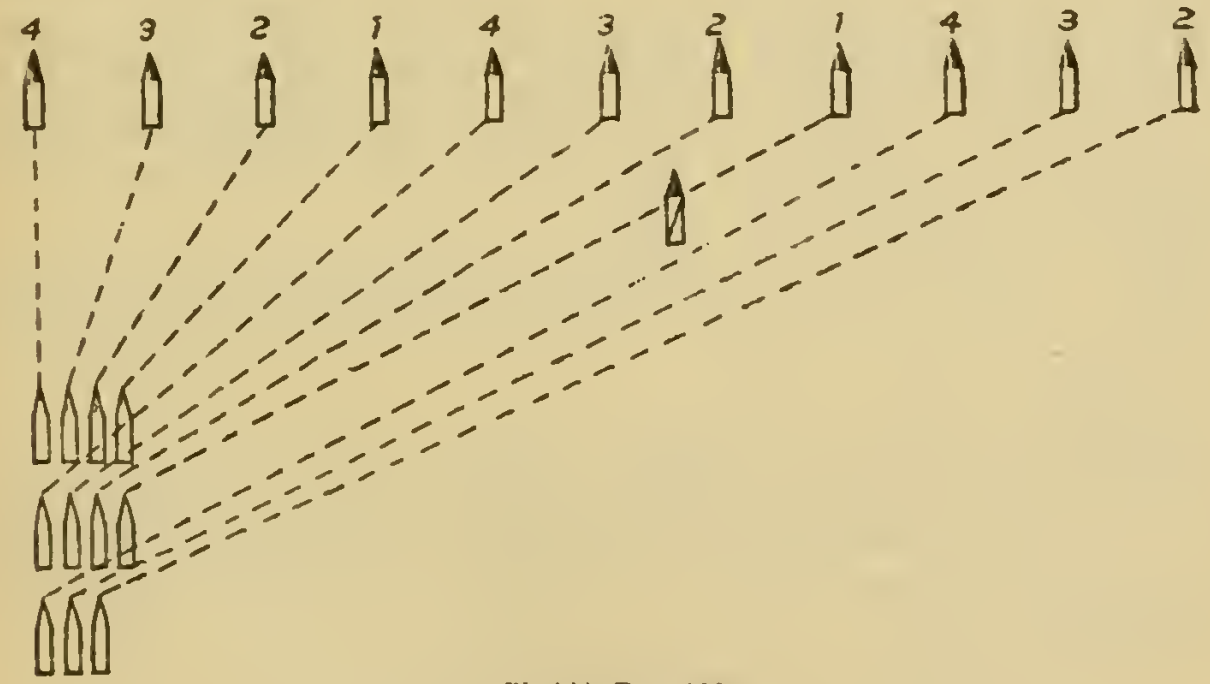
The squad having arrived on the line to be occupied, the corporal commands: 1. *Squad*, 2. HALT.

**801.** To deploy forward on the center skirmisher, the corporal designates the center trooper and commands: 1. *As skirmishers*, 2. *Right and left front into line*, 3. MARCH.

The center skirmisher trots straight to the front; the other skirmishers oblique to the right and left at a gallop.

**802.** Being in column of fours, to deploy forward: 1. *As skirmishers*, 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line*, 3. MARCH.

Executed as in Par. 800.



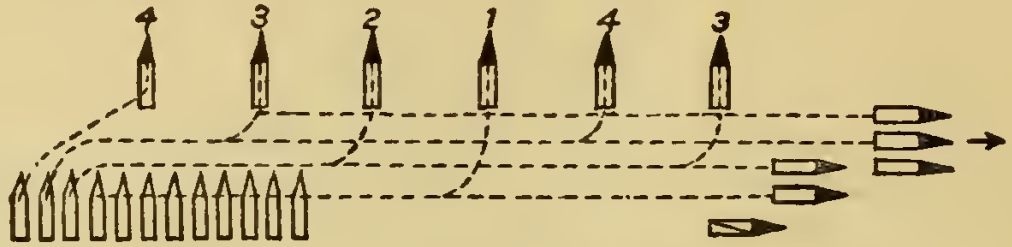

Pl. 144, Par. 802.

*To Deploy by the Flank.*

**803.** Being in line: 1, *As skirmishers*, 2. *Fours right* (or *left*), 3. *Trot*, 4. MARCH.

The fours wheel to the right and move at the trot; No. 4 of the left four moves directly to the position he would

occupy if, upon the completion of the wheel, he had turned to the left and halted; No. 3 of that four turns to the left and halts so as to be abreast of and four yards to




Pl. 145, Par. 803.

the right of No. 4; then No. 2 and then No. 1, then No. 4 of the now rear four, and so on from the rear of the column, each trooper in succession turning to the left and halting so as to be abreast of and four yards from the trooper next on his left.

The deployment by the left flank is executed in the same manner, except that No. 1 of the right four turns to the right and halts; No. 2 turns to the right and halts so as to be four yards to the left of and abreast of No 1; then No. 3, and so on.

**804.** Marching in column of fours, to deploy to a flank: 1. *As skirmishers*, 2. *To the left* (or *right*), 3. **MARCH.**

The skirmishers deploy as when deploying by the flank (Par. 803)

**805.** To make the original deployment at a greater or less interval than four yards, the corporal adds to the first command: *At* (so many) *yards*: *e. g.*, 1. *As skirmishers, at ten* (or so many) *yards*, 2. *Right* (or *Left*), *front into line*, 3. **MARCH.**

### *To Increase and Diminish Intervals.*

**806.** Being deployed as skirmishers, to increase or diminish intervals: 1. *To* (so many) *yards extend* (or *close*), 2. **MARCH.**

The skirmishers open from or close toward the base trooper. If marching. the movement is executed by

obliquing and increasing the gait; if at a halt, the movement is executed by the flank, the base trooper moving six yards to the front.

*Marchings.*

**807.** Being deployed and at a halt, to move forward: 1. *Forward,* 2. MARCH.

The skirmishers take the direction and keep their intervals from the side toward the guide.

**808.** Being deployed, at a halt or advancing, to march to the rear: 1. *To the rear,* 2. MARCH.

Each skirmisher turns to the left about and all march to the rear, conforming to the principles of the march to the front. The corporal moves quickly in front of the guide.

To march again to the front: 1. *Forward,* 2. MARCH.

**809.** To march by the flank: 1. *By the right* (or *left*) *flank,* 2. MARCH.

Each skirmisher turns to the right and follows the trooper in front of him, keeping the distance. The corporal places himself quickly by the side of the leading trooper to conduct him (Par. 795).

To march again in line: 1. *By the right* (or *left*) *flank,* 2. MARCH.

**810.** The skirmishers marching by the flank, to change direction: 1. *Column right* (or *left,*) 2. MARCH; or, 1. *Column half-right* (or *half-left*), 2. MARCH.

**811.** Being deployed in line, to change front or direction, the corporal indicates the direction and commands: 1. *Squad right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH; or, 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *turn,* 2. MARCH; or, 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *half-turn,* 2. MARCH.

Executed on the same principles as when in close order; the skirmishers move directly to their places and take intervals on the new line from the pivot. In this manner any direction may be given, the corporal establishing the first two or three troopers as the base of the new front.

**812.** The skirmishers being in march to the front, rear, or by the flank, are halted by the commands: 1. *Squad,* 2. HALT.

The troopers halt faced to the front.

*To Rally.*

**813.** The rally is used for immediate and concentrated action when there is not time to form in the normal order. The rally should be made either on the line or in advance of it.

The corporal signals or commands: RALLY.

The troopers return carbine, move at a gallop, and form quickly, faced to the front, in rear of the corporal, without reference to their previous order in the rank, and draw saber.

The corporal may direct them to raise pistol.

If the corporal continues to advance, the troopers form in rear of and follow him, counting fours, if necessary.

The squad being rallied, may advance, deploy (Pars. 800 to 805), or count fours; in deploying, the skirmishers return to their former places.

*To Assemble.*

**814.** Being deployed or rallied, the corporal signals or commands: 1. *Assemble,* 2. MARCH.

The men move toward the corporal and form in their proper places; if deployed, they close toward the corporal at the trot.

The corporal may direct the squad to assemble in column of fours.

The corporal may cause the assembly or rally to be executed on the march; the corporal and base troopers march forward, the other troopers gain their positions by obliquing and increasing the gait.

**815.** When the preceding movements (Pars. 800 to 814) are well understood, they are executed by signals.

*The Firings, Mounted.*

**816.** The firings are conducted conformably to principles previously explained (Pars. 153 to 161 and 358 to 364).

**817.** Carbine firing by mounted skirmishers will, as a rule, be confined to the following conditions:—

For temporary resistance by small scouting parties; by the advance patrol of the advance guard; under circumstances which forbid the mounted charge, it may be used to accelerate the retreat of the enemy's rear guard; and, during a retreat, for checking the enemy, by compelling him to advance more cautiously.

A mounted skirmisher must always halt to fire the carbine, must aim deliberately, and guard against exciting his horse.

A mounted skirmisher halted and exposed to fire without cover or concealment, must, except when firing, keep in motion by describing a figure 8 around his post as a center.

*To Charge.*

**818.** Being deployed, at the signal or command *charge,* each skirmisher returns pistol or carbine, draws saber, and the whole line charges as foragers (Par. 425).

*To Fight on Foot.*

**819.** The mounted skirmishers may be dismounted to fight on foot, the skirmishers retaining their horses on the line.

Opportunities for the employment of skirmishers in this manner may frequently occur in partisan and Indian warfare, and in guarding convoys, especially in wooded and very broken ground, affording a steadier, better directed fire than when mounted. An enemy advancing may be so retarded in this way as to give opportunity for the main body to be formed for the attack; also in case

of retreat, under circumstances when it might not be advisable to detach the horses to any considerable distance, as in the passage of a defile or obstacle.

Advantage should be taken of the ground, trees, rocks, houses, walls, etc., to shelter the horses.

Alignment and intervals should not be attempted, but the squad must remain together for mutual support.

The individual skirmisher may lariat or secure his horse under cover a short distance from him, or to his rear; any considerable change of position requires the skirmisher to take his horse with him.

The lariat is supposed to be loosely coiled and fastened with a thong to the near cantle or pommel ring and one end is fastened to the halter.

### *To Dismount and Mount on the Skirmish Line.*

**820.** Being deployed as skirmishers: 1. *Squad,* 2. **DISMOUNT.**

Each skirmisher quickly dismounts in place, detaches his lariat, seizes the loose end of it, and runs forward its full length, or to such a point short of that distance as may afford advantageous shelter.

The skirmishers thus dismounted are marched to the front, to the rear, by the flank, etc., by the same commands and means as when mounted; the skirmisher coils the lariat to a convenient length for leading his horse.

To mount the skirmishers again, the corporal signals or commands: 1. *Squad,* 2. **MOUNT.**

The skirmishers sling carbine, go quickly to their horses, coiling the lariat on the way, secure the lariat to the saddle, and mount.

**821.** If, while the skirmishers are dismounted, the corporal commands: **LINK HORSES,** each trooper coils and secures the lariat; No. 4 mounts, the horses are linked as quickly as possible, and are then assembled at a designated place.

### *To Dismount to Fight on Foot.*

**822.** Before dismounting to fight on foot, the squad is formed in column of fours. *This rule is general.*

**823.** In this drill No. 4 is the horse holder. No. 2 or No. 3 may be the horse holder when so directed by the corporal, which must always be done before giving the command *to fight on foot;* the two troopers next on the right and left of the designated holder pass their reins to him, which he holds in his right hand, keeping the horses on his right and left.

In the absence of the link, the horses may be fastened together by passing the reins through the head halter ring and tying them in a slip knot so that the horses' heads shall be about two feet apart.

In defensive positions, all the horses of the squad may be linked together in a circle and left to the care of one horse holder, who dismounts, or, this horse holder may hold the horses of Nos. 4 by the reins.

**824.** The *led horses* and mounted escort should be as near the dismounted line as a protected situation will allow; they are not changed while this condition lasts, unless the dismounted line makes a material change of position.

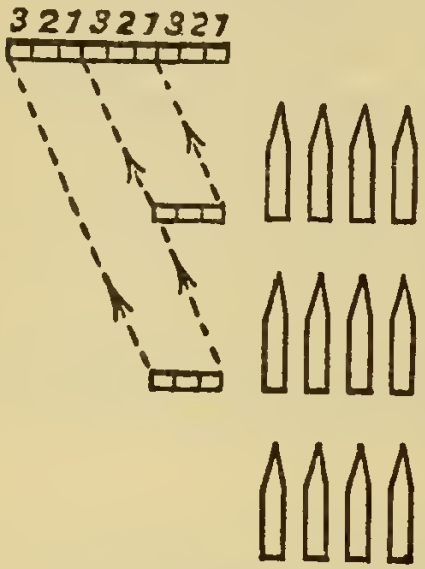
The horses while linked must be drilled to lead at all gaits, in changing direction, forming line, etc., as when mounted.

### *Being in Column of Fours, to Dismount to Fight on Foot.*

**825.** To the front: 1. TO FIGHT ON FOOT, 2. ACTION LEFT (or RIGHT) FRONT.

At the first command, all the troopers open out as in *prepare to dismount* (Par. 420), and Nos. 1, 2, and 3 dismount; No. 3 passes his reins over his horse's head, faces about, gives them to No. 4, who holds them at such length that he can best control the horse; No. 4 now moves his

horse's shoulders to the right, to straighten him in the column; No. 2 disengages the link snap, faces toward the rear, seizes the halter ring of No. 3's horse with the right hand, pulls his horse's head inward and with the left hand, back up, engages the snap in the halter ring; No. 1 executes the same with No. 2's horse; the reins of Nos. 1 and 2 should be placed behind the pommel.



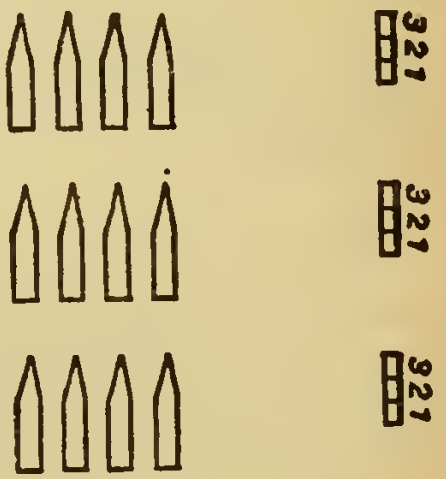
Pl. 146, Par. 825.

At the second command, the dismounted troopers of each four unsling carbine and form facing to the front, in their normal order (Par. 53), one yard to the front of their horses' heads and one yard to the left of the column; the rear fours, at double time, execute *left front into line* on the leading four; if sets in rear arrive in line before others that precede them in column, they must leave room to form line in normal order.

If the formation is to be made on the rear of the column, the column is first wheeled about by fours.

**826.** To the right or left: 1. **TO FIGHT ON FOOT**, 2. **ACTION RIGHT** (or **LEFT**).

Nos. 1, 2, and 3 dismount and link; then unsling carbine and form five yards to the right of their horses, facing to the right.



Pl. 147, Par. 826.

**827.** Being in column of twos, at the command *to fight on foot,* Nos. 1 and 2 dismount without closing distance; Nos. 3 and 4 oblique quickly to the left and form four; No. 3 dismounts and the horses are linked; the horses are then closed.

**828.** In emergencies, one-half the squad may be dismounted by the commands: 1. *Nos. 1 and 3* (or *Nos. 2 and 4*), 2. DISMOUNT, 3. ACTION RIGHT (or LEFT).

### *Being Dismounted to Fight on Foot, to Mount.*

**829.** The corporal causes the squad to assemble, marches it to the vicinity of the led horses, and commands: STAND TO HORSE: or, 1. *Squad,* 2. MOUNT.

The troopers sling carbine, unlink, and take the position of stand to horse; the squad may then be mounted.

If the corporal commands: 1 *Squad,* 2. MOUNT, the troopers sling carbine, unlink, and mount.

The corporal may cause the led horses to be advanced to meet the troopers.

### *Movements when Dismounted to Fight on Foot,*

**830.** The squad, now in threes, executes movements by the same commands and according to the same principles as when in fours The individuals of each set will habitually keep within supporting distance of each other.

The deployments and movements, in extended order dismounted, are made by the same commands and on the same principles as when mounted, except that the normal interval between the skirmishers is *two yards.*

If the squad is to kneel or lie down upon halting, the corporal designates the position before deploying; this position will be taken at each halt until a change is ordered. As instructor, the corporal remains standing.

On taking up the march, the carbine, without command, is carried on either shoulder, muzzle elevated, or at the trail; on drill, the corporal may prescribe the position at which the piece is to be carried.

### *Fire Discipline.*

**831.** The corporal will impress upon the men the importance of the following:—

### *General Rules.*

1. Never load until the moment of firing.
2. Never fire except when ordered, and then only the number of cartridges indicated.
3. Never fire after the command or signal *cease firing.*
4. Never fire except at the named objective.
5. Never fail to adjust the sight at the range named.
6. Always aim at the feet of the enemy, or, if he is hidden from view, at the lower line of smoke.

**832.** Notwithstanding these rules, it is allowable, especially for scouts, patrols, or vedettes, to fire when necessary—

*a.* To give the alarm.

*b.* In self defense.

*c.* When a good opportunity occurs to fire upon a leader of the enemy.

**833.** Individual men armed with the carbine, who may be acting beyond the immediate control of leaders, will observe the following:

Not to fire at distances over—

400 yards at a man lying down.

500 yards at a man kneeling.

600 yards at a man standing.

700 yards at a horseman.

800 yards at a small squad of men or a thin line of skirmishers.

Sharpshooters may when permitted by an officer, fire upon the enemy at greater distances.

**834.** Volleys by squads are used against troops in close order, at distances not exceeding—

600 yards at a line equal to the front of four men.

800 yards at a line equal to the front of a squad of twelve men.

900 yards at a line equal to the front of a platoon.

1,000 yards at a line equal to the front of a troop.

These limits are not invariable; they may be exceeded

under favorable conditions when the range is accurately known; they should always be reduced when the men are tired or out of breath, the range uncertain, the enemy under cover, or the conditions of wind and light unfavorable.

When the supply of ammunition is ample and the enemy is in large bodies, volleys may be fired at extreme ranges.

**835.** The fire at will and the fire with counted cartridges are used at distances ranging from 800 to 400 yards.

**836.** The rapid fire is used at short ranges, at the decisive moment of the action; it may also be used at any range when the enemy affords a good target by exposing himself in considerable numbers.

**837.** The ranges are classified as follows:

0 to 300 yards, short range;
300 to 600 yards, mid range;
600 to 1,000 yards, long range;
1,000 yards and over, extreme range.

### *Firings.*

**838.** The instructor will give the closest attention to the execution of the firings, and always exact the most rigid fire discipline.

**839.** The firings are always executed at a halt. If the squad be in march, it halts at the preparatory command for firing and loads, and kneels or lies down if so specified in the command.

**840.** Volley firing is executed, the squad closed or deployed, by the same commands and means as in close order (Par. 156); more than three volleys will rarely be fired without intermission; this to allow the smoke to clear away, to steady the men, and to prevent a waste of ammunition.

**841.** To fire at will. 1 *Fire at will;* or, 1. *Fire at will,*

*kneeling* (or *lying down*), 2. *At* (such an object), 3. *At* (so many) *yards,* 4. COMMENCE FIRING.

At the fourth command, those skirmishers who can see the enemy aim deliberately, fire, load, and continue the firing until the command *cease firing.*

The corporal may permit a few men only, usually the best shots, to fire; for this purpose he calls the men by name and then gives the same commands as before; the intensity of the fire is thus regulated by varying the number of men firing.

**842.** To fire as skirmishers with counted cartridges: 1. *Fire one* (*two* or *three*) *round,* 2. *At* (such an object), 3. *At* (so many) *yards,* 4. COMMENCE FIRING.

At the fourth command, those skirmishers who can see the enemy open fire. Each man, after firing the number of cartridges indicated, executes *cease firing.*

To fire another series: FIRE ONE (TWO or THREE) ROUND.

The instructor will see that the number of cartridges indicated is never exceeded.

**843.** In the *rapid fire,* the number of cartridges is not limited; the objective is not indicated; when used before making the assault, the instructor orders the sights laid down, and then commands: 1. *Rapid fire,* 2. COMMENCE FIRING.

The men fire straight to the front, at the feet of the enemy, and continue to fire until the command or signal *cease firing.*

## INSTRUCTION ON VARIED GROUND.

**844.** The instruction will at first be individual; the movements will afterward be executed by the entire squad.

**845.** This instruction is directed by the troop officers; it is given on ground which has been previously selected with reference to the movements to be executed. The

location should be frequently changed in order to accustom the men to new situations, and care will be taken never to order movements at variance with the accidents of the ground.

**846.** Having conducted the squad to a point overlooking the vicinity, the instructor will call attention to the form of the ground and to the different military purposes to which its features are adaptable, using and explaining the military terms that apply; he will require the men to point out the leading features of the country in sight or near their position, with all that concerns the streams, roads, woods, inhabited places, etc.

**847.** He will explain how to determine the points of the compass, the points of sunrise and sunset, the position of the sun at different hours of the day, and the length of the shadows cast by objects, persons, etc.

To determine the points of the compass with a watch: Hold the watch so that the *hour hand* points directly toward the sun; the point midway between the hour hand and XII is south.

### *Use of Cover.*

**848.** The following explanations are more particularly applicable for the government of dismounted skirmishers, but the instructor will be careful to explain the advantages and disadvantages of each new position for cavalry in its proper sphere of action.

The instructor must impress upon the men that they must take positions from which they can best see and fire upon the enemy.

**849.** The best kind of cover is that which, while it masks the skirmishers from the sight and fire of the enemy; affords favorable conditions for firing and for rapidly advancing and retiring.

**850.** In order to obtain a rest for the rifle and at the same time expose the least part of the body while aiming, the instructor explains the following methods:—

Take post preferably behind the right of walls, rocks, heaps of stone, or earth, and in the windows and doorways of the houses on the left side of a street; behind a tree, rest the rifle on a limb to the right, or rest the forearm against the right side of the trunk.

Behind embankments of earth, in ditches and furrows, kneel or lie down, and rise slightly to fire; lie down in rear of a crest or the edge of plateau, keeping the slope toward the enemy in view.

At the edge of a wood, where there is no ditch nor bank of earth, remain a little back from the edge, under the cover of the first trees.

The instructor explains how to prepare the crest of a wall, and how to pierce loopholes or construct platforms when the wall is too high to fire over.

**851.** The instructor explains the circumstances under which each accident of the ground would be valuable as cover, and how to use it, both in its original condition and by modifying it, against an enemy supposed to be in a certain direction.

The recruits are then required to post themselves near points indicated, so as to be under cover and in position to fire upon a point about six hundred yards distant, indicated as the position of the enemy; each man selects his own position so as to have a good view of the objective and sets his sight at the range indicated.

The men then change places.

The exercise is repeated on different ground and with a different objective.

**852.** A well-trained soldier or non-commissioned officer is then placed in the position of the enemy and required to advance upon the skirmishers; the latter will carefully observe his movements and aim at him whenever he exposes himself, adjusting the sight to agree with the distance (Par. 833).

**853.** When the recruits have learned to post themselves at points indicated by the instructor, they are ex-

ercised in selecting their own points, advancing from cover to cover.

The instructor sends a man to a point about six hundred yards distant to represent the enemy; a recruit is then directed to advance upon him. In order to keep out of sight of the enemy, the recruit must make the best use of cover-but must not deviate too much from his direction; he must stoop and even creep or crawl, but, if possible, never lose sight of the enemy; open ground exposed to the fire of the enemy should be crossed at a run, by rushes of about thirty yards, then taking the lying position and raising the head in order to see the enemy. The rushes should not, as a rule, exceed fifty yards, else the skirmisher will be winded and unable to aim accurately.

In this manner he should advance to about 200 yards from the enemy, and nearer if the character of the ground permit.

The man representing the enemy may be provided with blank cartridges, and required to fire upon the skirmisher whenever he exposes himself sufficiently to afford a target (Par. 833).

**854.** When the recruits are well instructed in the use of cover, the movements are executed by squad.

The instructor points out the position of the enemy, at least six hundred yards distant, and states clearly the object of the movement. The corporal as squad leader, gives the commands necessary.

### *Battle Exercises.*

**855.** The squad executes on varied ground all the movements prescribed for close and extended order, special attention being given to the exercises in leading.

Those skirmishers who can not hear or see the corporal, regulate themselves upon the nearest men, who may transmit the commands to them in a low tone.

When the squad is proficient in the movements in

extended order, the enemy is either *outlined* or *represented.*

In general the fire is simulated; but it is important, in these exercises, that blank cartridges should frequently be used.

Both parties cease firing when within fifty yards of each other; if they are deployed as skirmishers, the attacking party may be ordered to charge; the men in each squad pass through the intervals in the other, each man passing to the right of the man directly in his front; both squads halt at the command of the instructor. The exercise may then be continued, the squads exchanging positions.

# THE TROOP.

**856.** In this drill, the troop is supposed to consist of four platoons of two squads each; it may consist of a less number of platoons. When part of a squadron, the troop is in two echelons, an attacking or firing line and a support.

Acting alone, the troop is usually in three echelons, an attacking or firing line, a support, and, when necessary, a reserve.

The distances between these echelons vary with the nature of the ground and the effectiveness of the enemy's fire.

**857.** When the mechanism of the drill is understood, the captain will cause movements to be executed on varied ground, and will prescribe programmes for instruction, the execution of the details being carried out by the subordinates.

### *Posts and Duties of Officers, etc.*

**858.** The captain is the instructor, and takes post between the attacking line and support, or when the troop is in three echelons, near the support. He directs the action of the whole troop, controls the reinforcement of the attacking line, and keeps up the supply of ammunition, regulating its distribution and expenditure.

His orders, given by word of command, signals, or delivered by orderlies, are directed to the commanders of the attacking line, support, and reserve. A trumpeter accompanies the captain.

**859.** One lieutenant commands the attacking line; the other lieutenant commands the reserve, or if there be no reserve he commands the support. If there be an additional lieutenant, he may be assigned by the captain; if

the formation be in three echelons, he usually commands the support.

**860.** The attacking line is commanded by the lieutenant whose platoon is on the line; he takes post about thirty yards in rear of the line and is accompanied by a trumpeter and the principal guide from his flank, when not in command of a platoon.

The chiefs of platoons on the attacking line must be on the alert for signals from the commander of the line. The chief of the platoon to which the base squad belongs gives particular attention to the march of that squad, and sees that the other squad preserves its interval; the other chiefs of platoons see that their squads preserve their intervals.

**861.** The support, in line or column as may be expedient, takes position about two hundred yards in rear of the center of the attacking line and maintains that relative position. The captain may direct the support to take position in rear of a flank.

Scouts or patrols are sent out to protect the flank not already covered by the reserve, a natural obstacle, or by a contiguous organization.

The commander of the support takes a position from which he can observe the progress of the action, and if possible watch the scouts or patrols, keeping a good lookout for the commands and signals of the captain.

**862.** When there is a reserve, it is commanded by the lieutenant posted with the part of the troop from which the reserve is taken.

The reserve takes position about one hundred yards in rear of the support and usually opposite one of the flanks of the attacking line; when the troop is acting alone, if the support is opposite one flank, the reserve should generally take position opposite the other flank.

When necessary, scouts are sent from the reserve on the flank not covered by the support.

The commander of the reserve takes a position from

which he can see the support, observe the scouts, and, if possible, see the captain's signals. If unable to make these observations in person, he maintains communication with the captain and the support by means of men sent forward to carry messages and repeat signals.

Whenever the support is advanced to the attack, or absorbed in the attacking line, the reserve takes its place.

**863.** The captain will designate the platoon or platoons for the firing line and those for the support and reserve. These designations should be made when a deployment is imminent, and thus avoid a possible source of confusion in an emergency.

As a rule, the platoons to be designated for the attacking (or firing) line are taken from the left when the troop is in line; the leading platoons are designated when in column.

The captain indicates the objective and gives the commands necessary for the deployment.

The commander of the attacking line moves his line, forms line of squads or deploys as skirmishers, and orders the firing, etc., according to real or supposed circumstances, or as the captain may direct.

The support is moved to its position when the attacking line halts or has gained the proper distance, and is held ready to move to the assistance of the attacking line and to act toward either flank.

**864.** When the entire troop is deployed, the captain takes immediate control of the line; he takes post about fifty yards in the rear of the center; he is accompanied by a trumpeter, the principal guides, and guidon. Each chief of platoon commands his platoon, but the captain may apportion the line to the senior chiefs of platoons, and in this case the principal guides take their places as chiefs of platoons.

**865.** In all movements by squads, the squad leader gives the commands necessary for the movements of his squad and leads it into position.

**866.** In deploying as skirmishers by the flank, the squad leaders supervise the deployment from opposite the rear of their squads and then take their places in the line of skirmishers; in forming line of platoons and deploying as skirmishers to the front, they take or keep their places in rank, retaining, however, supervision of their squads

The captain, the commander of the echelon, or the chief of platoon appoints leaders of squads newly organized, or new leaders to replace those disabled.

**867.** The officers,and when necessary the non-commissioned officers, repeat the commands and cause them to be executed as soon as given; the commanders of echelons give the commands necessary for the execution of the orders of the captain, and, in general, give their attention to the control and direction of the fire and to maintaining cohesion and concert of action.

The principal guides and guidon conform to the requirements of Par. 530, or as may be directed by the captain.

**868.** The troop, when deployed, *charges, dismounts, and mounts,* as prescribed for the squad, substituting *troop* for *squad* in the commands and explanations.

### *To Form Line of Squads.*

**869.** The squads are designated as in Par. 464.

The normal interval between squads in line is forty-eight yards; to take a greater or less interval the command: *At* (so many) *yards,* is added to the first command for deployment.

**870.** Marching in line, the captain gives the point of direction and commands: 1. *Line of squads,* 2. *On left* (or *right*) *squad,* (such) *platoon,* 3. *Fours right* (or *left*), 4. **MARCH.**

At the command *march,* the squad leader of the left squad marches it in the indicated direction; the other squads execute *fours right, column half-left,* and are marched by their squad leaders obliquely to the right; each is

marched in line to the front when it has its interval from the squad next toward the base.

The chiefs of platoons take post ten yards in rear of the center of their platoons.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

If the captain designates the line to be occupied, the squad leader of the base squad halts it on arriving on the line.

Being at a halt, the base squad stands fast; the other squads move by the right flank and each is halted by its leader when it has its interval.

**871.** During the deployment, the base squad usually retains its formation; the other squads will habitually be conducted to their new positions, each in column of fours, and then take the same formation as the base squad; but if the configuration of the ground or other circumstances make it expedient to change the formation, as from line to column of fours, or the reverse, the squad leader may make the change.

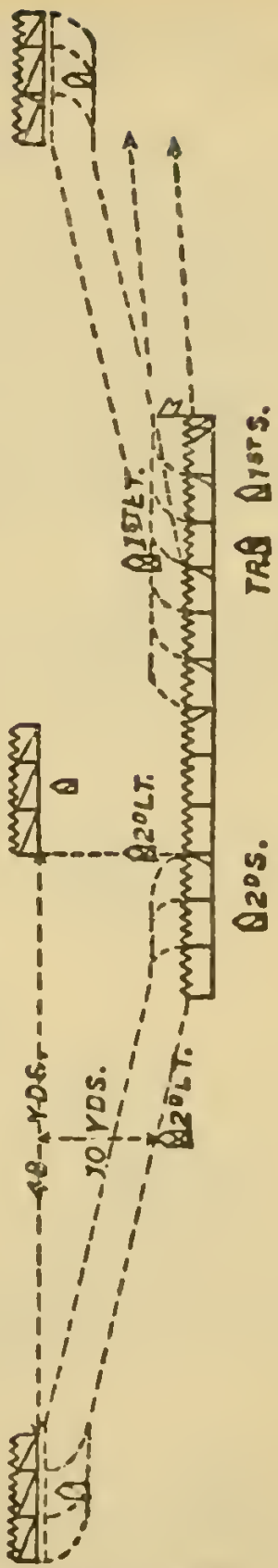
**872.** To deploy on an interior squad: 1. *Line of squads,* 2. *On* (such) *squad,* (such) *platoon,* 3. *Fours right and left,* 4. **MARCH.**

The squads to the right of the base squad take their intervals to the right, and those to the left take their intervals to the left (Par. 870).

**873.** To halt the troop: 1. *Troop,* 2. **HALT.**

The base squad halts; the other squads are halted on arriving on the line.

On halting, the squad leaders take post two yards in rear of their squads.




Pl 148, Par. 871.

The squad leaders halt their squads faced to the front. *This rule is general.*

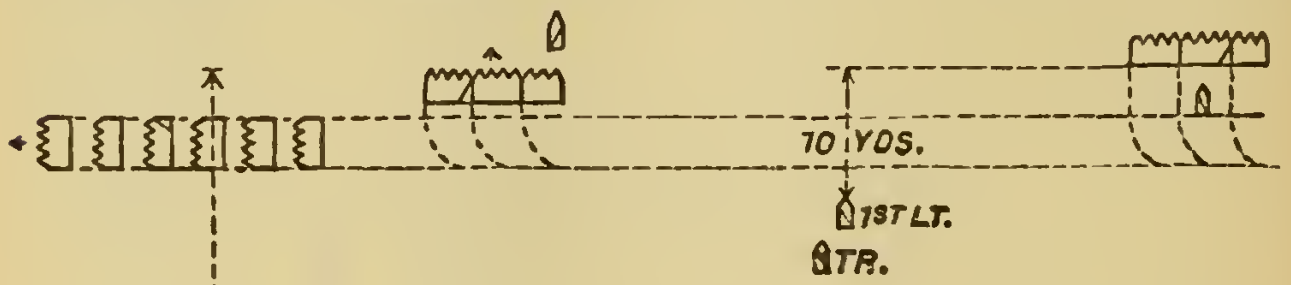
*Being in Column of Fours, to Form Line of Squads.*

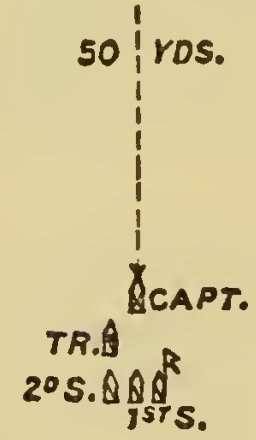
**874.** To the front: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line of squads,* 2. **MARCH,** 3. *Troop,* 4. **HALT.**

The movement is executed as in forming front into line of platoons in columns of fours (Par. 509).

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

**875.** To the right or left: 1. *Line of squads,* 2. *To the right* (or *left*), 3. **MARCH.**




Pl. 149, Par. 875.

At the second command, the squad leader of the rear squad commands: *Fours right.*

At the command *march,* the rear squad forms line to the right, advances six yards, and is halted; the other squads continue the march, and each in succession from the rear of the column, when it has its interval, is formed into line to the right and halted on the line of the base squad.

*To Deploy as Skirmishers.*

**876.** Being in line of squads, to deploy to the right or left front, or to a flank: 1. *As skirmishers,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 3. **MARCH;** or, 1. *As skirmishers,* 2. *Fours right* (or *left*), 3. **MARCH.**

Each squad deploys as skirmishers (Par. 800 or 803).

The squad leader takes his place in the line of skirmishers.

**877.** If, while forming line of squads, the captain wishes to deploy the skirmishers, he commands: 1. *As skirmishers,* 2. MARCH.

Squads already on the line deploy from the point of rest; the other squads deploy, each when it has its interval.

**878.** Being in line, the troop deploys as skirmishers to the front or to a flank, as prescribed for the squad; the squad leaders see that the men of their squads march to the front, or halt as they individually gain their intervals.

**879.** Being in line, to deploy by both flanks: 1. *As skirmishers,* 2. *On* (such) *squad,* (such) *platoon,* 3. *Fours right and left,* 4. MARCH.

The base squad and squads on its right wheel *fours right,* and those on the left of the base squad wheel *fours left* and successively deploy (Par. 803).

**880.** Being in column of fours, the troop deploys as skirmishers, as prescribed for the squad (Pars. 800 and 804).

*To Increase and Diminish Intervals.*

**881.** Being in line of squads: 1. *On* (such) *squad to* (so many) *yards extend* (or *close*), 2. MARCH.

The squads open from or close toward the base squad. If marching, the squads are marched obliquely at an increased gait; if at a halt, they are marched by the flank.

**882.** Being deployed as skirmishers: *On* (such) *squad to* (so many) *yards extend* (or *close*), 2. MARCH.

The skirmishers extend or close as explained for the squad (Par. 806).

*The Assembly.*

**883.** Being in line of squads or deployed as skimishers, the captain takes post, or sends the guidon, where

he wishes to form the troop, and commands: 1. *Assemble,* 2. MARCH.

The skirmishers or squads and the support and reserve move promptly toward him and re-form in the normal order.

Being deployed as skirmishers: 1. *Assemble by squads* (or *platoons*), 2. MARCH.

Executed by each squad (Par. 814).

### *The Rally.*

**884.** The captain goes quickly, or sends the guidon, to the squad or place selected as the rallying point and signals or commands: RALLY.

The rally is executed by the attacking line as explained for the squad (Par. 813). The support forms on the line, or acts under special instructions. As soon as practicable after rallying, the troop is assembled again or deployed.

**885.** To rally by platoons, the captain commands: RALLY BY PLATOONS. Each platoon rallies as explained for the squad. The captain joins one of the platoons.

To rally by squads, the captain commands: RALLY BY SQUADS, and joins one of the squads.

### *Marchings.*

**886.** Being in line of squads or deployed as skirmishers, the captain designates the base squad, indicates to its leader the point of direction, and commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide center* (*right* or *left*), 3. MARCH.

The base squad marches in the given direction; the other squads march abreast of the base, keeping their intervals (Par. 788).

### *To March to the Rear.*

**887.** 1. *To the rear,* MARCH, 3. *Guide center* (*right* or *left*).

If deployed as skirmishers, each squad marches to the rear (Par. 808).

If in line of squads, each squad leader wheels his squad left about by fours. The captain designates the point of direction to the base squad. Upon halting, or if the commands *forward, march* be given, the squads are wheeled left about by fours.

**888.** The captain should occasionally cause the base squad to make slight changes of direction; the other squads conform promptly to the movements of the base.

To make a considerable change, the captain designates the point of direction and commands: 1. *Change direction to the right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH.

The right squad, which is the base, changes direction as if alone (Par. 811), and halts facing the new point of direction; each of the other squads conforms to the new alignment.

*To March by the Flank.*

**889.** 1. *By the right* (or *left*) *flank*, 2. MARCH.

If deployed as skirmishers, the movement is executed as in Par. 809; if in line of squads, the leaders march their squads by the flank in column of fours: the rear squads follow the squad at the head of the column.

To march again in line: 1. *By the left* (or *right*) *flank*, 2. MARCH.

**890.** Marching by the flank, to change direction, the captain commands: 1. *Column right* (or *left*), 2. MARCH.

*Firings.*

**891.** The firing line executes the firings as explained for the squad (Pars. 816 and 817). The captain commands: COMMENCE FIRING and CEASE FIRING.

He may, when necessary, indicate the objective, the kind of fire, the number of rounds, and the range.

The squad leaders take part in the firing, except when firing by squad.

**892.** To fire by squad: 1. *Fire by squad*, 2. COMMENCE FIRING.

Each squad executes the firings as if alone.

One or more squads may be designated to fire.

### *To Deploy by Platoons.*

**893.** The troop may be deployed and movements may be executed by platoons by the commands and means prescribed for deploying by squad, substituting *platoon* for *squad.*

In line of platoons the interval is ninety-six yards.

The chiefs of platoons take post in front of the center of their platoon.

### *Platoon Drill.*

**894.** The platoon may be drilled in the extended order movements as explained for the troop. The chief of platoon is the instructor.

## MOVEMENTS DISMOUNTED.

**895.** The movements prescribed for close order, mounted, may, in emergencies, be executed by the platoon, the troop, the squadron, and the regiment dismounted, conforming to the principles prescribed in the School of the Soldier.

Movements in extended order dismounted are executed by the same commands and means as when mounted, conforming to the principles prescribed for dismounted drills; the movements are executed in quick time unless the command *double time* be given.

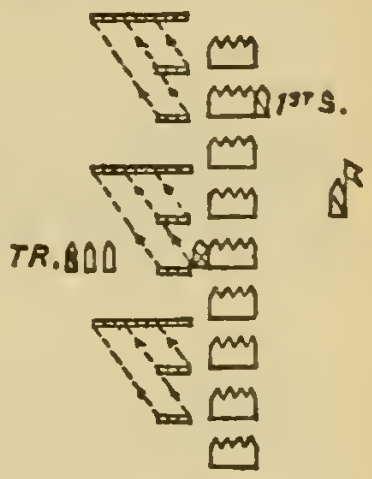
In forming line of squads dismounted, the interval between the squads in line is *twelve yards.*

### *To Dismount to Fight on Foot.*

**896.** The troop being in column of fours, to dismount to fight on foot to the front: 1. TO FIGHT ON FOOT, 2. ACTION LEFT (or RIGHT) FRONT.

At the second command, the troop dismounts to fight on foot and each squad forms as prescribed in Par. 825.

The horses of the captain and his trumpeter are held by the other trumpeter, or by a man detailed for this purpose, who remains mounted; the horses of the chiefs of platoons are held by No. 4 of their rear fours and on their left; the principal guides link their horses to those of No. 1 of the fours behind which they are posted.



Pl. 150, Par. 896

When a reserve is designated it remains mounted as a guard to the led horses, except when directed to dismount.

The guidon remains with the led horses, and usually takes immediate charge of them (see Par. 824).

**897.** The troop having dismounted and the squads having formed, the troop may be assembled (Par. 883) or formed front into line of squads or skirmishers. In assembling or deploying, if squads in rear arrive on the line before others that should precede them, they must leave interval to form in normal order.

*Being in Column of Fours, to Dismount to Fight on Foot to the Right or Left.*

**898.** 1. TO FIGHT ON FOOT, 2. ACTION RIGHT (or LEFT).

Executed by each squad as prescribed in Par. 826.

*Being in Line of Squads, to Dismount to Fight on Foot.*

**899.** The captain commands: TO FIGHT ON FOOT.

The squad leaders dismount their squads to fight on foot so as to fall in to the right front, or on the flank toward the enemy.

The led horses of each squad are moved to cover in rear of the squad or all are assembled by the captain.

**900.** During a deployment, if the captain commands: TO FIGHT ON FOOT, each subdivision on the line, or as soon as it arrives on the line, dismounts to fight on foot, and falls in so as to extend its front from the point of rest. *This rule is general.*

**901.** The troop dismounted to fight on foot is mounted by the captain as prescribed for the squad (Par. 829). If the *recall* be sounded, the squad leaders march their squads toward the horses, closing intervals if necessary.

### *To Relieve the Firing Line.*

**902.** The captain notifies the commanders of the firing line and support. The commander of the firing line notifies his group leaders.

The support is deployed or extended so as to complete the movement in rear of the firing line, and is advanced to the position to be occupied, either in advance or in rear of the old line; the latter is then marched to the rear and assembled, and becomes the support.

### *To Reinforce the Firing Line.*

**903.** When there are intervals in the firing line, either on the outer flanks or between groups, the reinforcement is placed in these intervals. This method, called the group reinforcement, will be used when practicable.

Advancing, or being at a halt under cover, the firing line may diminish intervals toward one flank; the support then deploys and moves into the space made vacant.

Under a heavy fire, the support may be deployed on the march and moved up on the line, the men placing themselves on the line between the skirmishers; officers and non-commissioned officers take charge of their proportionate parts of the line, and the action progresses as if no mixing had taken place. This method should be used only when the emergency demands a prompt reinforcement above all other considerations.

# THE SQUADRON.

**904.** In battle exercises, when the enemy is imaginary or outlined, the major prescribes the programme and directs an officer of the squadron to command the movements.

**905.** The squadron in extended order, whether operating alone or in regiment, is formed in three echelons, viz: The *attacking* (or *firing*) *line,* the *troop support,* and the *reserve.*

The attacking line consists of one, two, or three troops.

Whatever the formation of the squadron, the major designates the troop or troops for the fighting line and those for the reserve; also, if necessary, the size of the troop support.

The fighting line consists of the troops in the attacking line, including their supports.

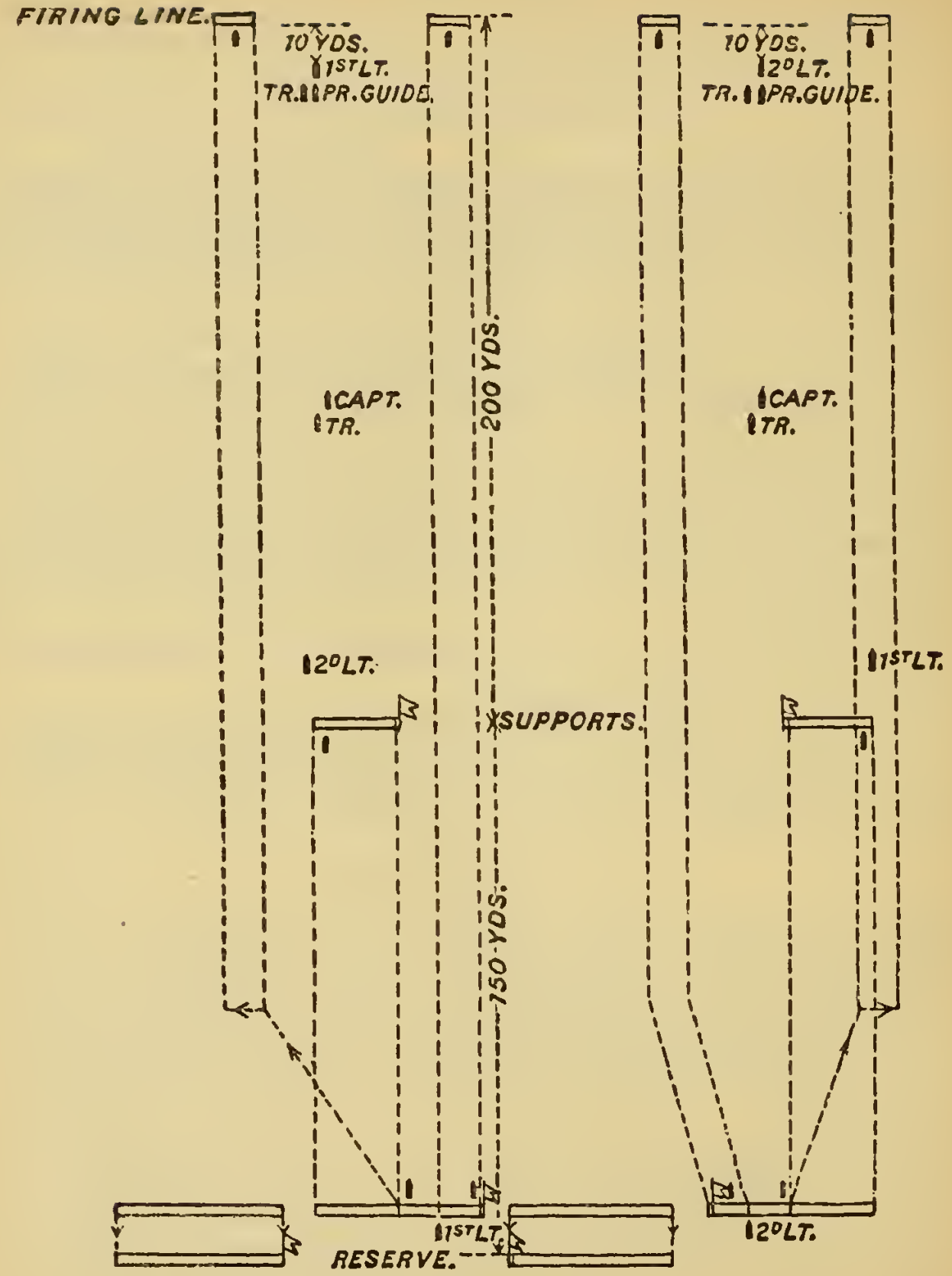
The reserve takes position about one hundred yards in rear of the supports, or as may be directed by the major, and is commanded by the senior officer with it.

### *To Form Line of Squads.*

**906.** Being in line, the major commands: 1. *Line of squads,* 2. *On* (such) *squad,* (such) *troop,* 3. MARCH.

At the second command, the officers and non-commissioned officers take their posts, and, when necessary, the support of the base troop and the reserve are halted or moved a little to the rear so as not to interfere with the deployment.

At the command *march,* the base troop forms line of squads; the troops to the right are marched in column of fours to the right, and each, when the rear of its column is opposite the left of its position, forms line of squads to the left; in a similar manner the troops to the




Pl. 151, Par. 906.

left are moved to the left and form line of squads to the right.

The troops, other than the base, may march diagonally to position.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

Before reaching position for deployment, the captains may detach their supports. which then march to their positions without interfering with the other troops.

**907.** To halt the squadron: 1. *Squadron,* 2. HALT.

If the major designates the line to be occupied, the captain of the base troop halts it on arriving on that line.

**908.** Being in column of fours: 1. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line of squads,* 2. MARCH.

The first troop forms line of squads (Par. 874); the other troops of the attacking line are marched to the right front, opposite the left of their intervals, and form line of squads.

The principles of Par. 8 apply.

**909.** Line of squads is formed from column of troops by the same commands; the first troop forms line of squads on its left or right squad according as the formation is to be to the right or left front; the other troops of the attacking line are marched opposite the left or right of their positions and then form line of squads.

**910.** Being in column of fours, *line of squads to the right* or *left* is formed by the commands and means explained for the troop. Each captain forms his troop in line of squads when opposite its position on the line.

The principles of Par. 8 apply

*To Deploy as Skirmishers.*

**911.** Being in line: 1. *As skirmishers,* 2. *On* (such) *squad,* (such) *troop,* 3. MARCH.

The base troop deploys at once: the troops to the right gain their intervals to the right and deploy: those to the left gain their intervals to the left and deploy.

If marching, the deployment is made, gaining ground to the front, and the principles of Par. 8 apply.

Being in line of squads or platoons, or while such line is forming, the major deploys the skirmishers as explained for the troop.

**912.** Being in column: 1. *As skirmishers,* 2. *Right* (or *Left*) *front into line,* 3. MARCH.

The first troop deploys right front into line; the other troops are marched opposite their positions and deployed.

**913.** The major may designate one or more troops to form line of squads or platoons, or to deploy as skirmishers to the right front, and others to the left front.

Being in double column of fours, the squadron may be deployed to the right and left front; or, the right or left column only may be deployed, according to the principles explained.

### *To Increase or Diminish Intervals*

**914.** Being in line of squads or as skirmishers: 1. *On* (such) *squad* (such) *troop, to* (so many) *yards extend* (or *close*) 2. MARCH

The movement is executed as explained for the troop (Pars. 881 and 882).

### *The Assembly.*

**915.** The major causes the *recall* to be sounded. The captains assemble or rally their troops. The major causes the *adjutant's call* to be sounded, or commands: 1. *On* (such) *troop,* 2. *Assemble,* 3. MARCH; the troops, including the reserve, are marched to the point occupied by the major, or to the designated troop; the squadron is formed in its normal order, in such formation as the major may direct.

To assemble at the trot or gallop, the *trot* or *gallop* is sounded immediately after the *adjutant's call.*

The major may designate certain troops only to assemble.

**916.** The squadron in extended order marches to the front and to the rear, changes direction when in line,

marches by the flank, and changes direction when marching by the flank as prescribed for the troop.

*To Fight on Foot.*

**917.** The major designates the troops for the fighting line and for the reserve, and indicates the size of the troop supports.

When the squadron is acting alone, the reserve, as a rule, remains mounted, and guards or furnishes the guard for the led horses.

When the squadron is with the regiment, the squadron reserve is dismounted, but the major may designate a mounted escort for the led horses.

**918.** Being in column of fours: 1. *Troops,* 2. TO FIGHT ON FOOT, 2. ACTION RIGHT (or LEFT); or, 3. ACTION RIGHT (or LEFT) FRONT.

After dismounting, the squads fall in and each captain assembles his troop on what was his leading squad before dismounting.

**919.** The squadron in column of fours may be formed front into line of troops in columns of fours and then dismounted to fight on foot (see Par. 900).

**920.** Being in line of troops in columns of fours: 1. *Troops,* 2. TO FIGHT ON FOOT, 3. ACTION RIGHT (or LEFT) FRONT.

Each troop dismounts to fight on foot and the captain assembles it right front into line on the leading squad.

**921.** Being in line of platoon columns, the major breaks the troops into columns of fours to the front and dismounts them.

Being in column of troops, at full distance or in close column, the squadron is wheeled by fours to the right or left; the troops are then dismounted to fight on foot and deployed or assembled; or the squadron may first be formed front into line and then dismounted, or the troops dismounted as they successively arrive on the line.

The double column of fours is dismounted to fight on foot to the right and left, so as to form on its outer flanks.

Whatever the formation, the major may designate one or more troops to fight on foot, and assign them to such positions as the emergency may require.

**922.** The squadron having dismounted to fight on foot, and the troops having assembled, the major may cause to be executed such movements as may be necessary without assembling the squadron.

**923.** Being deployed on foot, the supports and reserve are posted as when mounted, and maintain their relative positions.

**924.** The led horses are kept under cover in rear of their respective subdivisions or assembled by troop; or, the major may direct them to be assembled in rear of the reserve.

When the led horses of the squadron are assembled under cover, they should, if practicable, be in line of columns of fours, at close interval, and so faced as to permit the quickest possible movement toward the dismounted troops, except when it is designed that the led horses should retire as retreating troops approach.

### *The Squadron Being Dismounted, to Assemble.*

**925.** *Adjutant's call* is sounded, or the major commands: 1. *On* (such) *troop,* 2. *Assemble,* 3. MARCH.

The designated troop stands fast or takes such position as the major may direct; the other troops are closed toward the designated troop and form on it with intervals of *two yards* between troops.

### *To Remount the Squadron.*

**926.** The major causes the *recall* to be sounded, at which each captain rallies or assembles his troop, marches it to the led horses, and mounts it. The squadron is then assembled (Par. 915).

The major may cause the led horses to be conducted to the dismounted line, the captains assemble their troops and mount them, or mount them deployed, according as the *recall* or *prepare to mount* is sounded. The squadron may then be assembled (Par. 915).

## THE DISMOUNTED SQUADRON IN ACTION.

**927.** The major regulates the progress of the action, sees that the firing line advances upon the indicated objective, hastens or delays the reinforcement by the supports, and disposes the reserve so as to guard against surprise. The execution of details he leaves to his subordinates, but he exercises a general and active control in such manner as to increase the energy of the action up to the decisive moment.

**928.** Each captain in the fighting line regulates the march of the line within the limits assigned to him, keeps in communication with his support and brings it upon the firing line pursuant to orders, or without orders when necessary; he directs the fire and regulates its intensity.

### *The Front of Action.*

**929.** The field of action extends forward to the enemy's troops and to the right and left as far as the middle of the intervals between it and the adjacent squadrons, with which it should keep touch and act in concert. In this space the action of the squadron should be concentrated.

**930.** When the relative strength of the command warrants it, the enemy may be out-flanked and attacked both in front and flank, provided such attacks can be made simultaneously.

**931.** Before forming for attack or defense, ground scouts and combat patrols are sent forward and on the flanks, under specific instructions; they remain mounted, as far as practicable, and convey information acquired by signals previously agreed upon. The ground scouts

are drawn in when the action commences; the combat patrols remain upon the flanks.

## THE OFFENSIVE.

### *Squadron in Regiment.*

**932.** When first coming within the zone of artillery fire, the squadron is formed in line or in line of columns, and advances until the artillery fire becomes effective (about 3,000 to 2,500 yards from the enemy on open ground). The squadron, under cover if possible, is then dismounted to fight on foot and assembled.

**933.** The fighting front, on the offensive, dismounted, should rarely exceed one-half the front of the squadron when mounted and in line. This should include a space of from twenty-four to forty-eight yards between the squadrons.

**934.** The major designates the troops for the fighting line and those for the reserve, and gives the necessary instructions for deployment.

**935.** The captain designates the platoons for the firing line, usually one-half or two-thirds the dismounted strength according as there is an even or odd number of platoons.

The officers and non-commissioned officers take post as prescribed for extended order.

**936.** When the ground scouts have advanced about one hundred and fifty yards, the major gives the commands for advancing.

The firing line of each troop moves forward, regulating its march and interval on the base troop.

When the firing line has advanced about two hundred yards, each support is put in march.

At about 1,700 yards, the firing line forms line of platoons.

At about 1,200 yards, it forms line of squads.

At about 900 yards, it deploys as skirmishers.

At 800 yards, or less, the scouts may find it necessary to halt and await the arrival of the firing line.

**937.** To avoid the mixing of platoons and squads, each, while seeking cover, should keep within the deploying limits of its proper front.

**938.** Firing will be delayed as long as possible, though the major or the captains order volley firing upon bodies of the enemy (Par. 834), or the commander of the firing line permits individual sharp-shooters to fire (Par. 833). When the advance should no longer continue without firing, the major signals or commands; COMMENCE FIRING. The captains order: *Fire one* (*two* or *three*) *volley.* The commander of the firing line gives the commands for the volleys; he must never exceed the number directed, but may reduce the number, or omit the firing, to avoid a mere waste of ammunition.

**939.** Volleys will be used to the last practicable moment. The chiefs of platoons and squad leaders assist in maintaining strict fire discipline.

**940.** During this portion of the advance, the firing line of each troop will close upon its center in order to make space for the supports, which should have been drawing nearer to the firing line without waiting for orders, taking the formation most favorable for reinforcing, keeping under cover as far as practicable.

**941.** The firing line may advance from cover to cover by rushes executed by the whole line if possible, or by alternate troops.

During this period of the attack, as soon as necessary to increase the intensity of fire, the captain directs the supports to reinforce the firing line.

In emergencies, the commander of the support may reinforce without waiting for orders.

The platoons of the support generally reinforce on the flank from which detached, and are moved forward rapidly to avoid loss, and reinforce as in Par 903.

The arrival of supports upon the line should usually be the signal for a rush forward.

**942.** The reserve conforms to the varying circumstances of the battle, and, without waiting for the order of the major, gradually draws nearer to the fighting line, so as to be ready to replace the supports when the latter have been absorbed; the reserve troops then take the battle formation.

When the firing line is about five hundred yards from the enemy's position, one part of the reserve should be about one hundred yards and the other part about two hundred yards in rear of the firing line.

**943.** When the firing line has approached within about five hundred yards of the enemy, alternate rushes will probably be necessary. The major notifies the captains, who give the necessary instructions while the men are lying down or behind cover. The major then commands: 1. *Advance by rushes,* 2. *Second* (or such) *troop, fire two* (or *three*) *volleys,* 3. *First* (or such) *troop forward.*

The captain of the second troop gives the commands for the volleys; the captain of the first gives the commands to rush forward.

The instant of the first volley, the first troop runs forward about fifteen yards, or to cover if there be any; the captain then commands: 1. *Fire by troop;* the troop halts (Par. 839) and he then completes the commands for firing.

If the firing is to be executed by platoons, by squads, or as skirmishers, the captain indicates the kind of fire, number of volleys or rounds, and commands: COMMENCE FIRING; the chiefs of platoons or squad leaders complete the commands for firing.

The captain may halt the troop by command, and wait a short time before giving the command for firing, when necessary to steady the men.

The instant of the delivery of the first volley by the first troop, the second troop rushes about fifteen yards in advance of the line of the first troop, or to cover, if there

be any, when it is halted, and fires the specified number of volleys; the first troop is then advanced about fifteen yards beyond the second, and so on, each troop advancing under cover of the fire and smoke of the other, the base squad keeping the line of direction.

**944.** As the firing line approaches the enemy's position, the major selects favorable ground from which to make the assault, and having attained this position, commands: *Rapid fire.*

The captains give the commands and the firing is executed (Par. 843).

The first line of the reserve now joins the firing line, by groups if possible.

The squadron which forms the regimental reserve, following the progress of events, draws nearer so as to replace the squadron reserve, if necessary, and take part in the final struggle.

If the major considers himself able to carry the position without assistance, he will not hesitate to take the initiative and attack without waiting for the regimental reserve.

If the rapid fire does not cause the enemy to retreat or waver, the remainder of the squadron reserve is brought up and another rush made, followed by the rapid fire.

During this fire, the first line of the regimental reserve reinforces the firing line, and at the signal from the colonel the assault is made.

**945.** When the time for the assault has arrived, the major signals: CEASE FIRING, and commands: 1. *To the charge,* 2. MARCH.

The men rise and advance in double time.

Having arrived at about thirty yards from the enemy, the captains command: CHARGE.

The men advance on the enemy at the run.

Having driven the enemy from the position, each captain selects ground in his front, or the major assigns a

position favorable for firing upon the retreating enemy, or for resisting a counter attack.

**946.** The squadron is assembled as soon as circumstances will permit, and dispositions are made to hold the captured position, or to pursue.

If the attack fails, each captain rallies his troop as quickly as possible and prepares to renew the attack. The major may order the rally to be made under the protection of the regimental reserve. Retreating troops must, if possible, avoid masking the fire of the reserve.

**947.** When it is designed that the attack shall only retain the enemy; as, for example, to engage the enemy's attention while the assault is made at another point, or to assist a turning movement, or when necessary to gain time to enable reinforcements to come up, the major makes his dispositions and regulates the action according to the purpose in view, and maintains his position until the appointed time.

### *The Squadron Acting Alone.*

**948.** The advance guard usually opens the action and, if possible, compels the enemy to deploy.

When the enemy is signaled, the major decides upon the character of the attack and makes the necessary dispositions. He must keep a reserve, husband his strength, and cover his flanks and rear with mounted patrols or scouts.

The attack is conducted conformably to the principles prescribed for the squadron in regiment.

A portion of the reserve is placed opposite the point where the main effort is to be made, so that at the proper time it may be pushed forward for the assault.

The other portion of the reserve is usually held in rear as a last resort and to guard against counter attacks and turning movements; it may, in case of extreme necessity, be placed in the firing line to assist in the attack.

While the final assault is being made, the led horses

should be brought forward; when the success of the assault is assured, the reserve is mounted, and at a signal from the major takes up the pursuit. If the occasion seems opportune, the commander of the reserve does not wait for orders.

## THE DEFENSIVE.

### *Squadron in Regiment.*

**949.** The major conducts his squadron to the position designated, sends out his patrols and ground scouts, who connect with those from the adjacent squadrons.

The major then reconnoiters the position, its approaches and flanks, and means of communication, front and rear; he also selects rallying points. He designates to each subdivision the position it is to occupy and the defensive works it is to construct, such as abatis, shelter trenches, etc.; also, the position of the led horses, if they be not assembled with the regiment.

The formation is generally the same as on the offensive.

Fire is opened as soon as it can be made effective; its intensity is regulated according to the distance and importance of the objectives; certain subdivisions may be designated to fire upon the enemy's supports and reserves, and others upon his firing line.

When the enemy arrives at about five hundred yards from the position, the support habitually finds itself absorbed in the firing line.

Counter attacks are made by the regimental reserve.

If the enemy be repulsed, the squadron takes the offensive, remaining dismounted, unless ordered by the colonel to mount.

If the enemy succeed, the squadron is withdrawn to, or is rallied at, the rallying point.

### *The Squadron Acting Alone.*

**950.** The squadron moves to the defensive position,

in battle formation, or in order of march, according to the distance of the enemy.

In the first case, the firing line is established on the position; the supports, reserve, and led horses are placed under cover.

In the second case, the advance guard establishes itself on the position and sends out patrols and scouts.

The major makes his reconnoissance and dispositions as when in regiment. Small detachments may occupy favorable points at short distances from the position, from which to delay and develop the enemy, falling back by the flanks in good time.

The support, or part of it, may be dispensed with, in order to secure a superiority of fire or a front equal to that of the attack.

A portion of the reserve is held to make a counter attack at the moment, or just before, the enemy reaches the position, or to cover the retreat.

Advantage should be taken of every opportunity to make counter attacks.

When necessary to retreat, the reserve is posted in a position, near one of the flanks if possible, from which to protect the retreat of the firing line; the firing line unmasks the reserve and takes position in rear of it; the firing line then protects the retreat of the reserve, and in this manner the squadron retires from position to position until it can be mounted or the pursuit is discontinued.

## THE REGIMENT.

**951.** The principles for movements in extended order and for dismounting to fight on foot are the same as for the squadron.

If the deployment be from line, the colonel designates the troop and squadron on which the deployment is to be executed; the designated squadron deploys as explained; each of the other squadrons is marched by the flank until opposite its place on the line, when it is deployed on the troop nearest the designated squadron.

If the deployment be from column, the leading squadron deploys as explained; each of the others is conducted opposite its place on the line and is then deployed to the right or left front.

## THE REGIMENT IN BRIGADE.

**952.** In battle, the regiment dismounted is usually formed in two lines; two squadrons formed for dismounted action constitute the fighting line.

The front of action conforms to Par. 929.

The third squadron is the regimental reserve and is posted about 600 yards in rear of the firing line.

The colonel is near the center of the line of the squadron reserves of the first line; if called elsewhere, he indicates his position.

The reserve squadron reinforces the fighting line as circumstances require. If the firing line be driven back, the reserve squadron is formed in a selected position to check the enemy and to enable the firing line to re-form.

The entire regimental reserve should never be ordered on the firing line until the time for assault, and its arrival

should be the signal for the advance. It should then be replaced by a squadron from the brigade reserve.

When the regiment is operating on the outer flank of the general line, its reserve should be in rear of the exposed flank. Mounted patrols and scouts cover the exposed flank.

When the enemy is driven back in confusion, the mounted reserve charges his broken troops.

# EMPLOYMENT OF CAVALRY.

**953.** The duties of the *Cavalry Division* comprise those pertaining to independent operations of cavalry.

The principles governing the employment of the Cavalry Division apply to any independent body of cavalry consisting of several squadrons.

The duties of the *Divisional Cavalry* comprise those of cavalry attached to infantry divisions and corps.

## THE CAVALRY DIVISION.

**954.** The commander is responsible to the commander of the army, must have perfect independence, and never wait for orders to attack; he must guard against frittering away his force, and see that whole lines are not used when detachments can accomplish the desired results

### *Against Cavalry.*

**955.** In offensive operations, whenever there is opportunity for its employment, the cavalry must be mounted.

Cavalry must never wait to be attacked, but must always take the initiative; its strength is in its impetus; order, uniformity, and the proper employment of reserves are essential to success, the object being to ride the enemy down, and complete his overthrow with the saber and pistol.

It is generally expected of cavalry and is its pride to be bold and daring. A cavalry commander who contents himself with sending out a skirmish line often loses a great opportunity; a sudden and bold charge which surprises the enemy is not only successful, but the loss is small in proportion to its success.

No precise formation can be laid down for cavalry in the attack, as much depends upon the ground, the character of the enemy and his dispositions.

A field of attack which is slightly undulating is better adapted to a charge than a level plain.

In very open ground, the rapid advance to attack should begin at a greater distance than in broken or partially screened country.

**956.** As a rule, a body of cavalry which consists of several squadrons is formed for attack in three lines or echelons. In exceptional cases two lines or echelons may be employed.

The three lines are designated:—

First, *Attacking line.*

Second, *Support.*

Third, *Reserve.*

The particular formation of each line and the general distribution will be such as to assure and secure the success of the attacking line.

Each line leader will use his discretion as to the methods of maneuvering before the enemy; the simplest are the best.

Each line will have combat patrols on exposed flanks.

The object of the three line formation and the unequal division is to insure the success of the attacking line.

**957.** The most favorable opportunities for attacking cavalry are: When the enemy is issuing from a defile, with a narrow front; when it is possible to surprise him in column formation; when he can be taken in flank, while charging another body; when he is in the act of changing formation; and when he is on ground unfavorable for his deployment.

**958.** The *attacking line* will give the main blow against the enemy; it will, if possible, be stronger and cover a greater front than the enemy. It should consist of at least half of the entire force.

It generally advances to the attack in line of columns,

preferably in line of columns of fours at full intervals; in this formation, the intervals and general alignment can be preserved or regained with less confusion than in any other, and ground may more easily be gained toward a flank by obliquing by heads of columns.

Against formed cavalry, the trot should be continued as long as possible, or until within a few hundred yards, when the gallop is taken and progressively increased.

If the enemy can be surprised or attacked while maneuvering or deploying, the gallop must be taken at a greater distance.

The attack is made in line with all the vigor and enthusiasm that can be inspired. At the order to *charge* all the trumpeters sound and repeat the signal, and the troops cheer.

Ground scouts precede each squadron during its advance.

After the signal *charge,* each troop will follow its captain as a unit, keeping touch of stirrup, toward the center.

After the shock comes the mêlée, which is continued until the attack by the support, when each troop is rallied, each squadron assembled, and the attacking line re-formed and held as a reserve.

If the enemy retreats before the shock, a part of the line, if sufficiently near, may pursue as foragers; the remainder, kept well in hand, follows.

When issuing from a defile, when forming on right or left into line, or when changing front, if there be not time to complete the formation, each troop or squadron may be advanced to the attack as soon as formed.

**959.** The *support* comprises from one-fourth to one-third of the whole force and is so posted and maneuvered as to give direct and timely support to and assure the success of the attacking line.

It is usually formed in line of columns and at a distance of about two hundred and seventy-five yards from the

attacking line. The greater part of the support will be formed in echelon to the attacking line, the inner flank of this part being from fifty to seventy-five yards to the right or left of the right or left flank of the attacking line, according as it is on the right or left of that line.

The remaining squadron or squadrons of the support will be placed at rather wide intervals in rear, or so placed as to cover the less exposed flank of the attacking line.

If the flank of the attacking line be seriously threatened, the out-flanking force closes to not less than one hundred yards.

The movements of the support conform closely to the movements of the attacking line.

When the attacking line charges, the support takes the full gallop, and when at the proper distance, executes the charge, which is directed principally against intact organizations of the enemy, such as have not been broken by the attacking line, and against the enemy's support.

**960.** The remainder, comprising from one-fourth to one-sixth of the entire force, constitutes the *reserve,* and is posted on the inner or protected flank, about one hundred and fifty to two hundred yards in rear of the support. If this flank be sufficiently protected by other troops or a natural obstacle, the reserve may be posted near the outer flank.

It is not thrown into action except by the authority of the division commander, or to meet an unexpected flank attack.

The commander of the reserve should take advantage of natural obstacles to mass and screen his force, but without getting too far to the rear to respond promptly to the orders of the division commander; he must not lose sight of the attacking line, nor fail to keep watch of the movements of the division commander.

When the attacking line advances to the charge, the reserve should form line of columns at deploying inter-

vals. When the support has charged, the reserve becomes the support, but does not attack without orders from the division commander; when it is ordered to attack, about one-fourth of its force is still held in reserve.

**961.** Every unoccupied detachment that is near a body of cavalry about to attack should constitute itself a part of the reserve.

**962.** The *rally* must be effected with great promptness. Even a victorious body is disorganized by the supreme effort, and loses its value as a fighting force for the time being. It is then peculiarly exposed to demoralization by determined attacks of the enemy.

**963.** During the pursuit, all troopers who have become separated from their commands, and are not in immediate contact with the enemy, join and remain with the nearest organization until possible to rejoin their own commands.

### *Against Infantry.*

**964.** Against infantry, the most favorable occasions for cavalry action are when the infantry have exhausted their ammunition, when in disordered retreat, or when much shaken by artillery or infantry fire.

Infantry fire will be less steady as the charging force closes upon them. Infantry in line will be charged by foragers; infantry in masses, by line of columns or successive lines, at distances of about one hundred yards, the lines being of nearly equal strength.

Unless the nature of the ground plainly indicates the line of advance, it is generally better to take the shortest line to reach the enemy, irrespective of the part of the line to which it leads, whether flank or front. If the enemy can neither be approached under cover, nor surprised, the gallop must be taken at a greater distance, in order to diminish the time of exposure to fire action.

If choice be permitted, cavalry should charge infantry up hill (not steep), or against its right flank.

### *Against Artillery.*

**965.** The most suitable times for attacking artillery are when withdrawing from or going into position, the pieces limbered.

As only a comparatively small force can do effective work among the guns and horses, a troop or squadron would ordinarily be as large a force as would be necessary in making the assault on one battery.

The attacking force is divided into two or three parts.

The attacking line charges as foragers, the troop or squadron dividing near the center as they advance. The foragers assault the battery on both flanks, attacking the cannoneers and the battery support. The support advances to secure the battery. The reserve follows and is held in hand to meet any hostile cavalry that may attempt to recover the guns. If after overpowering it, the battery can not be held, the guns should be disabled, horses killed, or traces cut.

**966.** To disable a field gun, open the breech-block and then break it with a heavy hammer; or, load the piece, close the breech without locking it, and fire the piece; or, place two or three blank cartridges in the gun, close and lock the breech-block, ram from the muzzle a ball of clay or sod, then unlock the breech-block and fire; or, fire a shotted gun with its muzzle against the chase of another. Guns of the Krupp system may be temporarily disabled by carrying off the breech-block or breaking the handle of the breech-block.

### *Foragers and Skirmishers.*

**967.** The charge as foragers may be used to advantage against artillery, infantry in extended order, and shaken or broken forces of any arm.

Extended order gives a line of battle little affected by artillery fire, very elastic in its movements, and allowing the greatest freedom for individual action. In a wooded

country, it is used for ascertaining the absence of or discovering and watching the enemy, and, if opportunity offers, of attacking him and compelling his deployment, thus gaining time for disposition of the troops whose movements the skirmishers are screening.

When skirmishers are thrown out to clear the way and screen the movements of the main body, their movements are regulated by those of the troops to be covered.

*Mounted skirmishers* are principally used to clear or beat up wooded or broken localities, in convoying supply trains, and in partisan or Indian warfare.

### *Pursuit.*

**968.** The immediate pursuit of an enemy that has been routed is made by the troops engaged in the mêlée.

For the more extended pursuit, the commander of the cavalry division, without waiting for orders from superior authority, should at once send a force to keep in contact with the enemy, and organize and place the remainder of his division to make the pursuit. He should communicate with his superior officers, reporting concisely what has been done, his plans of operation, and the apparent condition and plans of the enemy, requesting orders for his guidance. The cavalry should be accompanied by as many horse batteries as are available.

Contact is made and maintained by officers' patrols, detached from the squadrons detailed for keeping trace of the enemy (see Par. 977); frequent reports are made by the commanders of officers' patrols and contact squadrons of what they have discovered, or that they have failed to discover the enemy.

Where the enemy follows a line of railway, efforts should be made to destroy the bridges and tracks beyond the enemy.

A pursuing force, to accomplish great results, should

be composed of all three arms; the duties of the cavalry commander are then to harass and damage the enemy, but above all to delay him by every possible means, until the infantry or main body of the pursuing force can reach the field.

*Dismounted.*

**969.** Cavalry may be dismounted to fight on foot under the following conditions:—

1. In an inclosed, wooded, or rough, broken country that can not be turned, where mounted action is impracticable; *e. g.*, small villages, buildings, hedges, defiles, bridges, fords, etc., either offensively or defensively.

2. When an obstacle, such as a bridge or ford, intervenes to prevent the enemy's rapid pursuit and presents an opportunity for delaying or keeping him in check by the use of a few dismounted men.

3. To occupy distant and important points, and hold them against the enemy until the arrival of the infantry.

4. To occupy positions held by infantry, to permit the withdrawal of the latter, thus misleading the enemy to suppose them to be still occupied in force.

5. During a retreat, to offer resistance to compel the enemy to deploy, thus gaining time.

As a rule, when there is not opportunity for the offensive, cavalry will be dismounted and its action will be defensive. It takes the offensive to dislodge an inferior force that can not be reached by mounted men.

In the face of an attack by a superior force, the dismounted engagement should be broken off in time to mount and retire to another position.

As a rule, the cavalry should be pushed, mounted, as near the enemy as practicable before dismounting to fight on foot, and then the greater part of the force should be put on the firing line from the beginning.

**970.** In the pursuit, a portion of the cavalry may be

dismounted to take up and strengthen positions on the enemy's line of retreat, acting as a delaying force, while other portions go farther on and take other positions. When a delaying force is compelled to give way, it is mounted and taken to another position beyond those of the delaying forces that have preceded.

### *Duties of the Cavalry Division in a General Engagement.*

**971.** Preliminary to the general engagement, the cavalry divisions that have been scouting and reconnoitering remain in front of the main body to harass the enemy and mask their own troops. When the engagement has begun, they clear the front and take position on a flank. While conforming to general instructions, the commander of the cavalry should not neglect to act efficiently in any way that chance may offer. He may, with his horse artillery, gain the flank or rear of the enemy; aid and support a flanking force of infantry; oppose a flanking movement on the part of the enemy; oppose every offensive movement of the enemy's cavalry; fill up, provisionally, gaps made in the line of battle; meet and delay bodies of the enemy endeavoring to join in the battle; in defeat, retard the enemy's pursuit; when victorious, pursue the enemy.

## DIVISIONAL CAVALRY.

**972.** One or more regiments of cavalry, called divisional cavalry, are attached to each corps of infantry. The corps commander detaches a squadron, or less, at such times as may be necessary, to report for duty to the commanders of infantry divisions for scouting, reconnoitering, outpost, advance guard, rear guard, and orderly duties.

In battle, divisional cavalry has duties relating to the division or corps to which attached, similar to those prescribed for the cavalry division to an army.

In case of pursuit or retreat, it may be required to join the cavalry divisions.

The divisional cavalry may be detached to operate with the cavalry divisions.

## RAIDS.

**973.** Raids are isolated, independent cavalry operations, conducted with secrecy, by rapid marches, usually avoiding general engagements.

The raiding force should be composed of the best mounted and most self-reliant troops, and should consist of complete organizations; as, regiments, squadrons, etc.

The objects of raids are:—

To harass and weaken the enemy by drawing off in pursuit his cavalry or other troops, or by causing him to guard a great number of points; to threaten, interrupt, and destroy his communications; to destroy his depots and source of supplies.

## ESCORTS.

**974.** Cavalry should not escort persons, mails, etc., to any considerable distance, at a faster rate than twenty-five miles a day. If possible, details for escort duty should be made from one troop at a time.

The commander of the escort, if a commissioned officer regulates the time and distance of the marches and the location of the camps.

The escort of trains, being a service of slow and often interrupted marches, is very injurious to cavalry horses, and is better performed, as a rule, by dismounted men; mounted men are posted as flankers and patrols.

## ESCORTS OF CONVOYS.

**975.** The commander of the escort is responsible for the convoy; he directs the march, keeping as many wagons abreast as practicable; enforces train discipline, plac-

ing for this purpose a small part of the escort with the convoy, and, with the main body, protects the convoy and expedites the march.

The main body furnishes advance guard, rear guard, and flankers; reconnoitering patrols are detached to considerable distances. In case of attack, the escort should, if possible, hold the enemy at a distance, keeping up the march of the convoy; when this is not practicable, the train should be parked and the defense concentrated; if the defense can not be made successful, such part of the convoy as can not escape by flight must be destroyed; the animals must be taken away or shot.

The escort of a convoy of prisoners should be in number ten to fifteen per cent. of that of the prisoners.

## SCREENING AND RECONNOITERING.

**976.** The main body of the force for this purpose must be held concentrated, pushing out contact squadrons and patrols well to the front and flanks.

A division of cavalry performing this duty should cover a front of about ten miles, varying according to circumstances.

## CONTACT SQUADRONS.

**977.** The duties of a contact squadron are: To keep touch with the enemy and gain all possible information of his movements, at the same time keeping his reconnoitering parties and patrols at a distance; with these exceptions, each squadron is kept concentrated, moving with a small advance and rear guard.

Great latitude must be allowed its commander.

No wagons should accompany the squadron, rations and forage being carried on the horses, or procured from the country.

Post-offices, railroad and telegraph stations are carefully examined.

## PATROLS.

**978.** Classed as *officers', reconnoitering, visiting, covering,* and *connecting patrols.*

*Officers' patrols* consist of one or more officers, or an officer and a few men, both men and horses being specially selected.

Their duties are: To obtain information of the enemy's position, strength, and movements; to reconnoiter particular localities; to establish connection with or carry dispatches to a distant force.

Their instructions should be committed to memory; papers containing information of value to the enemy should not be carried.

*Reconnoitering patrols* are small detachments of selected men and horses, generally under charge of a non-commissioned officer.

Their duties are: To gain information of movements of the enemy and character of the country outside the lines, but within supporting distance of the body from which detached.

*Visiting patrols* are small detachments under non-commissioned officers, employed near the outpost line. Their duties are: To ascertain the manner in which outpost duty is performed, carry dispatches between different components of the force engaged in that work, pick up the enemy's scouts, examine particular localities, etc.

*Covering patrols* are troops or squadrons detached from a marching column to examine and guard roads crossing a line of march during the passage of the main body. Their duties are of the nature of a retaining force and combine those prescribed for advance and rear guards.

*Connecting patrols* are detachments of size sufficient to cope with any reconnoitering patrol of the enemy that

they may come in contact with. Their object is to establish connection between different forces, or between detached portions of the same force.

## ADVANCE AND REAR GUARD.

**979.** An *advance guard* is a body of troops thrown out in front of a marching column, to cover its movements, to prevent surprise, and to gain information.

In an advance, it seizes advantageous positions and holds them until the column comes up, or holds in check the advancing enemy until the column can deploy and take up a position to meet him.

In retreat, it prepares the way for the main body, guarding and repairing roads, bridges, etc., sweeping away partisans or guerillas If hostile troops have outmarched the column and are in front of it, the advance guard performs duties of the same nature as in the advance.

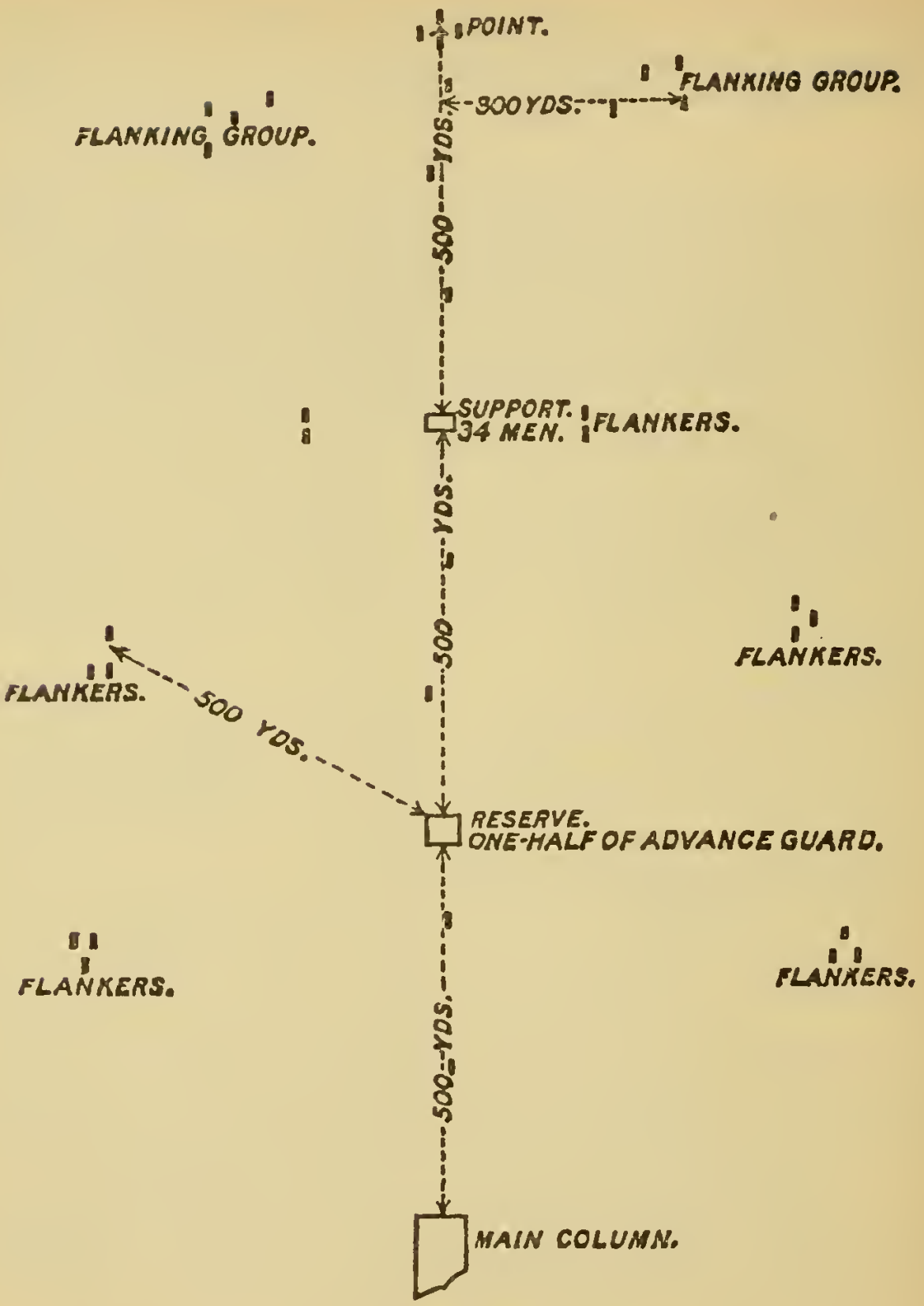
The advance guard is divided into two nearly equal parts, the *vanguard* and the *reserve*. The vanguard is subdivided into the *advance party* and the *support*. The advance party furnishes the *leading* and *flanking* groups The support furnishes its own *flankers*.

A small advance guard, consisting of a troop of cavalry of one hundred men, may be disposed as follows:—

A *point*, or leading group, consisting of three or four men under a corporal; a *flanking group* of three or four men on either side of the main route, at from two hundred to three hundred yards distance, and somewhat retired; two or three men of the advance party at intervals on the main route preserve communication with the support. These groups constitute the *advance party*.

The *support*, with *flankers*, thirty-four men, follows at about five hundred yards in rear of the point. The commander of the vanguard is with the support.

The *reserve*, one-half of the advance guard, follows at




Pl. 152, Par. 979.

about five hundred yards in rear of the support; the reserve may throw out flanking groups at about five hundred yards on either or both flanks, and somewhat in advance and in rear of its position.

The commander of the advance guard is with the reserve.

The main column follows at five hundred yards in rear of the reserve, or fifteen hundred yards from the point.

When necessary, a few men ride between the support and the reserve, and between the reserve and the main body, to preserve communication.

**980.** *Rear guards* are corresponding bodies in rear of the column. In a forward movement, they protect the rear of the column from raiding parties or detachments, arrest stragglers, prevent pillaging, etc.

In a retreat, they cover the column, checking the enemy and delaying him so as to insure the safety of the column.

The example given of the order of march of a small advance guard serves equally well as a type for a rear guard of the same strength, if it be considered as faced to the rear throughout.

The strength of the advance guard in a forward movement varies from one-eighth to one-fourth of the whole force; in a very small force, one-eighth; in a very large force, one-fourth, and generally, one-sixth. The rear guard is generally one-half the strength of the advance guard.

In retreat, the proportions given above for the advance guard would apply to the rear guard, and the advance guard would be half the strength of the rear guard.

It should be borne in mind, however, that these proportions vary according to circumstances, and must depend upon the judgment of the commander.

The foregoing rules must be modified to suit the varying conditions of advance and retreat.

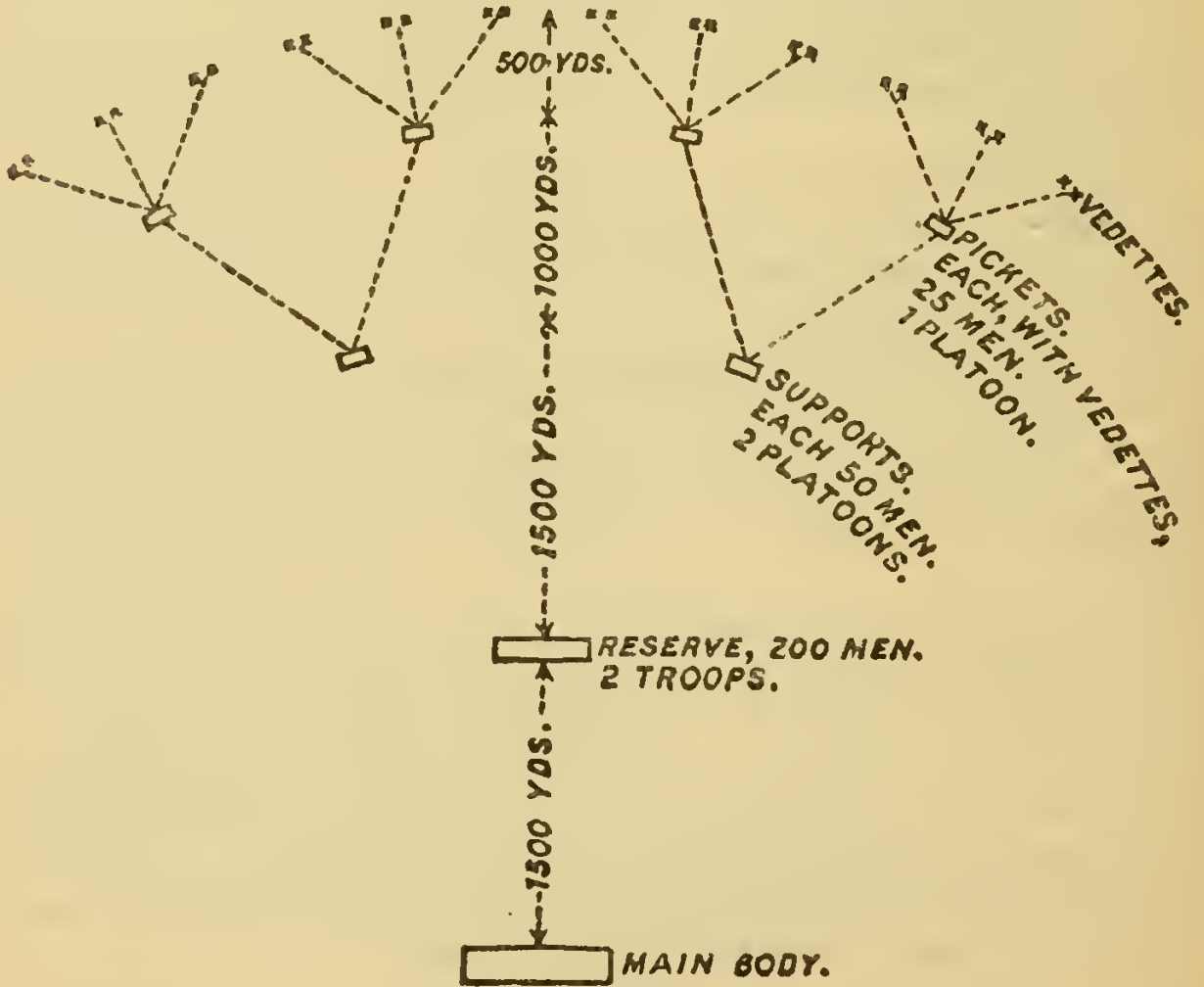
## OUTPOSTS.

**981.** The principal duties of outposts are:—

1. To guard all approaches.
2. To obtain the earliest information of the enemy's movements.
3. To obstruct and delay his advance.

The size of the detachment for outpost duty depends upon the strength of the main command, the proximity of the enemy, the extent of front to be covered, the character of the country, etc.; it should not, as a rule, exceed one-sixth of the whole force.

The outposts should cover the entire front, extend well beyond the flanks and toward the rear. They are generally disposed as follows:—




Pl. 153, Par. 981.

*First.* A line of vedettes or cossack posts.
*Second.* A line of small groups called pickets.
*Third.* A line of larger groups called supports
*Fourth.* The reserve.
The reserve may be omitted.

Posts in the line of vedettes are from four hundred to six hundred yards apart.

The *vedettes* keep themselves concealed as far as possible, and watch the ground in their front, and between them and the posts on their right and left.

A *vedette post* consists of two men placed twenty or thirty yards apart, who should be relieved once in two hours from the pickets. Both men remain mounted while on post; while one man patrols to the right or left, the other remains on the alert at the post.

The *cossack post* consists of a non-commissioned officer and three men, one of whom remains mounted; the others are dismounted, but remain in the immediate vicinity, with their horses saddled and bridled and properly secured. The vedette of the cossack post is relieved by the non-commissioned officer once in two hours or oftener, and the cossack post relieved from the picket once in twelve hours or oftener. The patrolling is performed by one of the relief, under the direction of the non-commissioned officer in charge of the post.

The *picket* is posted about five hundred yards in rear of the center of the line of vedettes for which it furnishes reliefs. When necessary, it sends out patrols to the front and flanks.

The *support* is posted about one thousand yards in rear of the center of the line of pickets, and if there be no reserve, about the same distance in advance of the force it is to cover.

The *reserve* is about fifteen hundred yards in rear of the line of supports, and about the same distance in advance of the main body.

The distances given above must be modified according to circumstances, by the commander of the outposts.

Plate 153 shows an outpost composed of a cavalry squadron of four hundred men, covering a front of six thousand yards.

## MARCHES.

**982.** Habitually the route march will be in column of fours; when the roads are unsuitable for this formation, or the command small, the column of twos is permissible.

When the road is very rough, or tracked, marching may be made more comfortable by permitting the troopers of the leading four or two to increase the interval; the other troopers of corresponding positions in the column following them.

In the case of marching on a single road, it is very important that the rear organizations should not be checked by momentary delays in front. The regulation distance between squadrons, or even troops, may be increased to some definite proportion of the size of the organization, so that each may maintain a steady gait; in very dusty roads this will lessen the discomfort.

To shorten the column, the double column of fours may be used, or regiments or brigades may be marched in parallel columns near each other.

**983.** On starting from camp, the first two miles should be made at an easy walk, at a less rate than four miles an hour. A halt of from ten to fifteen minutes should then be made to allow the men to relieve themselves; after the first hour, there should be a halt of five minutes every hour; at each halt, the horses' feet should be examined, saddles replaced if they have moved, and cinchas tightened when necessary.

As a rule, after the first hour, the march should average a rate of five miles an hour, alternating the walk and trot, and occasionally dismounting and leading for short

distances; the most favorable ground is selected for the trot.

In climbing and descending very steep, rough hills, the command is habitually dismounted.

The walk, except during the first half hour, should be at the rate of four miles, and the trot at not less than six and a half miles an hour. A too slow gait, after the horses are warmed up, is apt to cause unnecessary fatigue and to induce carelessness. Though the men ride *at ease* or *route order,* careless riding must be strenuously guarded against, else sore backs and injured mouths will result.

The last two miles or more should be made at a walk and the horses brought into camp without excitement.

**984.** The average march, when a command is well broken to work, is about twenty-five miles per day; when starting on long distance marches, the rate for the first few days should be less than twenty miles per day rather than greater; the rate should then be gradually increased; these rules may be modified by various conditions: as, emergency, condition of animals, character of roads, weather, etc.

When the day's march is to be unusually prolonged, a halt of about one hour should be made when about two-thirds of the distance has been covered, near water, if possible.

Should the march be continued for a long period, at least one day in seven should be devoted to rest. It is also important that the horses and equipments be thoroughly inspected at least once a week.

**985.** The order of brigades in the division, regiments in the brigade, squadrons in the regiment, and troops in the squadron should be changed each day; the organization at the head of a unit one day takes the rear the next day, and so on.

It is extremely fatiguing for cavalry and horse artillery to march at the gait infantry must necessarily main-

tain; when parallel roads are available the mounted troops should take separate roads from the foot troops.

With large commands, the roads, if possible, are left to the artillery and trains. The order of march should state whether the troops or trains have the right of way. The position of the commanding officer should be designated each day, as at the head of a certain brigade, etc.

The led horses of officers and others follow their respective troops, squadrons, or regiments, according to the exigencies.

**986.** No man will be permitted to leave his troop without permission of the captain; as a rule, a non-commissioned officer will be left with a trooper who is obliged to fall out; if he needs medical attendance, the captain gives him a pass to the surgeon, showing his name, troop, and regiment; if he is unable to return to the troop, the surgeon indorses the pass stating that he is permitted to fall out on account of sickness; if the man is admitted to the ambulance, his horse and equipments are taken to the troop.

The provost guard of the brigade marches in rear of the brigade.

It is the duty of all officers and non-commissioned officers to suppress straggling. Men who fall out of ranks are examined by the provost guards, and if absent without authority, they are arrested and sent to their regiments.

The discipline and even the efficiency of a command is indicated to a great extent by the manner in which its ordinary marches are conducted.

**987.** In ordinary cases cavalry should not leave camp at a very early hour. If grazing is depended upon, this is especially desirable, for horses as a rule eat more freely during the early hours of the day.

Ample time should be left, after a seasonable reveille, for the men to breakfast, horses to be fed, and the wagons or mules packed.

Every duty of the camp on the march should be performed by trumpet calls sounded under the direction of the commanding officer.

*Reveille* and *stables* should take place at an hour designated in advance.

The signals for striking camp and putting the command on the road, such as *the general, boots and saddles,* etc., should be ordered by the commanding officer, to whom the orderly trumpeter reports, mounted, immediately after breakfast. The state of preparation will advance more rapidly at some times than others, owing to weather, etc., and no signal should be sounded until the duties pertaining to the previous signal are completed. If *the general* is sounded before breakfast is over, or *boots and saddles* before the camp equipage is packed, confusion, ill temper, and a badly conducted preparation ensue, which will affect the tone of the command for the whole day.

As soon as *the general* sounds, one or more troop officers should repair to their troop grounds and superintend the details of preparation.

**988.** Cavalry, in exigencies, can march for from three to five days at the rate of fifty miles in twenty-four hours. A single march of not to exceed one hundred miles can be accomplished in twenty-four to thirty hours. The manner of marching in making forced marches must depend on the total distance to be made. If the total distance is not more than one hundred miles, the usual halts at the end of each of the first four or five hours should be made, and, in addition, long halts of two hours each should be made at the end of the first and second thirds of the march, during which the horses should be unsaddled and permitted to roll and feed or lie down.

If the distance to be accomplished is more than one hundred and fifty miles, the forced march should commence at the rate of not to exceed fifty miles for each day, and beyond two hundred miles, the marches should be reduced to forty and even thirty miles per day.

Before attempting to execute marches of this description, horses must be brought into a proper condition, as only under the most favorable circumstances can such results be accomplished without injury.

**989.** Many cavalry officers are now disposed to favor the hunting seat at the trot, as a relief from the close seat, and a desirable change to men and horses; with proper instruction, this practice may occasionally be found advantageous in long marches.

## CAMPING.

**990.** The squadron being in line, with the usual intervals, to encamp, the troops are dismounted, and, without forming rank, the men unsaddle and place their arms and equipments in line, ten yards in front of the horses; the blankets are placed over the equipments, moist side folded in.

The picket line of each troop is stretched between posts about six feet high, or is stretched on the ground, the ends being firmly secured; the horses are tied to the picket line by the halter, at intervals of about one yard.

The tents of the men are pitched in line, about fifteen yards in rear of the picket line, the intervals between troops being left free; the tent of the first sergeant is on the right; the arms and equipments are kept in the tents of the men. The kitchen of each troop is near the left, in front of the line of tents; the sinks in front of the line of kitchens.

The tents of the officers of each troop are about thirty yards in rear of the line of tents, the captain on the right; the officers' kitchens are in rear of their tents.

The tent of the commanding officer is in rear of the center of the line of troop officers; if there be other field officers they are on his right; the adjutant is on the left of the commanding officer; the other staff officers are on the left of the adjutant; the kitchens of the field and staff

are in rear of their tents; the tents of the non-commissioned staff are in rear of the staff.

The sinks of the officers are in rear of the camp.

The positions of the band, guard tent, canteen, officers' horses, and baggage and forage wagons are prescribed by the commanding officer.

**991.** The squadron may also encamp in column of troops.

The tents of the men are in line, in rear of their horses, about half way between them and the horses of the troop next in rear.

The tents of the officers are in line, parallel to and thirty yards from the flank of the column toward which the troops are dressed; the tents of the first sergeants are on the flank next the officers' tents.

The tents of the field, staff and non-commissioned staff, are arranged as before prescribed, in rear of and parallel to the line of troop officers' tents.

The kitchens of the men are in line, on the flank opposite the officers, the sinks outside of the line of kitchens.

The other arrangements are the same as when in line.

**992.** The camp of a regiment is arranged on the same principles as the camp of a squadron. The regiment camps by squadron; the tents of the colonel, lieutenant-colonel, and non-commissioned staff are in line in rear of the tents of the squadron commanders, near the center of the regiment.

The regimental encampment may be in the form of a parallelogram. The three squadrons encamp, each in line, on one of the three sides; the regimental headquarters and headquarters of the camp guard form the fourth side. The picket lines are stretched inside the camp.

**993.** The location of a camp should be susceptible of good drainage, and be near fuel, water, and the road. When the horses are subsisted by grazing, the camp must be near grass.

When time permits, the rows of tents are ditched, and a shallow ditch made around each tent.

When straw, boughs, or leaves are at hand, the men are required to raise their beds above the ground; attention to this rule, to cleanliness, and to the proper cooking of food will greatly lessen the number and frequency of camp diseases.

On arriving in camp, sinks should be dug at once, unless the march is to be resumed on the following morning. The sinks are concealed by bushes or tents, when practicable, and must be covered daily with fresh earth.

In a hostile country, the camp should not as a rule be within rifle shot of cover for the enemy. Orders are given as to the place of assembly and other dispositions to be made in case of a night alarm; in each troop, men previously designated go at once to the horses and take charge of them.

**994.** The horses are herded, if the grass be not abundant, but very rarely at night. When herded, great caution must be exercised if the horses are not accustomed to service and have not experienced fatigue and hunger. There is less risk of their escaping or being driven off when side-lined, if a few animals, who are the master spirits or the most easily frightened, are lariated.

To prevent stampeding in camp, it will in most cases be sufficient for the men to go quietly among the horses at the first sign of fright and speak to them. If horses are stampeded, men should mount the fastest animals within reach, place themselves in front of the herd, and conduct them back to camp. With old horses, the sounding of *stable call* may prevent or stop a stampede.

Horses should generally graze an hour or two in the morning, particularly if the night grazing has not been good; in such cases, they should not be disturbed until the last moment.

Should the horses have to be protected from an enemy, they are taken out to graze under charge of an officer, as

soon as possible after encamping. The horses are taken as far as is safe, so as to keep the nearer grass for night lariating, but must never be taken beyond the line of vedettes. In this case it is occasionally practicable to arrange the camp in a parallelogram, using the wagons, trains, etc., and if possible taking advantage of some natural obstacles, so as to inclose a space for night grazing.

# STABLE DUTY.

**995.** The captain is responsible for the proper performance of stable duty in his troop.

A non-commissioned officer, designated *stable sergeant* or *corporal,* is detailed in each troop to take immediate general charge of the forage and stable. He is held responsible for the proper policing and sanitary condition of the stable, picket line, and ground pertaining to them. Two or more men, called *stable police,* are detailed for the the purpose of policing, removing manure, feeding, etc., under the direction of the stable sergeant.

Usually horses are groomed twice daily, at morning and at evening stables, under the supervision of the first sergeant and captain, or other commissioned officer. Under special circumstances, it may be advisable to groom only once a day.

The stable police, after grooming their own horses at morning stables, clean out the stalls and police the stable, under the direction of the stable sergeant. The bedding is taken up, that which is much soiled being separated for the manure heap, and the remainder put on the litter racks or spread upon the ground to dry.

At or before evening stables, the stable is policed as in the morning; the bedding is laid down and fresh straw spread on top of it; the bed must be soft and even, with the thickest part toward the manger; where horses eat their bedding, the old litter should be placed on top of the new straw.

### *Grooming.*

**996.** The grooming is always at the picket line, except in stormy weather; the roll having been called, the

men are marched, habitually in column of fours, to the horses or stables, and get to work as soon as the first sergeant commands: COMMENCE GROOMING.

Each trooper grooms his own horse. Supernumerary horses are groomed under the direction of the first sergeant.

At evening stables, each man examines and cleans his horse's feet, and, if shod, sees that the shoes are in good order. Horses requiring shoeing are reported to the non-commissioned officer in charge of the squad, who notifies the stable sergeant.

Each horse should be groomed not less than twenty minutes, and as much longer as may be necessary.

When the horses are sufficiently groomed, the first sergeant reports to the captain, or officer in charge, who directs him to dismiss the troop. The first sergeant then commands: CEASE GROOMING; LEAD IN. The horses are led into their stalls and properly secured, under the supervision of the first sergeant, who then forms the troop, marches it to the troop quarters, and dismisses it.

Should the captain wish to inspect the horses before they are led in, he notifies the first sergeant, who commands: CEASE GROOMING; STAND TO HEEL. The captain, accompanied by the first sergeant, inspects the horses, and if he finds them properly groomed, directs the first sergeant to dismiss the troop. If any horses are not properly groomed they will be left at the picket line and groomed under the supervision of a non-commissioned officer detailed for that purpose.

### *To Groom.*

**997.** Take the currycomb in the right hand, fingers over back of comb; begin on the near side at the upper part of the neck, thence proceed to the chest, arms, shoulders, back, belly, flank, loins, and croup in the

order named. Then go to the off side, taking the comb in the left hand, and proceed as before.

The currycomb is applied gently and is used only to loosen the scurf and matted hair; it is not used on the legs from the knees or hocks downward, except to carefully loosen dried mud.

Next, take the brush in the left hand and change the currycomb to right; begin at the head and then the neck on the near side, and proceed in the same order as in currying, brushing also the parts not touched by the comb: on the off side, take the brush in the right hand, the currycomb in the left. The principal working of the brush should follow the direction of the hair, but in places difficult to clean, it may be necessary to brush against it, finishing by leaving the hair smooth. After every few strokes clean the brush from dust with the currycomb.

Having finished with the brush, rub or dust off the horse with the grooming cloth, wipe out the eyes, ears, and nostrils, and clean the dock. The skin under the flank and between the hind quarters must be soft, clean, and free from dust.

Currycombs, cards, or common combs must never be applied to the mane or tail; the brush, fingers, and cloth are freely used on both.

The wisp is used when the horse comes in wet from exercise, rubbing against the hair until dry, from his hind quarters up to his head. If very wet, very hot, or very cold, blanket the horse, groom and hand-rub the legs; then remove the blanket and groom the body.

### *Feeding.*

**998.** In garrison, it is recommended that grain be fed by the stable sergeant, assisted by one or two members of the stable guard or police at first call for *reveille,* The grain, in a box on wheels, is rolled opposite the stalls,

whence it is transferred to the feeding boxes by allowance measures. Grain is fed again at evening stables as in the morning, but not until after the hay has been distributed and the stable swept out and the dust thoroughly settled.

In camp, or on the march, grain is fed at morning and evening stables. The men are marched to the forage wagons or other grain depository, where the non-commissioned officer in charge, with an allowance measure, issues to each in turn.

The first sergeant then marches them back to the horses and commands: FEED. The men are to remain near their horses until they have done eating. Each man may be required to feed and groom as soon as he has received his grain.

In garrison, hay is usually fed in the evening, but when horses are kept in the stables during the entire day a portion is fed after morning stables. The dust must be well shaken out of the hay before it is put in the mangers.

In camp, hay is fed at the picket line morning, noon, and evening; on the march, or when the horses are grazed during the day, in the evening only.

The use of bran once or twice a week is important for stabled horses. In spring or early summer, they should be grazed. Two and a half to three ounces of salt should be given every week.

When forage can not be obtained, grazing should be allowed at every spare moment, both in camp and at halts on the march.

The daily allowance of oats, barley, or corn is twelve pounds to each horse; that of hay, fourteen pounds; the allowance of straw for bedding is one hundred pounds a month to each animal.

**999.** Good oats weigh about forty pounds to the bushel; barley, about forty-eight pounds: corn, about fifty-six pounds. Pressed hay weighs about eleven pounds per cubic foot.

The standard bushel in the United States contains 2150.4 cubic inches. A cubic yard contains 21.69 bushels. A box 16×16.8×8 inches holds one bushel; a box 12×11.2×8 inches holds half a bushel; a box 8×8.4×8 inches holds one peck; a box 8×8×4.2 inches holds one half peck, or four quarts.

### *Watering.*

**1000.** Horses must be watered quietly and without confusion; the manner in which this duty is performed is often a good test of the discipline of a mounted command.

Horses are to be led or ridden to and from water at a walk. At the drinking place, no horse should be hurried or have his head jerked up from the water.

In the field or on the march, the watering is from the most convenient running water; in garrison, it is usually from troughs, which should be cleaned each day. In warm weather, water drawn from a cold well or spring should stand long enough for the chill to pass off.

The horses are watered under the immediate direction of the first sergeant, but, if they are liable to meet those of other commands at the watering place, a commissioned officer should supervise this duty.

During the hot months, horses are watered at morning stables, at about 11 o'clock a. m., and at afternoon stables. At other times, two waterings are enough, at morning and at evening stables. In very cold weather, once a day, about noon, is sufficient. A horse will rarely drink freely very early in the morning.

If a mounted command have to march a long distance without water, so that it will be necessary to encamp en route, the animals are fed, but denied water until just before starting, when they are permitted to drink freely. The command marches in the afternoon, and does not encamp until it has accomplished at least half of the distance, and moves early the next morning to reach water.

Watering the horses on the march depends in a great measure upon the facilities to be had. If nothing is known as to the country over which the day's march is to be made, water call should be sounded shortly before leaving camp and every horse given an opportunity to drink. As many animals, however, will not drink at an early hour or until after exercising, the horses should be watered again at the first opportunity. On severe marches, frequent watering is of great benefit.

The daily allowance of water for a horse at rest is about six gallons; when at work, from eight to twelve gallons; for a man, one gallon for all purposes. One gallon of fresh water weighs eight and one-third pounds, approximately one pint to one pound.

# MANUAL OF GUIDON.

### *Position of Carry Guidon (dismounted).*

**1001.** The lance of the guidon is held vertically in the right hand, thumb in front of the lance, forefinger along the side, ferrule about six inches from the ground. It is thus carried in marching.

When leading the horse, the lance is held in a corresponding position in the left hand.

### *Position of Order Guidon.*

The ferrule of the lance rests on the ground, one inch to the right of the right toe; the right hand grasps the lance in the same manner as when at a carry.

Parade rest is executed as with the carbine, except that the forearms are nearly horizontal.

At the command *attention,* resume the order.

The carry, order, and parade rest are executed with the troop.

At stand to horse, the ferrule of the lance rests on the ground one inch to the left of the left toe, lance vertical, left hand at the height of the neck, elbow and forearm closed against the lance.

At the command *prepare to mount,* raise the lance slightly from the ground while stepping back; upon halting, place the ferrule on the ground about one foot in front of the left foot of the horse.

After mounting, grasp the lance with the right hand under the left, which lets go of it without quitting the reins; raise the lance over the horse's neck under the reins, lower and place the furrule in the stirrup socket; the right hand then grasps the lance, forearm nearly horizontal, the arm through the sling, lance vertical. *This is the position of carry guidon, mounted.*

The guidon executes the salute as prescribed for the standard.

# THE STANDARD.

**1002.** The manual of the standard is as prescribed for the guidon (see Par. 1001), except that at carry standard, dismounted, the ferrule of the lance is supported at the right hip.

### *Standard Salute.*

Being mounted: Lower the lance to the front by straightening the right arm to its full extent.

Dismounted: Slip the right hand up the lance as high as the eye, then lower the lance to the front by straightening the right arm to its full extent.

The standard salutes in the ceremony *escort of the standard,* and when saluting an officer entitled to the honor, as prescribed in Pars. 422 to 427, A. R., 1889, but in no other case.

If marching, the salute is executed when at six yards from the officer entitled to the salute; the carry is resumed when it has passed six yards beyond him.

At a halt, the salute is executed at the command *present saber* (or *arms*); the carry is resumed at the command *carry saber* (or *arms*).

### *The Guard of the Standard.*

**1003.** The guard of the standard is composed of four non-commissioned officers, selected by the colonel.

The standard is carried by a sergeant who is No. 2 of the guard.

The standard is with the squadron designated by the colonel, usually the second, or the first if there be but two squadrons.

The standard, kept at the quarters or office of the

colonel, is escorted by the guard to the standard troop on its parade ground; it is returned in the same manner.

The guard of the standard, at the command of the standard bearer, presents saber on receiving and on parting with the standard; in the latter case the guard returns to the carry at the command of the senior member of the guard.

# THE BAND.

**1004.** The band is generally formed in column of fours. It may be formed in two or more ranks.

Dismounted, the band is formed in two or more ranks, with sufficient intervals between the men and distances between the ranks to permit a free use of the instruments.

**1005.** In line, the band is posted with the left of its front rank sixteen yards to the right of the rank. In line of columns, the left of its front rank is sixteen yards to the right of the leading subdivision of the right column; in column, it marches with its rear rank sixteen yards in front of the officers of the first subdivision, or its front rank sixteen yards in rear of the rear subdivision, according as the command is facing.

Dismounted, the band takes post as when mounted.

**1006.** The trumpeters, when united, form with and in rear of the band; when the band is not present, the posts, movements, and duties of the trumpeters are the same as prescribed for the band.

**1007.** When the command with which the band is posted wheels about by fours, the band executes the countermarch.

Dismounted, when right, left, or about face is executed, the band faces in the same manner; when marching, the different ranks dress to the right.

The signals for the movements of the band will correspond to the saber signals as far as practicable.

The chief trumpeter, when not with the colonel, takes post two yards in front of the center of the front rank of the band and gives the signals for its movements. In the absence of the chief trumpeter, his post may be filled by detail.

When the signals for movements of the band are not

used by the chief trumpeter, the band is marched as explained for the squad, the command *band* being substituted for *squad.*

*To Inspect the Band.*

**1008.** Being at a halt: 1. *Open ranks,* 2. MARCH, 3. FRONT.

The front rank dresses to the right: the other ranks move backward, each taking the distance of three yards (dismounted, two yards) from the rank preceding, halts, and dresses to the right.

1. *Inspection,* 2. INSTRUMENTS.

Each musician, as the inspector approaches him, raises his instrument in front of his body, reverses it so as to show both sides, and then returns it to its former position.

1. *Close Ranks,* 2. MARCH.

The front rank stands fast, the other ranks move up and close to the proper distance.

A trumpeter, when inspected, executes with his trumpet what is prescribed for a band musician.

**1009.** In rendering honors, whenever the standard salutes, the trumpeters sound the *march, flourishes* or *to the standard,* at a signal by the chief trumpter.

**1010.** The *countermarch* is signaled by *rear point,* and is executed by those in the leading rank or four, to the right of the chief trumpeter, turning individually to the right about, and those to the left of him turning individually to the left about, each followed by those covering him in the column; the chief trumpeter passes through the center. Dismounted, the chief trumpeter faces to the rear and signals the *forward, march.*

To *increase intervals,* wave the saber several times to the right and left in front of the body.

To *close intervals,* extend the arm vertically and rapidly circle the saber around the hand.

The intervals are increased before executing the countermarch and closed after the countermarch.

## ABOUT FACE FOR OFFICERS.

**1011.** At the command *about,* carry the toe of the right foot about eight inches to the rear and three inches to the left of the left heel without changing the position of the left foot.

At the command *face,* turn upon the left heel and right toe, face to the rear, and replace the right heel by the side of the left.

Enlisted men out of ranks may use the about face prescribed for officers.

## SALUTE WITH THE HAND.

**1012.** The salute for officers is the same as in Par. 36; the left hand is used only when the right is engaged.

Officers and men, when saluting, look toward the person saluted.

Enlisted men salute with the hand farthest from the officer, giving the salute six yards before passing the officer, and holding the hand at the visor until the salute is acknowledged or the officer passed.

With the carbine, the first motion of the salute is made six yards before passing the officer, holding the hand at the shoulder until the salute is acknowledged or the officer passed.

Courtesy among military men is indispensable to discipline; respect to superiors will not be confined to obedience on duty, but will be extended on all occasions.

## HONORS TO BE PAID BY TROOPS.

**1013.** Honors, salutes, etc., to be paid by troops are prescribed in Pars. 11, 422 to 441, inclusive, and 516 to 527, inclusive, A. R., 1889.

# CEREMONIES.

## GENERAL RULES.

**1014.** On occasions of ceremony, except funeral escort, troops are arranged from right to left in line, and from head to rear in column, in the following order: First, infantry; second, light artillery; third, cavalry. Artillery serving as infantry is posted as infantry; dismounted cavalry and marines are on the left of the infantry; engineer troops are on the right of the command to which they are attached. When cavalry and light artillery are posted together, the artillery is posted on the left. In the same arm, regulars, volunteers, and militia are posted in line from right to left, or in column from head to rear, in the order named. On all other occasions, troops of all classes are posted at the discretion of the general or senior commander.

**1015.** When forming for ceremonies, the troops of the squadron are posted according to the rank of the troop commanders present, as prescribed in the School of the Squadron (Par. 543); the squadrons of the regiment, the regiments of the brigade, the brigades of the division, and the divisions of the corps are posted from right to left in line or from the head to rear in column, in the order of rank of their respective commanders present, the senior on the right or at the head. A troop whose captain commands the squadron retains its place according to his rank, unless otherwise directed; the same rule applies to the higher units.

**1016.** Non-commissioned officers commanding troops or platoons have the same armament as the men of their troops; they do not execute the exercises in the manual. In rendering honors, they execute the *present* and *carry*. Dismounted, they execute only the *order* and *parade rest;*

in rendering honors, the *present* and *carry;* when marching, the *right shoulder* and *carry.*

**1017.** Cavalry armed with carbine and pistol, or the carbine only, in rendering honors mounted, execute *advance carbine* at the command *present arms.*

## GENERAL RULES FOR REVIEWS.

**1018.** The adjutant or adjutant general posts men or otherwise marks the points where the column changes direction, in such manner that the right flank in passing shall be about ten yards from the reviewing officer.

**1019.** The post of the reviewing officer, usually opposite the center of the line, is marked by a flag.

The reviewing officer should be at the flag before the head of the column reaches that point; before that time, he may take any position to observe the movements of the troops.

The reviewing officer, his staff, and others accompanying him, salute the standard by uncovering, whether the standard salutes or not; the reviewing officer alone returns the salutes of commanders of squadrons, batteries, and battalions, and all higher units.

**1020.** The staff of the reviewing officer is in single rank, six yards in rear of him, in the following order from right to left: Chief of staff, adjutant-general, aids, then the other members of the staff in the order of rank, the senior on the right; his flag and orderlies place themselves three yards in rear of the staff, the flag on the right.

**1021.** Officers of the same or higher grade, and distinguished personages invited to accompany the reviewing officer, place themselves on his left; their staffs and orderlies place themselves on the left of the staff and orderlies of the reviewing officer; all others who accompany the reviewing officer place themselves on the left of his staff, their orderlies in rear.

**1022.** While riding around the troops, the reviewing officer may direct his staff, flag, and orderlies to remain at the post of the reviewing officer, or that only his personal staff and flag shall accompany him.

The staff officers, in passing around the troops, or in review, ride in one or more ranks, according to the number.

**1023.** Commanders of brigades and divisions take their places in the column in time to allow the commanders in front of them to take their places when at one hundred yards from the reviewing officer.

**1024.** The staffs, flags, and orderlies of brigade, division, and corps commanders place themselves in the order prescribed for the staff, flag, and orderlies of the reviewing officer.

**1025.** When the commander of a corps, division, brigade, regiment, or squadron turns out of the column to place himself near the reviewing officer, his place is on the right of the commanders already there; his staff will arrange themselves in single rank on the right of the staff already there; his flag and orderlies in rear of his staff. Each commander, when his rear troop has passed, salutes the reviewing officer, and with his staff and orderlies rejoins his command.

**1026.** Commanders of brigades, divisions, and corps, and their staff officers, draw saber when they take their places in column before passing in review; they return saber immediately after placing themselves on the right of the reviewing officer.

**1027.** The brigade commander, while the reviewing officer is not in front or in rear of his brigade, may cause it to stand *at ease, rest,* or to *dismount* and *rest,* and resume *attention* and *mount,* so as not to interfere with the ceremony.

**1028.** The colonels repeat the commands of the brigade commander.

Whenever the colonel faces the line to give commands,

the majors face at the same time; they resume their front after seeing the movement executed. All such commands are executed when they have been repeated by the majors. When the command repeated is *present saber* (or *arms*), the colonel's staff salute at the command of the colonel; the colonel and majors salute after resuming their front. The same rules apply to the colonels and majors and to the general's and colonel's staffs, when the brigade commander gives commands.

When the general or colonel faces the line to give commands, the staff and orderlies do not change position.

**1029.** In line, at the command *prepare for review, march,* the standard bearer takes post in front of his position, on the line of troop officers; in line of columns, he takes post opposite the left of the leading subdivision, on the line of the troop officers of that subdivision; at the command *posts,* he resumes his place in the rank.

**1030.** When the rank of the reviewing officer entitles him to the honor, each standard salutes at the command *present arms,* given or repeated by the major of the battalion with which it is posted, and again in passing in review, when six yards from the reviewing officer; the standard is raised when it has passed six yards beyond the reviewing officer.

**1031.** The band of each regiment plays while the reviewing officer is passing in front or in rear of the regiment.

Each band, after passing the reviewing officer, turns out of the column and takes post in front of the reviewing officer, continues to play until its regiment has passed, then ceases playing and follows in rear of its regiment; the band of the next following regiment then commences.

While marching in review, but one band in each brigade plays at a time, and but one band at a time within one hundred yards of the reviewing officer.

The trumpeters of each regiment are consolidated in rear of the band.

**1032.** When the standard salutes, in formations for review, the *march,* or *flourishes* are sounded by all the trumpeters with the bands; in passing in review, by the trumpeters with the band that is halted in front of the reviewing officer.

**1033.** The formation for review may be modified to suit the ground, and the *present* in line and the ride around the line by the reviewing officer may be dispensed with; the troops march in review with the guide either right or left, according as the post of the reviewing officer is on the right or left of the column; the officers and non-commissioned officers who have designated places on a flank of the column when the guide is right are on the opposite flank when the guide is left; in the latter case, commanders and their staffs, turning out of the column, take post as prescribed, but to the left of the reviewing officer.

**1034.** Troops pass in review at a walk, trot, or gallop. No salutes are made when passing at the trot or gallop.

**1035.** In reviews of brigades, divisions, and corps, each squadron, after its rear has passed the reviewing officer fifty yards, takes an increased gait for one hundred yards, in order not to interfere with the march of the column in rear.

**1036.** The troops having passed the reviewing officer, return to their camps by the most practicable route, being careful not to delay the march of the troops in rear of them.

**1037.** When it is necessary that an organization should be reviewed before an inspector junior in rank to the commanding officer, the commanding officer will receive the review and will be accompanied by the inspector.

## SQUADRON REVIEW.

**1038.** The squadron being in line, the staff, except the adjutant, in the order of rank, the senior on the right, take post with one yard interval, in line with the chiefs of platoons, four yards to the right of the rank; the non-commissioned staff and regimental non-commissioned officers, except the sergeant major, take post in a similar manner on a line with and six yards to the left of the rank.

The reviewing officer takes his post.

The major in front of and facing the center commands: 1. *Prepare for review,* 2. MARCH, 3. FRONT.

At the command *march,* the staff, chiefs of platoons, and standard bearer move up on the line of captains; the guidons take post on the right of the rank of their respective troops; the sergeant major takes post on the right of the non-commissioned staff; the major's trumpeter joins the trumpeters; the line of officers, the rank, and the line of file-closers dress to the right; the major rides at a trot or gallop to the right of the squadron and verifies the alignment of the officers and rank; the adjutant verifies the alignment of the file-closers.

At the command *front,* the adjutant takes post on the right of the staff; the major takes post facing to the front, twenty yards in front of the center of the squadron. The reviewing officer moves a few paces toward the major and halts, when the major turns about and commands: 1. *Draw,* 2. SABER, 3. *Present,* 4. SABER.

The officers and men present saber and the guidons salute; should the rank of the reviewing officer entitle him to the honor, the standard salutes and the trumpeters sound the march or flourishes (Pars. 422 to 427, A. R., 1889); the major turns about and salutes.

The reviewing officer returns the salute, after which

the major turns about and commands: 1. *Carry*, 2. SABER, turns again to the front, and returns saber.

The reviewing officer now starts for the right of the line; the major joins him, salutes, and, taking post on his right, accompanies him around the squadron. The reviewing officer proceeds to the right of the band, passes in front of the troop officers to the left of the line and returns to the right, passing in rear of the file-closers.

The band plays while the reviewing officer is going around the squadron, ceasing when he leaves the right to return to his post. On leaving the right of the line, the major takes post on the left of the reviewing officer, accompanies him a few yards, salutes, moves directly to his post in front of and facing the squadron, draws saber, and commands: 1. *Attention*, 2. POSTS.

The chiefs of platoons and standard bearer turn left about and take their posts. The staff and non-commissioned staff stand fast. The major then commands; 1. *Troops* (or *Platoons*) *right*, 2. MARCH.

The staff place themselves on a line, with intervals of one yard, fifteen yards in front of the center of the leading subdivision, the adjutant on the right, the others in the order of rank from right to left.

The non-commissioned staff and regimental non-commissioned officers place themselves on a line equal to the front of the rear subdivision, twelve yards in rear of the rear subdivision, the sergeant major on the right. the others in the order of rank from right to left.

The band takes post thirty yards in front of the leading subdivision.

**1039.** The column being formed, the major commands: 1. *Pass in review*, 2. *Forward*, 3. *Guide right*, 4. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the column moves off, the band playing; the column changes direction, without command from the major, at the marked points; the major takes post three yards in front of the staff immediately after the second change of direction; the band having passed the

reviewing officer, turns to the left out of the column, takes post in front of and facing the reviewing officer, and remains there until the rear troop has passed.

The major and staff salute together when the major is at six yards from the reviewing officer, and return to the carry together when the major has marched six yards beyond him; the other officers, the non-commissioned staff officers, the regimental non-commissioned officers, non-commissioned officers in command of subdivisions, and the guidons salute and return to carry at the points prescribed for the major; in saluting, they turn the head and look toward the reviewing officer. Staff and non-commissioned staff officers without sabers or swords salute with the right hand. If the reviewing officer be entitled to the honor, the standard salutes when at six yards from him and is raised when at six yards beyond him; as the standard salutes, the trumpeters sound the march or flourishes, the band continuing to play.

Non-commissioned staff officers, regimental non-commissioned officers, and non-commissioned officers in command of subdivisions salute as prescribed in the School of the Soldier (Par. 187).

The reviewing officer returns only the salute of the major and standard; he salutes the standard whether entitled to a salute from it or not (Par. 1019).

**1040.** The major, having saluted. takes post on the right of the reviewing officer, remains there till the rear of the squadron has passed, and then salutes and rejoins the squadron. His staff place themselves in rear of the major, on the right of the staff of the reviewing officer; they accompany the major when he rejoins the squadron.

The band ceases to play when the column has completed its first change of direction after passing the reviewing officer.

**1041.** When the squadron arrives near its original position in column, the major commands: 1. *Trot* (or *Gallop*), 2. MARCH.

The squadron passes in review as before, except that there is no saluting, the band playing.

The review terminates when the rear troop has passed the reviewing officer; the band then ceases to play, and, unless otherwise directed by the major, returns to the position it occupied before marching in review, or is dismissed; the major and his staff rejoin the squadron.

The squadron then executes such movements as the reviewing officer may have directed or is marched to its parade ground and dismissed.

**1042.** The march in review at the trot (or gallop) may, in the discretion of the reviewing officer, be omitted; the review then terminates as before. Or, the reviewing officer may require the squadron to march in review a third time at the gallop; the review then terminates as before.

## REGIMENTAL REVIEW.

**1043.** The regiment is formed in line, in line of platoon columns. or in line of masses.

### *In Line.*

**1044.** The colonel takes post facing to the front; the adjutant, during review, is on the right of the staff; the regimental non-commissioned staff, regimental non-commissioned officers and orderlies are three yards in rear of the staff, the chief trumpeter on the right, the sergeant major on his left. Non-commissioned staff officers, other than regimental, are eight yards from the left of the left squadron.

**1045.** When the reviewing officer approaches his post, the colonel faces the regiment and commands: 1. *Prepare for review,* 2. MARCH.

Executed in each squadron as prescribed for the squadron review; the lieutenant colonel takes post twenty yards in front of the right flank. The majors having taken their posts, the colonel faces to the front.

The reviewing officer, accompanied by his staff, then approaches the colonel and halts at about thirty yards in front of him.

The colonel then faces the regiment and commands: 1. *Draw,* 2. SABER, 3. *Present,* 4. SABER.

The colonel and majors face to the front and salute. The staff salute and return to the carry at the command of the colonel.

The reviewing officer having returned the salute, the colonel faces the regiment and commands: 1. *Carry,* 2. SABER, and faces to the front.

The colonel and his staff, non-commissioned staff, etc., then return saber; the colonel joins the reviewing officer, salutes and takes post on his right; the colonel's

staff take post on the right of the staff of the reviewing officer, unless the reviewing officer advances alone, in which case the colonel alone joins and accompanies him, the staffs remaining at their posts.

The reviewing officer then goes to the right of the line, passes in rear of the line of majors to the left, and returns in rear of the file-closers to the right, whence he proceeds to his post.

The band plays while the reviewing officer is passing around the regiment.

When the reviewing officer leaves the right of the line, after passing around the regiment, the colonel salutes, returns by the shortest line to his post facing the regiment, and draws saber; the colonel's staff take post at the same time in rear of the colonel and draw saber.

The colonel then commands: 1. *Attention,* 2. POSTS, 3. *Troops* (or *Platoons*) *right,* 4. MARCH.

The staff and non-commissioned staff of each squadron take post as prescribed in the squadron review; the column having been formed, each major takes post three yards in front of his staff; the lieutenant colonel is in line with the major of the leading squadron, six yards to the right of the column; the band is thirty yards in front of the leading subdivision; the non-commissioned staff, other than regimental, twelve yards in rear of the rear subdivision, the sergeant major of the rear squadron on their right.

The colonel then commands: 1. *Pass in review,* 2. *Forward,* 3. *Guide right,* 4. MARCH.

The column passes in review according to the principles prescribed in the squadron review. When the head of the column has made its second change of direction, the colonel takes post twenty-four yards in front of the band, his staff three yards in rear of him, the non-commissioned staff, etc., the sergeant major on the right, three yards in rear of the staff.

The colonel, having saluted, takes post on the right of the reviewing officer.

The lieutenant colonel and majors do not turn out of the column after passing the reviewing officer.

The colonel rejoins and concludes the review as prescribed for the squadron, after which the squadrons, unless otherwise directed, are marched to their parade grounds and dismissed.

### *In Line of Platoon Columns.*

**1046.** With the following modifications, the rules for the review of the regiment in line apply.

When the colonel commands: 1. *Prepare for review,* 2. **MARCH,** each guidon takes post on the right of the first platoon of his troop; each captain six yards in front of his guidon; the chief of each first platoon, and the squadron staff officers move up on the line of captains, the squadron adjutant on the right of the squadron staff; chiefs of rear platoons remain in place; the squadron sergeant major and the non-commissioned staff officers, other than regimental, in line with the leading platoons.

When the reviewing officer has passed around the regiment, the colonel commands: 1. *Pass in review,* 2. *Column of platoons,* 3. *First troop, first squadron,* 4. *Forward,* 5. *Guide right,* 6. *Column right,* 7. **MARCH.** (See Par. 745.)

### *In Line of Masses.*

**1047.** The same rules apply as for the review of the regiment in line, except that when the colonel commands: 1. *Prepare for review,* 2. **MARCH,** each captain takes post two yards in front of his guidon; chiefs of platoons remain in place; the staff in line with the captains of the leading troops; non-commissioned staff, other than regimental, in line with the leading troops.

When the reviewing officer has passed around the regiment, the colonel commands: 1. *Squadrons,* 2. *Change direction by the left flank,* 3. **MARCH.**

The column having been formed, the colonel commands: 1. *Pass in review,* 2. *Take full distance,* 3. *Guide right,* 4. MARCH.

Each major takes post when his troops have full distance.

**1048.** To march in review in column of platoons, the colonel commands: 1. *Pass in review,* 2. *Column of platoons,* 3. *Forward,* 4. *Guide right,* 5. MARCH.

The major of the first squadron commands: 1. *First troop,* 2. *Right by platoon,* 3. MARCH, 4. *Guide right.*

The first troop executes the movement, followed by the others, each executing the same movement when at the proper distance; the other squadrons execute the same movement, each when at the proper distance.

## BRIGADE REVIEW.

**1049.** The brigade is formed in line of masses or in line of platoon columns, with an interval of sixty-four yards between regiments.

Each colonel causes his regiment to prepare for review as prescribed in regimental review.

The brigade commander takes post thirty yards in front of the center of the line of colonels.

On the arrival of the reviewing officer, the brigade commander causes his trumpeter to sound *attention*, which is repeated in each regiment; each colonel then causes his regiment to draw saber.

The reviewing officer having halted at thirty yards from the brigade commander, the brigade commander and his staff draw saber; the brigade commander then faces the brigade and causes his trumpeter to sound *attention*, and commands: 1. *Present*, 2. SABER, faces to the front, and salutes the reviewing officer.

The reviewing officer having returned the salute, the brigade commander faces the brigade, commands: 1. *Carry*, 2. SABER, and faces to the front, he and his staff return saber and join the reviewing officer.

The reviewing officer, accompanied by his staff and the brigade commander and his staff, then proceeds to the right of the brigade, passing in front of the colonel of the first regiment, to the right of the line, thence around the brigade, passing to the left in rear of the majors, and to the right in rear of the file-closers of the rear subdivisions.

The colonels remain at their posts, facing to the front, while the reviewing officer is passing around the brigade. When the reviewing officer leaves the right of the line, the brigade commander causes *attention* to be sounded; the colonels then command: 1. *Attention*, 2. POSTS, and

cause their squadrons to execute *change direction by the left flank;* the colonel of the leading regiment then gives the preparatory commands for passing in review in column of troops or platoons as prescribed in regimental review.

The brigade commander then causes the signal *forward, march* to be sounded, which is repeated in the leading regiment.

The column moves off as in regimental review.

The colonels of the center and rear regiments give the commands for passing in review, each in time to follow the regiment preceding at sixty-four yards and subdivision distance.

Each colonel takes post in front of his band when the head of his regiment has made its second change of direction.

The brigade commander, with his staff, flag, and orderlies, takes post thirty yards in front of the colonel of the leading regiment when at one hundred yards from the reviewing officer.

The brigade commander and colonels, when they have saluted, turn out of the column and take post with the reviewing officer.

The review terminates when the rear squadron has passed the reviewing officer.

## DIVISION REVIEW.

**1050.** The division is formed in one, two, or three lines of masses, or lines of platoon columns, with an interval of one hundred yards between brigades.

Each regiment is prepared for review as prescribed in brigade review.

Upon the arrival of the reviewing officer, the general commanding the division joins and accompanies him, and causes the signal *attention* to be sounded, which is taken up in the right brigade of the first line.

### *In One Line.*

**1051.** The reviewing officer receives the salute of each brigade when he arrives at its right, except when he approaches a brigade from its left or front, in which case he receives the salute as prescribed in the brigade review.

The reviewing officer receives the salute of the right brigade, passes along its front from right to left, then receives the salute of the next brigade, and so on to the left of the division, thence in rear of the division to the right, and back to his post.

Each brigade commander salutes, facing to the front, then faces his brigade and brings it to carry saber, and remains at his post.

The reviewing officer having passed around the division, the division commander causes the signal *attention* to be sounded.

The commander of the right brigade then forms his brigade in column, and, when the signal *forward, march,* is sounded, gives the commands for passing in review as in the brigade review.

Each of the other brigades is called to attention, formed

in column, and put in march in time to follow the next preceding at a distance of about one hundred yards.

The division commander, with his staff, flag, and orderlies, takes post thirty yards in front of the commander of the leading brigade when at one hundred yards from the reviewing officer.

The review is conducted as prescribed in the brigade review.

### *In Two or Three Lines.*

**1052.** The reviewing officer passes around each line in succession, beginning with the right brigade of the first line.

With this exception, the rules prescribed for the single line apply.

## CORPS REVIEW.

**1053.** The corps is formed in one, two, or three lines, with each division in a single line of masses, or line of platoon columns, with an interval of one hundred yards between divisions.

On the arrival of the reviewing officer, the corps commander causes *attention* to be sounded, which is repeated by the trumpeter of the commander of the right division of the first line, and is taken up in the right brigade of that division.

The reviewing officer passes in front of the first line from right to left, receiving the salute of each brigade as prescribed in the division review, passes in rear of the line to its right, thence to the second line, passing around it in like manner, and so on.

Each division commander, accompanied by his staff, joins the reviewing officer and corps commander as they approach his division, and accompanies them while passing in front and in rear of his division; he then remains near the right of his division.

The reviewing officer having passed around the troops, the corps commander causes *attention,* and *forward, march,* to be sounded; the march in review is conducted on the principles for the review of a division.

On approaching the reviewing officer, the corps commander places himself about thirty yards in front of the commander of the first division.

**1054.** The artillery of the corps is reviewed as prescribed in the Light Artillery Drill Regulations.

**1055.** The review of a command larger than a corps is conducted on the same principles.

**1056.** The troops may be marched in review in column of masses.

# GUARD MOUNTING.

## *Mounted*

**1057.** At *the assembly,* the men warned for duty form in single rank, at stand to horse, on their troop parade grounds, the non-commissioned officers falling in as file-closers; the supernumeraries do not fall in; each first sergeant verifies his detail and inspects the dress and general appearance; he then mounts, draws saber, and causes his detail to mount.

The band takes post on the parade so that the left of its front rank shall be sixteen yards to the right of the guard when the latter is formed.

At *adjutant's call,* the adjutant proceeds to the parade ground and takes post so as to be twelve yards in front of and facing the center of the guard when formed; the sergeant major reports to the adjutant and takes post facing to the left, the croup of his horse twelve yards from the left of the band, on a line with its front rank; the details are marched to the parade ground by the first sergeants, the first sergeants with their sabers drawn, the details at return saber; the detail that arrives first is so marched to the line that upon halting, the man on the right shall be on a line with the sergeant major and one yard in front of the sergeant major's horse; the first sergeant, having halted his detail, places himself in front of and facing the sergeant major at a distance a little greater than the front of his detail; he then commands: 1. *Right,* 2. DRESS; the rank dresses up to the line of the sergeant major and first sergeant; the non-commissioned officers rein back so as to be six yards in rear of the rank; the first sergeant commands: FRONT, salutes with the saber, and then reports: *The detail is correct;* or, (so many) *sergeants, corporals,* or *privates are absent;* the sergeant major, or acting ser-

geant major, then returns the salute with the right hand; the first sergeant then passes by the right of the guard and rear of the sergeant major, and takes post six yards in rear of the non-commissioned officers of the guard.

The other details, as they arrive, are formed in like manner on the left of the first; the rank, non-commissioned officers, and first sergeant of each detail dress on the rank, non-commissioned officers, and first sergeants of the details preceding.

The troop details alternate in taking the right of the line.

**1058.** When the last detail has formed, the sergeant major draws saber, verifies the details, causes the guard to count fours, and if there be more than three fours, divides the guard into two or more platoons; he then commands: 1. *Right,* 2. DRESS, verifies the alignment of the rank, the line of non-commissioned officers, and the first sergeants, and then returns to the right of the rank, turns to the left, commands: FRONT, passes to a point midway between the adjutant and center of the guard, halts facing the adjutant, salutes, and reports: *Sir, the details are correct;* or, *Sir,* (so many) *sergeants, corporals,* or *privates are absent;* the adjutant returns the salute, directs the sergeant major: *Take your post,* and then draws saber; the sergeant major turns to the left and takes post facing to the front, three yards to the left of the rank.

**1059.** When the sergeant major has reported, the officer of the guard takes post, facing to the front, six yards in front of the center of the guard and draws saber.

The adjutant then directs: *Inspect your guard, sir;* at which the commander of the guard turns about, commands: 1. *Inspection,* 2. ARMS, and inspects the guard.

During the inspection, the band plays.

The adjutant, during the inspection, observes the general condition of the guard, and, when so directed, selects an orderly for the commanding officer; he may require a trooper to move out of the rank, and to dismount for a

more minute inspection; he also notifies the two senior non-commissioned officers to serve as chiefs of platoons. If any trooper does not present a creditable appearance, his captain is notified through the first sergeant and sends a trooper to the officer of the guard, at the guard house, to replace him.

**1060.** If there be a supernumerary officer of the guard, he takes post, facing to the front, six yards in front of the center of the first platoon; he may be directed by the commander of the guard to assist in inspecting the guard; the adjutant notifies the senior non-commissioned officer to serve as chief of the second platoon.

**1061.** If there be no officer of the guard, the adjutant inspects the guard, and during the inspection, notifies the senior non-commissioned officer to command the guard, the next two senior non-commissioned officers to serve as chiefs of platoons.

**1062.** The inspection ended, the adjutant places himself about thirty yards in front of and facing the center of the guard; the officers of the day take post in front of and facing the guard, about thirty yards from the adjutant, the old officer of the day three yards to the right of and one yard less advanced than the new officer of the day; the officer commanding the guard takes post facing to the front, six yards in front of the center of the guard, and thereafter takes the same relative positions as the captain of a troop.

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Draw,* 2. **SABER,** 3. **SOUND OFF.**

The band, playing, passes in front of the officer of the guard to the left of the line, and back to its post on the right, when it ceases playing.

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Attention,* 2. **POSTS,** at which the chiefs of platoons take their posts two yards in front of their platoons facing to the front, and the commander of the guard, if not already there, takes post six yards in front of the center of the guard facing

to the front: the file-closers close to two yards from the rank.

**1063.** The commander of the guard and chiefs of platoons having taken their posts, the adjutant commands: 1. *Present,* 2. SABER, faces toward the officer of the day, salutes, and then reports: *Sir, the guard is formed.*

The new officer of the day, after the adjutant has reported, salutes with the hand, and directs the adjutant: *March the guard in review, sir.*

The adjutant turns about, brings the guard to a carry, and commands: 1. *Platoons right,* 2. MARCH.

The platoons execute the movement as prescribed in the School of the Troop; the band takes post in front of the column. The adjutant places himself abreast of the first platoon and six yards from its left flank; the sergeant major abreast of the second platoon and six yards from its left flank.

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Pass in review,* 2. *Forward,* 3. *Guide right,* 4. MARCH.

The guard marches at the walk past the officer of the day, according to the principles of review, the adjutant, the commander of the guard, chiefs of platoons, sergeant major, and chief trumpeter saluting. The new officer of the day returns only the salute of the commander of the guard and the adjutant, making one salute with the hand.

The band, having passed the officers of the day, turns to the left out of the column, places itself opposite and facing them, and ceases to play when the rear of the column has passed; the trumpeters detach themselves from the band when the latter turns out of the column, and remain in front of the guard, commencing to play when the band ceases. In the absence of the band, the trumpeters do not turn out of the column, but continue to play in front of the guard.

**1064.** The guard having passed the officer of the day, the adjutant halts: the sergeant major halts abreast of

the adjutant and one yard to his left; they then return saber and retire. The commander of the guard forms it into column of fours, without halting, and marches it to its post. The officers of the day turn toward each other and salute, the old officer of the day turning over the orders to the new officer of the day.

While the band is sounding off, and while the guard is passing in review, the officers of the day and first sergeants remain at attention; the first sergeants return saber and retire at the same time as the adjutant and sergeant major.

**1065.** When the guard is not divided into platoons, the adjutant commands: 1. *Guard right,* 2. MARCH, and it passes in review as before; the commander of the guard is two yards in front of its center; the adjutant is six yards from and abreast of its left flank; the sergeant major covers the adjutant abreast of the file-closers.

**1066.** The officer of the day may direct the adjutant: *March the guard to its post, sir.* The adjutant then faces the guard, and commands: 1. *Guard to its post,* 2. *Fours right,* 3. MARCH; or, 2. *Right forward,* 3. *Fours right,* 4. MARCH, or causes the guard to march at the trot.

The trumpeters take post in front, and the guard marches off in column of fours; the adjutant, sergeant major, and first sergeants return saber and retire; the officers of the day salute each other and the band retires.

**1067.** As the new guard approaches the guard house, the old guard is formed in line at the carry, its trumpeters two yards to its right; when the trumpeters at the head of the new guard arrive opposite its left, the commander of the old guard commands: 1. *Present,* 2. SABER, and when the new guard has passed, commands: 1. *Carry,* 2. SABER.

The new guard marches at the walk past the old guard, sabers at the carry, commanders of both guards saluting.

The trumpeters and guard continue marching, without changing direction. until the rear of the column has

passed eight yards beyond the trumpeters of the old guard, when the commander of the new guard commands: 1. *Fours right,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Guide right.*

The trumpeters and guard are marched three yards in rear of the line of the old guard, when the commander of the new guard commands: 1. *Fours right about,* 2. MARCH, 3. *Guard,* 4. HALT, 5. *Left,* 6. DRESS; he then, facing to the front, aligns his guard so as to be on a line with the old guard, and commands: 7. FRONT.

The new guard having been dressed, the commander of each guard, in front of its center, facing to the front, commands: 1. *Present,* 2. SABER, and salutes.

The commanders, having saluted, face their guards and command: 1. *Carry,* 2. SABER, 3. *Return,* 4. SABER.

**1068.** Should the guard be commanded by a non-commissioned officer, he takes post as prescribed for the officer of the guard and presents saber with his guard.

**1069.** The reliefs call off from right to left and are marched in column of fours or twos; the sentinels are posted successively from the head of the column; the sentinels relieved form successively in rear of the column.

**1070.** The detachments and sentinels of the old guard are relieved, and, as they come in, they form on its left; both guards draw saber; the commander of the old guard then marches it with the guide right, twelve yards to the front, when he commands: 1. *Fours right,* 2. MARCH.

The guard wheels by fours to the right, the trumpeters begin to play, and the guard marches at the walk past the new guard, which stands at present saber, commanders of both guards saluting.

**1071.** On arriving on the regimental, post, or camp parade ground, the commander of the old guard forms it in line and halts it, draws cartridge, orders successively the troop details six yards to the front, and sends each, under charge of a non-commissioned officer or private, to its troop.

**1072.** When sentinels and detachments are at con-

siderable distances from the headquarters of the guard, the old and new guards are dismounted while awaiting the return of the reliefs.

**1073.** In bad weather, at night,or after long marches, the music may be dispensed with, or the trumpeters may take the place of the band and sound off, standing on the right of the guard, and the review be omitted.

### *Dismounted.*

**1074.** Guard mounting, dismounted, is conducted in single rank on the same principles as guard mounting mounted, with the following modifications:—

At the *assembly* the men warned for duty fall in on their troop parade grounds, non-commissioned officers and supernumeraries falling in as file-closers; each first sergeant then verifies his detail, inspects the dress and general appearance, and replaces by a supernumerary any man unfit to march on guard.

The sergeant major takes post, facing to the left, sixteen yards from the left of the band; the band plays in quick or double time; the details are marched to the parade ground,with arms at the right shoulder; the detail that arrives first is so marched that, upon halting, the breast of the man on the right shall be near to and opposite the left arm of the sergeant major; the first sergeant brings his carbine to a carry when he halts his detail.

The rank dresses up to the line of the sergeant major and first sergeant, the man on the right placing his breast against the left arm of the sergeant major; the non-commissioned officers step back and halt three yards in rear of the rank; the supernumerary steps back and halts nine yards in rear of the rank.

The first sergeant then commands: **FRONT,** salutes, reports, passes by the right, takes post three yards in rear of his supernumerary, and orders arms.

When the sergeant major has reported, the officer of

the guard takes post three yards in front of the center of the guard and draws saber.

**1075.** The adjutant then commands: 1. *Officer* (or *Officers*) *and non-commissioned officers,* 2. *Front and center* 3. MARCH.

The officer advances and halts three yards from the adjutant; the non-commissioned officers carry arms, pass by the flanks and, moving by the shortest lines, form in the order of rank from right to left, three yards in rear of the officer; the adjutant then assigns the officer and non-commissioned officers according to rank in the following order:—

*Commander of the guard, chief of first platoon, chief of second platoon, right guide of first platoon, left guide of second platoon, left guide of first platoon, right guide of second platoon,* and *file-closers.*

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Non-commissioned officers;* or, 1. *Officer and non-commissioned officers,* 2. *Posts,* 3. MARCH.

At the command *march,* all, except the officer commanding the guard, face about and take post as follows:

*Chief of first platoon,* three yards in front of the center of the first platoon; *chief of second platoon,* three yards in front of the center of the second platoon; *right guide first platoon,* on the right of the rank of first platoon; *left guide second platoon,* on the left of the rank of the second platoon; *left guide first platoon,* in the line of file-closers, in rear of the second man from the left of the first platoon; *right guide second platoon,* in the line of file-closers, in rear of the second man from the right of second platoon; *file-closers,* three yards in rear of the rank, to the right of the left guide first platoon, and to the left of the right guide of the second platoon; each orders arms when he takes his post. A non-commissioned officer commanding the guard takes post on the right of the right guide first platoon. A non-commissioned officer designated as chief of platoon

takes post in the line of file-closers opposite the center of his platoon.

The adjutant then directs: *Inspect your guard, sir.*

During the inspection, the adjutant replaces by the supernumerary any man who does not present a creditable appearance.

The inspection ended, the officer commanding the guard takes post three yards in front of the center of the guard.

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Parade,* 2. REST, 3. SOUND OFF.

After the band sounds off, the adjutant commands 1. *Guard,* 2. ATTENTION, 3. *Close ranks,* 4. MARCH.

The file-closers close to two yards from the rank; the officer commanding the guard faces about and takes post facing to the front, two yards in front of the center of the guard; if there be a supernumerary officer of the guard, he takes post in the line of file-closers opposite the center of his platoon.

**1076.** In presenting the guard to the officers of the day, the adjutant commands: 1. *Present,* 2. ARMS.

When forming column of platoons to march in review, each chief of platoon, after verifying the alignment of his platoon, takes post two yards in front of its center, facing to the front; the left guide of the first platoon and the right guide of the second platoon place themselves on the left and right flanks of their respective platoons A non-commissioned officer commanding the guard takes the post of an officer commanding the guard, when in column or passing in review.

The adjutant brings the guard to a right shoulder.

The guard marches in review at quick time, and is brought to a carry by the commander of the guard when at forty yards from the officer of the day.

**1077.** While the band is sounding off, and while the guard is marching in review, the officers of the day stand at parade rest with arms folded, and come to attention be-

fore the guard is to be presented and again as the head of the column approaches.

The first sergeants and supernumeraries come to parade rest and attention with the guard; they remain at order arms while the guard is being presented and formed into column.

The senior first sergeant commands: 1. *Parade,* 2. REST, at the command *march,* for passing in review, and: 1. *Supernumeraries,* 2. ATTENTION, when the officers of the day come to attention.

The first sergeants come to parade rest and attention with the supernumeraries. When the adjutant halts, after the guard has passed in review, each first sergeant marches his supernumerary to the troop parade ground and dismisses him.

**1078.** When the guard is directed to march to its post, it may be marched in double time.

**1079.** The new guard marches in quick time past the old guard, arms at a carry; the trumpeters having marched three yards beyond the trumpeters of the old guard, change direction to the right, and, followed by the guard, change direction to the left when on a line with the old guard; the changes of direction are made without command. The commander of the guard halts on the line of the rank of the old guard, allows his guard to march past him, and, when its rear approaches, forms it into line to the left, halts it, establishes the left guide three yards to the right of the trumpeters of the old guard and on a line with its rank, and then dresses his guard to the left.

The new guard being dressed, the commander of each guard, in front of and facing the center, commands: 1. *Present,* 2. ARMS, faces to the front and salutes.

The commanders having saluted, each faces his guard and commands: 1. *Carry,* 2. ARMS, 3. *Order,* 4. ARMS.

**1080.** Should a guard be commanded by a non-commissioned officer, he presents arms with the guard,

standing on the right or left of the rank, according as he commands the old or new guard.

**1081.** The old guard is advanced six yards and then marched by the flank, in quick time, past the new guard.

Before dismissing the troop details, the commander of the old guard causes the guard to open chamber.

**1082.** When dismounted cavalry and infantry are united for guard mounting, the cavalry details retain their single rank formation. The cavalry non-commissioned officers and supernumeraries place themselves in line with those of the infantry.

**1083.** For detailed instructions for guards and sentinels, see Manual of Guard Duty.

## SQUADRON PARADE.

**1084.** The troops are formed, mounted, on their respective parade grounds and are inspected by their captains; the inspection being completed, *adjutant's call* is sounded, at which the squadron is formed on the squadron parade ground, as prescribed in the School of the Squadron.

The band takes post on a line with the rank of the squadron, the left of its front rank sixteen yards from the flank of the squadron; the trumpeters form with the band.

The sergeant major, having posted the last guide in his wing, takes post four yards on the left of the rank, facing to the front.

The adjutant, having posted the last guide in his wing, takes post facing to the left, two yards to the right of the rank, on the line of captains.

The staff, except the adjutant, take post four yards to the right of and in line with the chiefs of platoons, in the order of rank from right to left, the senior on the right. The non-commissioned staff and regimental non-commissioned officers take post in a similar manner two yards to the left of the sergeant major.

The major takes post at a convenient distance in front of the center of the squadron, facing the line.

As soon as the adjutant sees that the last troop has formed on the line, he directs the first captain to cause his troop to *draw saber.* The captains, commencing on the right, successively turn about and command: 1. (Such) *troop*, 2. *Draw*, 3. SABER, and resume their front.

The adjutant takes post four yards to the right of the staff, and commands: SOUND OFF.

The band, playing a march, passes in front of the captains, to the left of the line, and back to its post on the

right, when it ceases playing. At evening parade, when the band ceases playing, *retreat* is sounded by the trumpeters.

When the music ceases, the adjutant moves up on the line of captains, turns to the left and commands: 1. *Squadron,* 2. ATTENTION, 3. *Prepare for parade,* 4. MARCH.

At the command *march,* the commissioned officers commanding platoons ride forward and halt on the line of captains; the guidon of each troop, if not already there, takes post on the right of his troop, passing in rear of the rank; non-commissioned officers commanding platoons take post on the line of the rank, one yard to the right of the guidon, or one yard to the left of the troop, according as their platoons are on the right or left of the center of the troop; a non-commissioned officer commanding a troop takes post on the line of the rank, to the right of the chiefs of platoons on the right of the troop; the staff officers move up and halt on the line of captains; all dress to the right.

The adjutant verifies the alignment of the officers, the rank, and the file-closers. The officers and file-closers cast their eyes to the front, as soon as their alignment is verified.

The adjutant, having verified the alignment, returns to the line of captains, turns to the left, halts, commands: FRONT, then moves at the trot or gallop by the shortest line to a point midway between the major and the center of the squadron, faces the squadron, halts, and commands: 1. *Present,* 2. SABER. He then turns left about, salutes the major, and reports: *Sir, the parade is formed.*

The major returns the salute and directs the adjutant: *Take your post, sir.* The adjutant moves at a trot or gallop, and, passing by the major's right, takes post, facing the squadron, three yards to the left of the major and one yard less advanced.

The adjutant having taken his post, the major draws saber, commands: 1. *Carry.* 2. SABER, and adds such ex-

ercises in the manual of arms (saber, carbine, and pistol), or saber exercise, as he may desire, concluding with the squadron at return saber.

The officers do not return saber.

He then directs the adjutant, *Receive the reports, sir,* and returns saber. The adjutant, passing by the major's left, advances at a trot or gallop toward the center of the line, halts midway between it and the major, and commands: 1. *First sergeants,* 2. *Front and center,* 3. *Trot* (or *Gallop*), 4. MARCH.

At the first command, the first sergeants and chief trumpeter draw saber.

At the command *march,* they leave their posts, and passing in rear of the line of officers assemble opposite the center, facing to the front. The adjutant then commands: *Report.*

The chief trumpeter and first sergeants, commencing on the right, successively salute and report: The chief trumpeter, *Band and trumpeters present or accounted for;* or, (So many) *musicians* or *trumpeters absent;* the first sergeants, *Troop "D,"* etc., *present or accounted for;* or, (So many) *sergeants* or *corporals* or *privates absent.*

The reports having been made, the adjutant commands: 1. *First sergeants,* 2. *Posts,* 3. *Trot* (or *Gallop*), 4. MARCH.

At the command *march,* the chief trumpeter and first sergeants successively turn to the right and left, and passing in rear of the line of officers, resume their posts, and, except the chief trumpeter, return saber. Each first sergeant passes around the right flank of his troop.

The adjutant then turns about, salutes, and reports: *Sir, all are present or accounted for;* or, (So many) *officers* or *enlisted men are absent.* The major returns the salute and directs: *Publish the orders, sir.*

The adjutant turns about and commands: *Attention to orders;* he reads the orders and then commands: 1 *Officers,* 2. *Center,* 3. MARCH.

At the command *officers,* all the officers return saber.

At the command *march,* the officers turn and close toward the center and successively turn to the front and halt eleven yards from the line; the two officers nearest the center preserve an interval for the adjutant, who passes through, four yards to the rear, turns about and halts; all the officers having formed, the adjutant rides up to his place. The senior troop officer commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide center,* 3. MARCH.

The officers advance, the band playing; the adjutant is the guide, and marches on the major; at six yards from the major, the senior troop officer commands: 1. *Officers,* 2. HALT.

The music ceases; the officers halt and salute, keep the hand at the visor till the salute is returned, and drop it at the same time with the major's. The major then gives such instructions as he may deem necessary, and this concludes the ceremony.

As the officers disperse, the music is resumed; each first sergeant draws saber, rides in front of his troop, commands: POSTS, and marches his troop to its parade ground and dismisses it; the band plays till the troops leave the parade ground.

**1085.** The commanding officer may direct that the first sergeants march their troops in line or column of platoons around the parade ground, changing direction and saluting, as in passing in review; after passing the major they march them to their troop parade grounds and dismiss them. Or, the commanding officer may direct that the troops move off in echelon and march to their parade grounds. In these cases the officers remain with the major until all the troops have passed.

Previous to executing the saber exercise, the major may cause the troopers to take distances to the front (Par. 370).

The troop officers, staff and non-commissioned staff officers, regimental non-commissioned officers, guard of

the standard, band, and non-commissioned officers commanding troops or platoons advance with and preserve their positions relative to the rank of Nos. 1; the guidons stand fast until Nos. 4 advance, then move up and halt in line with them. The file-closers preserve their relative distances in rear of Nos. 4. At the conclusion of the parade, each first sergeant causes his troop to form rank, and dismisses it as prescribed.

**1086.** The squadron may be formed in line of platoon columns.

The parade is conducted as when in line, with the following modifications:—

At the command *prepare for parade, march,* the guidons, if not already there, take post on the right of their respective troops, each guidon passing by the rear of his first platoon; the captains take post six yards in front of their guidons; the lieutenants take post on the line of captains, the first lieutenant in front of the center of the first platoon, the second lieutenant in front of the left of the first platoon, the additional second lieutenant midway between the first and second lieutenants. A non-commissioned officer commanding the first platoon takes post one yard to the right of the guidon; a non-commissioned officer commanding a troop takes post on the right of the chief of the first platoon; a non-commissioned officer commanding a rear platoon remains in front of his platoon.

## REGIMENTAL PARADE.

**1087.** The regiment is formed in line, or in line of platoon columns.

The troops are formed and inspected.

At *adjutant's call*, each squadron is formed in line; the squadron adjutant, having taken his post in front of the center, before reporting the squadron to the major, receives the reports of the first sergeants as prescribed in the squadron parade.

When the squadrons are formed, *adjutant's call* is again sounded; the regiment is then formed in line or line of platoon columns; each major, as soon as his squadron has formed on the line, commands: 1. *Prepare for parade,* 2. MARCH, verifies the alignment, regulating on the base squadron, commands: FRONT, and, moving at a trot or gallop, takes post twenty yards in front of and facing the center of the squadron; he then commands: 1. *Draw,* 2. SABER, and faces to the front.

The lieutenant colonel takes post twenty yards in front of the right flank.

The post of the adjutant is six yards to the right of the post of the lieutenant colonel.

The sergeant major takes post six yards to the right and abreast of the rank.

The other non-commissioned staff officers, etc., take post as in Par. 648.

The adjutant, after indicating the point of rest and direction of the line, takes his post and faces to the left; when the last squadron has formed he turns to his left, commands: SOUND OFF, and takes his post facing to the front.

The band, playing, passes in front of the adjutant and field officers to the left of the regiment and back to its post on the right, when it ceases playing,

The adjutant then moves by the shortest line, at a trot or gallop, to a point midway between the colonel and the center of the regiment, faces the regiment and commands: 1. *Squadrons,* 2. ATTENTION, 3. *Present,* 4. SABER, faces the colonel, salutes, and reports: *Sir, the parade is formed.*

The colonel returns the salute and directs the adjutant: *Take your post, sir.*

The adjutant takes post three yards to the left of the colonel, and one yard less advanced passing by his right and rear.

The colonel and staff officers draw saber; the colonel then commands: 1. *Carry,* 2. SABER, and adds such exercises in the manual of arms or saber exercise as he may desire, concluding with the regiment at return saber.

The colonel then directs the adjutant: *Receive the reports, sir,* and returns saber; the staff, except the adjutant, return saber at the same time.

The adjutant advances by the left of the colonel toward the line, halts midway between the colonel and the center of the regiment, and commands: 1. *Adjutants,* 2. *Front and center,* 3. *Trot* (or *Gallop*), 4. MARCH.

At the command *march,* the squadron adjutants, passing in front of the troop officers, close to the center and halt, facing to the front, midway between the line of field and troop officers. The adjutant then commands: *Report;* the squadron adjutants, commencing on the right, successively salute and report: (Such) *squadron present or accounted for;* or, (Such) *squadron* (so many) *officers and enlisted men are absent.* The adjutant then commands: 1. *Adjutants,* 2. *Posts,* 3. *Trot* (or *Gallop*), 4. MARCH.

The squadron adjutants, moving by the shortest lines, then take post in the line of field officers, each three yards to the left of the major of his squadron. The adjutant then faces the colonel, salutes, and reports: *Sir, all are present or accounted for;* or, *Sir,* (so many) *officers and enlisted men are absent.* The colonel returns the salute and

directs: *Publish the orders, sir.* The adjutant faces the regiment, commands: *Attention to orders,* publishes the orders, and then commands: 1. *Officers,* 2. *Center,* 3. **MARCH.**

At the command *officers,* all the officers return saber.

At the command *march,* the troop officers turn and close toward the center, and successively turn to the front and halt eleven yards from the line; the two officers nearest the center preserve an interval for the adjutant, who passes through, four yards to the rear, turns about and halts in rear of the line; the lieutenant colonel, the squadron commanders, and their adjutants turn individually left about and form on the line of officers; the lieutenant colonel and the commander of the first squadron, with his adjutant on his left, on the right of the line; the commanders of the second and third squadrons, each with his adjutant on his left, are on the left of the line; all the officers having formed, the adjutant rides up to his place.

The lieutenant colonel or senior squadron commander then commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide center,* 3. **MARCH.**

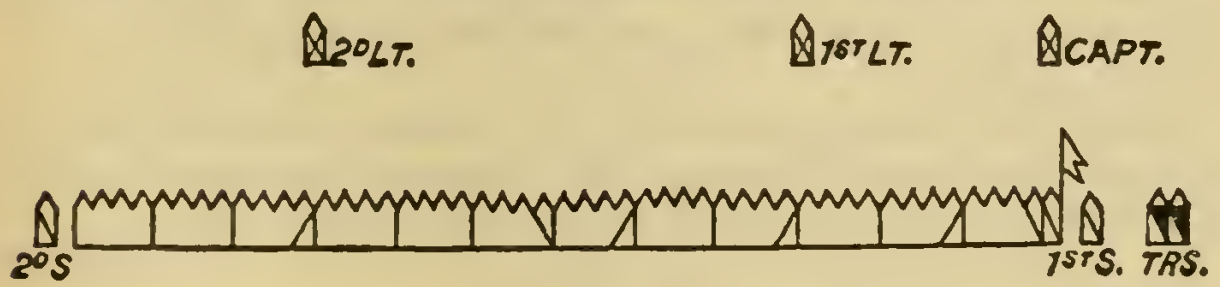
The officers advance, the band playing; the adjutant is the guide and marches on the colonel; at six yards from the colonel, the lieutenant colonel or senior squadron commander commands: 1. *Officers,* 2. **HALT.**

The ceremony then concludes as prescribed in the squadron parade.

The lieutenant colonel and adjutant join the colonel; all the other officers rejoin their squadrons; the squadrons are marched to their parade grounds and dismissed.

## TROOP INSPECTION.

**1088.** Being in line at a halt, the captain commands: 1. *Prepare for inspection,* 2. **MARCH,** 3. **FRONT.**




Pl. 154, Par. 1088.

The chiefs of platoons take post four yards in front of their posts in line, *i. e.*, six yards in front of their platoons; the guidon on the right of the rank; the right principal guide one yard to the right of the guidon; the trumpeters two yards to the right of the right principal guide, on a line with the rank; the other file-closers one yard to the left of the rank, the left principal guide on their left. All dress to the right.

The captain verifies the alignment of the chiefs of platoons and the line, commands: **FRONT,** and takes post in front of the guidon in line with the chiefs of platoons.

The chiefs of platoons cast their eyes to the front as soon as their alignment is verified.

The captain commands: 1. *Inspection,* 2. **ARMS.**

The troop is inspected as in Pars. 374 and 375.

The trumpeters raise their trumpets for inspection, when the inspector approaches to inspect carbines.

When the captain dismounts the troop, the guidon dismounts with it; the chiefs of platoons return saber, dismount, and stand to horse facing their platoons; the captain dismounts, and his horse is held by his trumpeter.

If the arms are not to be inspected, the commands therefor are omitted.

The chiefs of platoons, when the inspection of the rank begins, face toward the troop and remain *at ease*, resuming their front on the completion of the inspection of arms, or the captain may require one or both lieutenants to accompany or to assist him; if dismounted, their horses are held by trumpeters. The captain may require each chief to inspect his own platoon, himself making a general inspection.

While inspecting the troop or accompanying the inspector, the captain does not return his saber while mounted; if dismounted, he returns saber.

To resume the posts in line, the captain commands: 1. *Attention,* 2. POSTS.

The chiefs of platoons turn to the left about, move forward, and by another left about resume their posts; the right principal guide turns to the right about and resumes his post; the trumpeters resume their posts; the file-closers on the left of the rank successively turn to the left about and resume their posts in rear of the rank.

**1089.** Should the inspector be other than the captain, the captain prepares the troop for inspection and awaits the orders of the inspector. Upon the approach of the inspector, the captain, at his post in front of the guidon, salutes him; the inspector returns the salute and informs him of the kind of inspection; the captain gives the necessary commands, faces to the front, and, when inspected, accompanies the inspector.

**1090.** At inspection of quarters, the men, without accouterments, stand uncovered in front of their respective bunks; in camp, they stand covered, without accouterments, in front of their tents; the senior non-commissioned officer, upon the approach of the inspector, commands: 1. *Troop* (or *Squad*), 2. ATTENTION.

The men come to attention and do not salute; in camp, the non-commissioned officer salutes.

## TROOP INSPECTION DISMOUNTED.

**1091.** The troop is formed for inspection as when mounted.

Arms are inspected as prescribed in the School of the Soldier.

At the command *inspection arms,* the lieutenants carry saber, and when the inspection of the rank begins, face about and stand *at ease,* saber at the order; upon the completion of the inspection of arms and ammunition, they come to attention, carry saber, face to the front,and order saber.

## SQUADRON INSPECTION.

**1092.** If there be both inspection and review, the inspection may either precede or follow the review.

The squadron being in column of troops at full distance, the major commands: 1. *Prepare for inspection,* 2. **MARCH.**

Each troop forms for inspection as prescribed in troop inspection.

The trumpeters return to their troops.

The band, if there be one, passing by the right flank of the squadron, takes post facing to the front, sixteen yards in rear of the rear troop, and opens ranks.

The guard of the standard is marched by the adjutant, and takes post twelve yards in front of the center of the first troop.

The staff officers form on a line equal to the front of the first troop, fifteen yards in front of the standard, the adjutant on the right, the others in the order of rank from right to left, the senior next to the adjutant.

The non-commissioned staff and regimental non-commissioned officers form in a similar manner, six yards in rear of the staff, the sergeant major on the right.

The major takes post in front of the center of the column, six yards in front of the staff.

Field and staff officers senior in rank to the inspector do not take post in front of the column, but accompany him.

After being inspected, the major and staff officers return saber, and the inspector, accompanied by these officers, passes down the column looking at the front and rear of each rank. The major then commands: **REST.**

The inspector, commencing at the head of the column, makes a minute inspection of the non-commissioned staff and regimental non-commissioned officers, the guard of the standard. and the arms, accouterments, dress, am-

munition, horse, and equipments of each trooper of the several troops in succession, and inspects the band.

The adjutant gives the necessary commands for the inspection of the non-commissioned staff and regimental non-commissioned officers, the guard of the standard, and the band.

The non-commissioned staff, regimental non-commissioned officers, and guard of the standard may be dismissed as soon as inspected.

**1093.** As the inspector approaches each troop in succession, its captain commands: 1. *Troop,* 2. ATTENTION, 3. *Inspection,* 4. ARMS, and takes his post in front of the guidon; as soon as inspected, he accompanies the inspector.

The inspection being finished, the captain, on intimation from the inspector, marches the troop to its parade ground and dismisses it.

The band plays during the inspection of the troops.

In a long column, some of the rearmost troops, after the inspection of dress and general appearance, may be permitted to dismount and rest; before the inspector approaches, each is called to attention and mounted.

The inspection of dress and general appearance may be dispensed with; on intimation of the inspector, the squadron is brought to *rest* as soon as the major and staff have been inspected.

After the inspection of dress and general appearance, if the inspector desires to inspect the squadron dismounted, the major causes the troopers to take distances to the front (Par. 370) and dismounts them; or, dismounts the squadron and inspects without forming rank.

At inspection of quarters, the inspector is accompanied by all the officers, or by such of them as he may designate.

## REGIMENTAL INSPECTION.

**1094.** The regiment being in column at full distance, the colonel commands: 1. *Prepare for inspection,* 2. **MARCH.**

Each squadron forms for inspection as prescribed in squadron inspection.

The band takes post in rear of the regiment.

The guard of the standard is marched by the adjutant and takes post six yards in front of the major of the first squadron.

The staff officers of the colonel form on a line equal to the front of the column, fifteen yards in front of the standard, the adjutant on the right, the others in the order of rank from right to left, the senior next the adjutant; the non-commissioned staff and regimental non-commissioned officers form in a similar manner six yards in rear of the staff officers, the sergeant major on the right; the colonel takes post six yards in front of the center of the column; the lieutenant colonel takes post three yards to the left of the colonel.

The colonel, lieutenant colonel, and staff officers of the colonel, as soon as inspected, return saber and accompany the inspector, who then inspects the dress and general appearance of the regiment.

The adjutant brings the non-commissioned staff and regimental non-commissioned officers to a rest as soon as the inspector begins his inspection of the first squadron.

Each major accompanies the inspector while inspecting his squadron and then brings his squadron to a rest.

The inspector, after passing to the rear of the regiment commences again at the head of the column, and makes a minute inspection of the regiment as prescribed in squadron inspection. Each major with his staff officers accompanies the inspector through his squadron, after which the major marches his squadron to its parade ground and dismisses it.

## REGIMENTAL OR SQUADRON MUSTER.

**1095.** Muster is preceded by an inspection, and when practicable, by a review.

The adjutant is provided with the muster roll of the field, staff, and band; the surgeon with the hospital roll, and each captain with the roll of his troop. A list of absentees alphabetically arranged, showing cause and place of absence, accompanies each roll.

Being in column of troops, at *prepare for inspection,* each captain, as the mustering officer approaches, causes sabers to be drawn and commands: *Attention to muster.*

The mustering officer, or captain, then calls the names on the roll; each man, as his name is called, answers: "Here," and returns saber.

Dismounted, each captain, as the mustering officer approaches, commands: 1. *Right shoulder,* 2. ARMS, 3. *Attention to muster.* Each man, as his name is called, answers: "Here," and brings his carbine to order arms.

Men who are not formed with the troop, and who attend muster without arms, are two yards on the left of the rank; each, as soon as he answers: "Here," passes two yards in front of the rank from left to right, salutes the mustering officer as he passes him, and quits the parade ground.

After muster, the mustering officer, accompanied by the troop commanders, and such other officers as he may designate, verifies the presence of men reported in hospital, on guard, etc.

A troop may be mustered in the same manner on its own parade ground, the muster to follow the troop inspection.

## ESCORT OF THE STANDARD.

**1096.** The regiment being in line at carry saber, the colonel details a troop, other than the standard troop, to receive and escort the standard to its place in line.

The escort is formed in column of platoons, the band in front, the standard bearer between the platoons. The escort then marches without music to the colonel's office or quarters, is formed in line facing the entrance and halted, the band on the right, the standard bearer in the line of file-closers.

The first lieutenant, standard bearer, and the right principal guide dismount in front of the colonel's quarters, their horses being held by a trumpeter; the standard bearer, preceded by the first lieutenant and followed by a sergeant of the escort, then goes to receive the standard.

When the standard bearer comes out, followed by the lieutenant and sergeant, they halt before the entrance and mount, the lieutenant on the right, the sergeant on the left; the trumpeter returns to his post; the captain then commands: 1. *Present,* 2, SABER; the escort presents saber, the trumpeters sounding *to the standard.*

The sabers are brought to the carry; the lieutenant and sergeant return to their posts; the troop executes *platoons right;* the standard bearer places himself midway between the first and second platoons.

The escort marches, with the guide left, back to the regiment, the band playing; the march is so conducted that when the escort arrives at fifty yards in front of the right of the regiment, the direction of the march shall be parallel to its front; when the standard arrives opposite its place in line, the escort is formed in line to the left and halted; the standard bearer, passing between the platoons, advances and halts twelve paces in front of the colonel.

The standard bearer having halted, the colonel, who has posted himself thirty yards in front of the center of his regiment, faces the line, commands: 1. *Present,* 2, SABER, faces to the front and salutes; the trumpeters sound *to the standard,* and the standard bearer returns the standard salute.

The colonel then faces about, brings the regiment to a carry, and the standard bearer, passing through the interval to the left of his troop, turns to the left about and takes his place in the guard of the standard.

The escort presents and carries saber with the regiment, at the command of the colonel, after which the captain forms it in column and, preceded by the band, marches it to its place in line, passing around the left flank of the regiment.

The band plays until the escort passes the left of the line, when it ceases playing and returns to its post on the right, passing in rear of the regiment.

The standard is escorted by the guard of the standard from the parade ground of the standard troop to the colonel's quarters.

## ESCORTS OF HONOR.

**1097.** Escorts of honor are detailed for the purpose of receiving and escorting personages of high rank, civil or military. The troops for this purpose are selected for their soldierly appearance and superior discipline.

The escort forms in line, opposite the place where the personage presents himself, the band on the flank of the escort toward which it will march. On the appearance of the personage, he is received with the honors due to his rank. The escort is formed into column of troops, platoons, or fours, and takes up the march, the personage and his staff or retinue taking position in rear of the column. On leaving the escort, line is formed, and the same honors are paid as before.

When the position of the escort is at a considerable distance from the point where the person is to be received, as, for instance, where a court-yard or wharf intervenes, a double line of sentinels is posted from that point to the escort, facing inward; the sentinels successively salute as he passes, and are then relieved and join the escort.

An officer is appointed to attend him, to bear such communications as he may have to make to the commander of the escort.

## FUNERAL ESCORT.

**1098.** The composition and strength of the escort are prescribed in Pars. 474, 475, and 476, A. R., 1889.

The escort is mounted or dismounted at the discretion of the commanding officer.

### *Dismounted.*

**1099.** The escort is formed opposite the tent or quarters of the deceased, the band on that flank of the escort toward which it is to march.

Upon the appearance of the coffin, the commander commands: 1. *Carry,* 2. ARMS, 3. *Present,* 4. ARMS; the band plays appropriate music; arms are then carried, after which the coffin is taken to the flank of the escort opposite the band.

The escort is next formed into column of troops, platoons, or fours. If the escort be small, it may be marched in line. The procession is formed in the following order: 1. *Music,* 2. *Escort,* 3. *Clergy,* 4. *Coffin and pall bearers,* 5. *Mourners,* 6. *Members of the former command of the deceased,* 7. *Other officers and enlisted men,* 8. *Distinguished persons,* 9. *Delegations,* 10. *Societies,* 11. *Civilians.* Officers and enlisted men (Nos. 6 and 7) are with side arms, in the order of rank, seniors in front.

At the funeral of a mounted officer or enlisted man, his horse, in mourning caparison, follows the hearse.

The procession being formed, the commander of the escort puts it in march, arms at the right shoulder.

The escort marches slowly to column music; the column having arrived opposite the grave, line is formed facing it.

The coffin is then carried along the front of the escort to the grave, arms are presented, and the band plays ap-

propriate music; the coffin having been placed over the grave, the music ceases and arms are brought to the order.

The commander next commands: 1. *Parade,* 2. REST. The escort executes *parade rest,* officers and men inclining the head to the front.

When the funeral services are completed and the coffin lowered into the grave, the commander of the escort causes the escort to resume attention and fire three rounds of blank cartridges, the muzzles of the pieces being elevated.

A trumpeter then, at the head of the grave, sounds *taps.*

The escort is then formed into column, marched in quick time to its place of assembly, and dismissed.

The band does not play until it leaves the inclosure.

When the distance to the place of interment is considerable, the escort, after having left the camp or garrison, may march *at ease* until it approaches the burial ground, when it is called to attention. The band does not play while marching at ease.

In all funeral ceremonies, six pallbearers may be selected from the grade of the deceased, or the grades next above or below.

If a commissioned officer, the coffin is borne by six non-commissioned officers; if a non-commissioned officer or private, by six privates.

At the funeral of a general officer, the commander of the escort, in forming column, gives the appropriate commands for the cavalry, light artillery, and infantry, which form in column, in the order named, from front to rear. The trumpeters sound the march or flourishes, according to the rank of the deceased, whenever arms are presented, after which the band plays appropriate music. When marching to the cemetery, the trumpeters of the artillery and cavalry and field music of the infantry may alternate, in playing, with the band.

Should the entrance to the cemetery prevent the hearse from accompanying the escort till the latter halts at the

grave, the column is halted at the entrance long enough to take the coffin from the hearse, when the column is again put in march. The cavalry and artillery, when unable to enter the inclosure, form line facing the column and salute the remains as they pass.

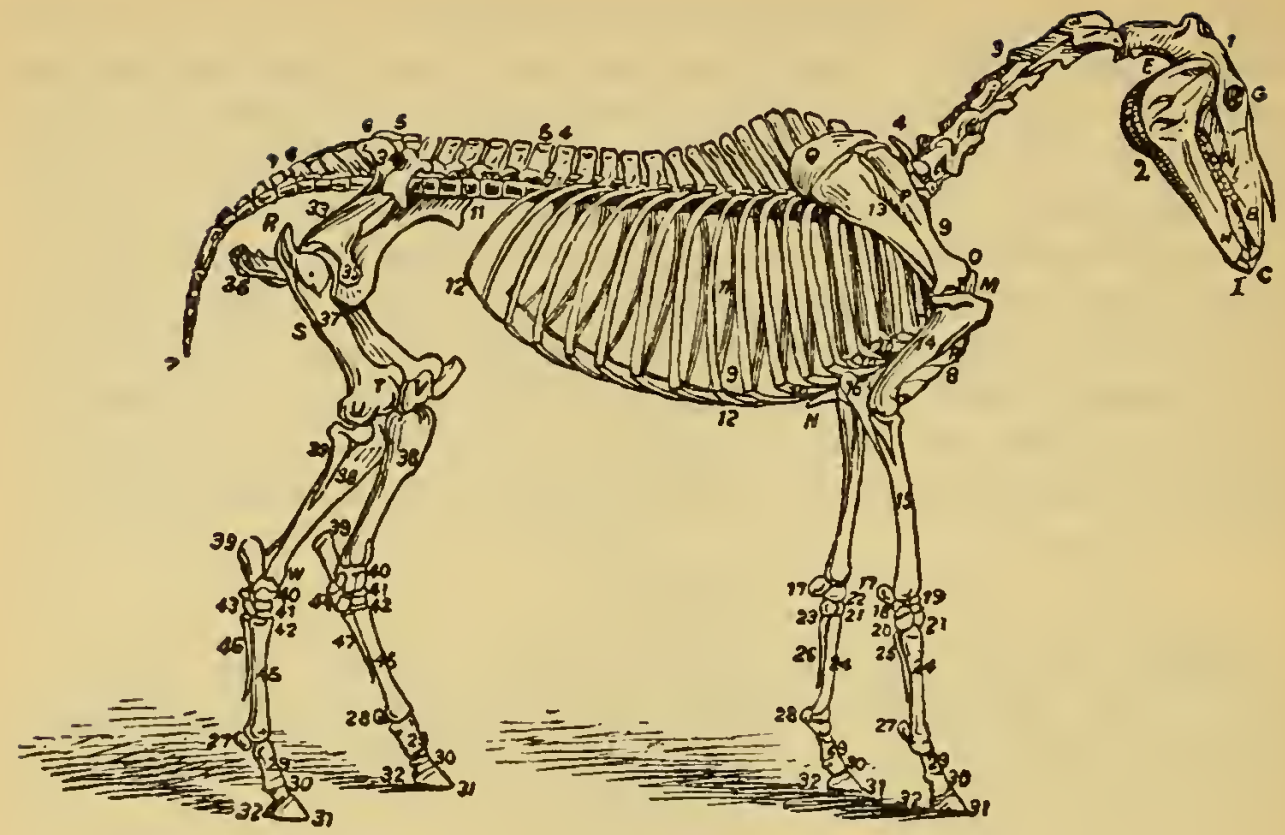
When necessary to escort the remains from the quarters of the deceased to a church, before the funeral service, arms are presented upon receiving the remains at the quarters, and also as they are borne into the church.

The commander of the escort, previous to the funeral, gives the clergyman and pallbearers all needful directions.

### *Mounted*

**1100.** The funeral ceremonies are conducted according to the principles prescribed when dismounted, except that while mounted, the saber is drawn, and honors are rendered by presenting saber.

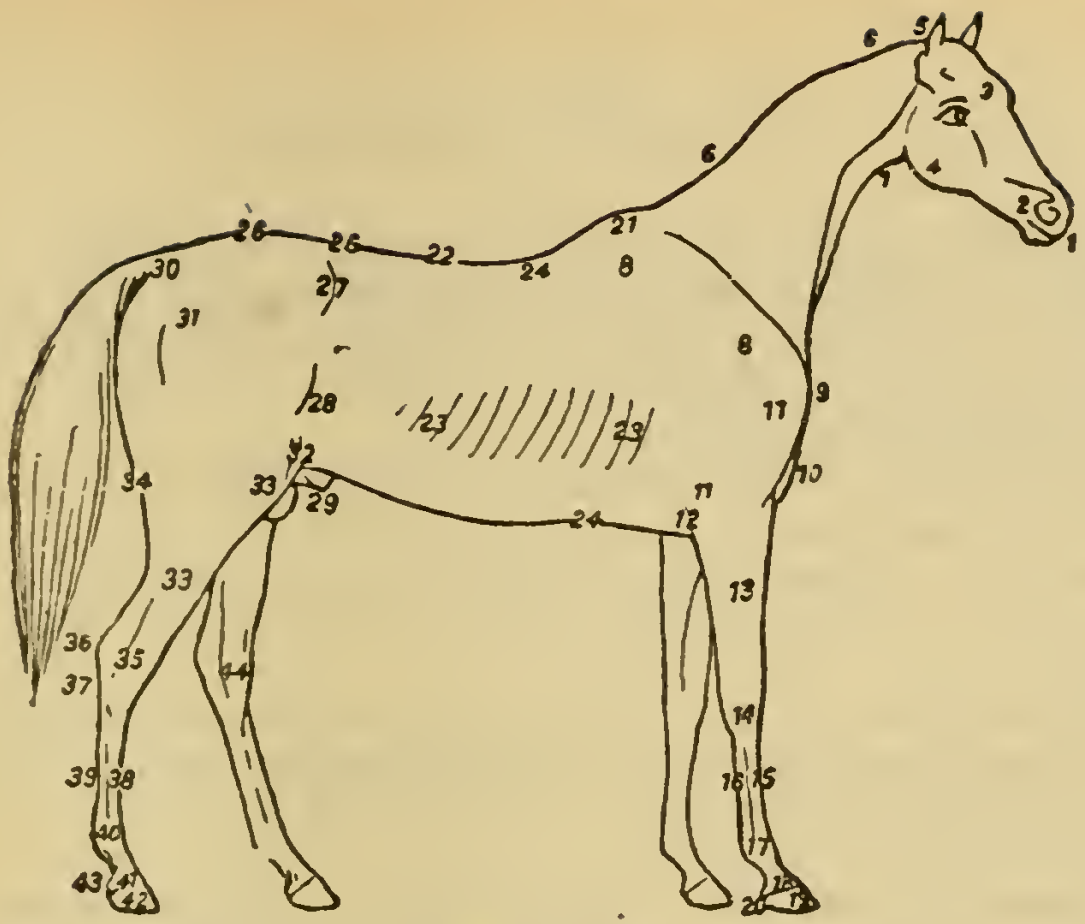
When the cavalry are to fire the salute over the grave, it is dismounted, as prescribed to fight on foot, assembled, and marched to the grave, where the ceremonies are completed as prescribed when dismounted.



Pl 155, Par. 1101.

A, Molar teeth.
B H, Canine or tush
C I, Incisors.
E. Atlas.
G, Orbit.
M, Cartiliform cartilage
N, Ensiform cartilage.
O, Coracoid process of scapula
P, Spine.
Q, Cartilage.
R, Trochanter major.
S, Subtrochanterian crest
T, Trochlea.
U, External condyle.
V, Patella.
W, Hock joint.

1, Cranium.
2, Lower jaw.
3, Cervical vertebræ.
4, 4, Dorsal vertebræ.
5, 5, Lumbar vertebræ.
6, 6, Sacrum.
7, 7, Coccygeal vertebræ.
8, Sternum.
9, 9, True ribs.
10, 10, Cartilages of true ribs.
11, 11, False ribs.
12, 12, Cartilages of false ribs
13, Scapula.
14, Humerus.
15, Radius.
16, Elbow.
17, Os pisiforme.
18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, Carpal bones
24, Large metacarpal bone.
25, Outer small metacarpal bone.
26, Inner small metacarpal bone
27, 28, Sesamoid bones.
29, Os suffraginis.
30, Os coronæ.
31, Os pedis.
32, Wing of the pedal bone.
33, 34, 35, 36, Os innominatum
37, Femur.
38, Tibia.
39, Os calcis.
40, Astragalus.
41, 42, 43, 44, Tarsal bones.
45, Large metatarsal bone.
46, Outer small metatarsal bone.
47, Inner small metatarsal bone.



Pl. 156, Par. 1101.

*Head.*

1, Muzzle.
2, Nostril.
3, Forehead.
4, Jaw.
5, Poll.

*Neck.*

6, 6, Crest.
7, Throttle or windpipe.

*Fore quarter.*

8, 8, Shoulder blade.
9, Point of shoulder.
10, Bosom or breast.
11, 11, True arm.
12, Elbow.
13, Forearm (arm)
14, Knee.
15, Cannon bone.
16, Back sinew.
17, Fetlock or pastern joint.
18, Coronet.
19, Hoof or foot.
20, Heel.

*Body or Middle piece*

21, Withers.
22, Back.
23, 23, Ribs (forming together the barrel or chest).
24, 24, The circumference of the chest at this point, called the girth.
25, The loins.
26, The croup.
27, The hip.
28, The flank.
29, Sheath.
30, The root of the dock or tail.

*Hind quarter*

31, The hip joint, round, or whirlbone.
32, The stifle joint.
33, 33, Lower thigh or gaskin.
34, The quarters.
35, The hock.
36, The point of the hock.
37, The curb place.
38, The cannon bone.
39, The back sinew.
40, Pastern or fetlock joint.
41, Coronet.
42, Hoof or foot.
43, Heel.
44, Spavin-place.

# CAVALRY HORSES.

**1101.** Cavalry officers should make themselves thoroughly acquainted with the natural history and physiology of the horse, and with the effects of different methods of treatment, changes of diet, etc., upon his system and powers of endurance.

They should have a familiar knowledge of the symptoms and methods of treatment of the diseases that are common to horses, what to do in emergencies, and a good knowledge of the effects of the medicines supplied to the troop.

It is the duty of the commanding officer to have his officers instructed in the foregoing requirements. To this end he prescribes such recitations and practical instruction as may be necessary.

**1102.** Horses when received at the regiment, are assigned to troops according to color, under direction of the commanding officer. They are branded on the near hip with the letter of the troop, the number of the regiment on the same horizontal line; as, D 7.

Captains make permanent assignments of horses to men. After a horse has been so assigned, his rider will not exchange him, nor allow him to be used by any other person, without permission of the captain.

Troop commanders, the adjutant, and the regimental quartermaster, will keep a descriptive book of the animals under their charge, showing the name, sex, age, size, color, marks, brands, and special peculiarities of each; how and when acquired; how long each has been in the service, and his fitness therefor; the particular use to which he is applied and the name of his rider. The date and cause of the death or transfer of every animal will also be recorded.

**1103.** Taking the useful effects of a man's daily labor as unity, a horse can carry a load on a horizontal plane of from four and eight-tenths to six and one-tenth.

A horse carrying a soldier and his equipments, say two hundred and twenty-five pounds, travels twenty-five miles in a day of eight hours, including ordinary resting stops. A pack animal can carry two hundred to two hundred and forty pounds for the same distance.

Ice of from four and one-half to six and one-half inches thick will bear cavalry marching in column of troopers or twos.

### *General Directions for Shoeing Horses.*

**1104.** In preparing the horse's feet for the shoe, no cutting whatever with the knife is permitted except when necessary to fit the toe clip. In removing surplus growth of that part of the foot which is the *seat of the shoe,* use the cutting pincers and rasp. *Opening the heels* or making a cut into the angle of the wall at the heel must not be allowed. *Flat-footed horses* should be treated as the necessity of each case may require. In *forging the shoe to fit the foot,* be careful that the shoe is fitted to and follows the circumference of the foot clear around to the heel; the heels of the shoe should not be extended back straight and outside of the walls at the heel of the horse's foot, as is frequently done. Care must be used that the shoe be not too small and the outer surface of the wall then rasped down to make the foot suit the shoe. The hot shoe must never be applied to the horse's foot under any circumstances. Make the upper or foot surface of the shoe perfectly flat, so as to give a level bearing. A shoe with a concave ground surface should be used.

In garrison, at the discretion of the colonel or commanding officer, the horses may be left unshod. Shoes will be fitted and kept ready to be put on the horses.

### *Hygiene of Stables.*

**1105.** Foul air and dampness cause many of the diseases of the horse, hence the importance and economy of spacious, clean, dry, and well-ventilated stables. Ceilings should be twelve to fifteen feet high, with large ventilators through the roof, and a window or side aperture in each stall, which should be placed well above the horse's eyes. If possible, the building should have no upper story or loft.

Double stalls should not be less than four feet six inches by nine feet to each horse, and not less than twelve hundred cubic feet should be allowed to each horse in the stable.

In stables with a loft, ventilation from the top is always insufficient, and there must be side openings well above the horses, so that the draft will pass over their heads. These openings should not be closed, except on the windward side, to keep out the rain or snow.

If the stable is partitioned off into single stalls, each stall should be at least five feet in width, to permit the horse to lie down without difficulty.

A picket line is established in the immediate vicinity of each troop stable, the horses being tied to a manilla or wire rope or chain passed through the picket posts. There should be shallow trenches behind the horses to carry off rain, the ground on which they stand having just enough slope to let water run into the trenches, or there may be a single drain in the center along the line of the posts. Constant attention must be given to keeping the ground about the picket line in good order.

### *General Rules for Stable Management.*

**1106.** The following general rules are recommended:—

The stable sergeant has immediate charge of the police and sanitary condition of the stable, picket line, etc.,

and is the custodian of the forage and stable property generally.

The stable is to be kept thoroughly policed, free from smells, and, except portions of stalls that horses can reach, should be well lime-washed. There must be no accumulation of manure or foul litter inside, nor near the doors or windows without. The feed boxes are washed from time to time, and kept clean. The ground about the picket line is swept daily, and all dung, etc., carried to the manure heap.

Except at night, when the horses are bedded down, no manure or urine is to remain in the stalls; the stable police remove it as it accumulates.

If practicable, all woodwork within reach of the horses, and not protected with sheet iron or other metal, should be painted with thin coal tar to prevent its being gnawed. The same precaution may be followed with regard to troughs, picket posts, and picket line. It should be thoroughly dried before putting horses near it.

Smoking in stables, or in their immediate vicinity, is prohibited.

One or more lamps will be hung in each stable to burn during the night.

The horses are stalled according to their positions in the squads; their places at the picket line will be in accordance with the same rule.

Over each horse's stall is placed the name of the horse, under that of his rider.

Clay is the best for earthen floors. Gravel, or sandy earth, is not suitable.

The sloping of the floor of stalls from the manger to the heel post is injurious and uncomfortable for the animal, making him stand in an unnatural position, with the forelegs higher than the hind ones. When the earthen floors are level, the horse will paw a hollow for his forefeet unless he can elevate his hindquarters by backing out of the stall.

Whenever horses go out of the stable, the windows of their stalls are to be kept open, unless necessary to exclude rain or snow, or when cold drafts affect the animals in contiguous or opposite stalls.

Stable doors are never closed in the daytime, except to keep out wet, or to exclude cold winds that blow on the horses. If the doors be in a single piece, bars are put across the doorway; if divided into upper and lower halves, it will usually be sufficient to open the upper part. At night, the entrance to the stables should be secured in such manner as will prevent the escape of animals.

When circumstances permit, horses should be turned loose in the paddock during the daytime, or herded under charge of a guard. When neither is practicable, they should, except in very cold, windy weather, or in very hot weather where there is no shade, stand most of the day at the picket line, as they have better air and are less confined, while the stables become drier and more healthful.

In ordinary climates, cavalry stables must be kept as cool as possible. If the horses do not stand directly in the draft, the colder the stable the less will they suffer if called suddenly to take the field. For the same reason, horses should never be blanketed in the stable, except during very cold weather.

### *Treatment and Care of Horses.*

**1107.** Horses require gentle treatment. Docile but bold horses are apt to retaliate upon those who abuse them, while persistent kindness often reclaims vicious animals.

A horse must never be kicked or struck upon or near the head with the hand, reins, or any instrument whatever.

At least two hours' exercise daily is necessary to the health and good condition of horses; they should be

marched a few miles when cold weather, muddy ground, etc., prevent drill.

Horses' legs will be hand rubbed often, particularly after severe exercise, as this removes enlargements and relieves or prevents stiffness.

In mild weather, the sheath will be washed occasionally with warm water and castile soap, and then greased; in cold weather, when necessary, the sheath should be greased.

Horses used freely in snow and slush must not be placed in a warm stable with littered stalls.

Greatest care will be taken in the fitting of the saddles; sore backs are generally occasioned by neglect, and the men must never be allowed to lounge or sit unevenly in their saddles.

### *Sick Horses.*

**1108.** In the absence of a veterinary surgeon, the horses on sick report are under charge of the stable sergeant, who reports daily to the captain for instructions as to their treatment.

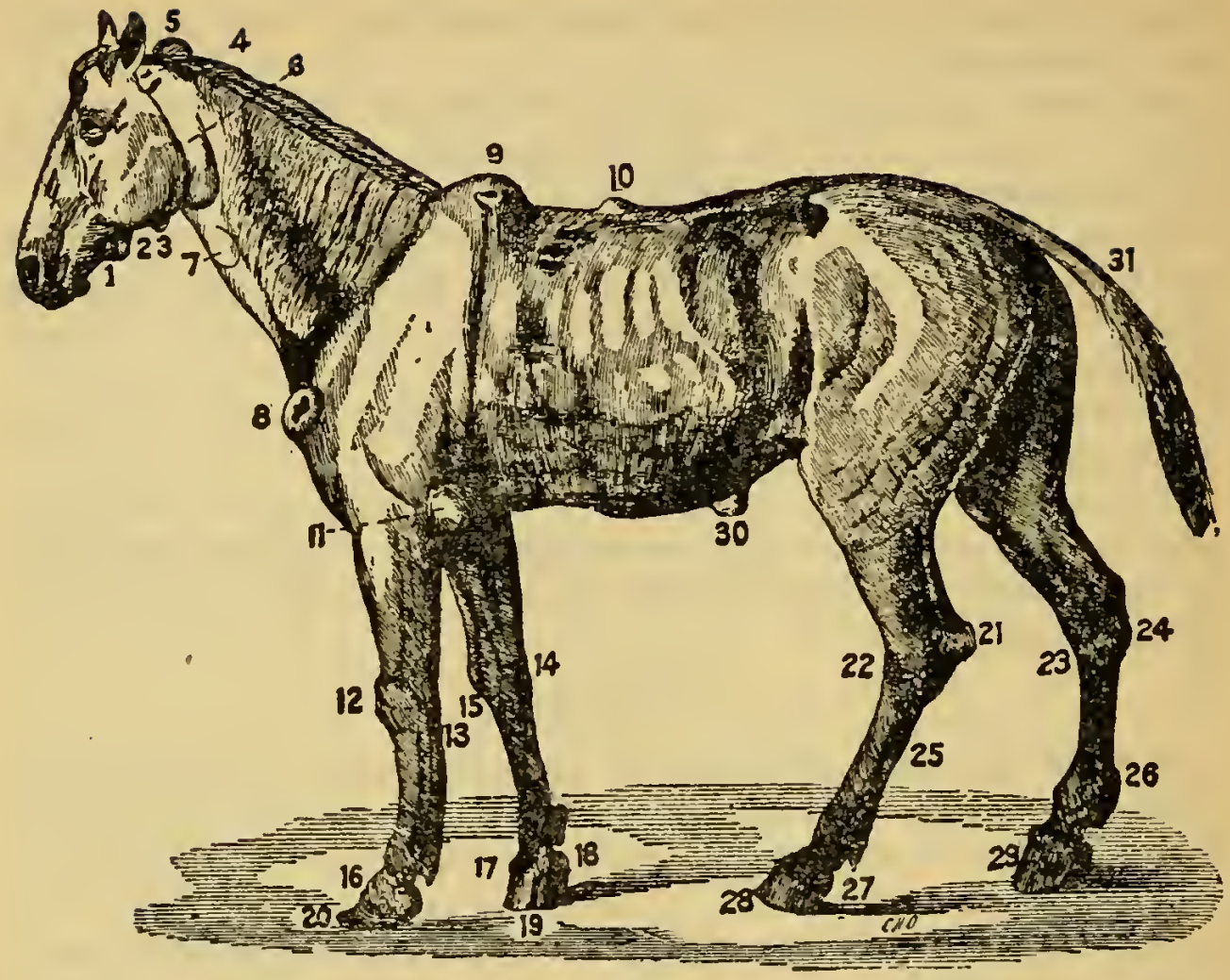
In treating sick horses it is to be observed that very little medicine is ordinarily required, and that unnecessary doses do a great deal of harm.

If a horse sustain an injury, neglect his feed, refuse to drink, or give any evidence of illness, it will at once be reported.

No horse on sick report will be taken from the stable or picket line for exercise or work without permission from proper authority.

If there be at any time a suspicious discharge from one or both nostrils of an animal, it must be immediately reported.

To prevent contagion, an animal that shows any symptom of glanders must be isolated at once, and confined or tied up in some locality where no other animal can come in contact with him.




Pl. 157, Par. 1108.

1, Caries of the lower jaw.
2, Fistula of the parotid duct.
3, Bony excrescence or exostosis of the lower jaw.
4, Swelling by pressure of the bridle.
5, Poll-evil.
6, Inflamed parotid gland.
7, Inflamed jugular vein.
8, Fungus tumor, produced by pressure of the collar.
9, Fistula in the withers.
10, Saddle-gall.
11, Tumor of the elbow.
12, Induration of the knee.
13, Clap of the back sinews.
14, Malanders.
15, Splint.
16, Ring-bone.
17, A tread upon the coronet.
18, Quittor.
19, Sandcrack.
20, Contracted or ring foot of a foundered horse.
21, Capped hock.
22, Malanders.
23, Spavin.
24, Curb.
25, Swelled sinews.
26, Thick leg.
27, Grease.
28, A crack in front of the foot, called cow-crack.
29, Quarter-crack.
30, Ventral hernia.
31, Rat-tail.

A glandered horse should be killed as soon as possible. The stall in which he stood is torn down and all the woodwork burned and the iron work disinfected; or, otherwise, it is closed, and must remain empty until the rack, manger, and every part of the iron and wood work, as also the vessels used in watering and feeding, and his saddle and bit, have been three or four times thoroughly washed with a 5 per cent. solution of carbolic acid or a 1 to 1,000 solution of corrosive sublimate; all parts to which it has been applied should be throughly scrubbed with hot water to remove the poisonous salt. The application of lime wash to all the stalls, after complete disinfection, is desirable. Small articles, such as bits, etc., can be disinfected by keeping them immersed for a half hour in boiling water. All articles of little value that have been used with a glandered horse, such as halters, bridles, horse cloths, saddlecloths, blankets, nosebags, currycombs, brushes, etc., should be destroyed.

Stables occupied by infected or suspected horses should be disinfected daily by washing exposed surfaces with a 5 per cent. solution of carbolic acid; nosebags, halters, buckets used for drinking water, etc., should be carefully washed with the same solution or with boiling water.

## VETERINARY MEDICINES.

### *Internally Administered.*

**1109.** Medicines that act on the stomach and intestines or their contents:—

*Cathartics;* agents that cause purgation: Aloes, calomel, epsom salts, common salt and sulphur; croton, linseed, and castor oils; injections and mashes.

*Anthelmintics;* agents that destroy or expel worms: Nearly all the cathartics, tartarated antimony, and sulphide of iron.

*Nauseants;* agents that induce nausea: Aloes and white hellebore.

*Antacids;* agents that counteract acidity: Soap and the carbonates of lime, magnesia, soda, and potash.

*Alteratives;* agents that bring about a healthy state of the system: Aloes, calomel, cod-liver oil, sulphur, nitrate of potash.

*Cardiacs;* agents that invigorate the system by stimulating the stomach: Cayenne pepper, ginger, gentian, caraway seeds.

*Demulcents;* agents that lubricate or sheathe surfaces: Glycerine, gum-arabic, linseed, and starch.

*Antidotes;* agents that counteract the effects of poisons: Depending upon the kind of poison.

Medicines that act upon the brain, nerves, and nerve centers:—

*Excitants;* agents that stimulate the brain, nerves, and nerve centers, and thus increase their energy: Alcohol, ammonia, arnica, strychnia.

*Narcotics;* agents that are excitants, but whose action is followed by depression of energy: Camphor, henbane, belladonna, opium.

*Sedatives;* agents that depress nervous power, or lower circulation: Digitalis, hydrocyanic acid, tartrated antimony, and chloroform.

*Antispasmodics;* agents that prevent or allay cramps: Alcohol, ethers, oil of turpentine, opium.

Medicines that act upon glands or glandular structures:—

*Stimulants;* agents that act upon the glands generally: Calomel, oxide of mercury, iodine and its compounds.

*Diuretics;* agents that increase the secretion of urine: Copaiba, nitrate of potash, turpentine, resin.

*Parturients;* agents that cause contraction of the womb; Ergot of rye.

*Lithontriptics;* agents that dissolve calculi: Hydrochloric acid, the fixed alkalies.

*Diaphoretics;* agents that cause perspiration: Colchi-

cum, tartar emetic, acetate of ammonia, spirits of nitrous ether.

Medicines that act upon the muscular fiber:—

*Tonics;* agents that act gradually, and permanently improve digestion and nutrition: Gentian, the sulphates of iron, copper, and zinc; cascarilla bark, camomile flowers.

*Astringents;* agents that cause contraction of muscular fiber: Alum, catechu, oak bark, tannic acid

### *Externally Administered.*

**1110.** Medicines that act upon the skin and external parts by direct application:—

*Refrigerants;* agents that diminish morbid heat of a part: Salt and cold water, solutions of acetate and subacetate of lead.

*Discutients;* agents that dispel enlargements: Compounds of iodine, soap liniment, camphor.

*Rubefacients;* agents that cause heat or redness of skin without blistering: Liniments of ammonia, tar, and turpentine; vinegar.

*Vesicants;* agents that produce blisters Cantharides, tartar emetic, croton oil, hot water.

*Caustics;* agents that decompose the part to which applied: Carbolic, nitric, sulphuric, and hydrochloric acids; chlorides of antimony and zinc; corrosive sublimate, nitrate of silver, sulphate of copper, hot iron.

*Pyogenics;* agents that induce suppuration of wounds: Liniment and ointment of turpentine, black hellebore.

*Detergents;* agents that cleanse wounds and skin, and excite them to healthy action: Acetate of copper, creosote, liniment of sulphate of copper, ointment of chloride of ammonia and nitrate of mercury; sulphur and some of its compounds.

*Astringents;* agents that diminish discharge from wounds: Alum, sulphate of zinc, acetate of lead.

*Antiseptics;* agents that destroy putrid condition of

wounds: Carbolic acid, salicylic acid, iodoform, charcoal, chloride of zinc, nitrate of potash, permanganate of potash, yeast.

*Traumatics;* agents that excite healing in wounds: Aloes, myrrh, collodion, oil of tar, resin, solutions of sulphate of copper and zinc.

*Emollients;* agents that soften and relax parts: Fomentations, lard, olive oil, palm oil, poultices.

# PACKING.

## *Pack Trains.*

**1111.** Active, short-coupled, short-legged, "blocky" mules, weighing from eight hundred to one thousand pounds, are considered the best for pack animals.

Under favorable conditions each animal can carry a load of about 30 per cent. of his own weight; the load should not be much in excess of two hundred pounds when long or hard marches are to be made.

With fifty packs there should be twelve packers.

Each troop should have four mess boxes, seven-eighth-inch lumber, dovetailed, 11 inches by 18 inches by 26 inches, and when packed in pack cover, without lids.

In camp or garrison, logs of wood, twenty-six inches long, and sacks of corn, double sacked and lashed to avoid breaking sacks, having the weight it is intended the mules should carry, are kept on hand for drill purposes.

Each pack should be provided with two coils of three-eighth-inch rope, eighteen to twenty-eight feet long for lashing side packs.

The pack saddle consists of the *saddle proper;* two *pads; crupper; corona; manta* or *pack cover;* two pieces of canvas, each 84 inches by 22 inches, stitched together on the long edges; *halter* and *strap; canvas cincha,* ten inches wide; *sling-rope,* one-half inch best hand-laid manilla whale-line, twenty to thirty-two feet long; and *leather cincha,* with *lash-rope* five-eighth-inch whale-line forty-two feet long. There should be one *blind* for every five packs.

The size of rope is given by the measurement of its diameter.

A "full-rigged" saddle has *sling-straps* and *cargo cincha;* the sling and lash ropes are then dispensed with.

While saddling, loading, or readjusting the packs, the animals should be blinded. The mules should be trained to stand perfectly quiet while the blind is on; they should never be led or forced to move without first removing the blind.

### *To Fit the Saddle.*

**1112.** The pack saddle is fitted to the animal in a manner similar to that of the riding saddle; it is so constructed that it can be placed one and one-half inches farther forward than the riding saddle.

If the pads are not square, draw the screws, unlace the pads from the skirts, then square and fit them to the animal by placing the canvas cincha immediately around the animal's girth, the front edge touching the breast bone (cartilages of true ribs), the middle of the cincha being exactly in the middle of the lower edges of the pads; then screw the pads to the saddle bars, keeping the cincha in place till the adjustment is made; then remove the cincha and re-lace the pads.

Adjust the canvas cincha so as to be long enough to go nearly around the girth of the mule, over the saddle.

Adjust the crupper by lengthening or shortening the lace strings that attach it to the saddle, taking care not to make it too tight.

### *To Saddle.*

**1113.** Place the corona on the mule's back, about two to two and one-half inches in front of where the pommel end of the saddle is to rest; place the folded saddle blanket over the corona; take the saddle by both yokes and place it squarely in position, a little in rear of its proper place; place the crupper under the dock and gently move the saddle forward to position; pass the ring end of the canvas cincha over the saddle from left to right and under the belly; pass the latigo through the ring and tighten the cincha; when cinched, the ring end of the cincha should be above the lower edge of the near pad.

### *Cargoes.*

**1114.** The rations should be carefully put up in one hundred pound packs lashed solidly, and carried on the best pack mules; each pack is plainly marked with its contents and weighed.

Salt, sugar, coffee, and beans are double-sacked and lashed in one hundred pound packages. Bacon, in one hundred pound packages, is packed in from five to eight pounds of clean straw or hay, double-sacked, and lashed firmly.

The yeast-powder cases should be opened and hay or straw stuffed closely around the boxes to prevent shaking, and, with other articles, lashed into one hundred pound packages.

Each cargo is in two side packs of about one hundred to one hundred and twenty-five pounds each, and should match in size, shape and weight, as nearly as practicable, each side pack having, as nearly as may be, the following proportions: width, one-half more than the thickness, length nearly one-half more than width; *e. g.*, 12 inches by 18 inches by 25 inches.

All the salt, sugar, coffee, and beans should not be placed in one cargo. Ammunition should be in cargoes.

Pads or cushions of hay 26 inches by 44 inches may be placed under the cincha to keep long and rough packs from the animal's hips and shoulders.

### *To Load Cargo.*

**1115.** The packers should work by threes, designated Nos. 1, 2, and 3. No. 1 is on the near side, No. 2 on the off side of the mule; when No. 3 works with No. 1, he is nearest the croup; when with No. 2, he is opposite the mule's shoulders.

The mule is placed near to, and with its left side next to the cargo by No. 2, who then puts on the blind.

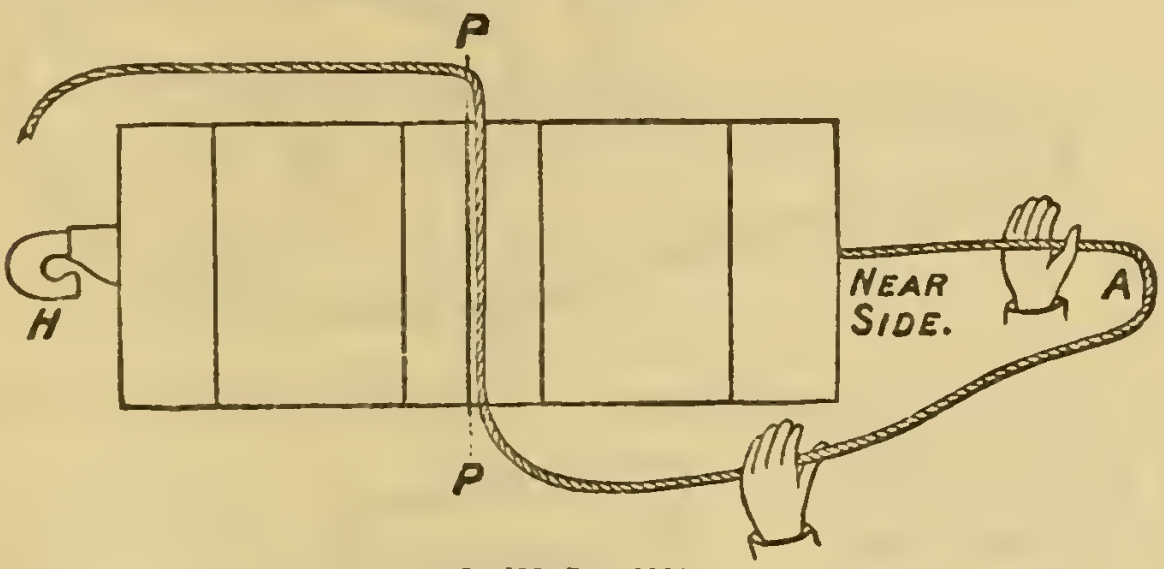
No. 1, on the near side, passes the center of the sling

rope over the saddle to the off side far enough to allow the rope to pass over the off side pack and come back within his reach, the parts of the rope separated by six to twelve inches. Nos. 2 and 3 take the off side pack, place it well up on the saddle; No. 2 grasps the loop of the sling rope with his right hand, brings the rope up against the pack and lets the loop drop over his right shoulder, in readiness to pass it over the pack; No. 2 holds the pack in place. No. 3 passes to the near side and with No. 1 takes the near side pack and places it, flat side next the mule, well up on the saddle, lapping the upper edge well over the upper edge of the off side pack. No. 1, with his back to the mule's shoulder, takes the end of the front part of the sling rope, passes it from the outside through the loop, and pulls it down with the right hand; he now grasps the rear end of the sling rope with the left hand, and ties the ends together in a square bow knot, the packs high up.

No. 1 calls out: *Settle;* No. 1 and No. 2 each grasps his side of the cargo by the lower corners, lifts upward and outward, settling the upper edges well together and balancing the load. If the packs are tied too high, they are easily lowered, but if tied too low they must be lifted and placed as in the first trial.

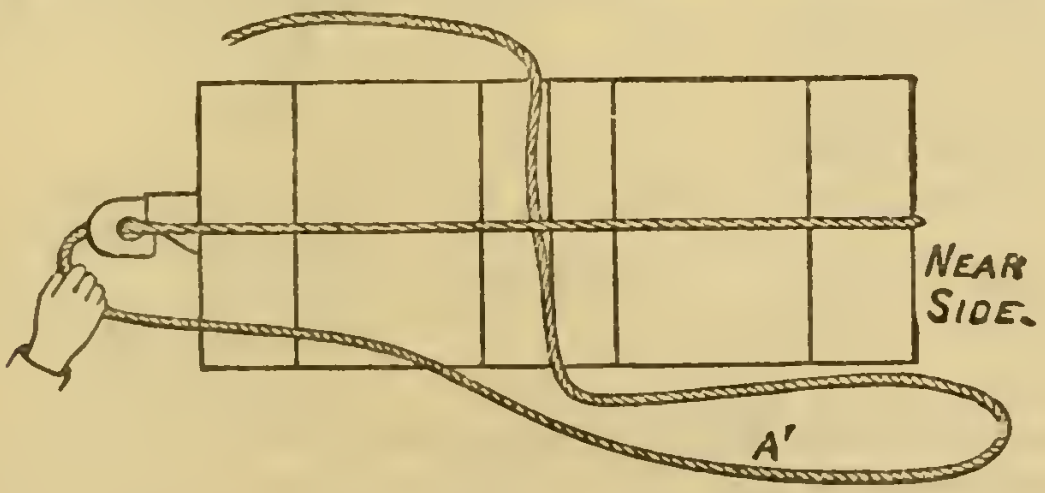
While Nos. 1 and 2 are tying and placing the cargo, No. 3 takes the lash rope, throws the free end to the rear of the mule, convenient to No. 2, and places the cincha end in front of No. 1. No. 1 grasps the rope with the right hand, three feet from the cincha, and passes the hook end of the cincha under the mule to No. 2. who takes the hook (H, Pl. 158) in the left hand; No. 1, with the left hand, grasps the rope three feet above the right, raises the rope, and lays it between the side packs from rear to front (PP), pulling it to the front. until a long enough loop (A) is formed to pass over the cargo and fasten in the cincha hook (H, Pl. 158). The right hand, back down, holds the cincha end of the rope, the loop

(A) falling outward over the right forearm; the left hand, back up, holding the other part of the rope between the loop and the middle of the packs; No. 1 now throws the



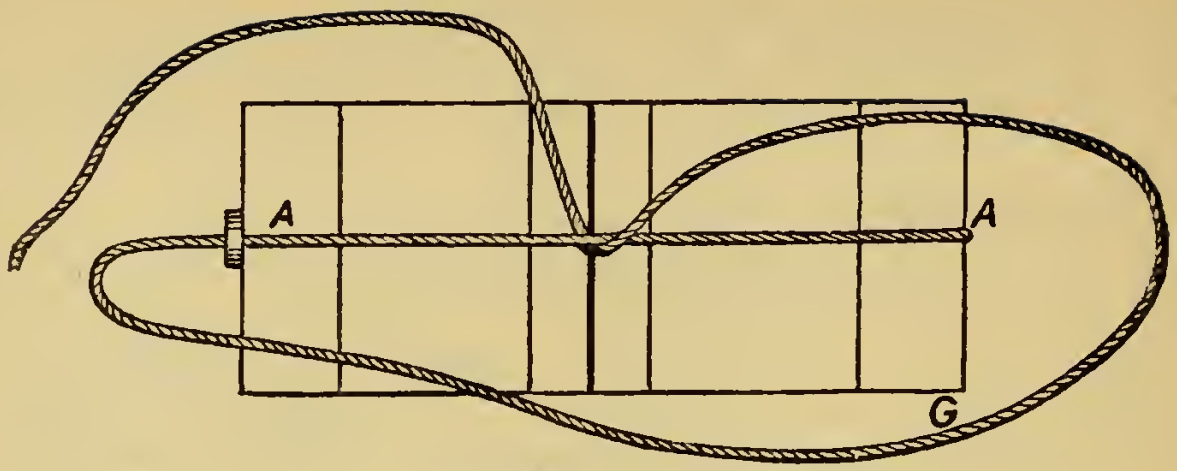

Pl. 158, Par. 1115.

loop (A) over the pack, then lets the part in the left hand drop on the mule's neck, thus forming another loop (A′, Pl. 159); No. 2 passes the rope through the hook, pulls the cincha end of rope till the hook is drawn up so that, when tightened, the hook shall be near the lower



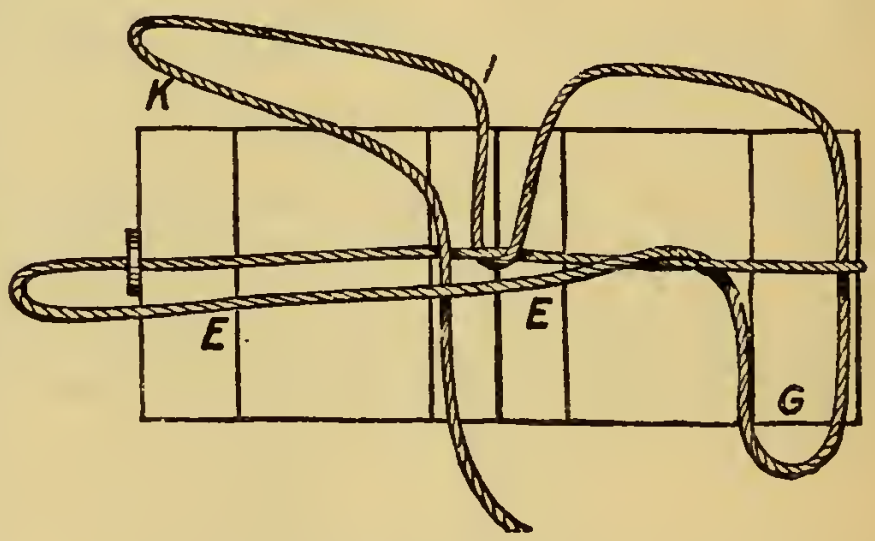

Pl. 159, Par. 1115.

edge of the off pad; No. 1 now grasps the rope at G, Pl. 160, and tucks a loop, from rear to front, under the part AA, Pl. 160, over the center of the near side pack (G, Pl. 161); No. 2 passes the free end of the rope under the

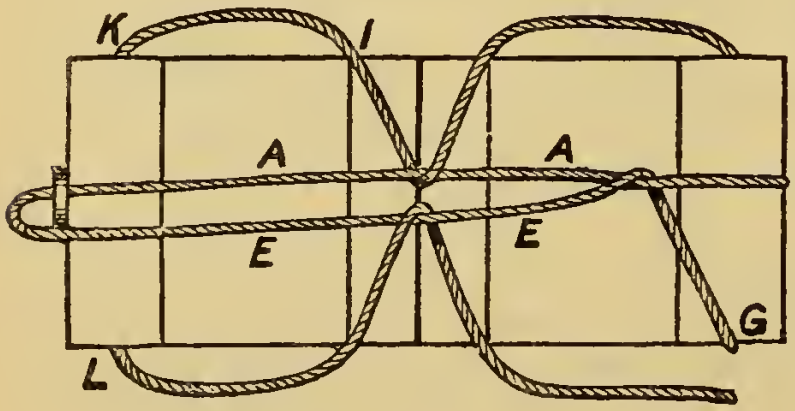



Pl. 160, Par. 1115.

part EE, Pl. 161, and throws it over on the near side of the mule's neck; No. 1 draws the tucked loop forward and forces the rope under the corners and lower edge of the near pad and hauls it taut from above the rear corner; No. 2 grasps the rope at I, Pl. 161, with the left hand, and at K, Pl. 161, with the right, passes the rope under the corners and lower edge of off pad (K, L, Pl. 162), and hauls taut at the front corner, No. 1 taking in the slack at the free end of rope.




Pl. 161, Par. 1115.




Pl. 162, Par. 1115.

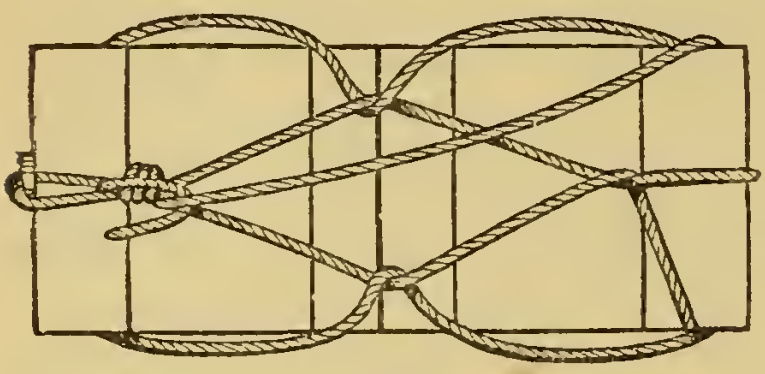
The lash rope is now ready for final tightening.

No. 2 removes the blind, leads the mule forward a few steps, No. 1, in rear, at the same time looking to see if the packs are properly adjusted. The mule is agair blinded.

The object of the final tightening is to lash the load firmly to the saddle; pulling all the parts of the lash-rope taut, and taking up the slack, commencing at the cincha, and continuing the process from part to part, until the slack is taken up at the free end of the lash-rope. While No. 2 is pulling the parts taut, No. 1 takes up the slack or steadies the cargo, and vice versa; the pulling is done in such manner as not to shake the cargo out of position.

No. 2 grasps the lash-rope above where it leaves the hook and below the edge of the pad, right hand below left, places the left knee against rear corner of pad; No. 1 grasps with the right hand the same part of the rope where it comes over the pack on the near side, and with the left hand at G, Pl. 162, places his right shoulder against the pack to steady it; he then says: *Pull.* No. 2 tightens by steady pulls, and, without letting the rope slip back through the hook, gives the slack to No. 1, who takes it up by steady pulls. When No. 2 thinks the cincha is sufficiently drawn, he says: *Enough.* No. 1 holds solid with the right hand, slips the left down to where the rope passes over the front edge of pad, and holds solid; the right hand then grasps the continuation of the rope at rear corner of pad and pulls taut; then, with both hands, placing his right knee against rear corner of pad, pulls the rope well home, No. 2 taking up the slack by grasping the rope (I, Pl. 162) where it comes over the rear end of off side pack, with both hands. No. 1 steps to the front and steadies the pack; No. 2 then pulls taut the parts on his side, taking up the slack; this draws the part of the lash-rope AA, Pl. 162, well back at the middle of the pack; he then with the left hand at the rear corner of pad (K) pulls taut, and holds solid, while with right

hand at front corner of pad (L), he takes up slack; he then with both hands at, and placing his knee against, the front corner of the pad, pulls well taut, No. 1 taking up the slack on his side, and then pulls solid, drawing the part EE, Pl. 162, of the rope coming out from the hook well forward at the middle of pack, then carries the free end under the corners and end of pad, draws taut and ties the end fast by a half-hitch near cincha end of lash-rope. If the rope should be long enough to reach over the load, after passing under the corners, it is passed over and made fast on the off side by tying around both parts of the lash-rope above the hook and drawing them well together.



Pl. 163, Par. 1115.

**1116.** To tighten the lash-rope on the load it is necessary to take up and pass the slack as in the final tightening.

To slacken the rope on the load it is necessary to begin to slacken from the free end, and carry the slack by reversing the process of tightening.

When the pack cover is used, it is placed over the cargo before putting on the lash-rope.

When the side packs are of unequal bulk or weight, the larger or heavier should be placed on the near side; it should then lap over the off side pack until the packs balance.

*Top packs, i. e.,* small packages placed in the middle between the side packs, should be avoided.

When the sling-rope is half-hitched into the saddle yokes, the load is made more secure, but there is great danger of injury to the mule's back.

On the *full-rigged* saddle, the canvas cincha is attached to the saddle by the "spider;" the side packs are laid on the saddle as before, held by the sling straps and secured by the *cargo cincha.* The lash and sling rope are then dispensed with; but use of the lash and sling rope gives greater security to the cargo and greater comfort to the mule.

### *To Unload Cargo.*

**1117.** Only two men, Nos. 1 and 2, are necessary; they work as when loading.

The mule is placed with head toward the center of where the cargoes are piled. No. 1 puts on the blind; No. 2 unfastens the free end of the lash-rope; then Nos. 1 and 2 slacken the rope; No. 2 with the left hand removes the part under the end and corners of the pad on the off side, and unhooks the cincha with the right hand; No. 1 removes the part under the end and corners of the pad on the near side, gathers the parts of the rope together on his side with both hands, coiling it, and lays the rope on the ground where he intends to place the cargo, the cincha and free end exposed on the side opposite where the rigging is to be placed. No. 1 unties the sling-rope, casts it loose, takes his side pack and places it on the lash-rope across the line of cargo; No. 2, at the same time, takes his side pack and lays it on top of near side pack and then, holding the sling rope at center loop, doubles it and places it on top of load, loop exposed, for convenience when required.

The second load is placed end to end with the first and on the side next to where the rigging is to be placed; the end of the lash-rope is coiled and placed on top of the last sling-rope, and is used for tying the mule when reloading.

The saddle cinchas should be slackened and the mules allowed to cool before removing the saddles.

*To Unsaddle.*

**1118.** Unfasten the latigo and throw the end across the top of saddle; fold the cincha with latigo inside and place across top of saddle; push the saddle back, remove crupper from under dock, double it forward, with crupper above cincha on top of saddle, and remove saddle; the saddles are placed in line, resting on the ends of pads.

## TRUMPET CALLS, ETC.

### WARNING CALLS.

**1119.** *First call, guard mounting, full dress, overcoats, drill, stable, water,* and *boots and saddles;* they precede the *assembly* by such interval as may be prescribed by the commanding officer.

*Mess, church,* and *fatigue,* classed as *service calls,* may also be used as warning calls.

*First call* is the first signal for formation for roll call on foot.

*Guard mounting* is the first signal for guard mounting.

*Boots and saddles* is the signal for mounted formations; for mounted guard mounting or mounted drills, it immediately follows the signal *guard mounting* or *drill.*

The trumpeters assemble at *first call, guard mounting,* and *boots and saddles.*

When full dress or overcoats are to be worn, the *full dress* or *overcoats* call immediately follows *first call, guard mounting,* or *boots and saddles.*

### FORMATION CALLS.

*Assembly;* the signal for the troops or details to form on their troop parade grounds.

*Adjutant's call;* the signal for the troops or details to assemble on the camp or garrison parade ground; it follows the *assembly* at such interval as may be prescribed by the commanding officer.

## ALARM CALLS.

*Fire call;* the signal for the men to fall in without arms to extinguish fire.

*To arms;* the signal for the men to fall in under arms, dismounted, on their troop parade grounds as quickly as possible.

*To horse;* the signal for the men to proceed under arms to their horses, saddle, mount, and assemble at designated place as quickly as possible.

## SERVICE CALLS.

*Taps, mess, sick, church, recall, issue, officers', captain's, first sergeant's, fatigue, school,* and *the general.*

*The general* is the signal for striking tents and loading wagons preparatory to marching.

*Reveille* and *tattoo* precede the assembly for roll call; the *retreat* follows the *assembly*, the interval being only that required for formation and roll call, except when there is parade.

*Assembly, reveille, retreat, adjutant's call, to the standard,* the *flourishes,* and the *marches* are sounded by all the trumpeters united; the other calls. as a rule, are sounded by the trumpeter of the guard or orderly trumpeter; he may also sound the *assembly* when the trumpeters are not united.

The morning gun is fired at the first note of *reveille;* or, if marches are played before reveille, it is fired at the commencement of the first march.

The evening gun is fired at the last note of *retreat.*

The drill signals include both the preparatory commands and the commands of execution; the last note is the command of execution.

When a command is given by trumpet, the chiefs of subdivisions give the proper commands orally.

The memorizing of these signals will be facilitated by observing that all movements to the right are on the as-

cending chord, that the corresponding movements to the left are corresponding signals on the descending chord; and that changes of gait are all upon the same note.

It will be observed that *captain's* (or *troop commander's*) *call* is the first two bars of *officer's call* with the *attention* added. The signals *platoon right turn, platoon left turn, troop right turn,* and *troop left turn* correspond to the signals *platoon right, platoon left, troop right,* and *troop left,* but have the signal *forward, march* added instead of the signal *march.*

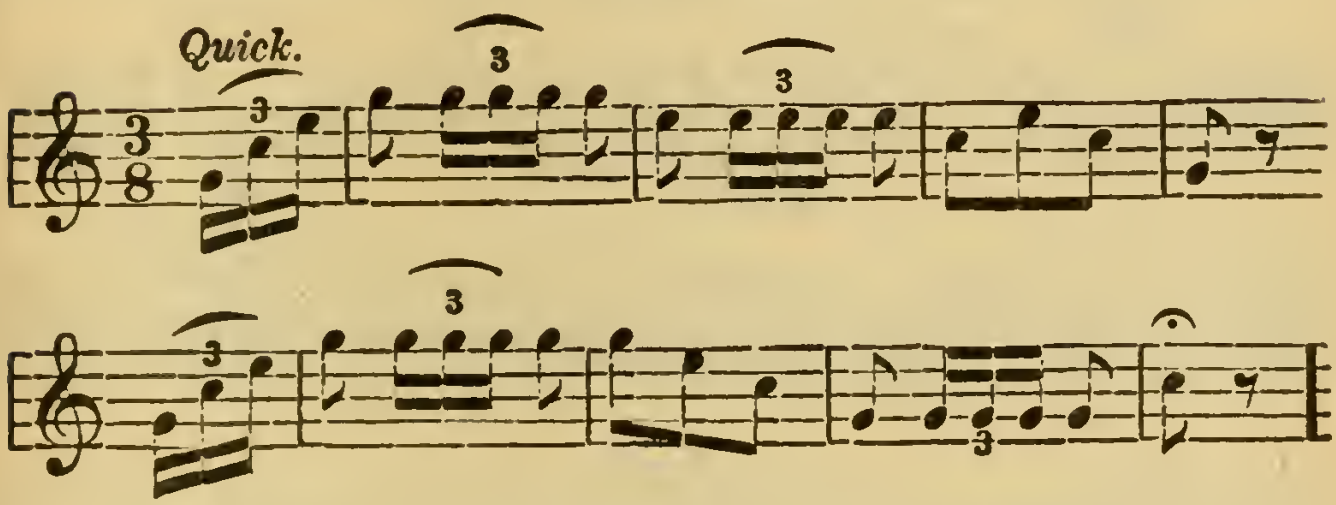
*Fours right* and *by the right flank* are the same; at this signal, troopers deployed as skirmishers or foragers move individually by the right flank; organizations or subdivisions in close order wheel by fours to the right.

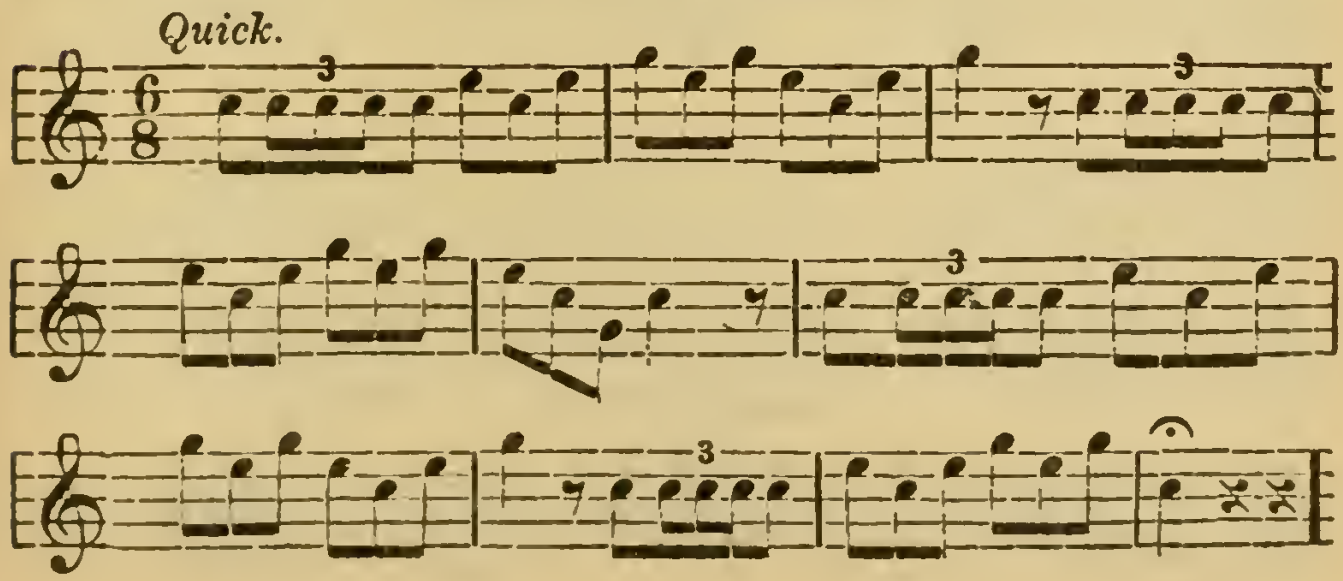
The same applies to the signal *fours left* and *by the left flank.*

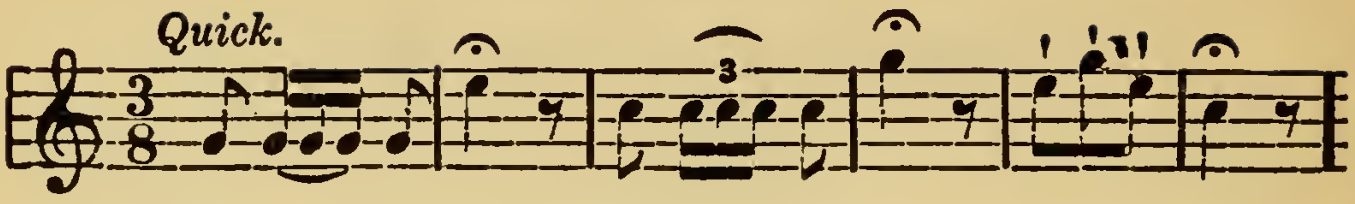
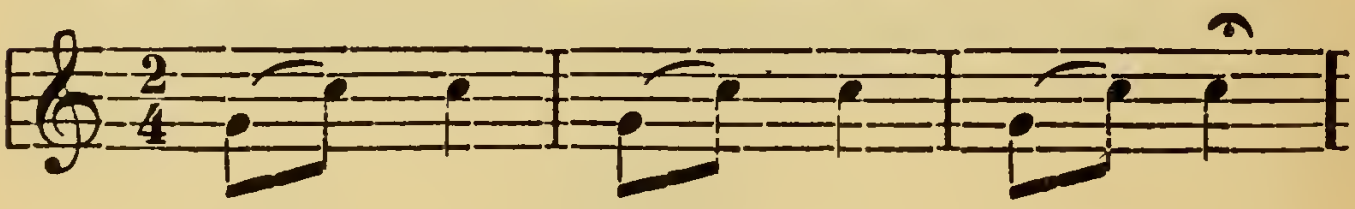
*To the rear* corresponds to *faced to the rear,* but has the signal *forward, march,* instead of the signal *march.*

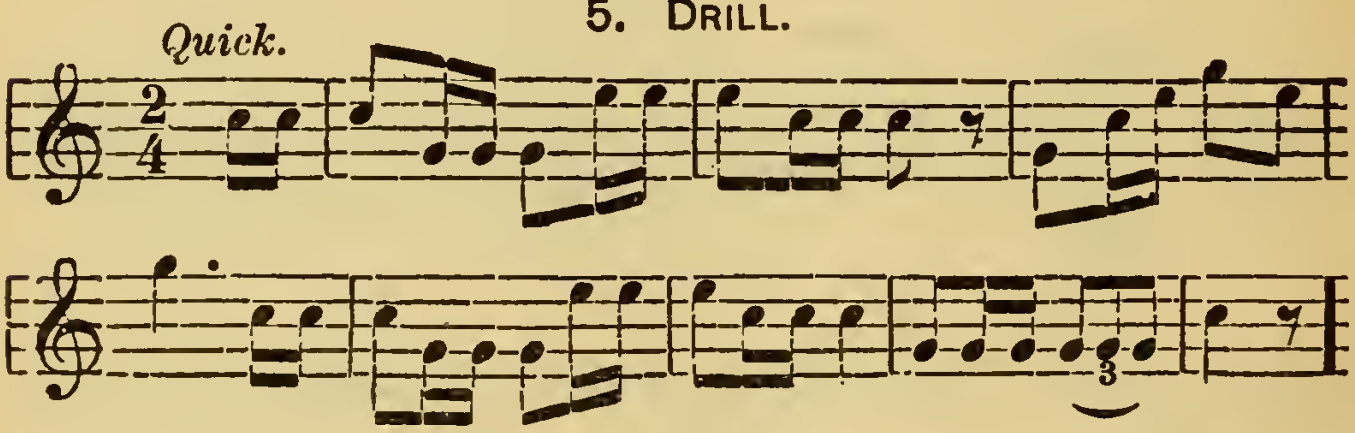
# TRUMPET CALLS, &c.

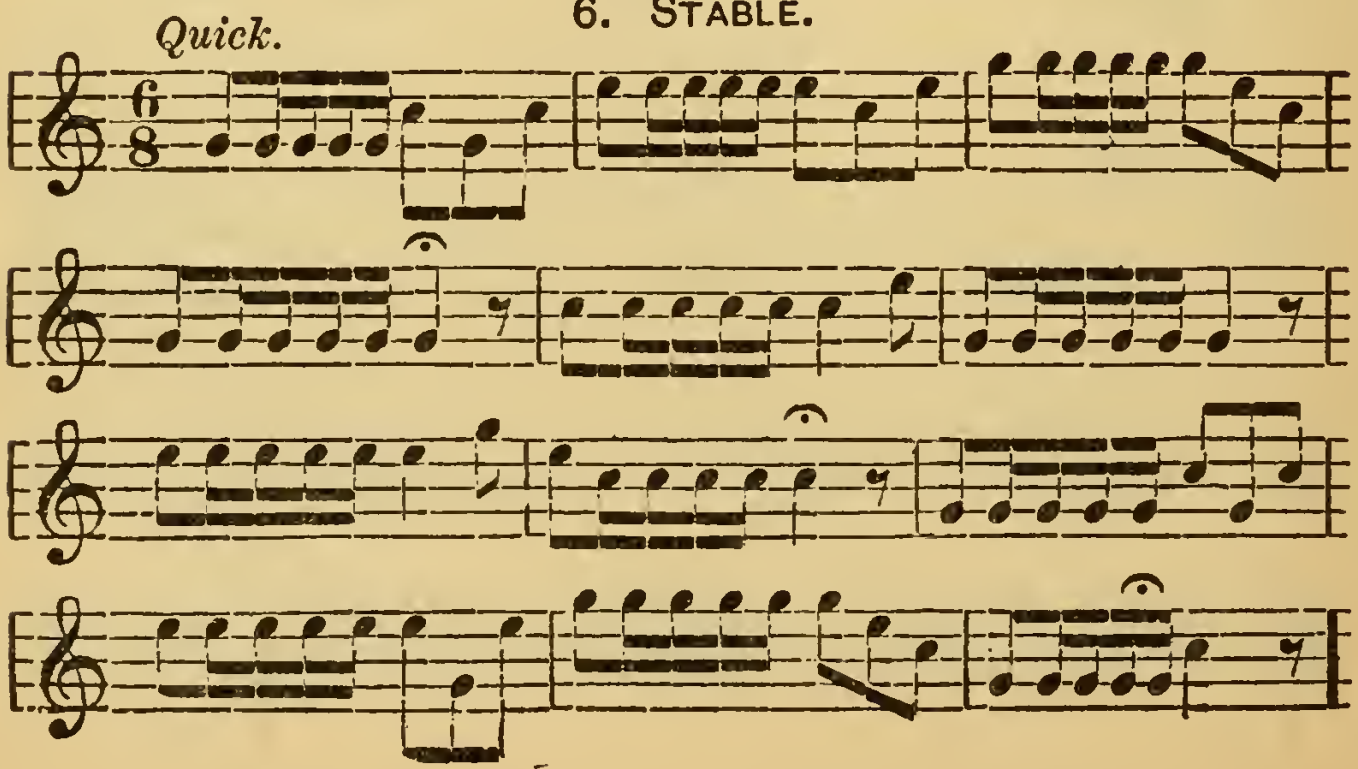
To economize space, the music is written an octave higher than the trumpet scale, and is adjusted to the scale of the bugle.

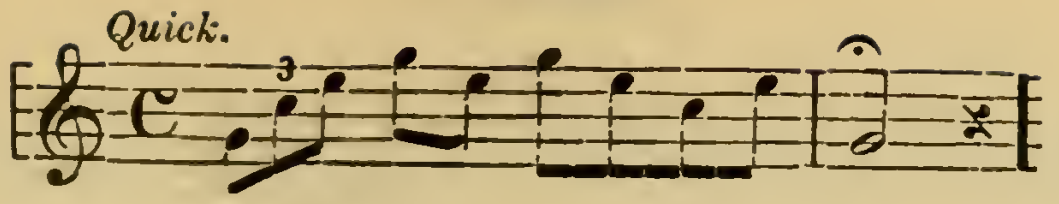
## 1. First Call.

## 2. Guard Mounting.



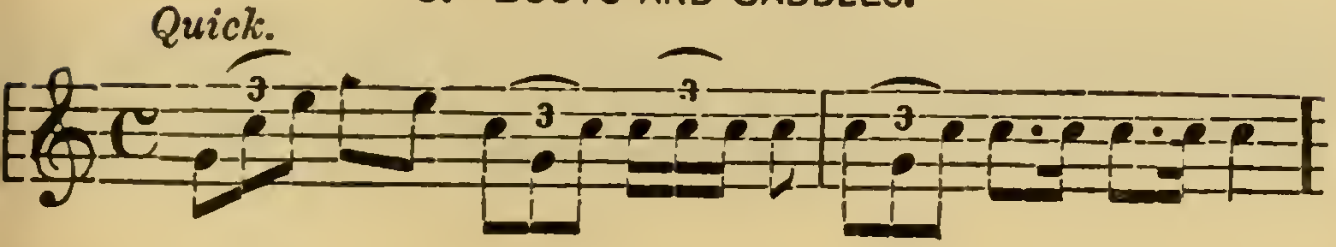
### 3. Full Dress.

### 4. Overcoats.

### 5. Drill.



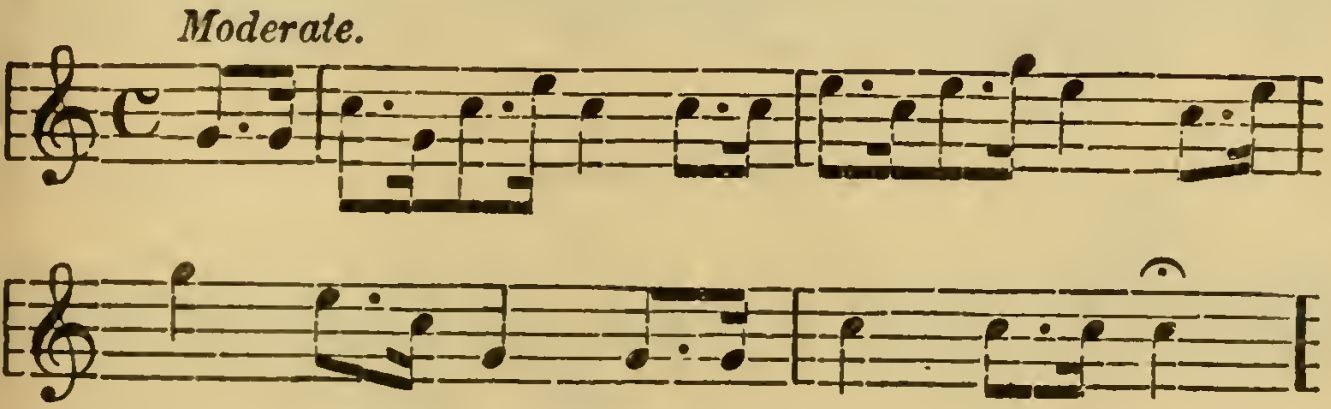

### 6. Stable.

## 7. Water.



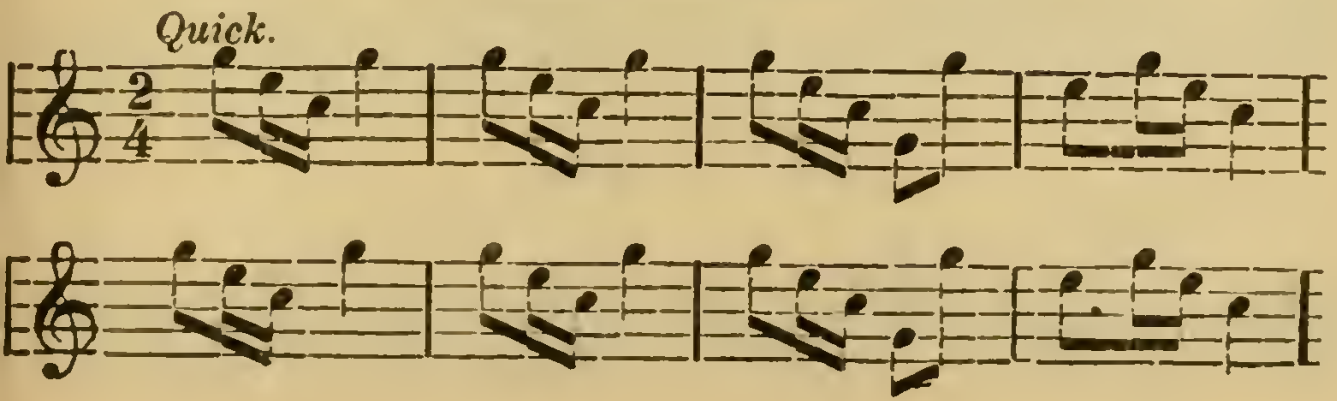

## 8. Boots and Saddles.

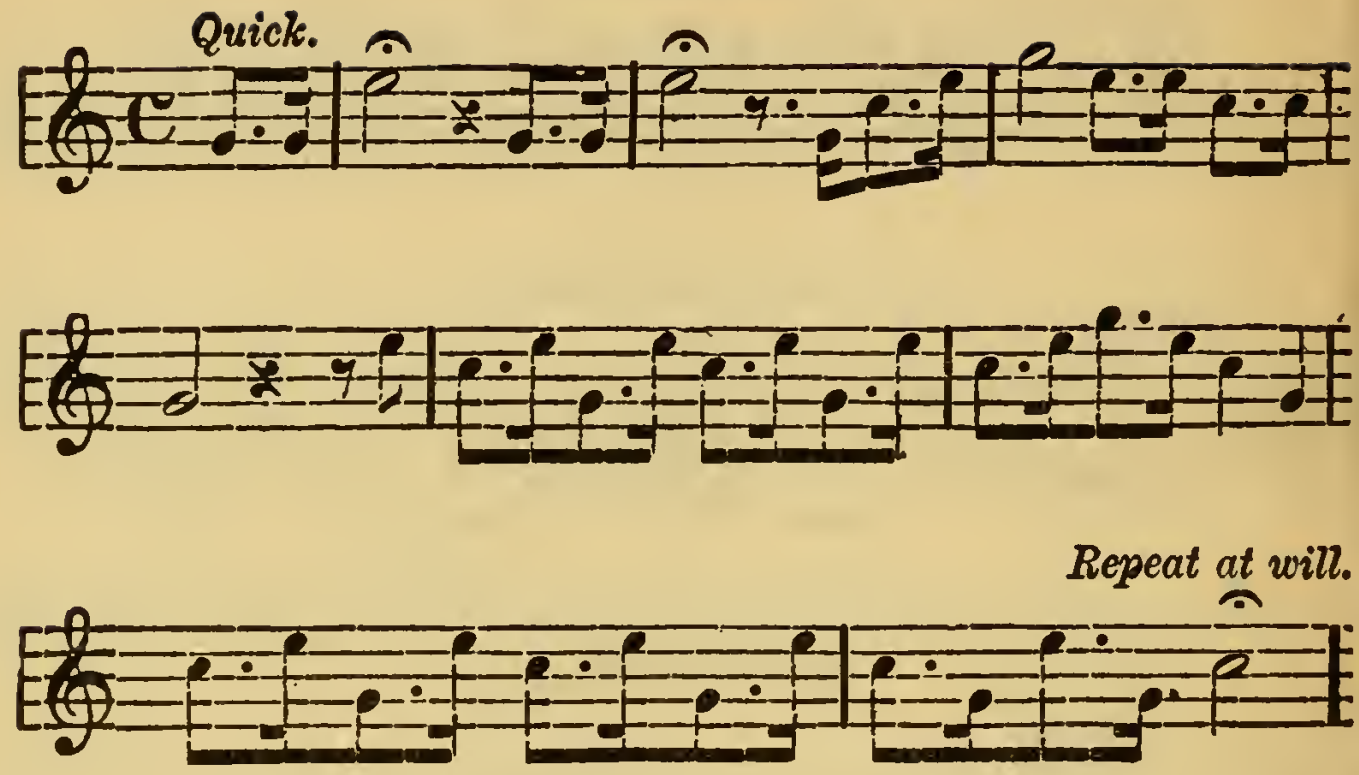


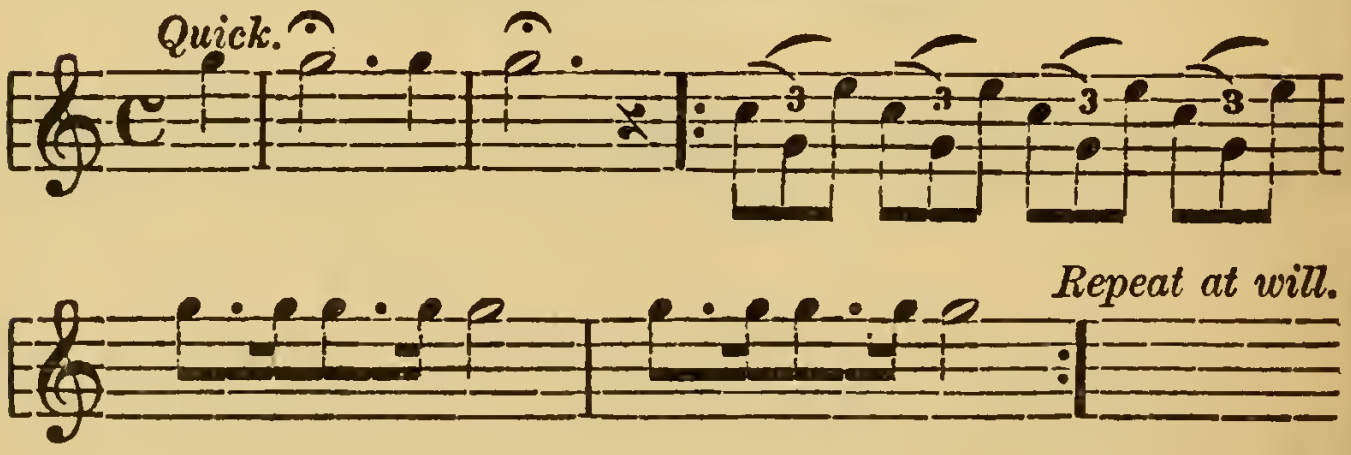

## 9. Assembly.

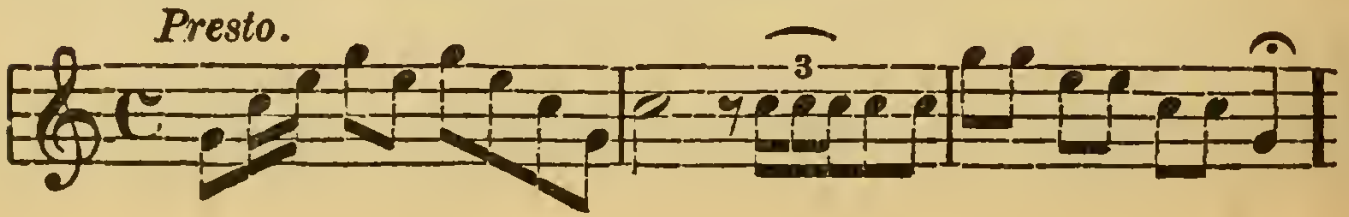


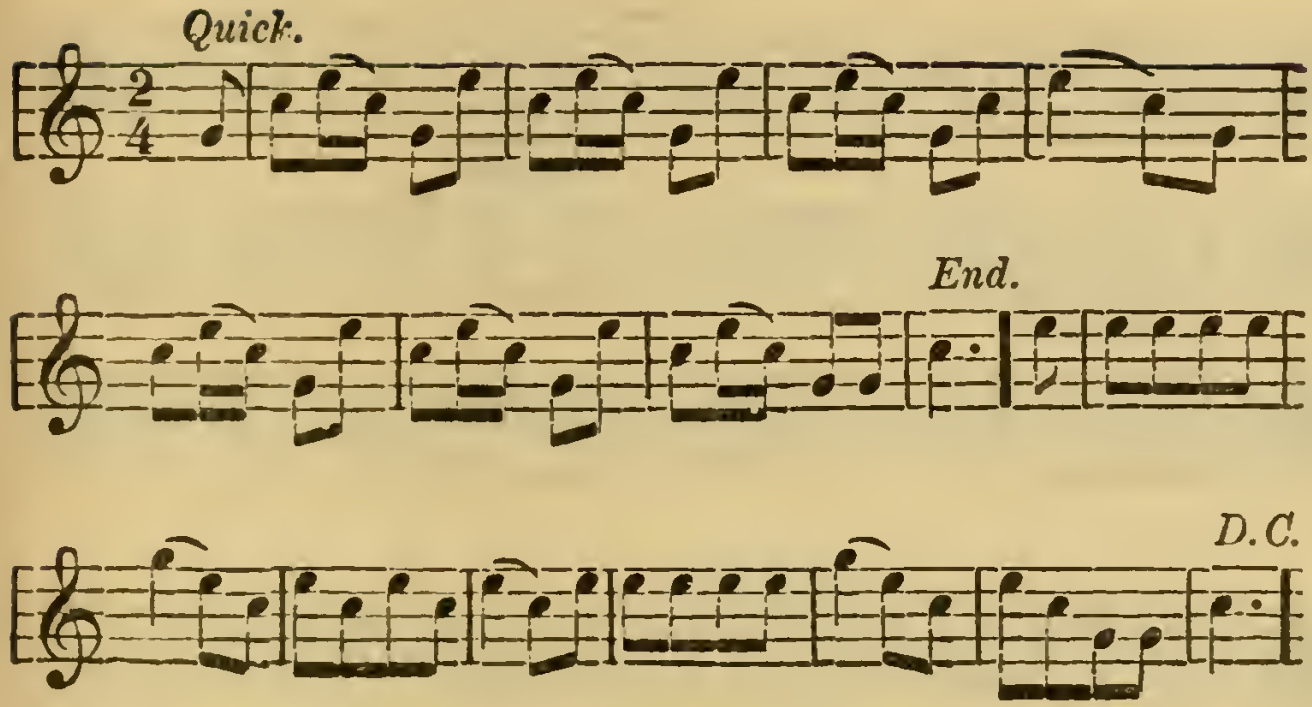

## 10. Adjutant's Call.



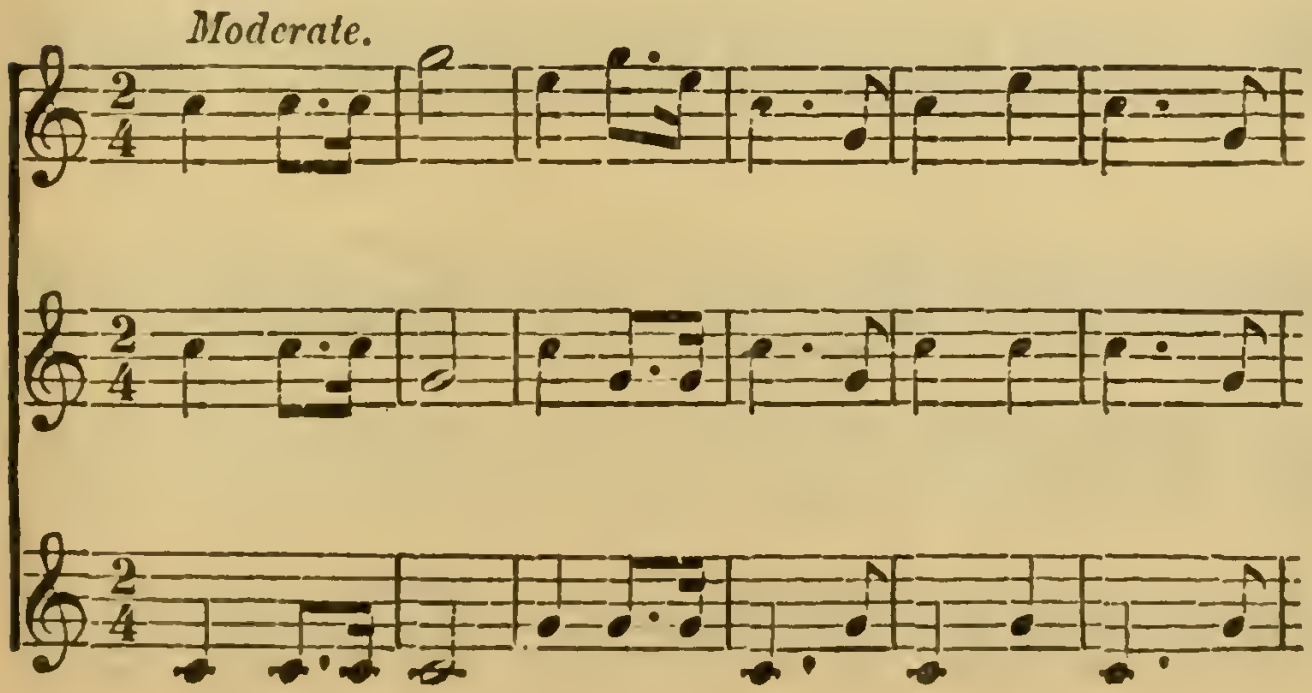
## 11. Fire.

## 12. To Arms.

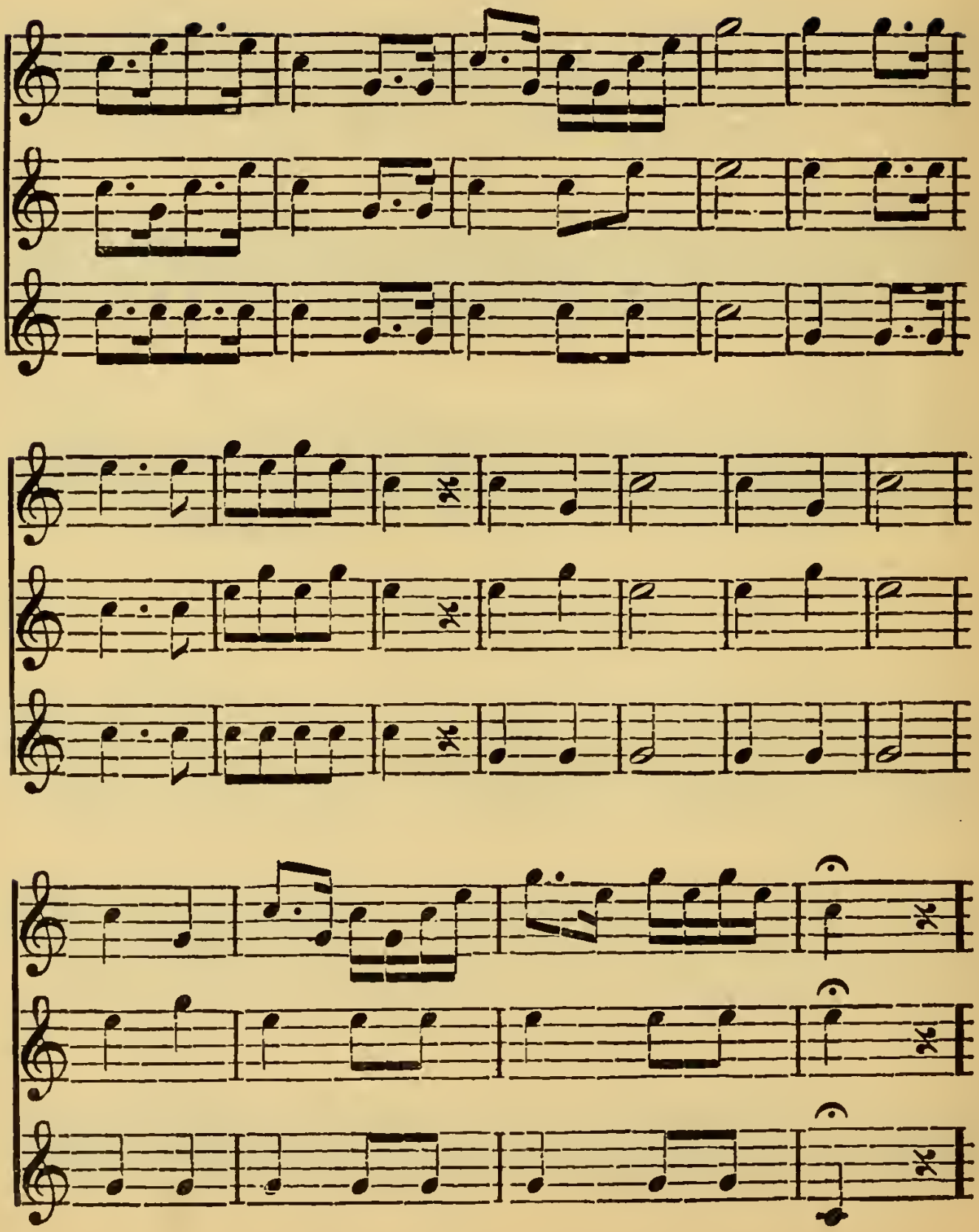
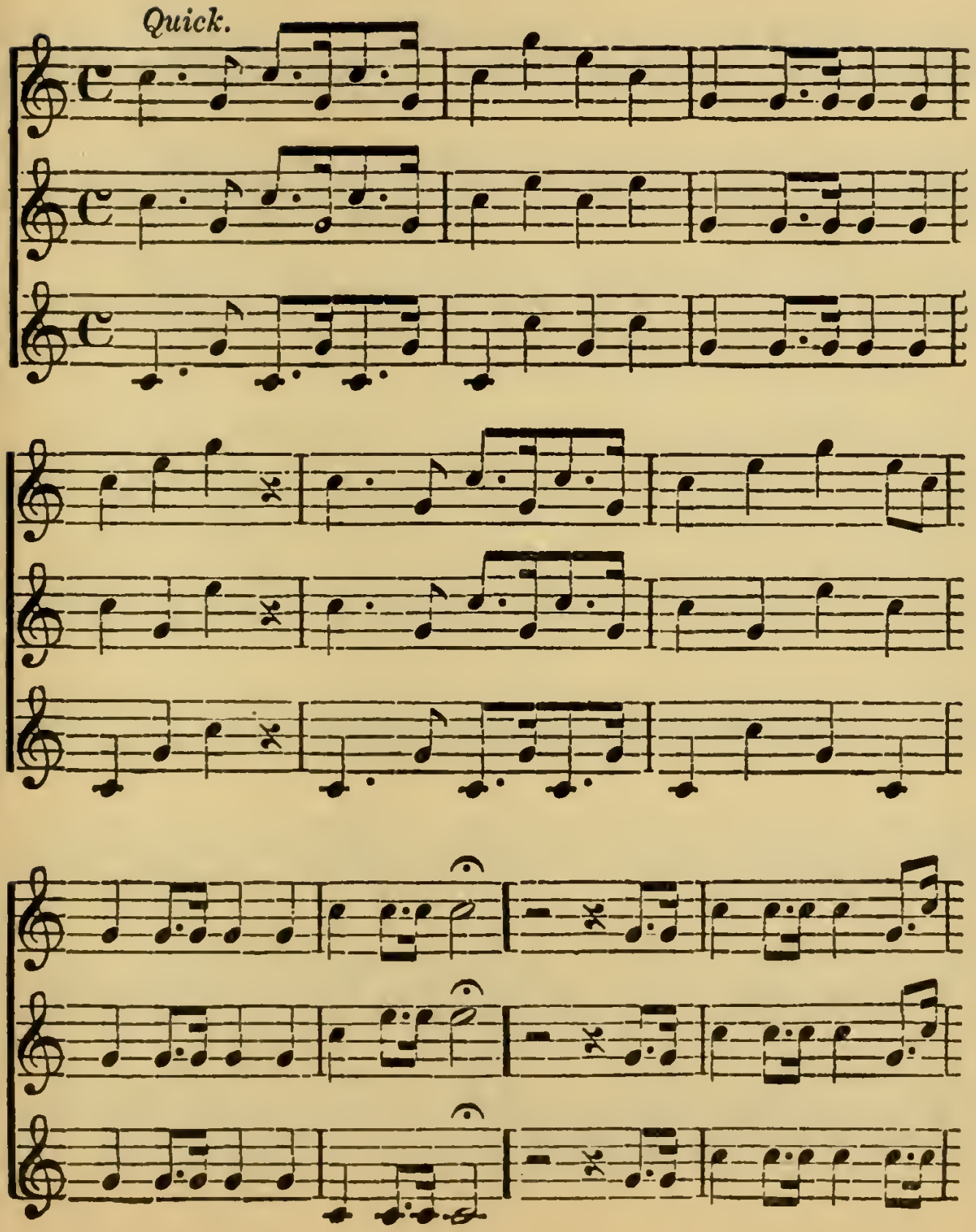


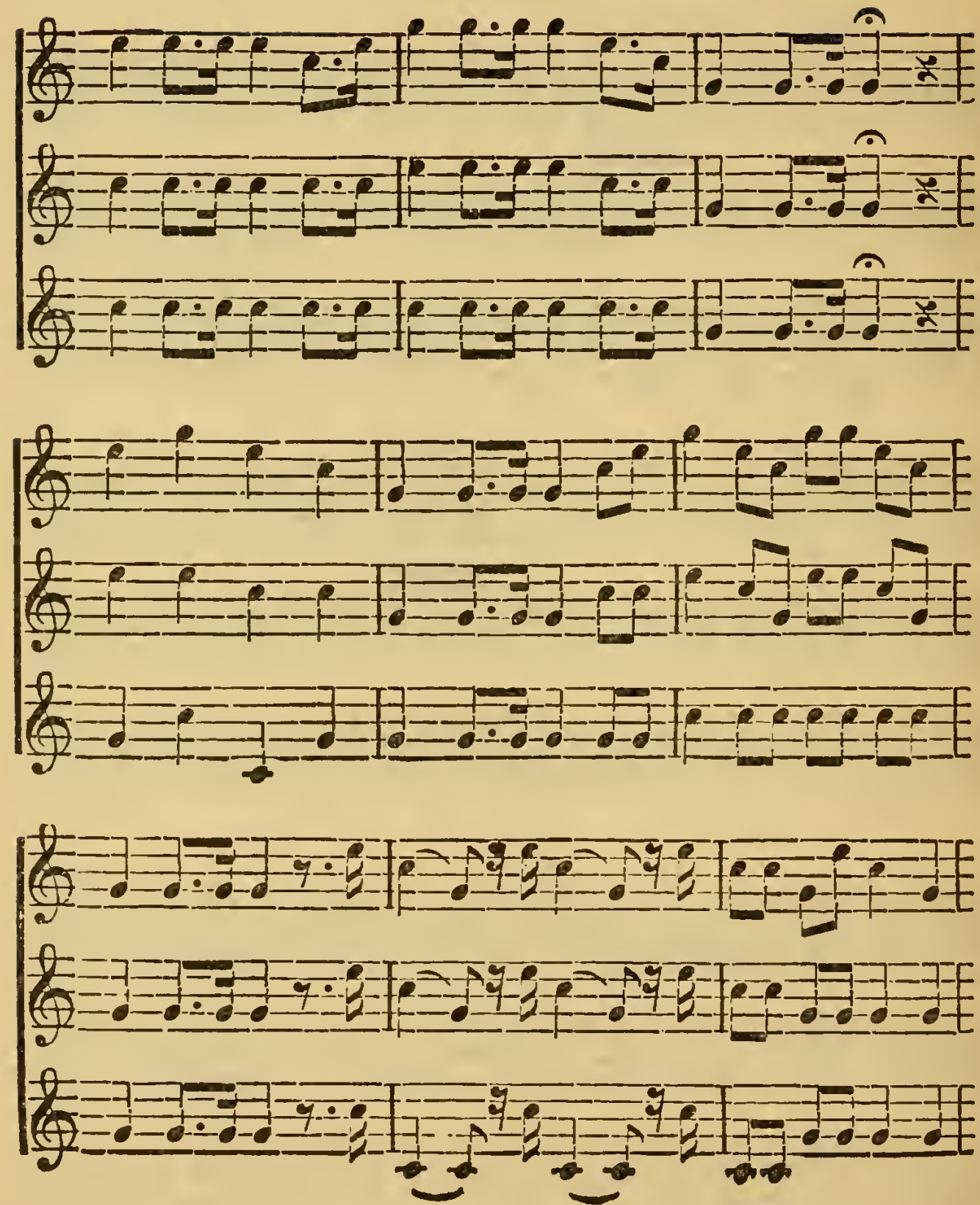

## 13. To Horse.

## 14. Reveille.



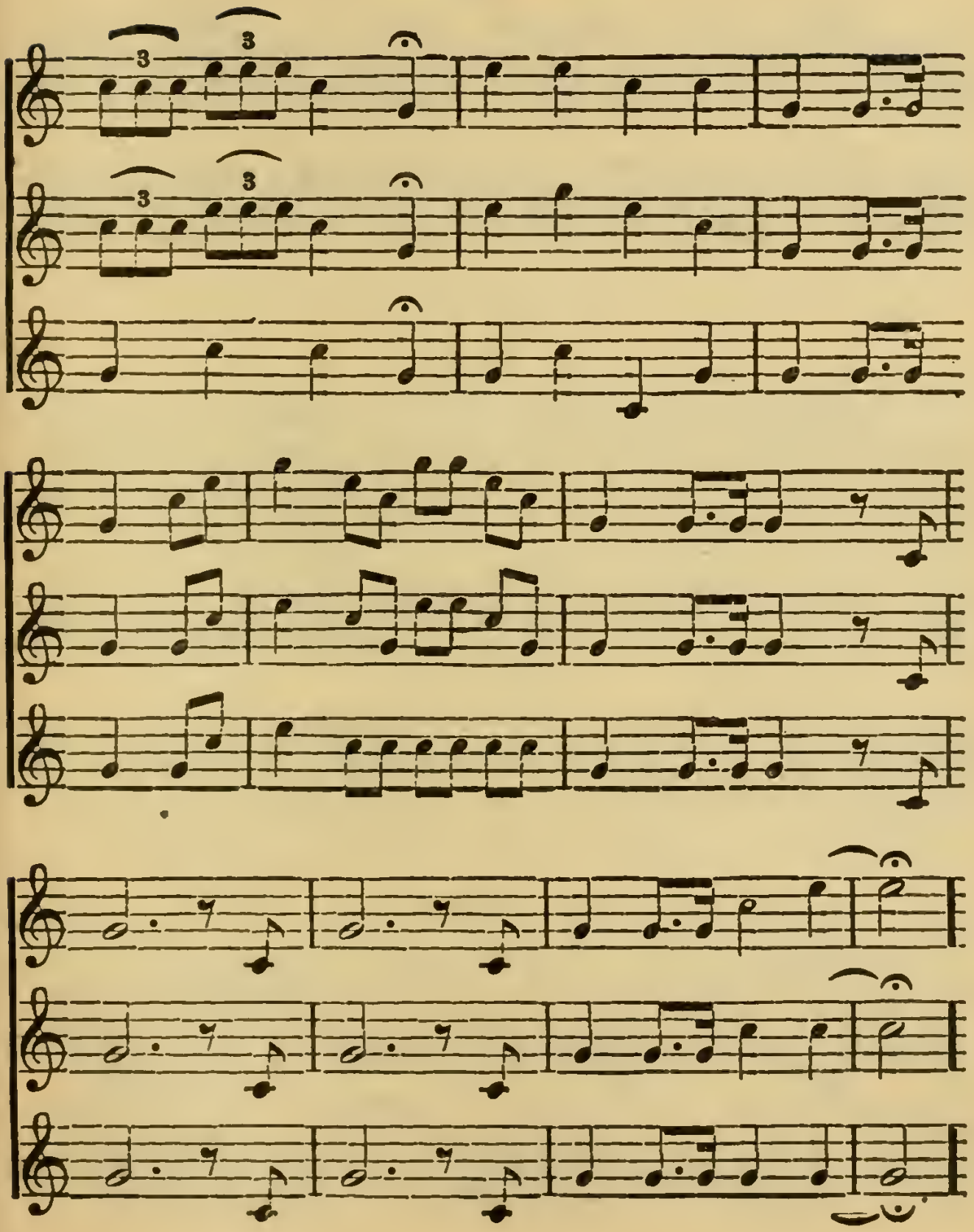

## 15. Retreat.

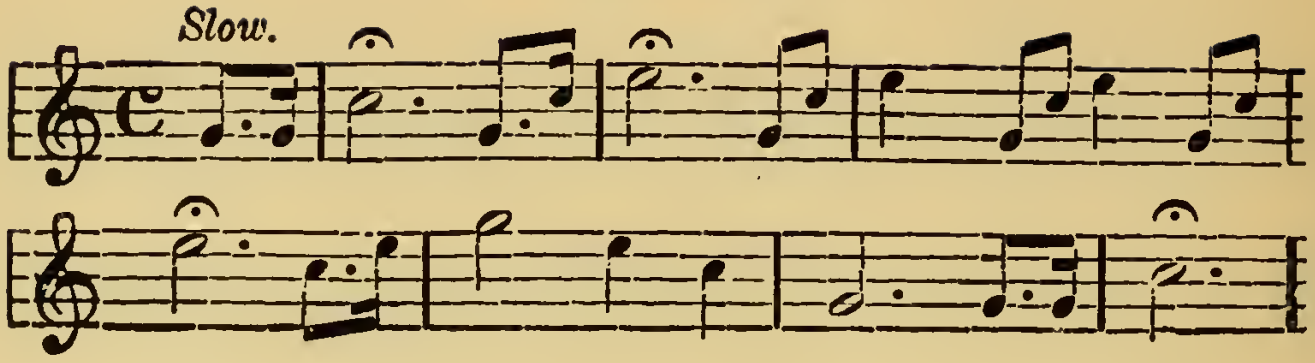
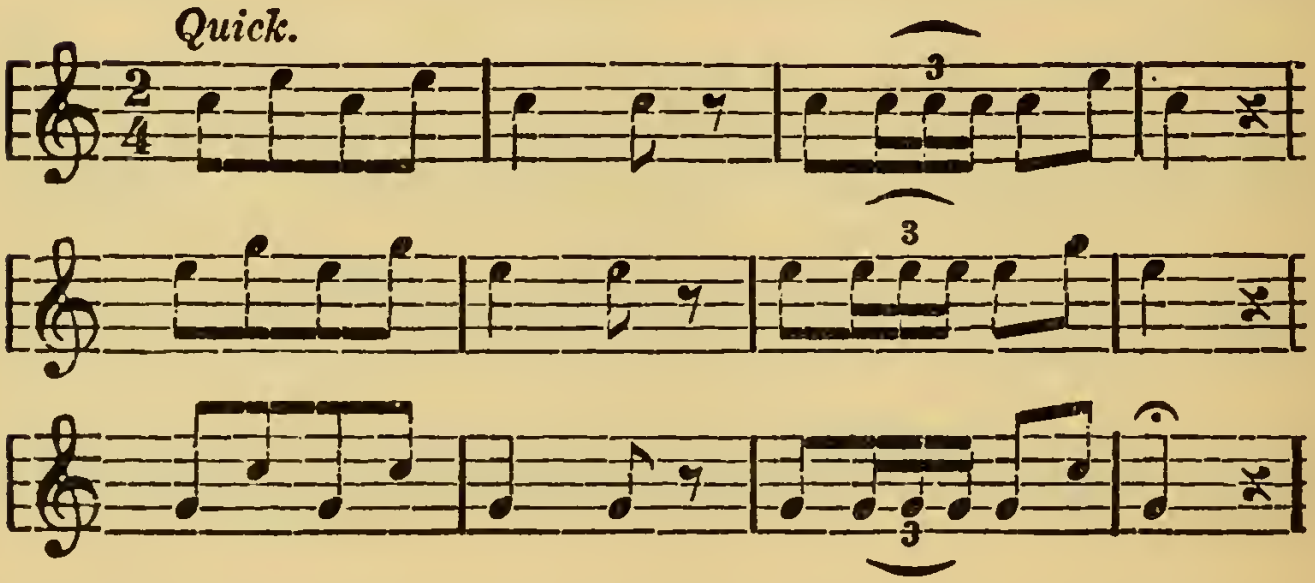
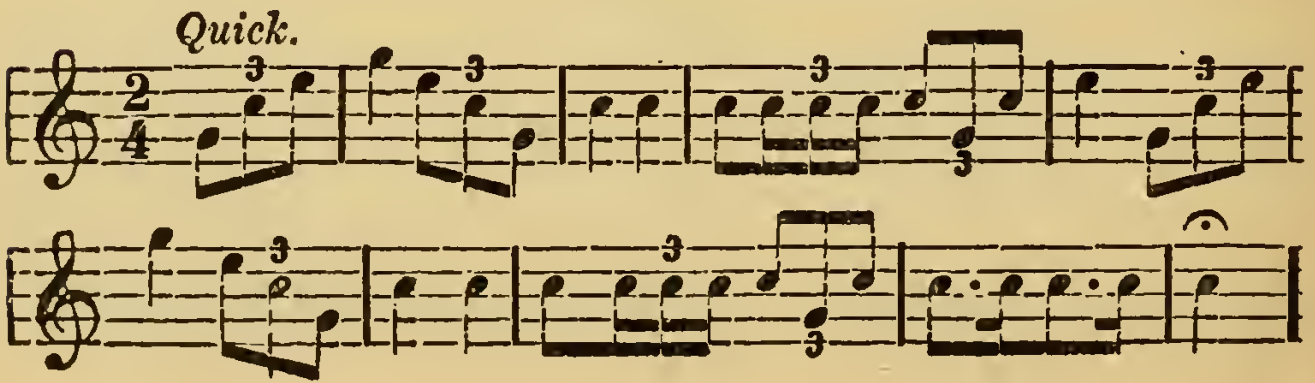


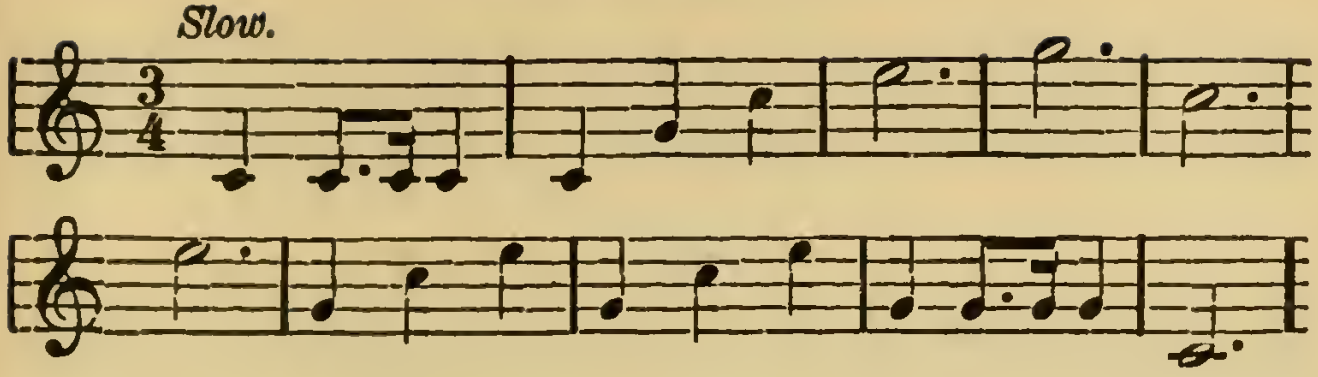
## RETREAT—*Concluded*

## 16. Tattoo.

## TATTOO—*Continued.*



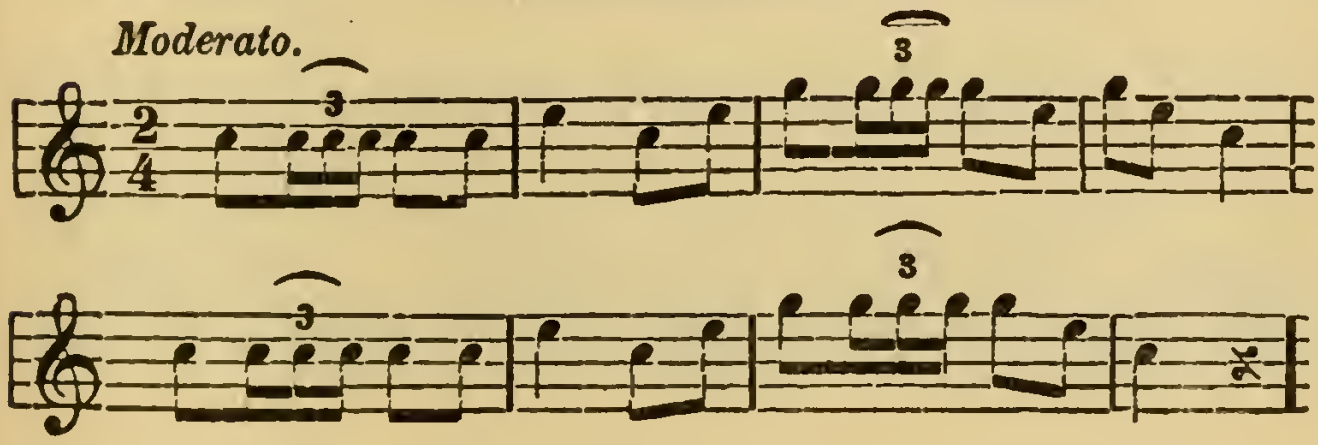
TATTOO—*Concluded.*



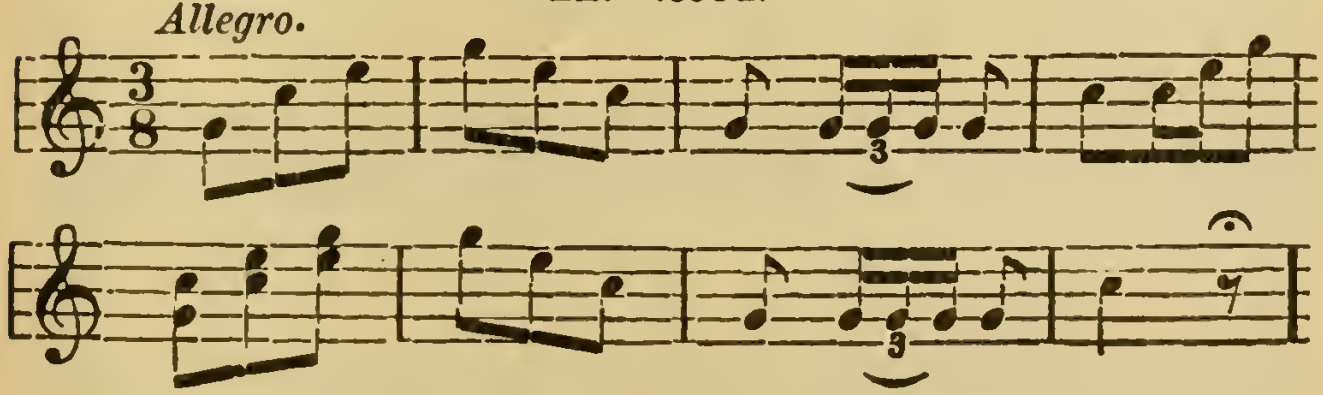
## 17. Taps.

## 18. Mess.

## 19. Sick.

## 20. Church.




## 21. Recall.



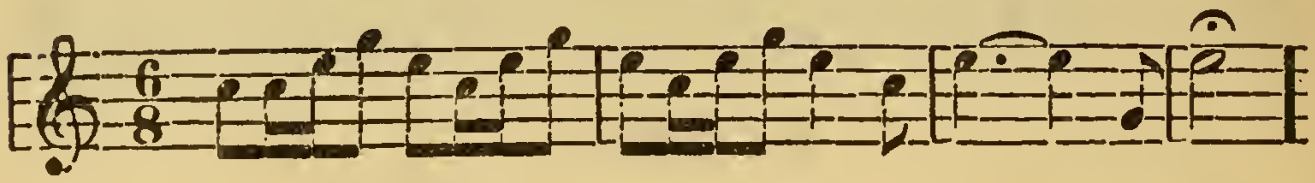

## 22. Issue.



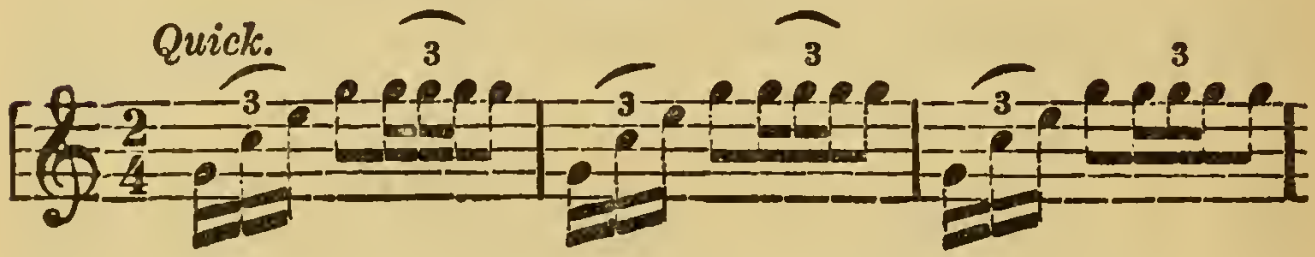

## 23. Officer's Call.

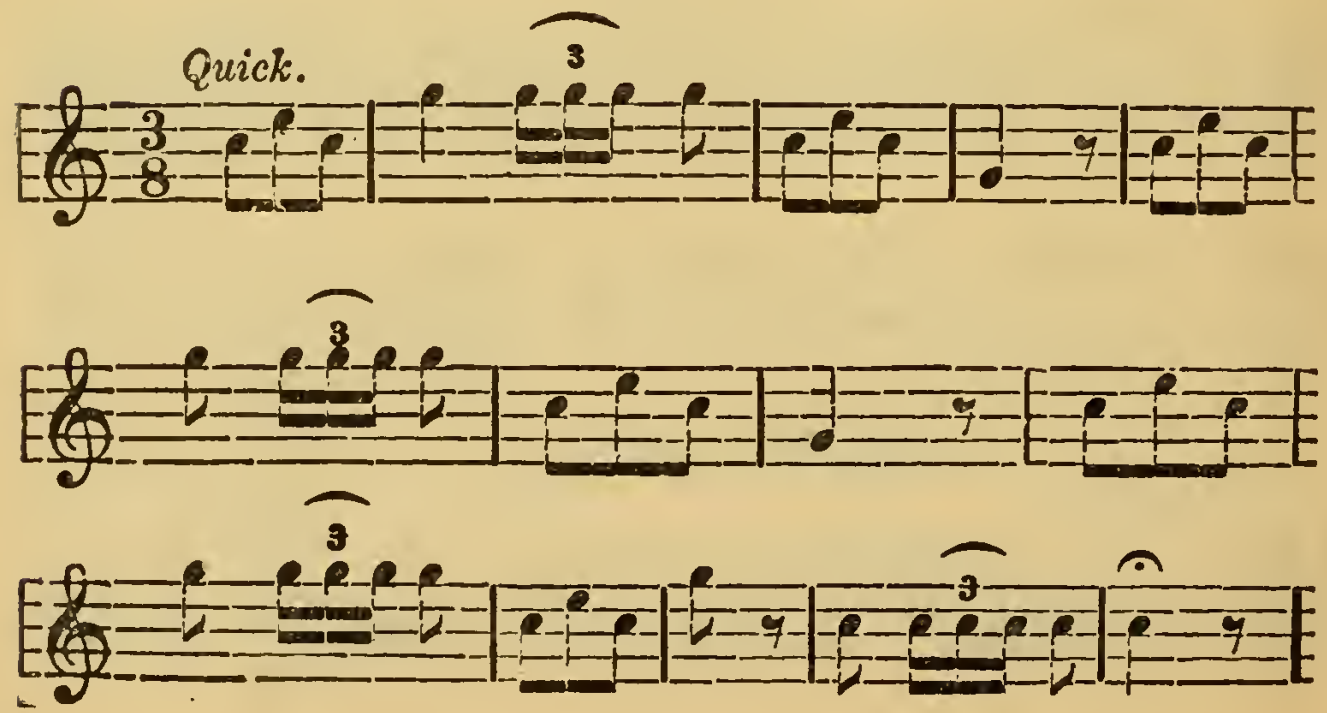
OFFICER'S CALL—*Concluded*

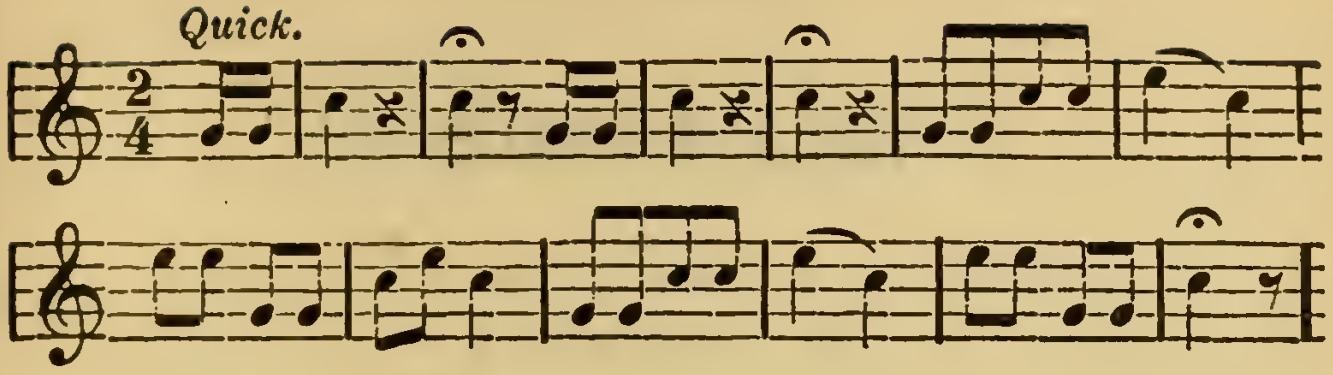
## 24. CAPTAIN'S CALL



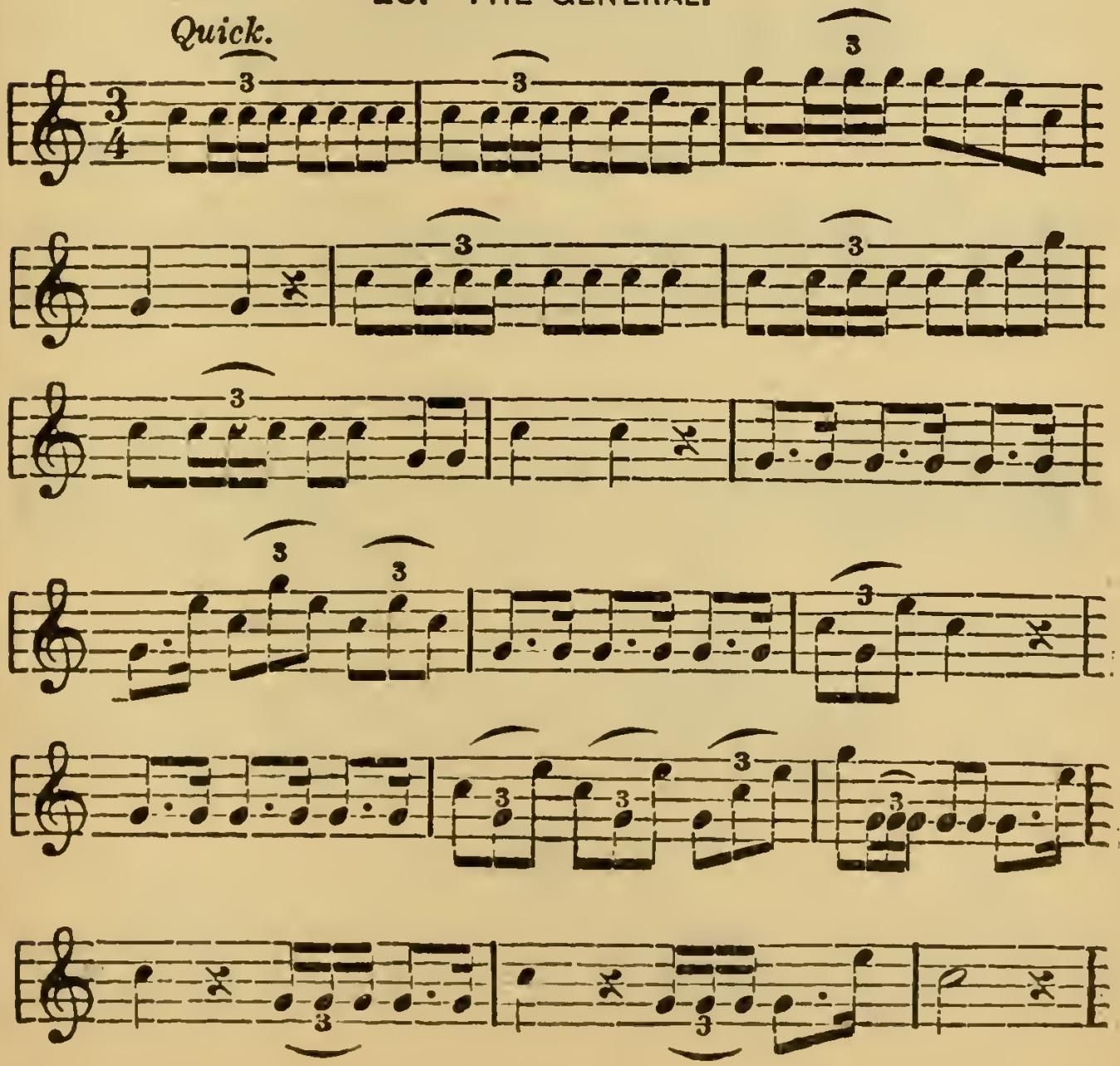
## 25. FIRST SERGEANT'S CALL.




## 26. FATIGUE.

## 27. School.

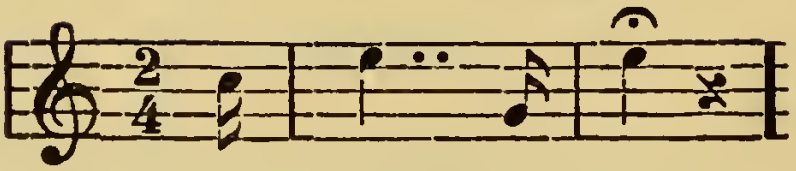



## 28. The General.

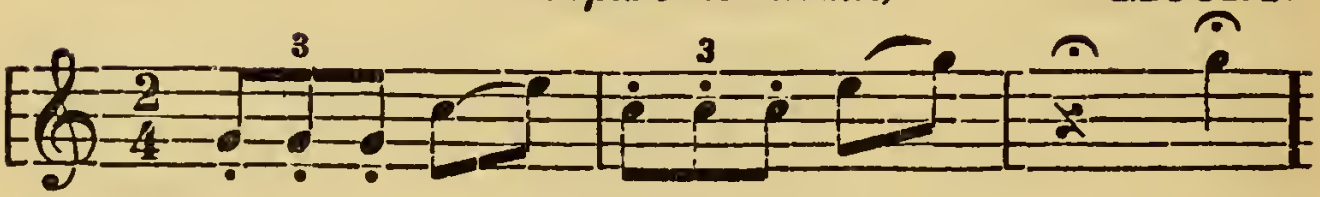


# DRILL SIGNALS.

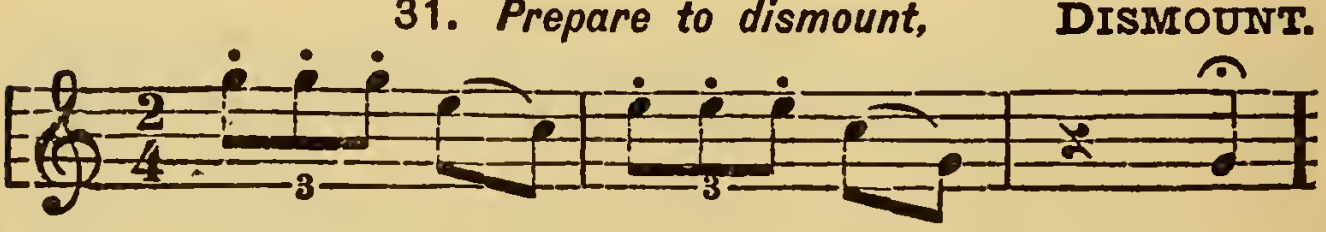
29. ATTENTION.



30. *Prepare to mount,* MOUNT.

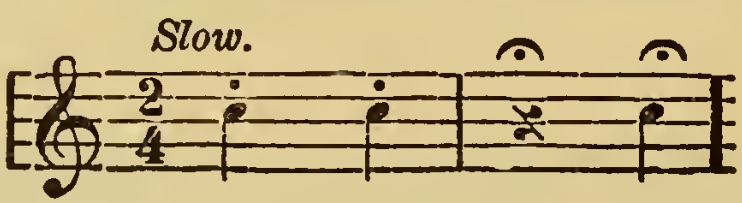


31. *Prepare to dismount,* DISMOUNT.

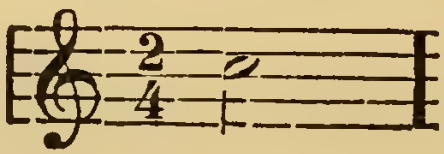


32. *Forward,* MARCH.

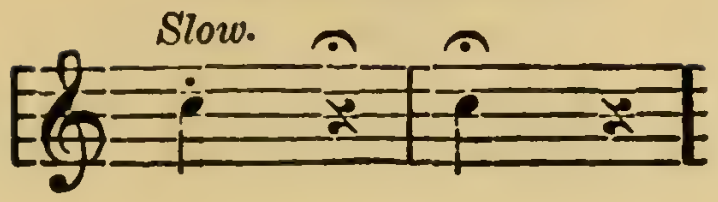
*Slow.*



33. HALT.

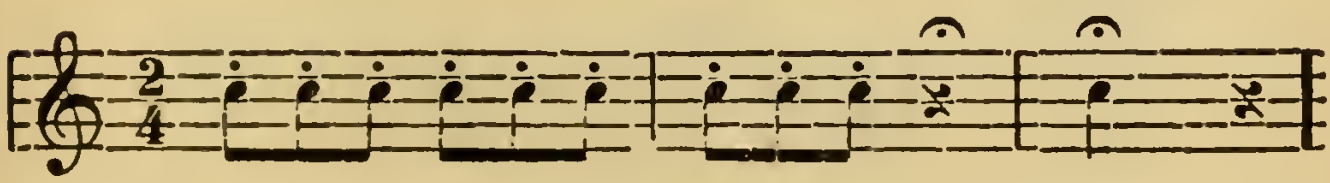


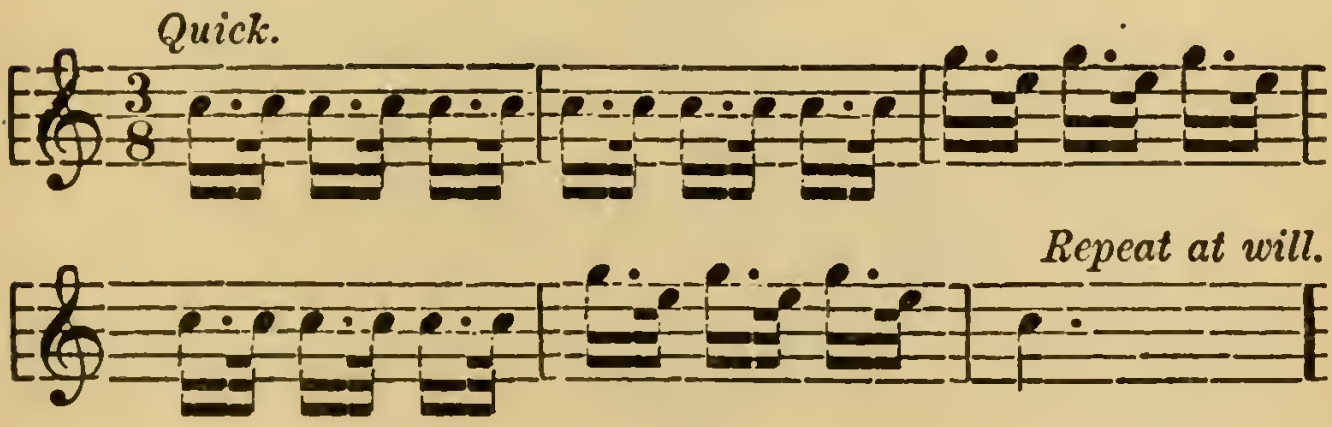
34. *Walk,* MARCH.

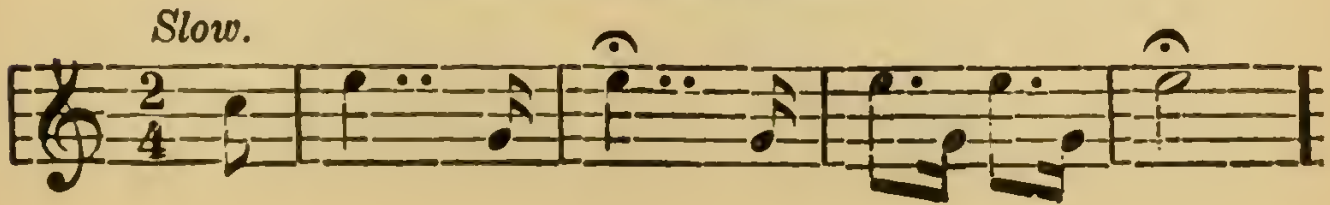



35. *Trot,* MARCH.

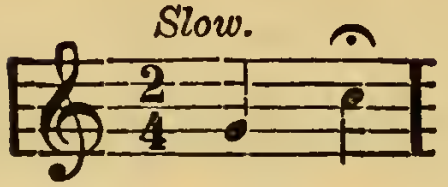
36. *Gallop,* MARCH.



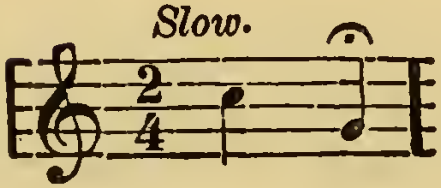

37. CHARGE.

38. AS FORAGERS.



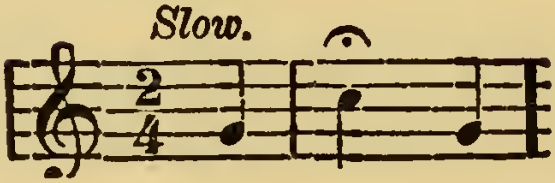
39. *Guide right.*




40. *Guide left.*

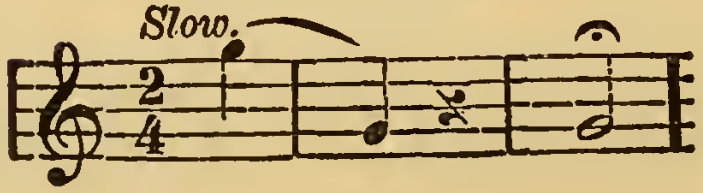



41. *Guide center.*

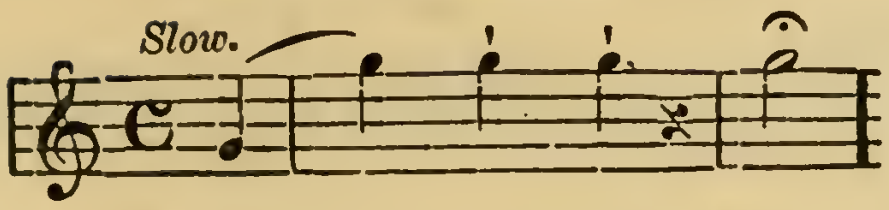



42. *Fours right;*
also,
*By the right flank,* MARCH.

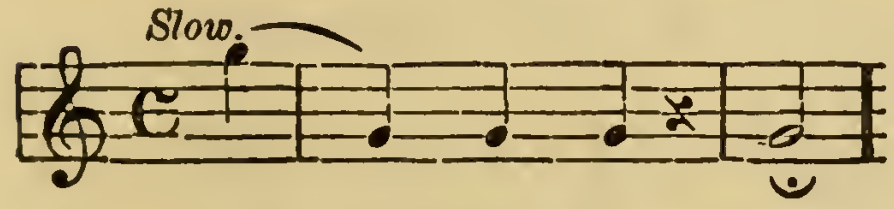
43. *Fours left;*
also,
*By the left flank,* MARCH.



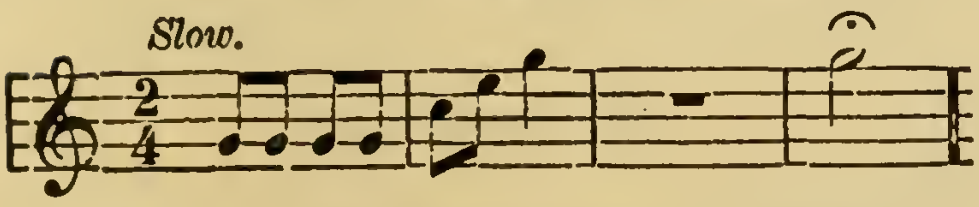
44. *Fours right about,* MARCH.



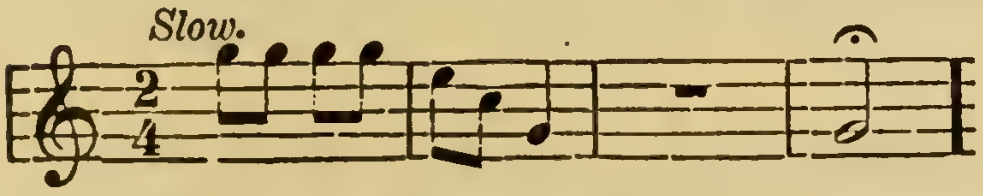

45. *Fours left about,* MARCH.



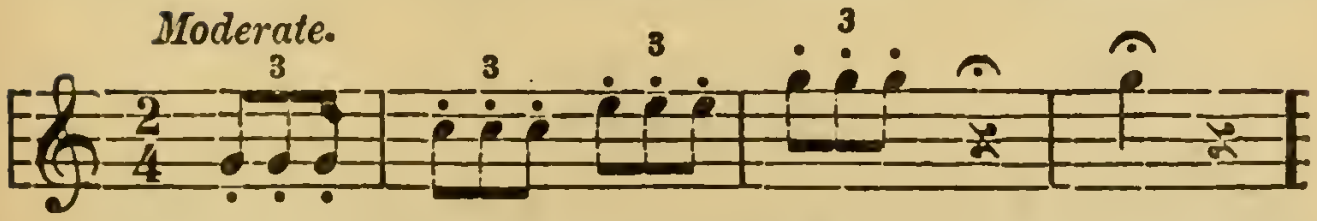

46. *Column right,* MARCH.



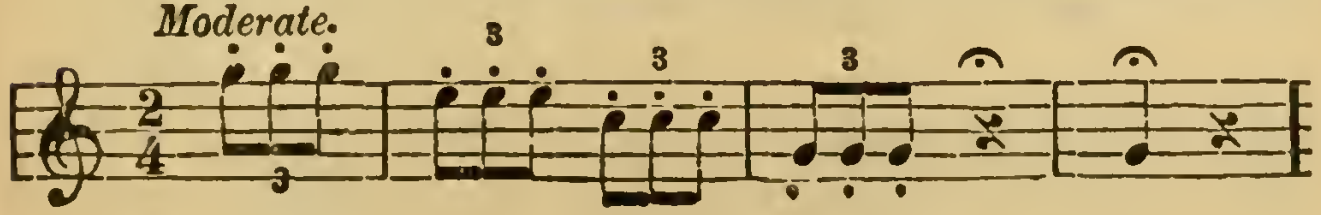

47. *Column left,* MARCH.



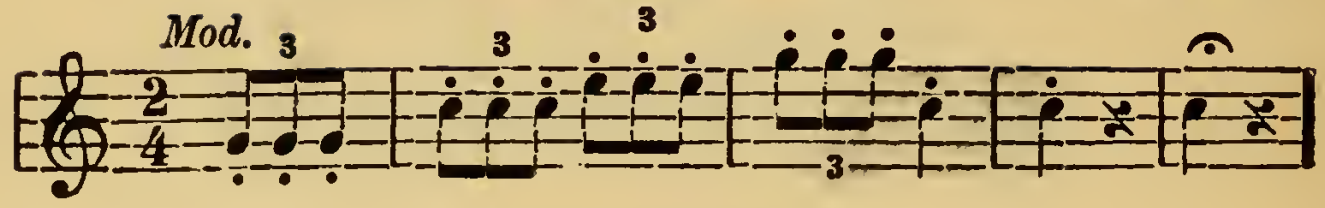

48. *Platoons right,* MARCH.



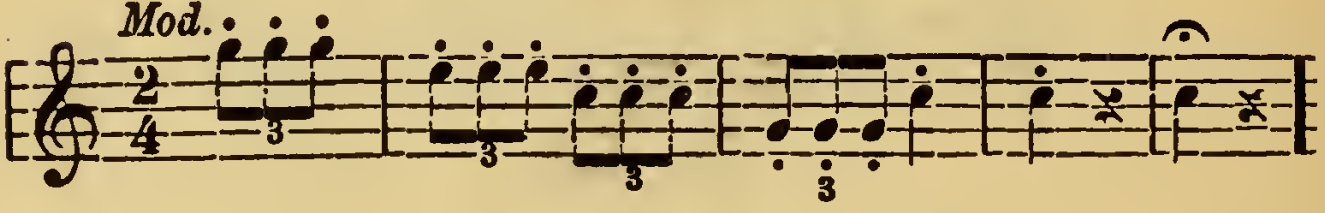

49. *Platoons left,* MARCH.

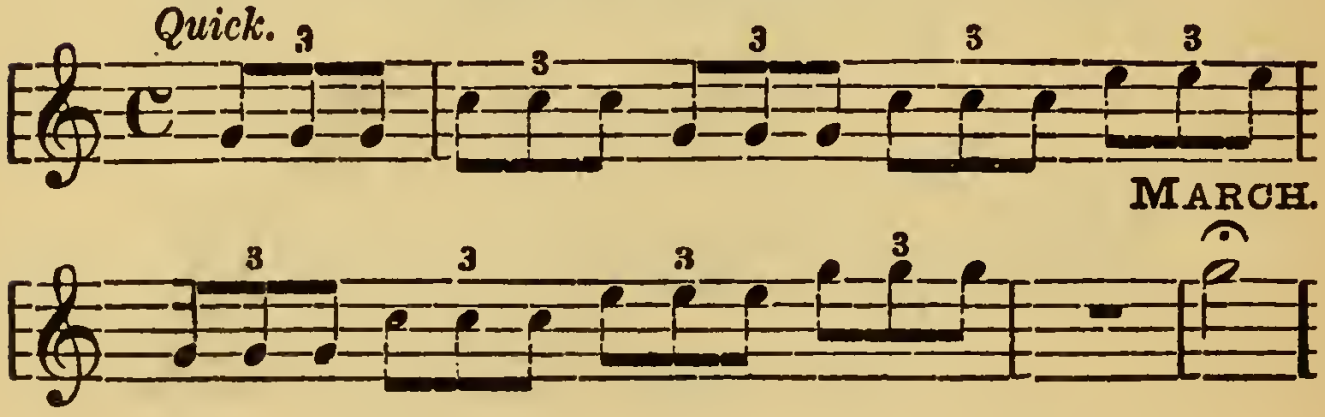
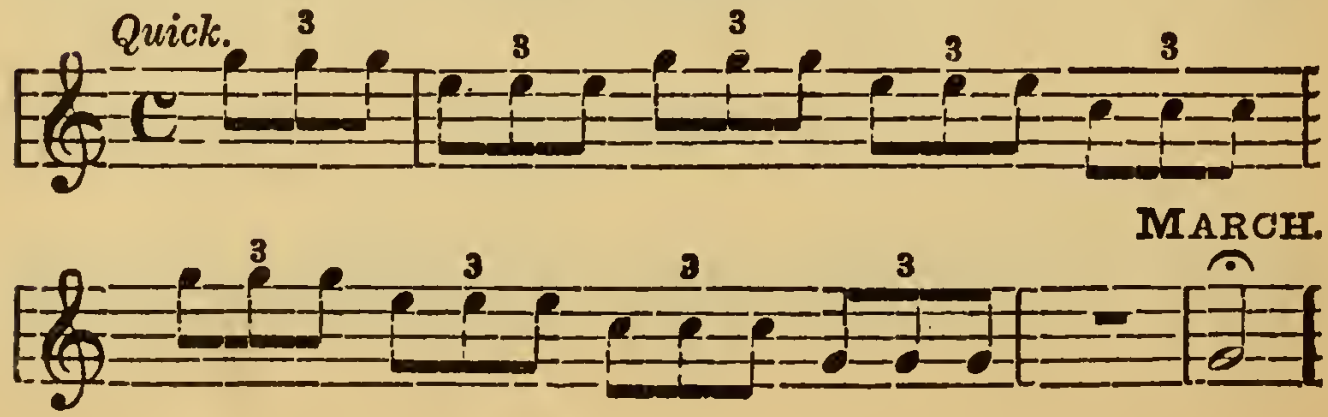
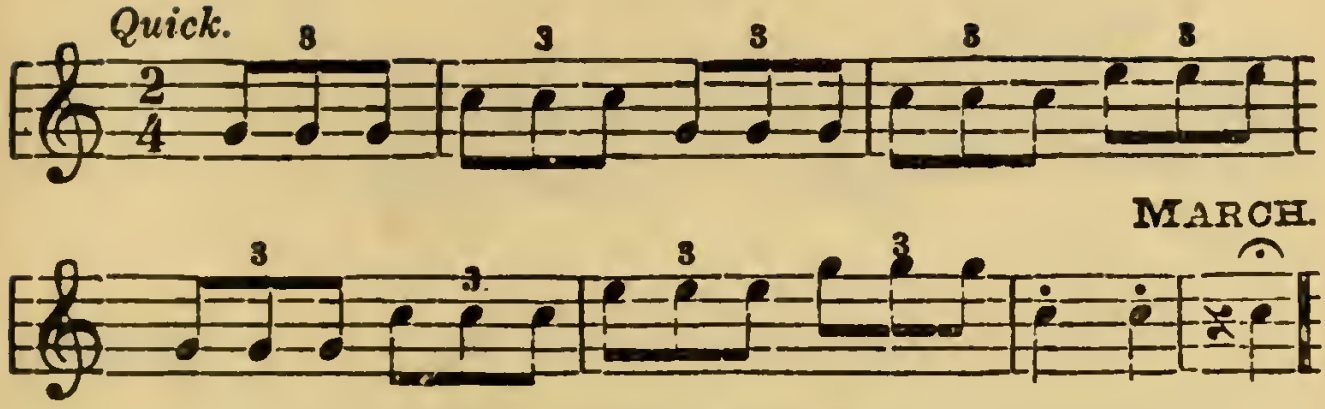
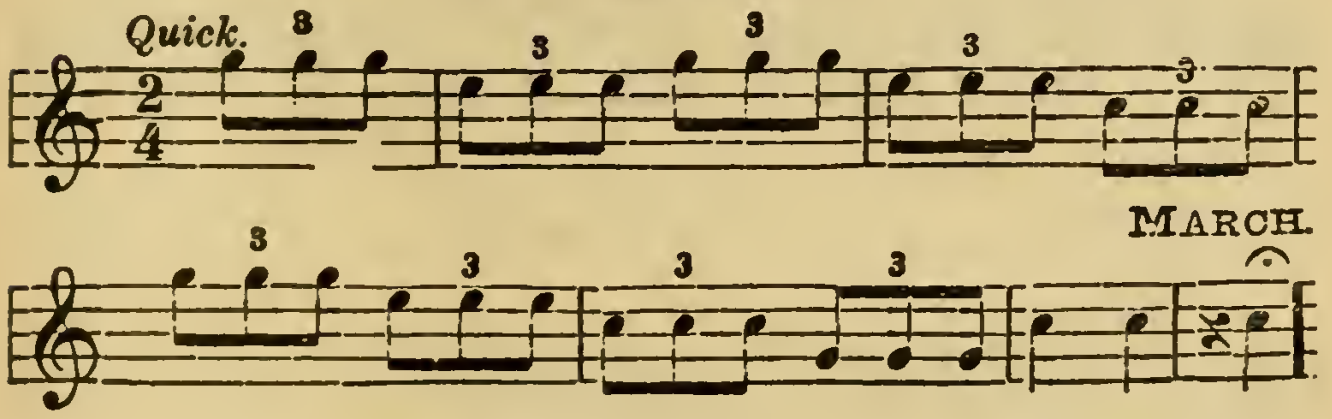


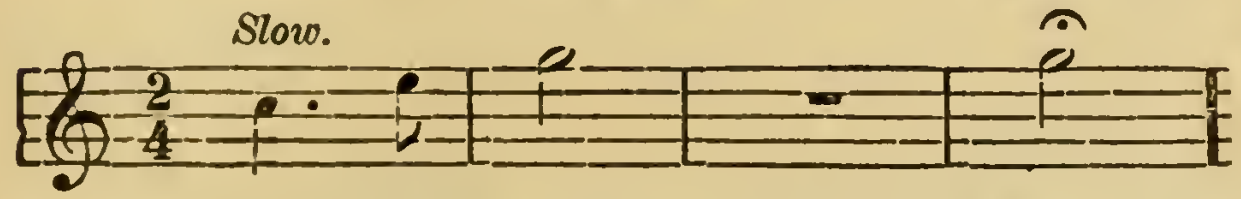
50. *Platoons right turn,* MARCH.



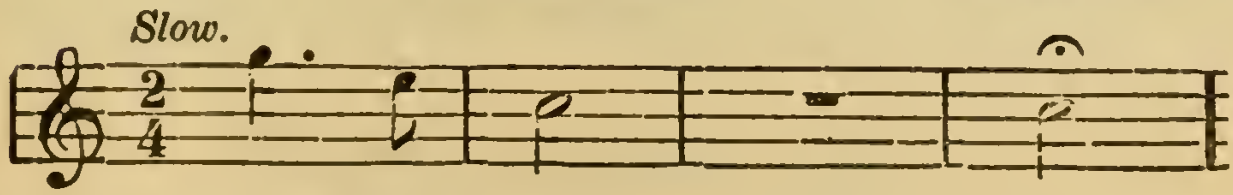

51. *Platoons left turn,* MARCH.



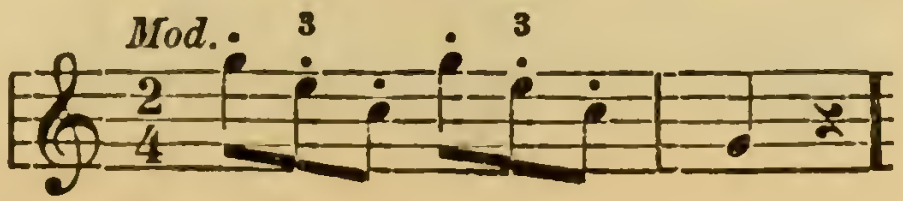

52. *Troop right,*

53 *Troop left,*

54. *Troop right turn,*

55. *Troop left turn,*

56. *Right oblique,* MARCH.



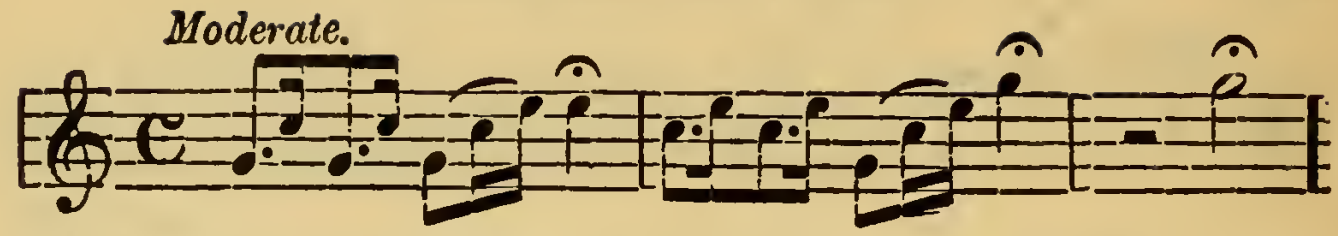

57. *Left oblique,* MARCH.



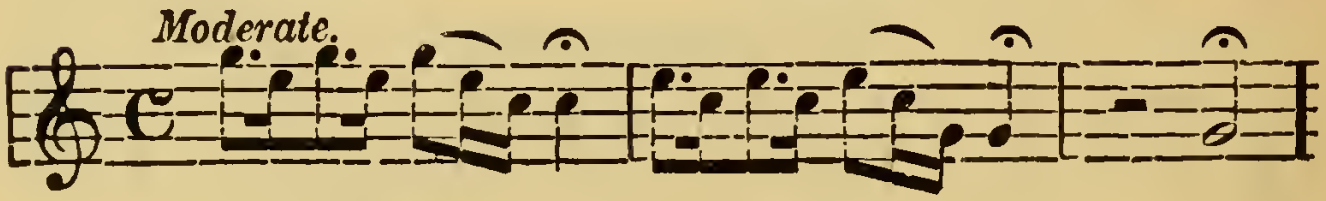

58. GUIDONS OUT; or, GUIDES OUT.



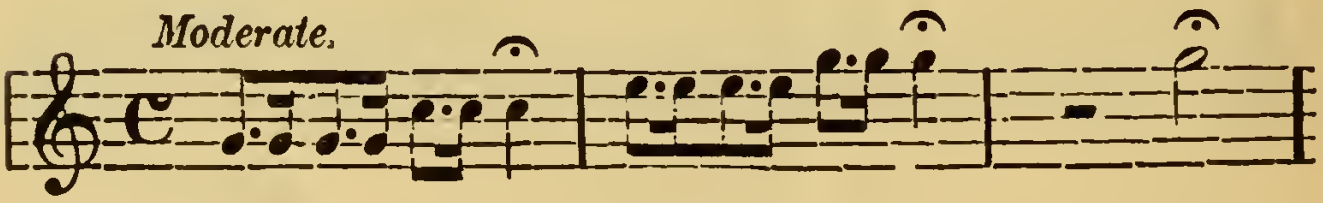
59 *Right front into line* MARCH



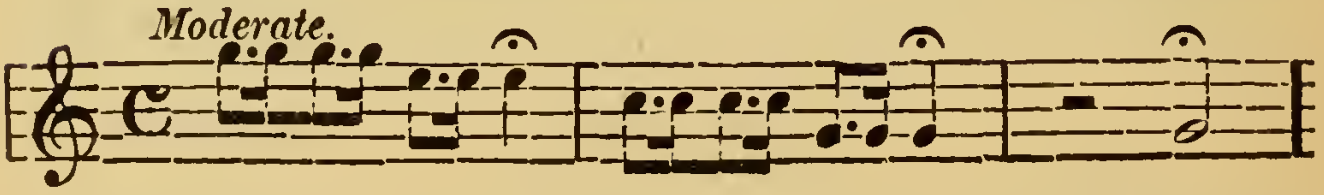

60. *Left front into line,* MARCH



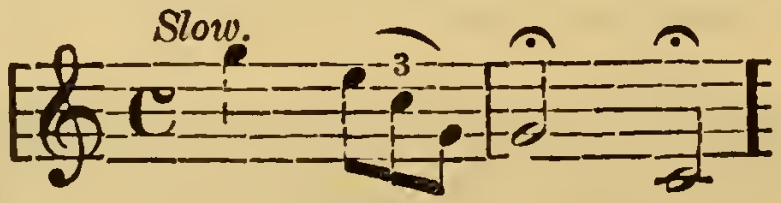

61 *On right into line.* MARCH.



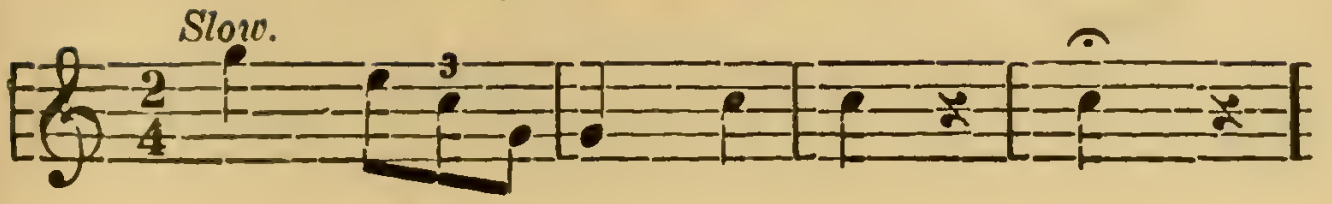

62. *On left into line.* MARCH



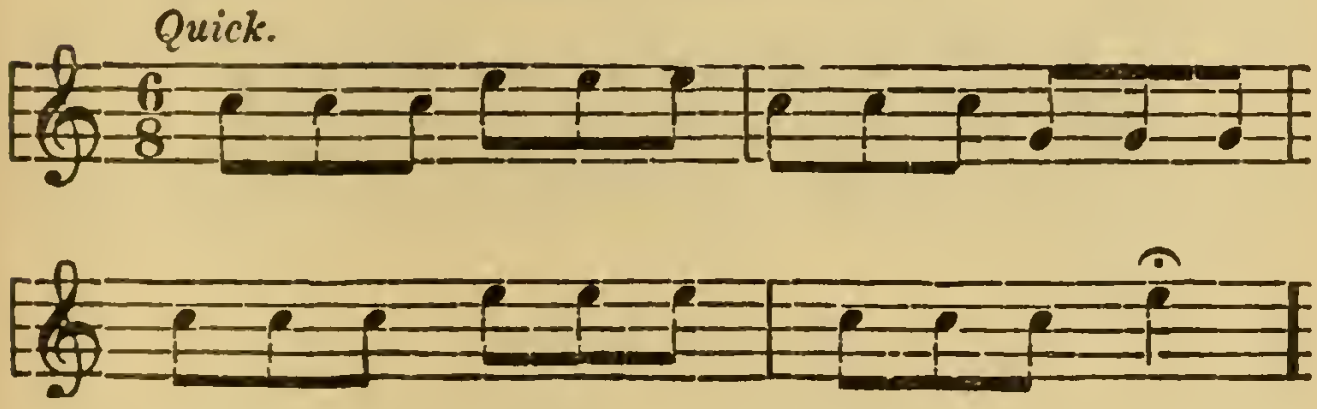

63. *Face to the Rear,* MARCH.

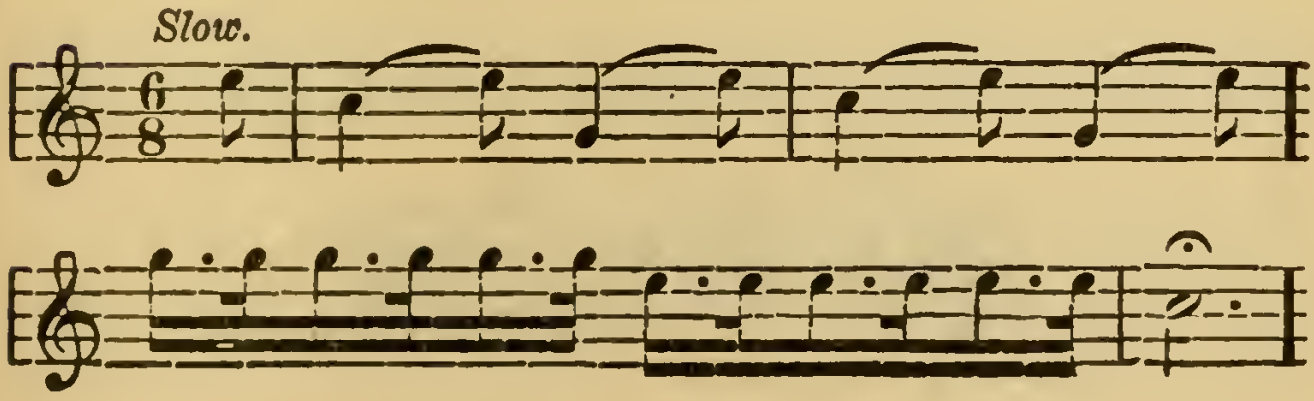


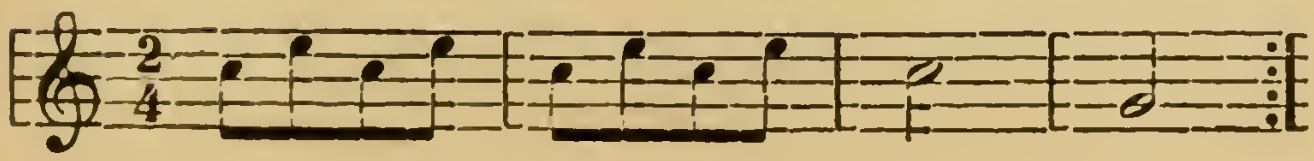
64. *To the rear,* MARCH



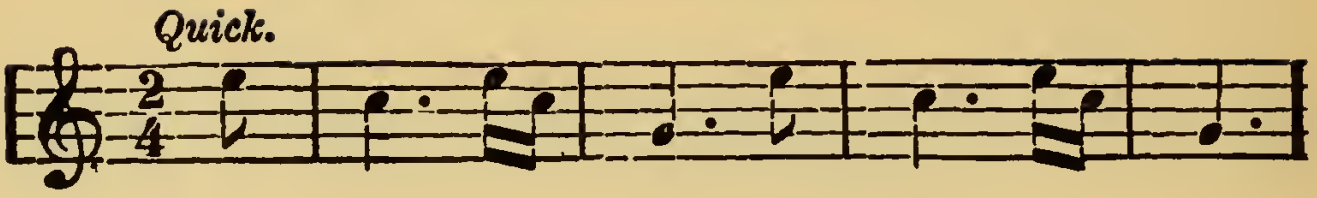

65. AS SKIRMISHERS.




66. RALLY.

67. TO FIGHT ON FOOT.

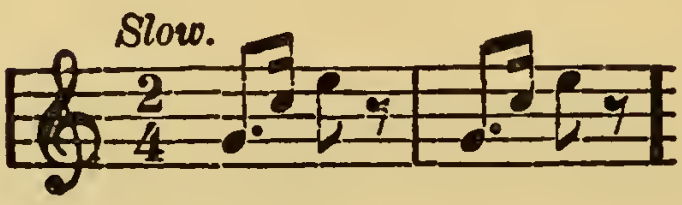


## 68. Commence firing.



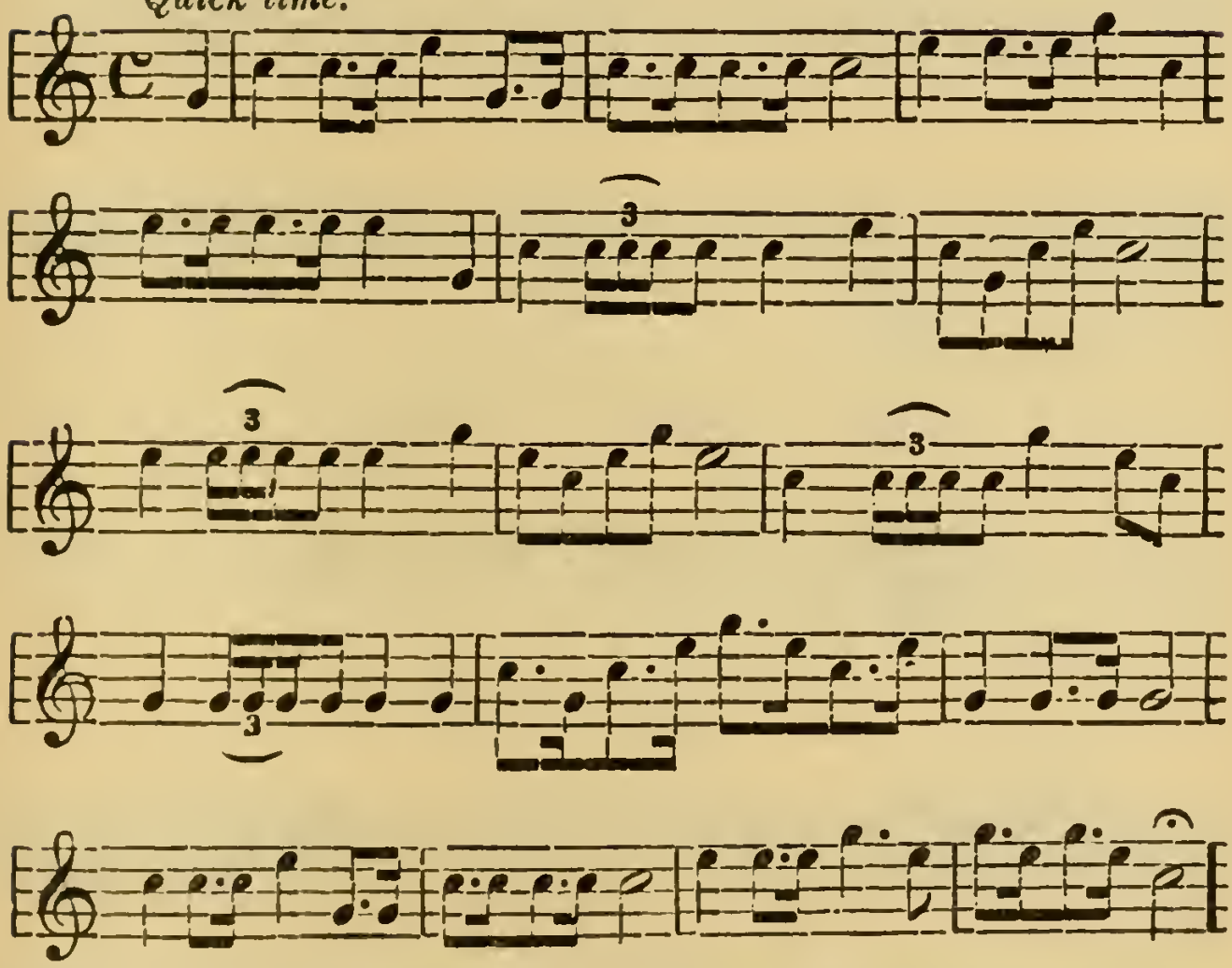

## 69. Cease firing.

## 70. Lie down.

## 71. Rise.

# MISCELLANEOUS TRUMPET CALLS.

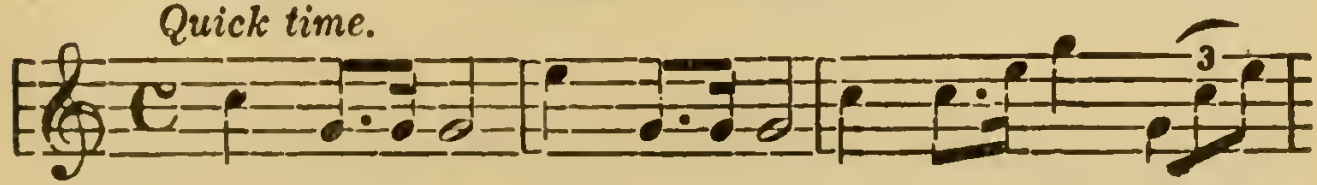
## 72. President's March.

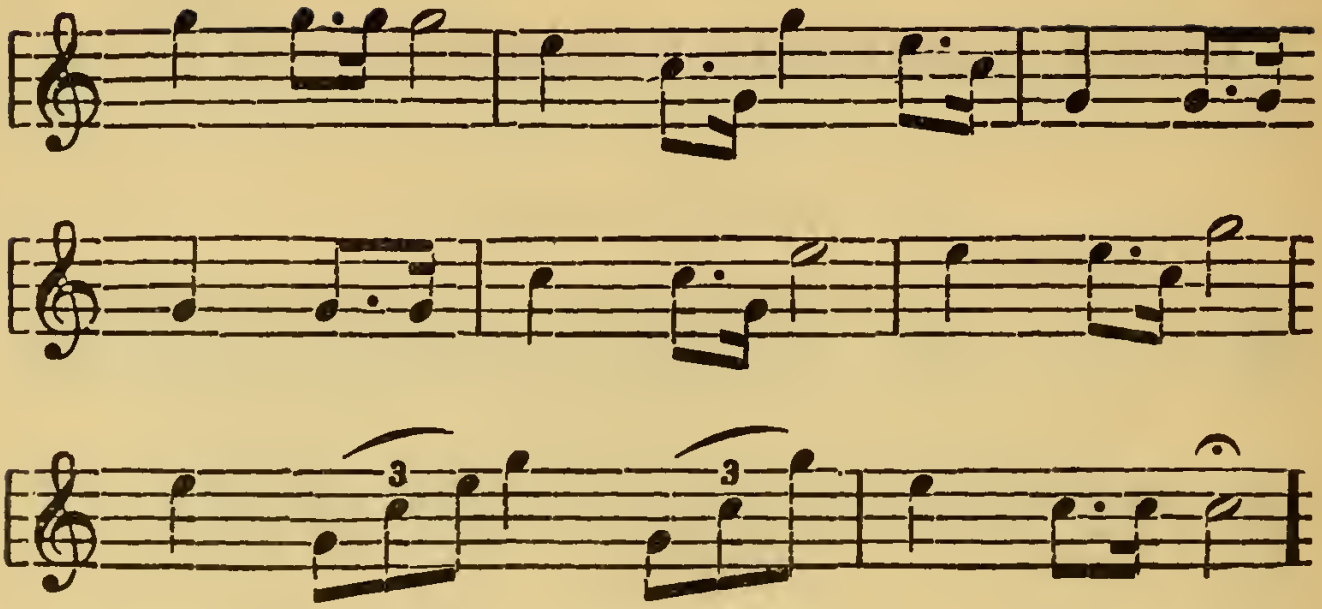
*Quick time.*

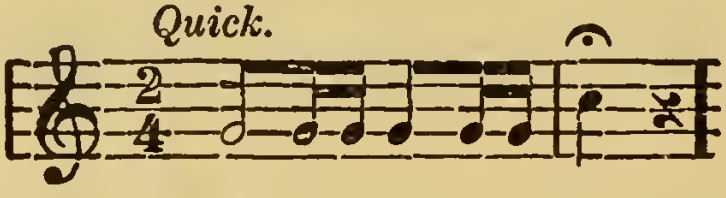


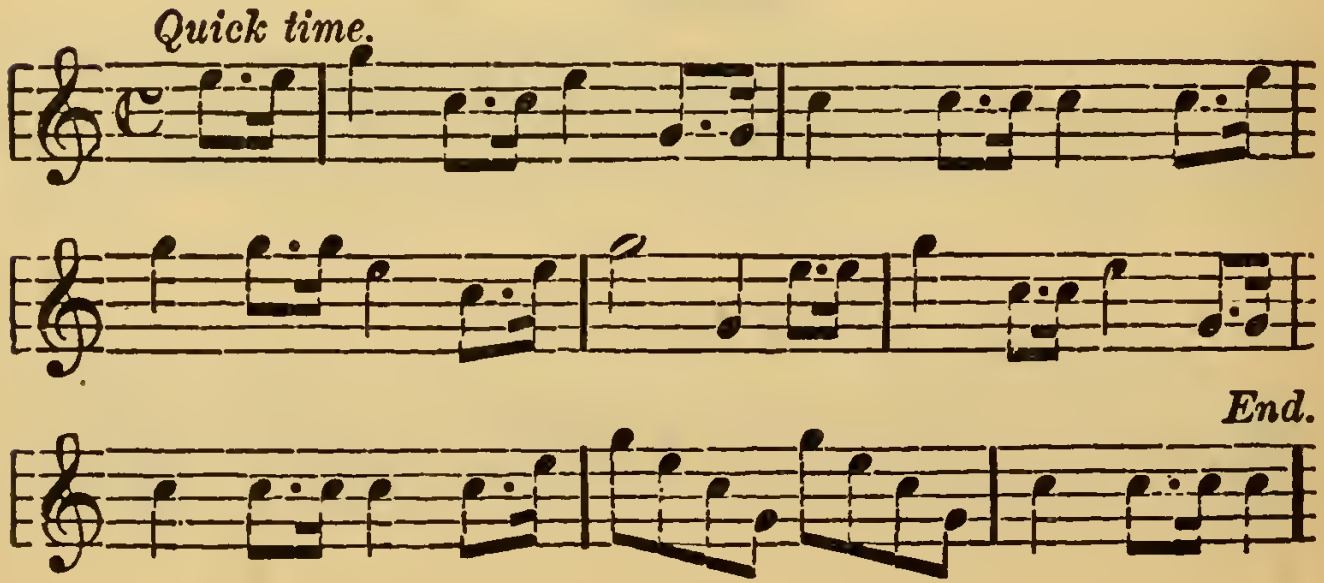

## 73. General's March:

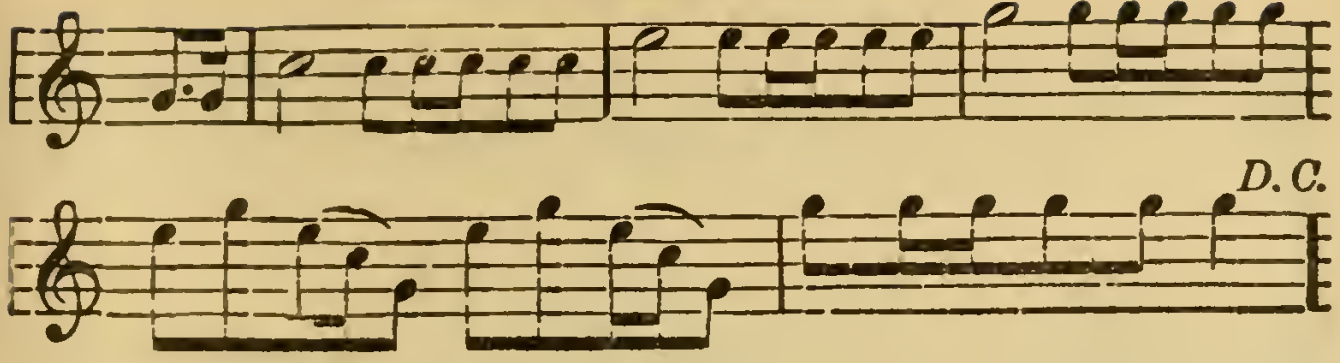
*Quick time.*



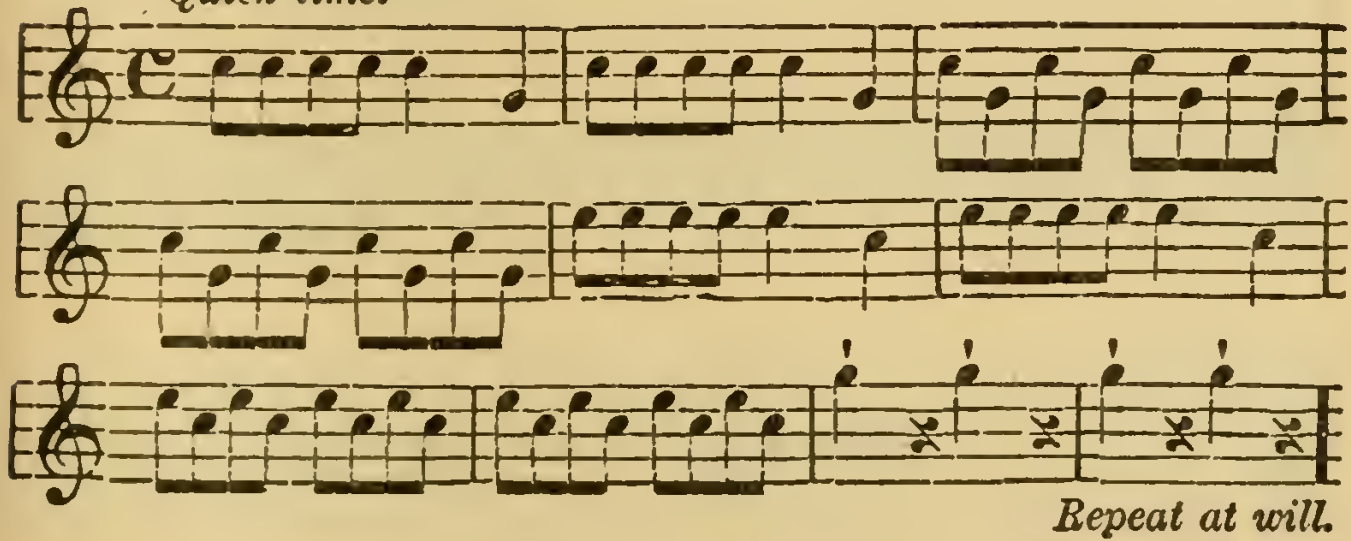
GENERAL'S MARCH—*Concluded.*

## 74. FLOURISHES FOR REVIEW.



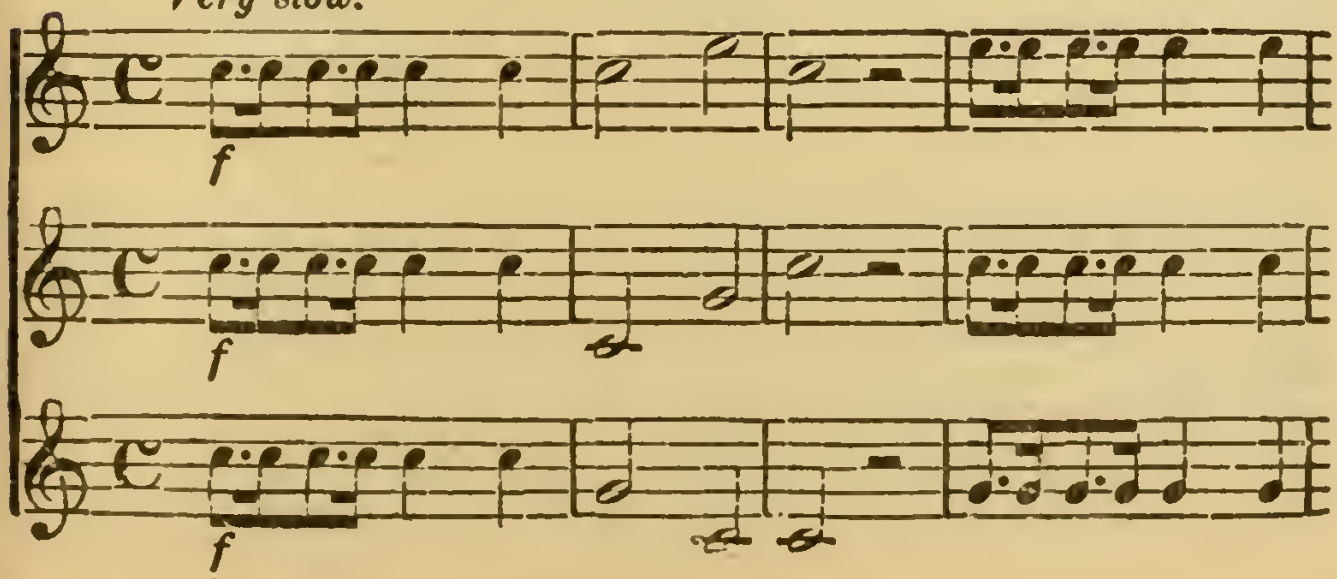

## 75. TO THE STANDARD.

TO THE STANDARD—*Concluded.*



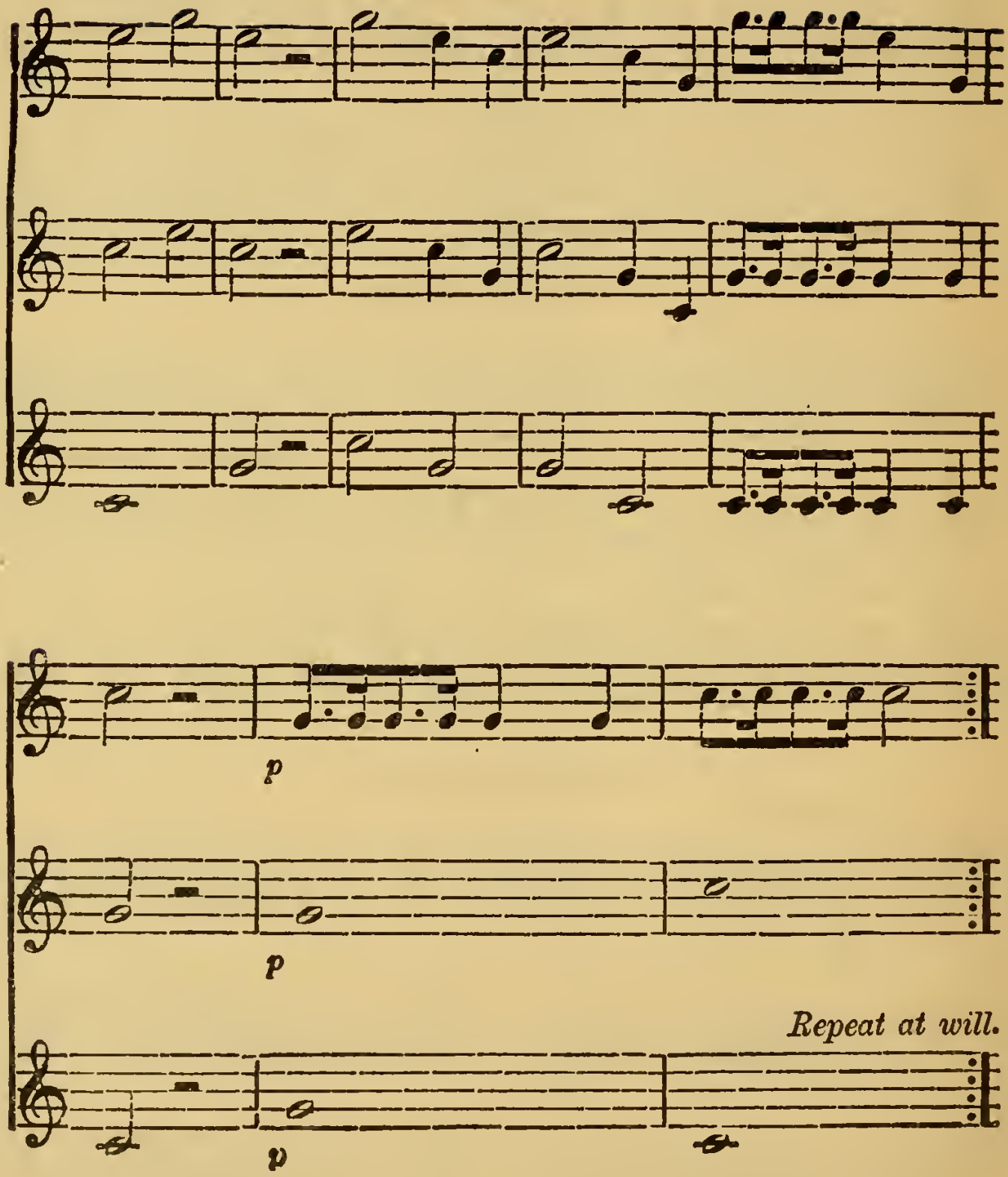

## 76. ROGUE'S MARCH.

*Quick time.*

## 77. FUNERAL MARCH.

*Very slow.*

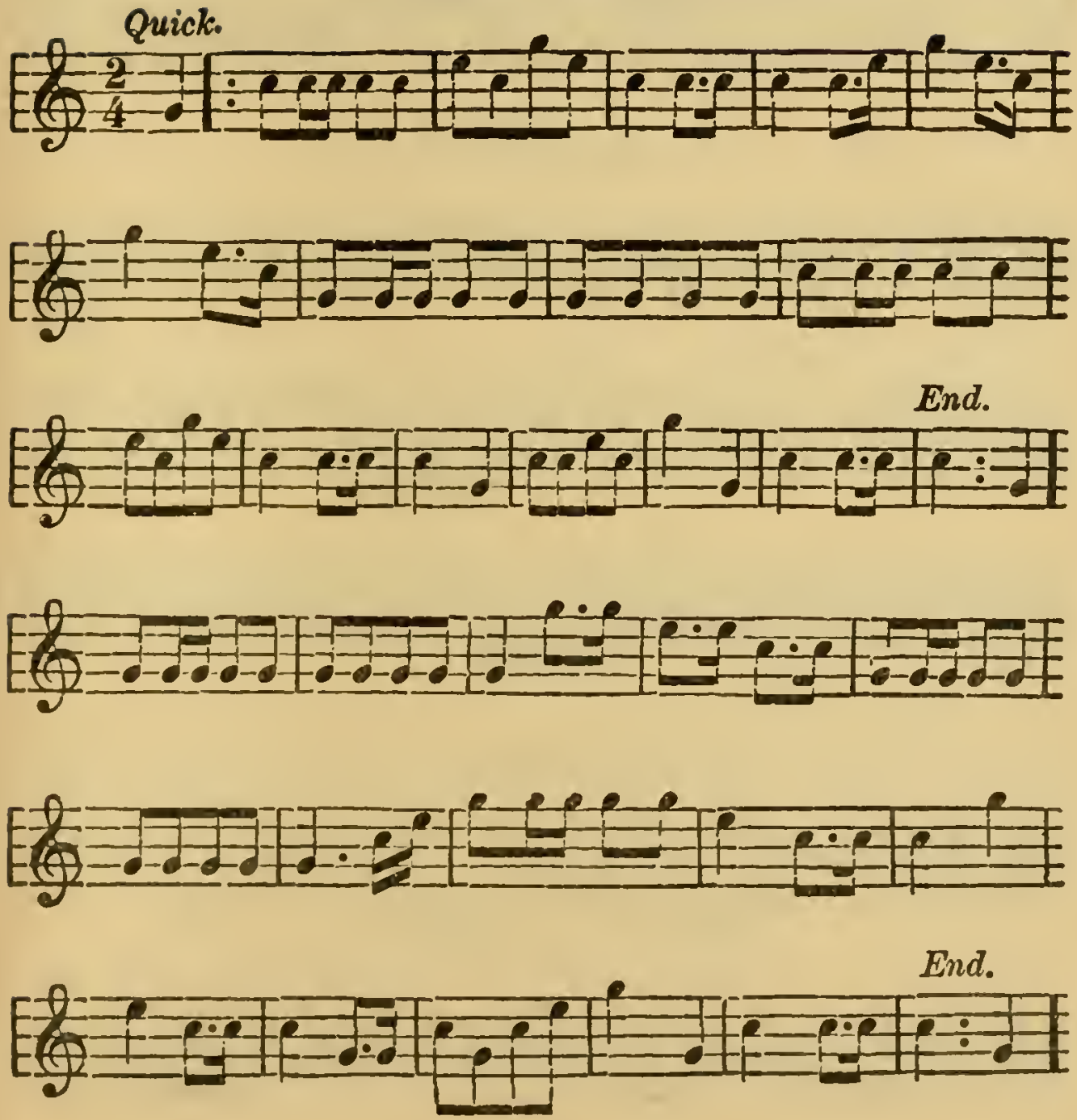


## FUNERAL MARCH—*Concluded*

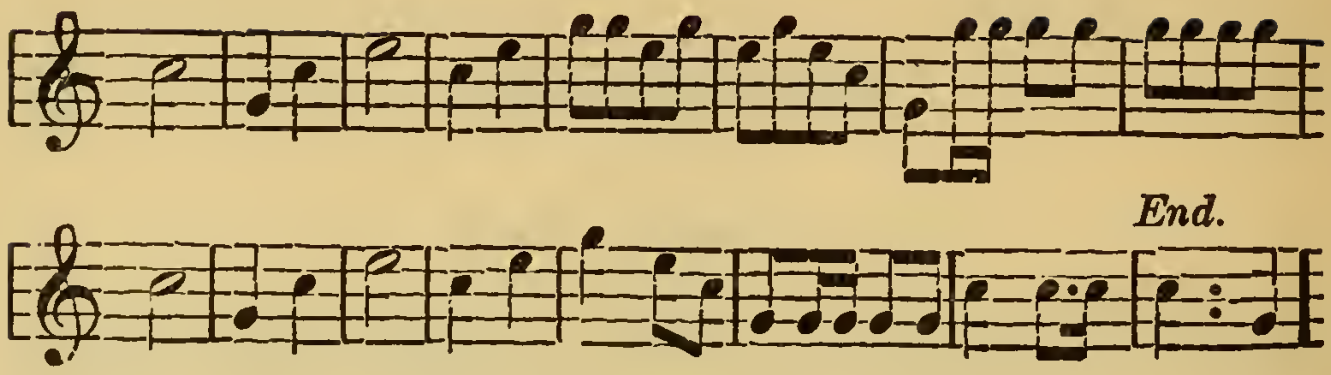


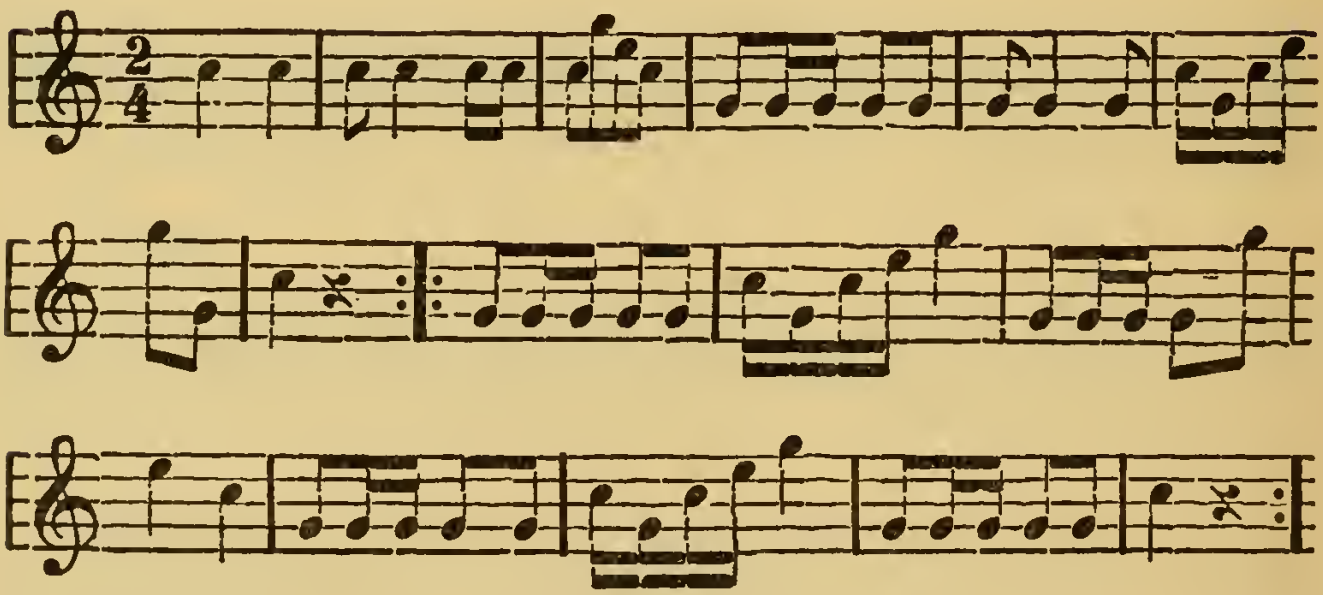
# QUICKSTEPS.

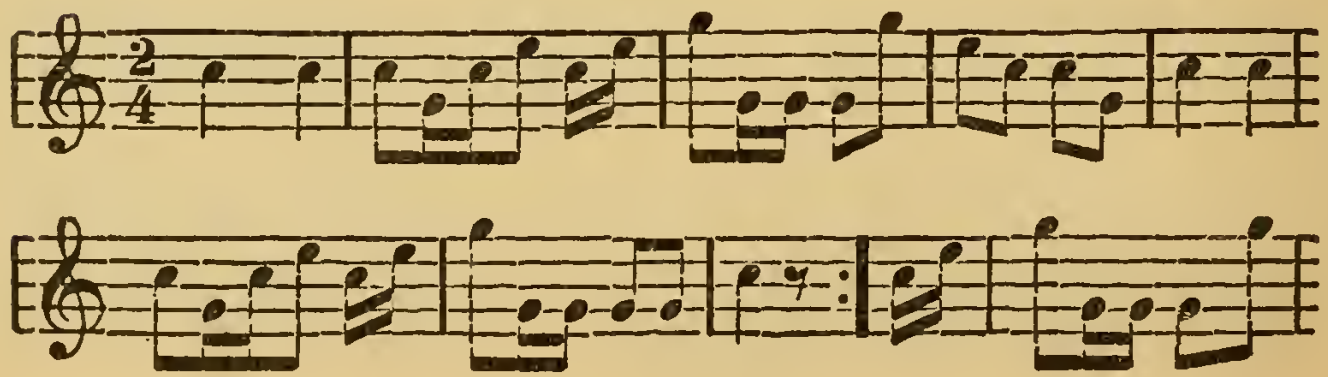
## 78. Quickstep No. 1.

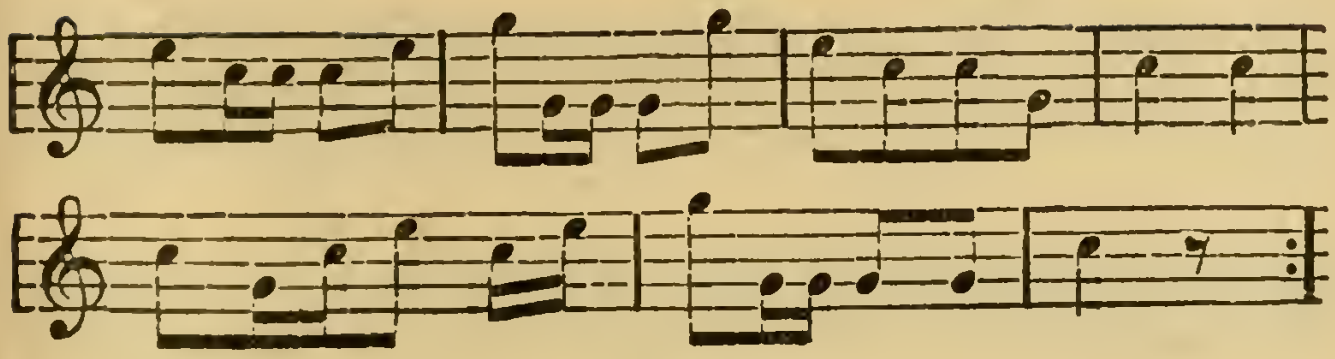
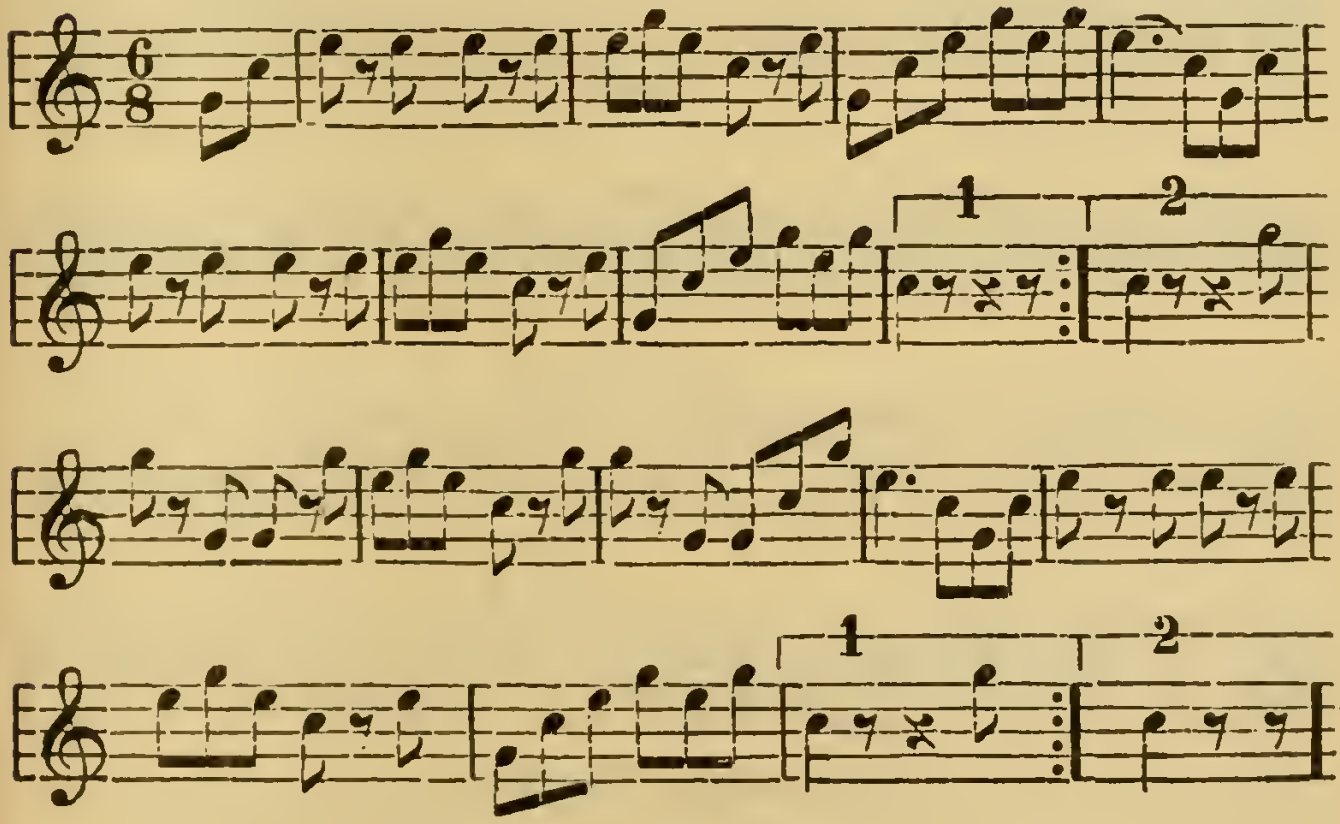


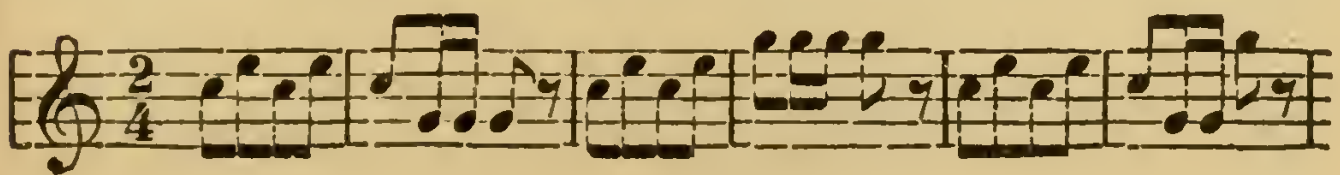
## QUICKSTEP NO. 1—*Concluded*



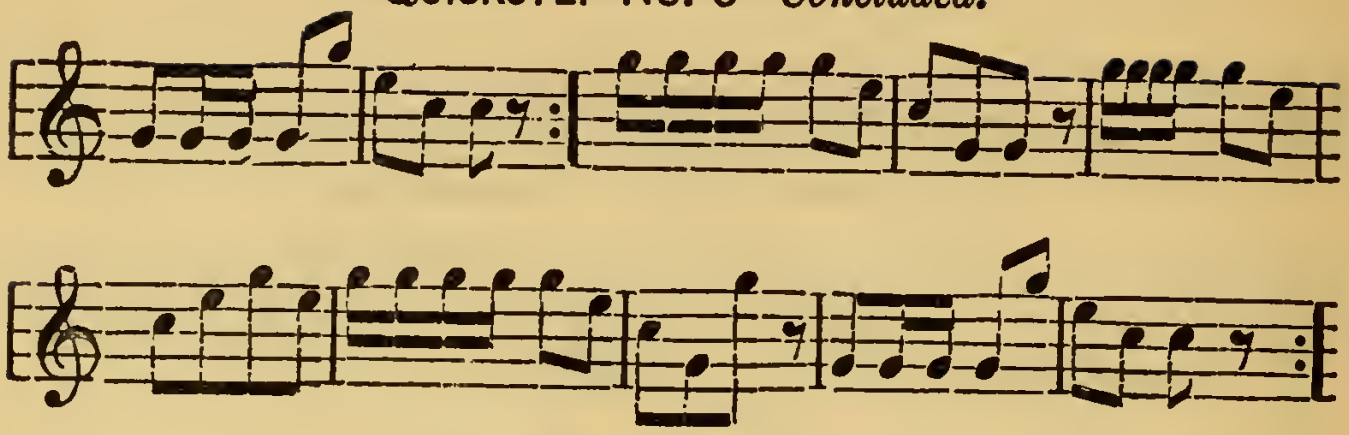

## 79. QUICKSTEP NO. 2.

## 80. QUICKSTEP NO. 3.



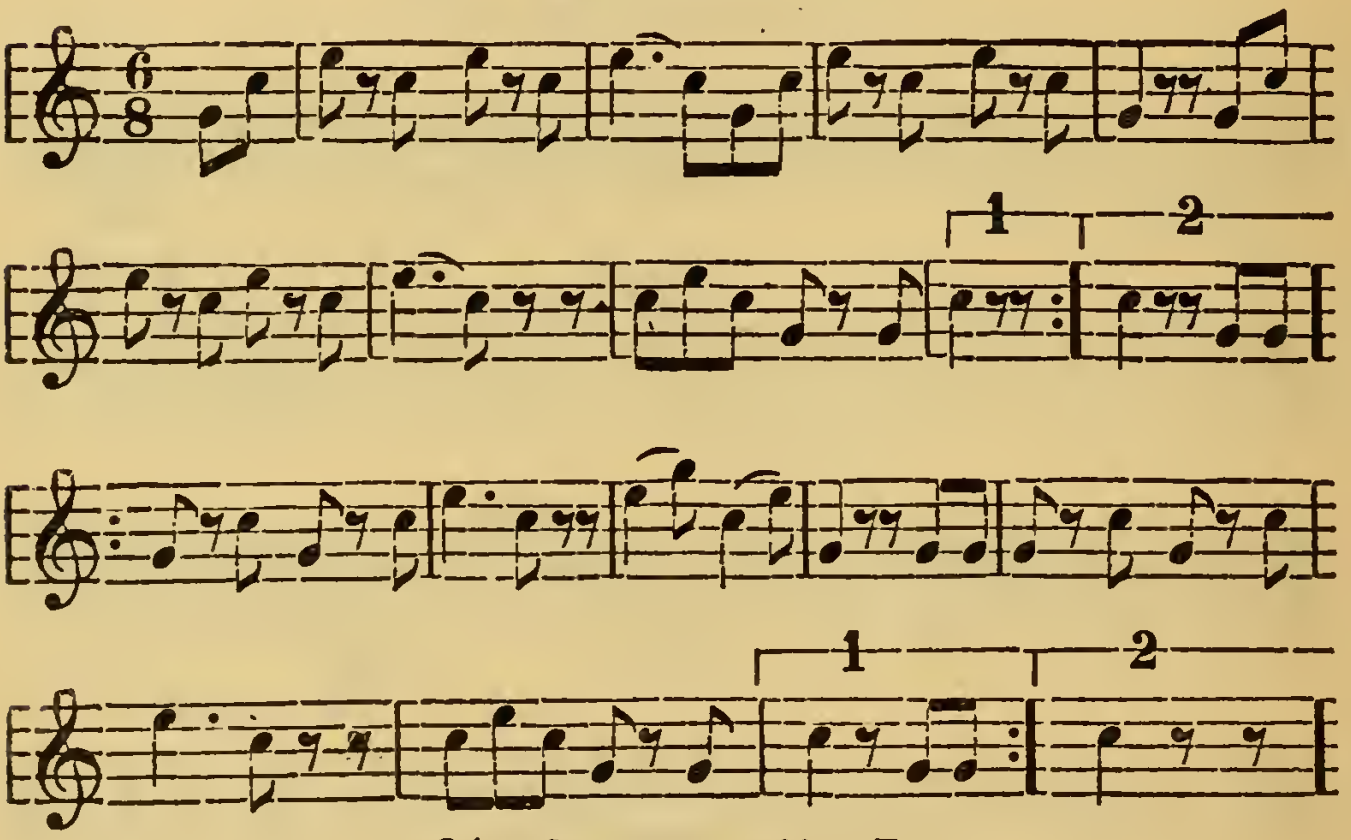
QUICKSTEP NO. 3—*Concluded.*

81. QUICKSTEP NO. 4.

82. QUICKSTEP NO. 5.

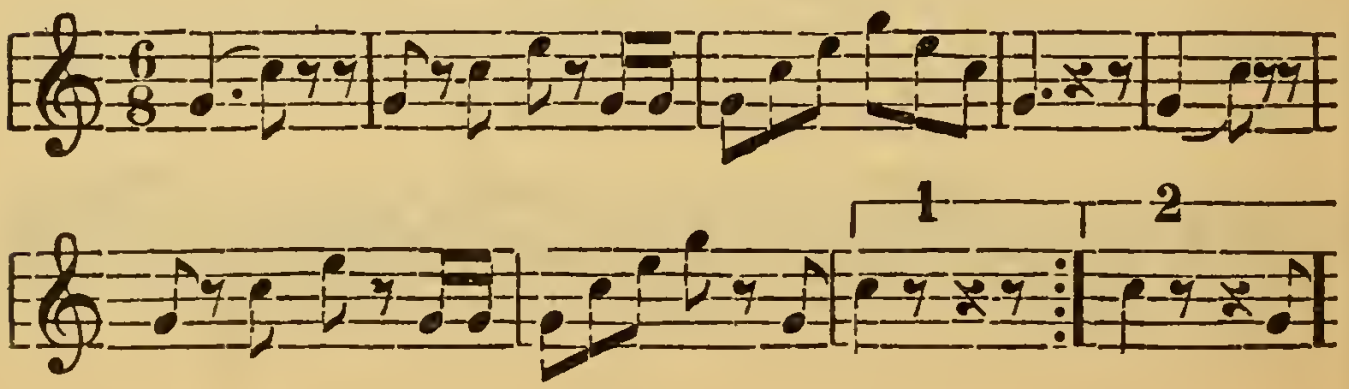


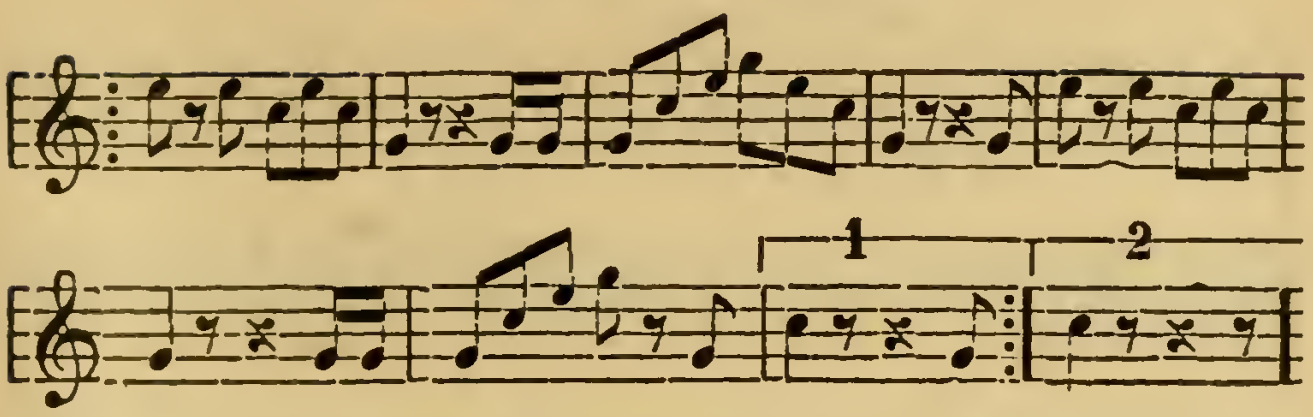
QUICKSTEP No. 5—*Concluded.*



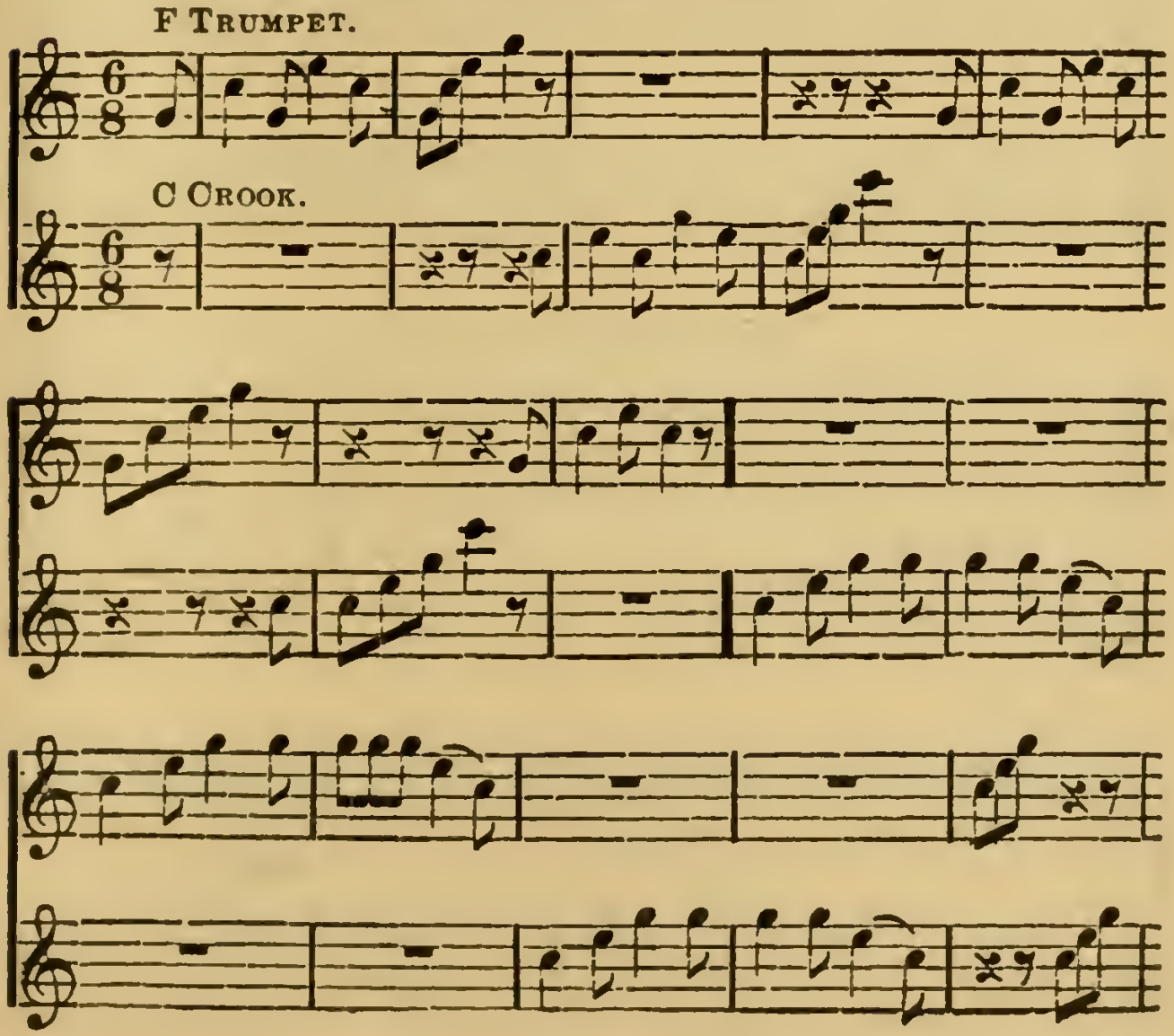
83. QUICKSTEP No. 6.




84. QUICKSTEP No. 7.

## QUICKSTEP NO. 7—*Concluded.*

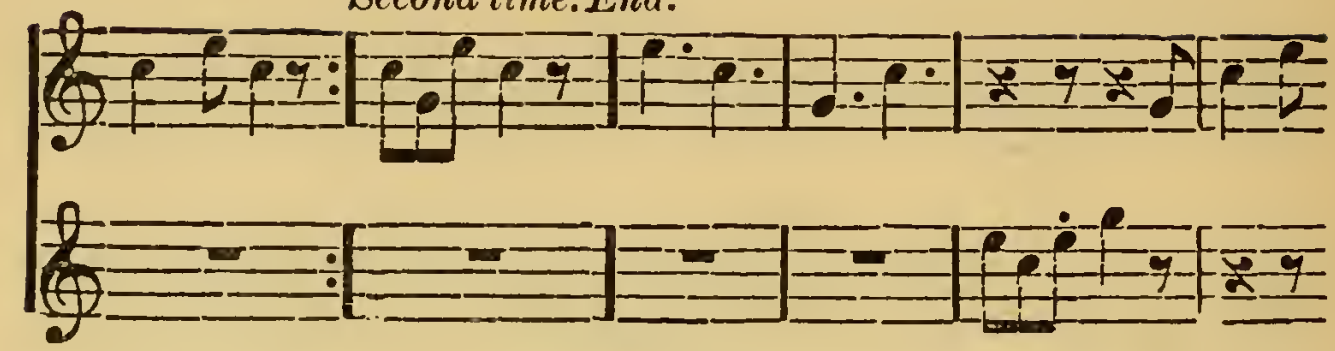


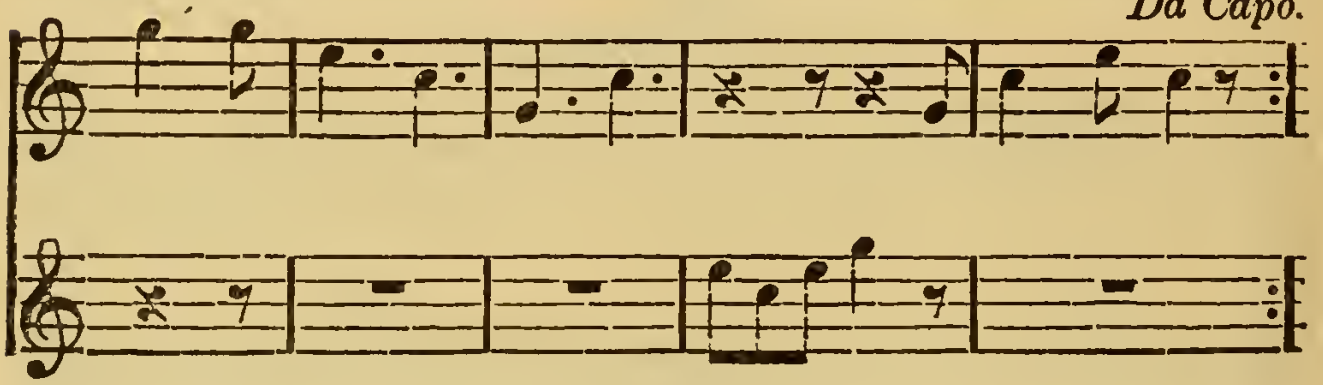

## 85 QUICKSTEP NO. 8.

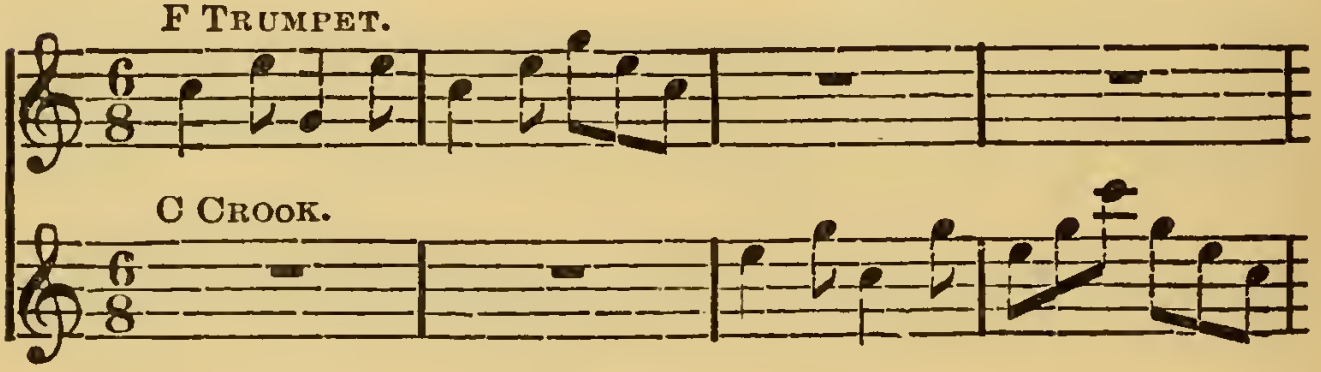


## QUICKSTEP NO. 8—*Concluded.*

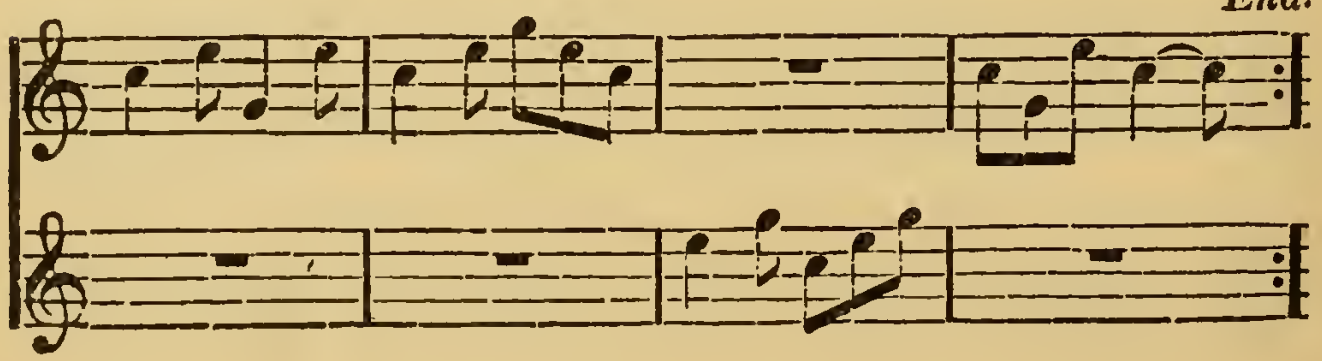
*Second time. End.*

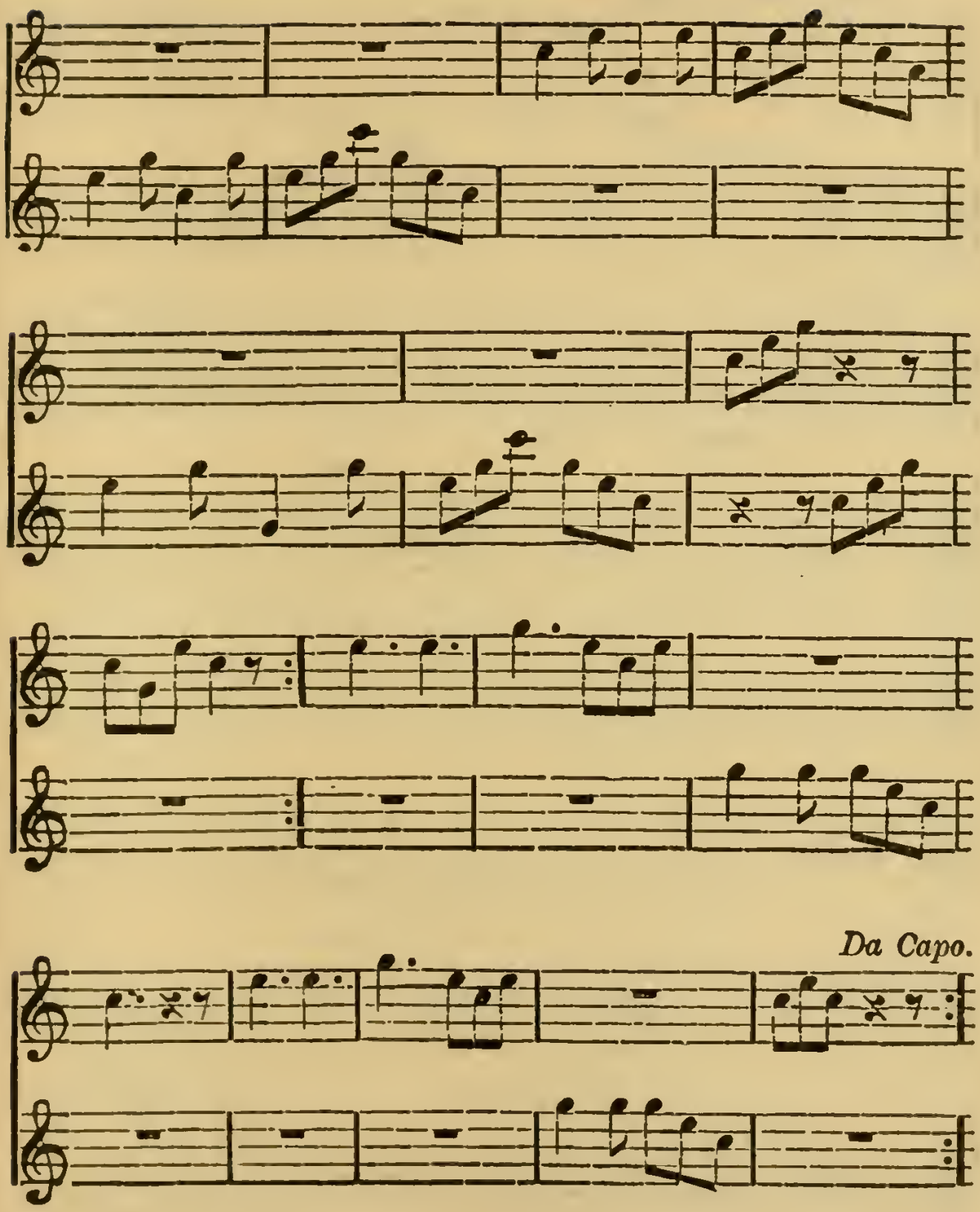


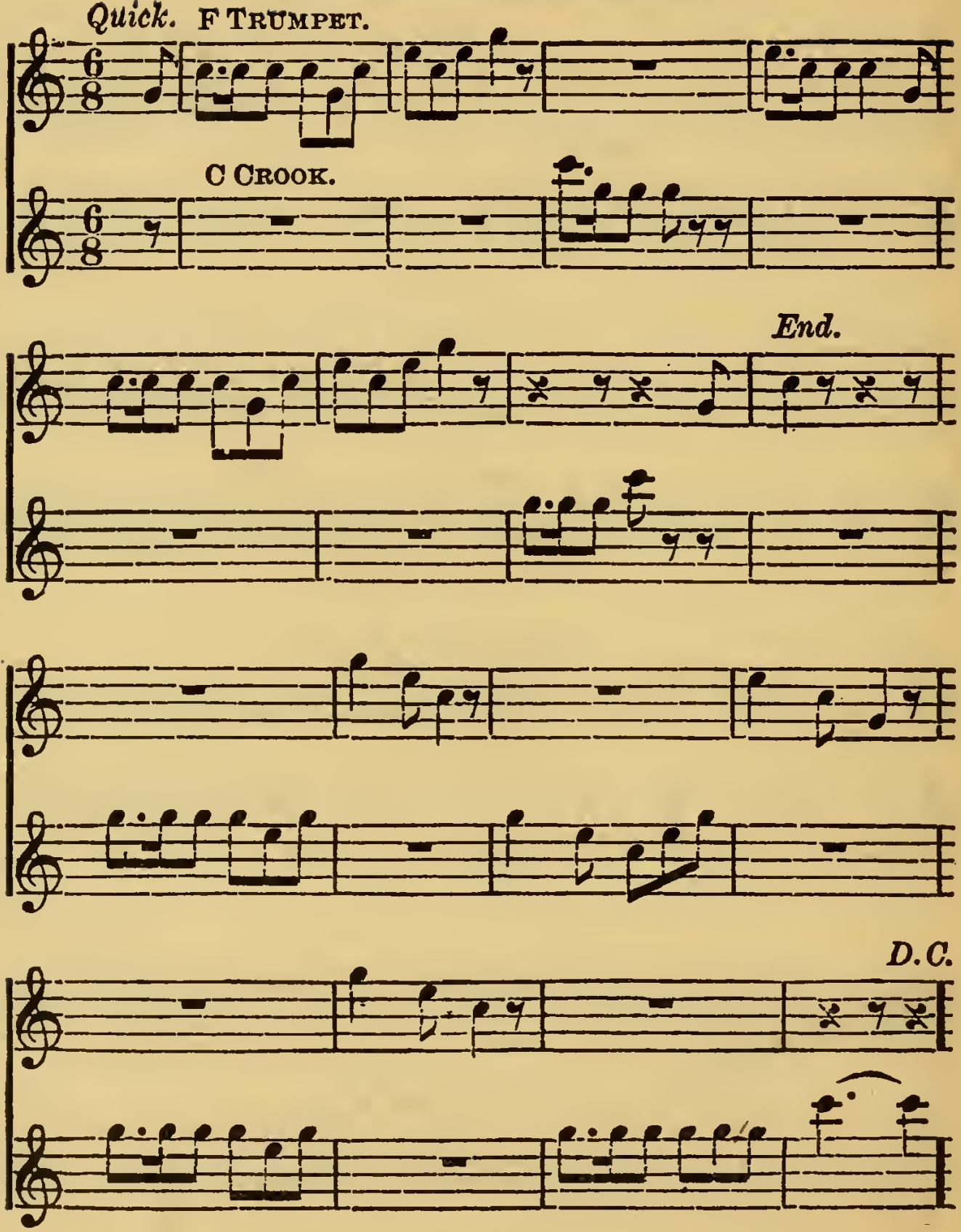
*Da Capo.*

## 86. QUICKSTEP NO: 9.

F TRUMPET.

C CROOK.




*End.*

## QUICKSTEP NO. 9—*Concluded.*



## 87. Quickstep No. 10.

# INDEX

TO

# CAVALRY DRILL REGULATIONS.

Details under each subject are arranged alphabetically.

An Index to Intervals and Distances, and to the General Rules and Rules of General Application, is added.

## ORDER OF SUBJECTS.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| CLOSE ORDER | 20–780 |
| School of the soldier | 20–252 |
| School of the trooper | 253–456 |
| School of the troop | 457–535 |
| School of the squadron | 536–637 |
| Evolutions of the regiment | 638–752 |
| The brigade | 753–773 |
| The division | 774–779 |
| The corps | 780 |
| EXTENDED ORDER | 781–952 |
| General principles | 781–789 |
| Leading the squad | 790–796 |
| The squad | 797–855 |
| The troop | 856–903 |
| The squadron | 904–950 |
| The regiment | 951, 952 |
| Ceremonies | 1014–1100 |
| Miscellaneous subjects. pages 3–8 and | 1–9, 953–1013, 1101–1119 |


## CLOSE ORDER.

### SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.


| | |
|---|---|
| Adjustments of sight | 95, 96 |
| Aim | 89, 92, 94 |
| Alignments | 110, 117–122 |
| Armament of trooper, dismounted | 51 |
| At ease | 29, 68 |
| Attention, position of | 28 |
| Attention, to resume | 31, 69, 194 |
| Back step | 46, 47, 110 |
| Backward march | 125 |
| Battle exercises | 111 |
| By the right or left flank, march | 127, 128 |
| Cadence of motions | 55, 56, 105, 111 |
| Cadence of steps | 38, 39, 41, 45, 46 |
| Captain, etc., in firings | 153 |
| Carbine salute | 99, 1012 |
| Carry, from order | 60 |
| Carry, from port | 66 |
| Carry, from present | 62 |
| Carry, from right shoulder | 64 |
| Carry, position of | 58 |

SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER—Continued.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| Cartridges | 97, 98, 170, 171, 173 |
| Cease firing | 158–160, 172 |
| Change direction, column of files | 129 |
| Change direction, column of fours | 144, 145 |
| Change step | 48 |
| Close boxes | 83, 100, 101 |
| Close chamber | 87 |
| Column of files, oblique march | 133 |
| Column of fours, from column of twos | 152 |
| Colum of fours, march to the rear | 147 |
| Column of fours put in march | 143 |
| Column of fours to the front, from line | 146 |
| Column of fours to the right or left, from line | 140, 141 |
| Column of twos from column of fours | 151 |
| Commands for firing | 155, 157 |
| Commencement of instruction with arms | 52 |
| Corporal as squad leader | 113 |
| Count fours | 139 |
| Covering and marching on points | 49, 50 |
| Depth | page 3 115 |
| Dismiss the squad | 32, 70, 195 |
| Double time | 41, 42 |
| Double time from halt or quick time | 110, 134, 135 |
| Draw cartridge | 88 |
| Dress in column of fours | 138, 140 |
| Extended order, positions of piece | 105 |
| Eyes right or left | 33 |
| Facings | 34, 35, 110 |
| Fall in | 26, 27, 53, 116 |
| Fall out | 29 |
| Fencing exercise | 234–251 |
| Fencing, mounted | 251, 252 |
| Fire | 90, 92 |
| Fire at will | 161 |
| Firings | 153–161 |
| Forward march | 123 |
| Forward march, on completion of wheel by fours, general rule | 142 |
| Fours right or left | 140, 141 |
| Fours right or left about | 147, 148 |
| Front | page 4 115 |
| General rules: | |
| cease firing | 159 |
| firings | 157 |
| forward march on completion of wheel by fours | 142 |
| guide in column of fours | 142 |
| guide in oblique march | 132 |
| hammer at safety notch | 57, 74 |
| manual of carbine | 57 |
| open chamber | 54 |
| Guide in column of fours | 138, 140, 142 |
| Guide in oblique march | 132 |
| Guide of squad | 114 |
| Halt | 40, 110 |
| Individual instruction with arms | 51–111 |
| Individual instruction without arms | 25–50 |
| Inspection of arms, dismounted | 101–104 |
| Inspection of boxes | 100 |
| Inspection, pistol | 175 |
| Intervals and distances, saber exercise, etc | 176–179 |
| Kneel and lie down | 73–80 |
| Left shoulder | 107 |
| Length of steps | 38, 41, 44, 45, 46 |
| Line, from column of fours | 149 |
| Load | 81, 82, 91, 92 |
| Load, from carry or order | 81, 110 |
| Load, position of | 81, 82 |
| Manual of carbine | 57–111 |
| Manual of carbine, battle exercises | 111 |

## SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER—Continued.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| Manual of carbine, marching and halting | 110 |
| Manual of carbine, when marchings, etc., are understood | 110 |
| Manual of pistol | 162–175 |
| Manual of saber | 180–201 |
| Marchings | 52, 123–152 |
| Mark time | 43, 47 |
| Movements by fours and twos | 138–152 |
| Movement by twos | 150–152 |
| Objective and range for all kinds of fire | 157 |
| Oblique march | 130–133 |
| Officers, manual of saber | 196–201 |
| Open boxes | 100 |
| Open chamber | 54, 87 |
| Order, from carry | 61 |
| Order, from load or ready | 86 |
| Order, from port | 66 |
| Order, from right shoulder | 65 |
| Order, in turn and halt | 136 |
| Order, kneeling, position of | 75 |
| Order, on halting | 110 |
| Order, position of | 58 |
| Parade rest | 30, 69, 193 |
| Pistol firing | 174 |
| Pistol lanyard | 162 |
| Pivot, fixed and movable | 140, 144 |
| Points, covering and marching on | 49, 50 |
| Port, from carry or order | 66 |
| Port, from right shoulder | 67 |
| Position of the soldier | 28 |
| Positions of piece, extended order and route marches | 105 |
| Positions of piece, recruits | 109 |
| Present, from carry | 62 |
| Quick time | 38, 39, 123, 135 |
| Ready | 84, 85, 92 |
| Recover | 93 |
| Recruits, grouping of | 16, 25, 113 |
| Recruits, marching with arms | 109 |
| Rests | 29, 30, 68, 69, 193 |
| Right shoulder, from carry or order | 63 |
| Right shoulder, from port | 67 |
| Right shoulder, when taken | 110 |
| Rise | 73–80 |
| Route marches, positions of piece, etc | 105, 200 |
| Route step | 29, 68 |
| Saber | 176–252 |
| Saber exercise | 202–233 |
| Salute with carbine | 99, 1012 |
| Salute with hand | 36, 1012 |
| Salute with saber | 187, 197, 198, 1012 |
| Secure | 108 |
| Setting up exercises | 37 |
| Short step | 44, 47, 131 |
| Side step | 45, 47, 110, 121 |
| Sling carbine | 71 |
| Soldier, position of | 28 |
| Squad, dismounted | 112–161 |
| Steps | 38–48 |
| Step, when lost | 124 |
| To the rear, march | 126 |
| Trail | 106, 110 |
| Turnings | 136, 137 |
| Unsling carbine | 72 |
| Volley firing | 156 |


## SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER.


| | |
|---|---|
| About, by fours | 399, 406, 407 |
| About, individual | 301 |
| Aids, in horsemanship | 293 |
| Alignments | 274, 381–385 |
| Armament of trooper, mounted | 354 |
| At ease, march | 286 |
| Attention, to resume | 287 |
| Backward, march | 305, 387 |
| Bending lessons | 433–439 |
| Blanket and shelter tent, to roll | 270 |

SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER—Continued.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| Blanket, to fold | 258 |
| Blanket, to place | 259 |
| Bridle, curb | 265–268, 330, 332 |
| Bridle, watering | 260, 261 |
| By the right or left flank | 297 |
| Canter | 334–336, 454, 455 |
| Cavesson and longe | 431, 440 |
| Change direction, column of fours | 297, 398 |
| Change direction, column of troopers | 304 |
| Change hands, riding school | 312, 322 |
| Change of direction, slight | 385 |
| Charge | 421–429 |
| Charge, with pistol | 426 |
| Circle, individual and squad | 321, 322, 324 |
| Circling on fore-hand | 338, 339 |
| Circling on haunches | 338, 340 |
| Column of fours, from column of twos | 410 |
| Column of fours, march to the rear | 399 |
| Column of fours, oblique | 401 |
| Column of fours, put in march | 395 |
| Column of fours or twos, from column of troopers | 411 |
| Column of fours or twos, re-form after inverting numbers | 413 |
| Column of fours, to the front, from line | 400 |
| Column of fours, to the right or left, from line | 392–394 |
| Column of troopers, from column of fours | 409 |
| Column of troopers, from line | 297–300, 309 |
| Column of twos, from column of fours | 408 |
| Column of twos, march to the rear | 413 |
| Column of twos, to the front, from line | 419 |
| Column of twos, to the right or left, from line | 418 |
| Corporal as squad leader | 377, 380 |
| Count fours | 380 |
| Cross stirrups | 328 |
| Depth of horse in rank | 299, 379 |
| Dismiss the squad | 288 |
| Dismount | 282, 283, 285, 308, 329, 355 |
| Dismount, in column of fours or twos | 420 |
| Disperse, in charge | 423 |
| Distances and intervals, to take | 370 |
| Distances, when lost | 298 |
| Draw cartridge, general rule | 364 |
| Drills begin and end at walk | 255 |
| Enemy, imaginary, outlined, represented | 427 |
| Exercises at will | 352, 353, 376 |
| Face and march to the rear from line | 406, 407 |
| Firearms, accustoming horses to report | 447 |
| Foragers | 425, 428 |
| Fording and swimming with horses | 456 |
| Forming the squad, mounted | 380 |
| Form rank | 307 |
| Forward, march | 295, 385, 420 |
| Forward, march, taken up on completion of wheel by fours | 394 |
| Fours in circle | 396 |
| Fours right or left about | 399, 406, 407 |
| Front, horse and rider | 299, 379 |
| Gaits of horses | 454, 455 |
| Gallop | 333–336 |
| Galloping step | 291 |
| Gather the horse | 294 |
| General rules: | |
| alignments, basis of | 384 |
| draw cartridge | 364 |

SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER—Continued.


Pars.

General rules—Continued.
drills begin and end at walk ..... 255
forward, march, taken up on completion of wheel by fours ..... 394
guide of column of fours ..... 394
guide of squad ..... 378
halt ..... 386
leading four or subdivision, where halted. 404
mount and dismount.. 285
"next" ..... 344
oblique march, to resume ..... 303
stand to horse ..... 287
Guide, in movements by fours ..... 391, 392, 394
Grace's method of throwing horse ..... 446
Halt ..... 296, 318, 386
Halting leading four or subdivision at less than prescribed distance..... 404
Heads, running at..... 375, 376
Horses, care and treatment of ..... 256, 288
Inspection arms, mounted..... 373, 374
Interval in line....page 5.. 306
Interval, loss of..... 385
Intervals and distances, to take ..... 370
Instruction, order of..... 254, 290
Jumping ..... 342–348, 372
Leading four or subdivision, where halted..... 404
Lead out ..... 273, 380
Leap, dismounted, with horse ..... 349
Line, face and march to the rear ..... 406, 407
Line, on right or left, from column of fours ..... 403

Pars.

Line, on right or left, from column of twos or troopers..... 415, 417
Line, to the front, from column of fours..... 405
Line, to the front, from column of twos or troopers..... 416, 417
Line, to the right or left, from column of fours.... 402
Line, to the right or left, from column of troopers. 310
Line, to the right or left, from column of twos or troopers..... 414, 417
Line with intervals..... 273, 298
Longe ..... 290, 431, 440
Manual of carbine mounted..... 355–365
Manual of saber, mounted. 366–369
March in line ..... 385
Mount..... 275, 284, 285, 325, 355, 366
Mounted exercises..... 290–292
Mount, in line ..... 307
Movements of column of twos like column of fours 412
Nomenclature of the saddle..... page 92.
Oblique, in column... 302, 303, 401
Oblique in line..... 303, 388
Overcoat, to roll..... 269
Passage..... 338, 341
Pivot, fixed and movable. 392, 397
Position of trooper, without saddle..... 276
Position of trooper, with saddle ..... 326
Principles of Par. 8, example ..... 405
Pursuit ..... 351, 352
Rally ..... 423, 425, 428
Rarey's method of throwing horse..... 441–445
Recruits, faults in riding . 290
Reins ..... 277–281, 290
Rests ..... 286

## SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER—Continued.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| Riding school | 311 |
| Route order, march | 286 |
| Running at heads | 375, 376 |
| Running rein | 432 |
| Saber exercise, mounted | 202, 222, 251, 252, 371, 372, 376 |
| Saddle | 262–264, 332 |
| Saddle, nomenclature of the | page 92. |
| Saddle, to pack | 271 |
| Shelter tent and bed blanket, to roll | 270 |
| Speed of different gaits | 454 |
| Spiral | 323 |
| Spur | 331, 332, 354 |
| Squad, composition | 377 |
| Squad leader | 377, 380 |
| Squad, mounted | 377–429 |
| Stand to heel | 289 |
| Stand to horse | 272, 287 |
| Stirrups | 263, 327, 328 |
| Swimming horses and fording | 456 |
| Throwing the horse | 441–446, 452 |
| Training horses | 430–453 |
| Trooper from front to rear, and reverse | 319, 320 |
| Trooper, position of, without saddle | 276, 287 |
| Trooper, position of, with saddle | 326 |
| Trot | 313–318, 337, 454, 455 |
| Turn, individual | 297 |
| Turnings | 389, 390 |
| Vicious horses, disciplining | 448–453 |
| Walk, drills begin and end at | 255 |
| Walk, from trot | 314 |
| Wrestle, mounted | 350, 352 |


## SCHOOL OF THE TROOP.


| | |
|---|---|
| Alarm or surprise | 467 |
| Alignments | 473–475 |
| Alignments, general rules | 475 |
| At ease, march | 524 |
| Captain, etc., in wheeling about by fours | 486, 487 |
| Captain, forming line from column of fours | 491 |
| Captain in alignments | 473–475 |
| Captain, in column of fours, twos, or troopers | 485 |
| Change direction in column of subdivisions | 501 |
| Change direction, line of columns of fours | 517 |
| Changing guide, column of fours | 492 |
| Charge | 525, 535 |
| Chief of platoon, dismounting in line or platoon column | 476 |
| Column of fours, changing guide | 492 |
| Column of fours, from platoon column | 514 |
| Commands by chiefs of platoon | 461 |
| Detachments, details, etc | 479 |
| Dismiss the troop | 288, 480 |
| Dismounted movements | 138, 153, 472 |
| Dismount in column of fours or twos | 420, 477 |
| Dismount, in line or platoon column | 476 |
| Distance and trace, platoon column | 497 |
| Dressing platoon column | 495 |
| Echelon | 518–523 |
| Fall in | 468, 471, 472 |
| Firings | 153 |
| Formation of troop | 463–465, 469 |
| Forming by squad | 469 |
| Forming for dismounted service | 472 |
| Forming in column of fours | 471 |
| Forming the troop | 467–472 |
| Forming without arms | 472 |
| Gait | 459, 481, 485, 497 |

SCHOOL OF THE TROOP—Continued.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| General rules: | |
| alignments | 475 |
| chief of platoon, dismounting in line or platoon column | 476 |
| chief of platoon dressing platoon column | 495 |
| gait in platoon column | 497 |
| grouping of men into squads | 457 |
| guide, oblique in column of subdivisions | 500 |
| guides in platoon column | 497 |
| Guide, announcement of | 501 |
| Guide, in column of fours | 392, 485 |
| Guidon, forming line from column of fours | 485–487, 489, 490 |
| Guidon in alignments | 473, 474 |
| Guidon in platoon column | 493, 497 |
| Guidon, in turnings | 483, 484 |
| Guidon, marching in line | 481 |
| Instruction of officers, etc. | 462 |
| Instruction, method of | 459, 460 |
| Line of platoons in columns of fours, on right or left, from column of fours | 510 |
| Line of platoons in columns of fours, to the front, from column of fours | 509 |
| Line of platoons in columns of fours, to the front, from line | 508 |
| Line of platoons in columns of fours, to the right or left, from column of fours | 511 |
| Line of platoons in columns of fours, to the right or left, from platoon column | 512 |
| Line, on right or left, from column of fours | 489 |
| Line, on right or left, from platoon column | 507 |
| Line, to the front, from column of fours | 490 |
| Line to the front, from line of platoons in columns of fours | 513 |
| Line, to the front, from platoon column | 506 |
| Line, to the right or left, from column of fours | 488 |
| Line, to the right or left, from platoon column | 504, 505 |
| March in line | 385, 481 |
| Mounted officers, about | 470 |
| Movements by fours, twos, and troopers | 485–492 |
| Movements by troop, dismounted | 138, 153, 472 |
| Movements of platoons, detachments, etc., like squad mounted | 479 |
| Movements of troop like squad, mounted | 479 |
| Oblique by heads of columns | 516 |
| Obstacles | 482 |
| Platoon column, defined | 493 |
| Platoon column, face and march to the rear | 502, 503 |
| Platoon column, from column of fours | 515 |
| Platoon column, gait | 497 |
| Platoon column, oblique | 500 |
| Platoon column, to the front, from line | 498 |
| Platoon column, to the right or left from line | 494, 496 |
| Platoons | 463, 479 |
| Posts of officers, etc | 466, 472 |
| Principal guide in alignments | 473-475 |
| Principal guides, in column of fours, twos or troopers | 485 |
| Rests | 286, 478 |
| Route marches | 524 |
| Squad leader | 457, 464 |
| Squads | 457, 464, 465 |
| Subdivisions of troop | 463, 464 |
| Troops, two or more united | 458 |
| Turnings | 483, 484 |

## SCHOOL OF THE SQUADRON.


Pars.

Alignments ..... 552, 553
Base troop ..... 548, 560(a)
Change direction by the flank, close column ..... 600
Change direction, column at full distance ..... 572
Change front, line ..... 578
Change front, line of platoon columns ..... 624
Change of direction in line, slight ..... 548
Charge ..... 635-637
Close column ..... 589
Close column, change direction by the flank ..... 600
Close column, distance ..... 589
Close column, faced to the front, from column of fours ..... 594
Close column, faced to the rear, from column of fours ..... 595
Close column, faced to the right or left, from column of fours ..... 596
Close column, from column at full distance ..... 590, 591
Close column, from line ..... 593
Close column, in oblique direction, from column of fours ..... 594
Close column, leading or designated troop in front 589
Close column, marching by the flank, movements of. 601
Close column of wings ..... 606
Close in mass ..... 590, 591
Column of fours, from close column ..... 597, 598
Column of fours, from line of columns of fours, at close interval ..... 587
Column of fours, from right or left to march to left or right, from line .. 557
Column of fours, movements same as in troop .. 558

Pars.

Column of fours, to the front, from line ..... 626
Column of fours, to the right or left from line ... 556
Column of platoons, from line of platoon column. 619, 625
Column of platoons, to the right or left, from line ..... 494, 496, 607
Column of troops, change of direction, slight ..... 569
Column of troops, from line of platoon columns. 617
Column of troops, to the right or left, from line .. 567, 568
Column at full distance, change direction ..... 572
Column at full distance, face and march to the rear ..... 571
Column at full distance, from close column ..... 592
Commands ..... 537, 538, 540
Deploy close column ..... 604–606
Designations of troops and wings ..... 543
Dismiss the squadron ..... 547
Double column of fours, from line ..... 627
Echelon ..... 630–633
Face and march to the rear, in line ..... 551
Formation advancing considerable distances ..... 550
Formation of squadron ... 543
Forming the squadron ... 545, 546
Gaits of movements ..... 459, 539
General rules:
captain dressing troop. 545
successive formations. 560
Guide, announcement of, forming line, line of columns, or column of subdivisions ..... 541
"Guides out" ..... 473, 560 (r)
Guides recovering direction ..... 497, 569, 571

SCHOOL OF THE SQUADRON—Continued.


Pars.

Guidon, successive formations.....560 (a, k, l, p), 611
In mass ..... 589
Instruction .....542, 634
Interval between troops in line..... 543
Interval, double column of fours ..... 627
Intervals, forming line by two movements, page 5.. 564
Intervals in line of columns of fours, close and extend.....582, 583
Line by two movements. from column of fours ..564–566
Line, faced to the rear from column of fours..... 563
Line, from close column..604–606
Line, from line of platoon columns at full intervals 622
Line of columns of fours, intervals ..... 582
Line of columns of fours, movements same as in troop ..... 588
Line of columns of fours, on right or left, from column of fours..... 586
Line of columns of fours, to the front, from column of fours.....584, 585
Line of columns of fours, to the front, from line... 579
Line of columns of fours, to the rear, from line.... 580
Line of platoon columns, at full interval, from column of platoons..... 620
Line of platoon columns, at full interval, from column of troops, at full distance ..... 618
Line of platoon columns, at full interval, from line ..... 621
Line of platoon columns, change front..... 624

Pars.

Line of platoon columns, close and extend intervals 623
Line of platoon columns, interval ..... 611
Line of platoon columns, march by the flank ..... 616
Line of platoon columns, on right or left, from col- column of platoons..... 613
Line of platoon columns, posts of major and captains ..... 611
Line of platoon columns, to the front, from column of fours ..... 615
Line of platoon columns, to the front, from column of platoons..... 614
Line of platoon columns, to the right or left, from column of platoons..... 612
Line on right or left, from close column..... 603
Line, on right or left, from column at full distance . 574
Line, on right or left, from column of fours..... 561
Line, on right or left, from column of platoons..... 608
Line, to and on right or left, from double column of fours ..... 629
Line, to the front, from column at full distance.575–577
Line, to the front, from column of fours..... 562
Line, to the front, from column of platoons ....609, 610
Line, to the front, from double column of fours.. 628
Line, to the right or left, from close column ..... 602
Line, to the right or left, from column at full distance ..... 573
Line, to the right or left, from column of fours.... 559

## SCHOOL OF THE SQUADRON—Continued


| | Pars |
|---|---|
| March by the flank, from line | 556 |
| March in line or line of columns | 548–550 |
| Movements by platoons | 607 |
| Movements by troops or platoons, simultaneous | 541 |
| Movements in close column, same as column at full distance | 599 |
| Movements of double column of fours | 627 |
| Oblique by heads of columns | 581 |
| Oblique change of front, line | 578 |
| Oblique in line | 555 |
| Obstacles | 554 |
| Ploy into close column, from line | 593 |
| Posts of captains, close column of wings | 606 |
| Posts of major, adjutant and sergeant major | 544 |
| Posts of major and captains, close column | 589 |
| Posts of major and captains, column at full distance | 567 |
| Posts of major and captains, line of columns of fours | 579 |
| Posts of major and captains, line of platoon columns | 611 |
| Post of major, in the charge | 635 |
| Rally | 423–425, 428 |
| Rests | 286, 524, 547 |
| Route marches | 544 |
| Successive formations, general rules | 560 |


## EVOLUTIONS OF THE REGIMENT.


| | |
|---|---|
| Adjutants | 648, 653, 665, 717, 726, 735 |
| Alignments | 660 |
| Alignments of line of masses | 726 |
| At ease, squadrons awaiting completion of movement | 647 |
| Band | 649, 1004–1010 |
| Base squadron | 652, 656 |
| Change direction, column at full distance | 690 |
| Change direction, line of masses marching by the flank | 730 |
| Change front, in line | 739 |
| Change front, in line of masses | 728 |
| Colonel | 641 |
| Column at full distance, from column of masses | 695 |
| Column at full distance, to the right or left, from line | 688 |
| Column of fours, distance between squadrons | 662 |
| Column of fours, from line of masses | 732 |
| Column of fours, from right or left, to march to left or right | 662 |
| Column of fours, from two lines | 668 |
| Column of fours, movements explained from march | 664 |
| Column of fours, movements same as in squadron | 663 |
| Column of fours, to the right or left, from line | 661 |
| Column of masses, change direction by the flank | 703 |
| Column of masses, distance | 692 |
| Column of masses, faced to the front, from column of fours | 698, 701 |

## EVOLUTIONS OF THE REGIMENT—Continued.


Pars.

Column of masses, faced to the front, from line of masses ..... 735
Column of masses, faced to the rear, from column of fours ..... 699
Column of masses, faced to the rear, from line of masses ..... 736
Column of masses, faced to the right or left, from column of fours ..... 700
Column of masses, faced to the right or left, from line of masses ..... 733
Column of masses, from column at full distance..694, 701
Column of masses, from line ..... 696, 697
Column of masses, ployment ..... 693
Column of platoons, from line of platoon columns ..... 745
Column of squadrons ..... 710–714
Commands, general rules ..... 652
Commands of majors ..... 645, 646
Composition of regiment ..... 638
Deploy column of masses..704–708
Designation of squadrons and troops ..... 639
Discretion of majors ..... 646
Dismiss the regiment ..... 654
Distances ..... 666
Double column of fours, from line, or two lines..746, 747
Echelon ..... 748–752
Face and march to the rear, in line ..... 657, 658
Face to the rear, column at full distance ..... 691
Forming the regiment ..... 653
Gaits of movements ..... 640
General rules for commands ..... 652
Guard of the standard...650, 1003
Halt ..... 659

Pars.

Interval between squadrons ..... 653
Intervals, extend and close, line of platoon columns..743, 744
In three lines, to the front, from column of fours..... 679
In two lines, on right or left by squadrons, from column of fours ..... 672
In two lines, on right or left, from column of fours..... 670
In two lines, to the front, from column of fours...678, 684
In two lines to the right or left, from column of fours ..... 667
In two or three lines, from column of masses..... 707, 708
Lieutenant colonel ...642, 651, 653
Line by two movements, from column of fours...680–682
Line of columns of fours, from column of fours...685–687
Line of masses, close and extend intervals ..... 718
Line of masses, faced to the rear, from column of fours ..... 725
Line of masses, faced to the right or left, from column of fours ..... 721
Line of masses, from line..719, 720
Line of masses, interval... 717
Line of masses, march by the flank ..... 729
Line of masses, on right or left, from column of fours 722
Line of masses, on right or left, from column of masses ..... 737
Line of masses, posting guides ..... 717
Line of masses, posts of majors ..... 717
Line of masses, to the front, from column of fours ..... 723–725

## EVOLUTIONS OF THE REGIMENT—Continued.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| Line of masses, to the front, from column of masses | 738 |
| Line of masses, to the right or left, from column of masses | 734 |
| Line of squadrons in columns of fours, from column of masses | 709 |
| Line, on right or left, by squadrons, from column of fours | 671 |
| Line, on right or left, from column at full distance | 689 |
| Line, on right or left, from column of fours | 669 |
| Line, to the front, from column at full distance | 689 |
| Line, to the front, from column of fours | 673-677, 683 |
| Line, to the front, from column of squadrons | 715, 716 |
| Line, to the right or left, from column of masses | 704–706 |
| Major, posts and duties | 643–646, 717 |
| March by the flank | 661 |
| March in line, or line of columns | 655 |
| Movements in line of columns of fours | 686 |
| Movements of column of masses same as column at full distance | 702 |
| Movements of masses | 727 |
| Movements of platoons | 740–742 |
| Movements of squadrons | 646, 652 |
| Ployment into column of masses | 693, 696–701 |
| Rests | 654 |
| Route marches | 651 |
| Simultaneous movements by troops, etc | 652 |
| Squadrons at ease | 647 |
| Staff, non-commissioned staff, etc | 648, 651 |
| Successive formations | 665 |


## THE BRIGADE.


| | |
|---|---|
| Battery | 753, 755, 757, 759, 764 |
| Change of front | 772 |
| Commands | 758 |
| Composition of brigade | 753 |
| Deployment of masses | 771 |
| Designation of brigade in reports | 773 |
| Designation of regiments | 754 |
| Evolutions | 757 |
| Formation | 754 |
| Formations and routes, moving into position | 757 |
| Interval between regiments | 755 |
| In two or more lines, movements of battery | 764 |
| In two or more lines, movements of rear lines | 764 |
| In two or three lines, to the right or left, from column of fours | 761 |
| Line, from column of platoons | 763 |
| Line, from line of platoon columns, masses, columns of fours, or double column of fours | 769–771 |
| Line of double columns, marchings | 767 |
| Lines of platoon columns, masses, or columns of fours | 763, 767 |
| Line, on right or left, from column of fours | 762 |
| Line to the front, from column of fours | 759 |
| Line, to the right or left, from column of fours | 760 |
| March by the flank | 768 |
| March in line | 764 |

THE BRIGADE—Continued.


| | Pars. | | Pars. |
|---|---|---|---|
| March to the rear | 766 | Passing from close to extended order and reverse | 773 |
| Movements of battery | 757 | Post of brigade commander | 756, 773 |
| Movements of second and third lines | 764, 772 | Re-form line | 769–771 |
| Orders of brigade commander | 758 | Squadrons regaining positions | 773 |
| Order to squadron commander | 773 | Staff, flag, and orderlies | 756 |

THE DIVISION ..... 774–779

THE CORPS ..... 780


# EXTENDED ORDER.

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES.


| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Attention fixed | 784 | Halting, faced to the front | 786 |
| Basis of extended order | 781 | Instruction, commencement and method of | 782 |
| Carbine, position of | 787 | March and stand at ease | 788 |
| Chief leaving post | 789 | Movements commence | 784 |
| Commencement of instruction | 782 | Movements made with reference to enemy | 783 |
| Dressing | 788 | Pistol, position of | 787 |
| Duties of officers, etc | 781 | Squad, when broken up | 781 |
| Extended order from any formation | 785 | | |


## LEADING THE SQUAD.


| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Corporal, posts | 792, 796 | Guide of squad | 794, 795 |
| Exercises of the squad | 793 | Movements executed at signals | 790 |
| Gaits of movements | 791 | | |


## THE SQUAD.


| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Assemble | 814 | Fight on foot | 819–830 |
| Battle exercises | 855 | Fight on foot, action front | 825 |
| Change front or direction, line of skirmishers | 811 | Fight on foot, action right or left | 826, 828 |
| Charge | 818 | Fight on foot, from column of twos | 827 |
| Corporal, or squad leader | 13, 113, 377, 380, 457, 464, 790, 792, 795, 796, 799, 808, 809, 830 | Fight on foot, part of squad | 828 |
| Cover, use of | 848–854 | Fire at will, and with counted cartridges | 835 |
| Dismount, on skirmish line | 819–821 | Fire discipline | 831–837 |
| Drill, led horses | 824 | Firings, dismounted | 838–843 |
| Execution of movements at signals | 784, 790, 815 | Firings, mounted | 816, 817 |

## THE SQUAD—Continued.


Pars.

Formation and designation....377, 380, 464
General rules:
corporal .... 799
deployments forward and by the flank ....797, 830
dismount, to fight on foot....822-824
formation before dismounting to fight on foot .... 822
interval between skirmishers....798, 830
of fire discipline .... 831
Halting faced to the front..786, 812
Horse holders....821, 823, 825
Instruction on varied ground ....844-854
Interval between skirmishers ....798, 805, 806, 830
Intervals, increase or diminish .... 806
Led horses ....823 824, 829
Line of skirmishers, to the front, from column of fours .... 802
Line of skirmishers, to the front, from line ....800, 801
Line of skirmishers, to the right or left, from column of fours .... 804
Line of skirmishers, to the right or left, from line.... 803
Link horses....821, 823, 825, 827
Marchings....807-812
Mount, from fight on foot.. 829
Mount, on skirmish line.... 820
Movements, dismounted, to fight on foot .... 830
Rally .... 813
Ranges, classification.... 837
Rapid fire .... 836
Scouts, patrols, etc., firing.. 832
Sharpshooters and individuals, firing .... 833
Volleys .... 834


## TROOP.


Assemble....883, 897
Attacking line ....860, 863
Captain ....858, 863, 864
Change front or direction.. 888
Chief of platoon....860, 864, 870, 893, 894, 896
Commands .... 867
Composition of troop.... 856
Deploy by platoons.... 393
Designation of platoons for firing line, etc.... 863
Dismount to fight on foot..896-901
Echelons .... 856
Fight on foot, from line of squads.... 899
Fight on foot, to the front....896, 897
Fight on foot, to the right or left .... 898
Firing line, to reënforce..858, 903
Firing line, to relieve .... 902
Firings....891, 892
Formation of squads, forming line of squads .... 871
Gaits .... 797
General rules·
fight on foot while deploying.... 900
squads face to front on halting .... 873
Guidon....867, 883, 884, 896
Guidons and principal guides ....867, 896
Halt .... 873
Intervals, increase and diminish ....881, 882
Intervals, line of squads, dismounted .... 895
Intervals, line of squads, mounted .... 869
Led horses....896, 898, 899, 901
Line of platoons .... 893
Line of skirmishers, from column of fours.... 880

## TROOP—Continued.


Pars.

Line of skirmishers, from line ..... 878, 879
Line of skirmishers, from line of squads ..... 876
Line of skirmishers, while forming line of squads .. 877
Line of squads from line ..... 870–872
Line of squads, to the front, from column of fours ..... 874
Line of squads, to the right or left, from column of fours ..... 875
Marchings ..... 886–890
Mount, from fight on foot. 901
Movements dismounted ... 895
Movements of squads ..... 865
Movements of troop same as squad ..... 868
Movements on varied ground ..... 857
Patrols and scouts ..... 861, 862
Platoon drill ..... 894
Posts and duties of captain 858
Posts and duties of lieutenants ..... 859, 860
Posts and duties of officers, etc ..... 858–868
Rally ..... 884, 885
Reenforcing ..... 858, 903
Relieving the firing line ... 902
Reserve ..... 862
Scouts and patrols ..... 861, 862
Squad leaders ..... 790, 792, 795, 796, 799, 808, 809, 830, 865, 866, 870, 871, 873, 876, 878, 891, 901
Squads, designation ..... 464, 869
Support ..... 861


## SQUADRON.


Advance, 3,000 yards to enemy's position ..... 932–945
Assemble ..... 915, 925, 946
Attacking line ..... 905
Attacks, front and flank .. 930
Attack to retain enemy .. 947
Deploy as skirmishers .... 911–913
Designation of troops for attacking line, etc .. 905, 917, 934
Dismounted squadron in action ..... 927–950
Dismount to fight on foot. 917–924
Echelons ..... 905
Fighting line ..... 905
Fight on foot, from column of fours ..... 918, 919
Fight on foot, from column of troops, or in mass .... 921
Fight on foot, from double column of fours ..... 921
Fight on foot from line of columns of fours ..... 920
Fight on foot, from line of platoon columns ..... 921
Fire discipline, how maintained ..... 939
Front of action ..... 929–931
Intervals, increase or diminish ..... 914
Led horses .... 917, 924, 926, 948–950
Line of squads ..... 906–910, 913
Marchings ..... 916
Mount, from fight on foot ..... 926
Movements dismounted ... 895
Programmes of instruction ..... 904
Rally or assemble after attack ..... 946
Reserve ..... 905
Rushes ..... 941, 943
Scouts and patrols ..... 931, 936, 948–950
Squadron acting alone, defensive ..... 950
Squadron acting alone, offensive ..... 948
Squadron in regiment, defensive ..... 949
Squadron in regiment, offensive ..... 932–947
Troop support ..... 905


THE REGIMENT ..... 895, 951, 952

## CEREMONIES.


Pars.

Brigade review ..... 1049
Corps review ..... 1053–1056
Details, alternating at guard mounting ..... 1057
Division review ..... 1050–1052
Escort of the standard ..... 1096
Escorts of honor ..... 1097
Funeral escort, dismounted ..... 1098, 1099
Funeral escort, mounted 1098, 1100
General rules for ceremonies ..... 1014–1017
  arrangement of troops of different arms ..... 1014
  non-commissioned officers commanding troops or platoons ..... 1016
  posting of troops, squadrons, etc ..... 1015
  rendering honors, mounted ..... 198, 1017
General rules for reviews ..... 1018–1037
  after passing reviewing officer ..... 1035, 1036
  bands play, turn out of column, etc ..... 1031
  brigades at ease ..... 1027
  colonels and majors facing line to give commands ..... 1028
  colonels and majors salute after resuming front ..... 1028
  column passing reviewing officer, distance ..... 1018
  commanders draw and return saber, when ..... 1026
  commanders of brigades and divisions take places in column, when ..... 1023
  commanders turning out of column ..... 1025
  commands repeated by colonels and majors. 1028

Pars.

General rules for reviews—Continued.
  execution of commands repeated by majors ..... 1028
  gait, after passing reviewing officer ..... 1035
  gaits, passing in review ..... 1034
  marking points where column changes direction ..... 1018
  modifications of formation for review ..... 1033
  officers and others accompanying reviewing officer ..... 1019, 1021, 1022
  orderlies ..... 1020–1022, 1024, 1025, 1028
  review before inspector junior to commanding officer ..... 1037
  reviewing officer passing around troops, who accompany ..... 1022
  reviewing officer, post of ..... 1019
  salutes by standard ..... 1002, 1030
  salutes, marching in review ..... 1019, 1030, 1034, 1039
  salutes returned by reviewing officer ..... 1019
  salute to standard by uncovering ..... 1019
  sounding march, flourishes and ruffles ..... 1009, 1032
  staff, etc., of commanders ..... 756, 1024–1026
  staff, etc., of reviewing officer ..... 1019, 1020, 1022
  staff, etc., when commanders face line to give commands ..... 1028
  standard bearer at "Prepare for review" and "Posts" ..... 1029
  trumpeters ..... 1031, 1032

CEREMONIES—Continued.


Pars.

Guard mounting, details alternating ..... 1057
Guard mounting, dismounted .....1074-1083
Guard mounting, dismounted cavalry and infantry united ..... 1082
Guard mounting, in bad weather, etc ..... 1073
Guard mounting, mounted .....1057-1073
Guard mounting, new and old guards..1067, 1070, 1072, 1079, 1081
Guard mounting without platoons ..... 1065
Guard mounting, without review ..... 1066
Inspection of quarters.1090, 1093
Inspection of troop by inspecting officer not captain .....1089, 1093
Inspection of troop, dismounted ..... 1091
Inspection, regimental.... 1094
Inspection, squadron...1092, 1093
Inspection, troop.....1088-1091
Muster, regimental, squadron, or troop..... 1095
Non-commissioned officer as chief of platoon at guard mounting.1059, 1061, 1075
Non-commissioned officer commanding guard..1061, 1068, 1075. 1076, 1080
Officer of the guard, supernumerary .....1060, 1075
Officers of the day .1062-1064, 1066, 1076, 1077
Orderly for commanding officer..... 1059
Parade, in line of platoon columns ..... 1086
Parade, regimental..... 1087
Parade, squadron..... 1084-1086
Reliefs at guard mounting ..... 1069, 1070
Review, brigade..... 1049
Review, corps.....1053-1056
Review, division.....1050-1052
Review ot command larger than corps..... 1055
Review, regimental.....1043-1048
Review, squadron.....1038-1042


MISCELLANEOUS SUBJECTS.


**About face for officers..... 1011**
**Advance guard.....979, 980**
**Armament of trooper, dismounted ..... 51**
**Armament of trooper, mounted ..... 354**
**Band.....649, 1004-1010**
Formation ..... 1004
Inspection ..... 1008
Marches, flourishes, and to the standard sounded by trumpeters..1009, 1032
Movements .....1007, 1010
Plays, turns out of column, etc., at review. 1031
Posts of ..... 649
**Battery, movements of, in brigade ..... 757**
**Blanket, bed, and shelter tent, to roll..... 270**
**Camping .....990-994**
**Carbine salute.....99, 1012**
**Cavalry division .....953-971**
Against artillery .....965, 966
Against cavalry .....955-963
Against infantry..... 964
Attacking line ..... 956
Dismounted.....969, 970
Echelons ..... 956
Foragers and skirmishers..... 967
Ground scouts and combat patrols..... 958
In general engagement 971
Pursuit ..... 968
Reserve and support... 956

MISCELLANEOUS SUBJECTS—Continued.


Pars.

Cavalry horses.....1101-1108
Cavesson and longe.....431,440
Chief trumpeter, post and signals.....1007,1010
Connecting patrols..... 978
Contact squadrons..... 977
Courtesy among military men..... 1012
Covering patrols..... 978
Daily allowance of forage.....page 389.
Daily allowance of water.....page 391.
Definitions.....pages 3-6.
Divisional cavalry.....953, 972
Employment of cavalry.....953-981
Enlisted men using about face for officers..... 1011
Escorts..... 974
Escorts of convoys..... 975
Evening gun.....page 471, 1119
Feeding..... 998
Gaits. 6,7,8,255,454,455,459,481, 497,539,640,791,1034,1035
General principles..... 1-19
"As you were"..... 11
Commands.....9, 10, 11
Double time..... 5
Elementary drills..... 14-19
Errors, correction of.. 11, 12
Formation for cavalry. 1
Gaits, mounted..... 6, 7, 8
Guide (right, left, or center)..... 3
Instructors, elementary drills..... 17-19
Length of drills..... 15
Movements from halt or marching..... 4
Movements toward either flank, how explained..... 2
Posts of officers, etc., and instructors..... 13
Recruits, grouping of.. 16

Pars.

General principles—Cont'd.
Single rank habitual formation for cavalry 1
Trumpet calls and saber signals..... 10
Guard of the standard..650, 1002, 1003, 1096
Guidon, manual of..... 1001
Guidon, posts and duties.....473, 474, 481, 483-487, 489, 490, 493, 504, 508, 527, 530, 533. 548, 560 (a, k, l, p), 611, 665
Guidon salute.....1001, 1038
Honors to be paid by troops. 1013
Horses, care and treatment 256, 288, 1107, 1108
Hygiene of stables..... 1105
Inspection band..... 1008
Led horses.....821, 823, 824, 825, 829, 896, 898, 899, 901, 917, 924, 926, 948-950
Manual of guidon..... 1001
Manual of the standard..... 1002
Marches.....982-989
Medicines veterinary....1109, 1110
Morning gun.....page 471, 1119
Mounted officers, about..... 470
Nomenclature of saddle.page 92.
Officers' patrols..... 978
Outposts..... 981
Packing.....1111-1118
Patrols..... 978
Points of horse....page 449.
Raids..... 973
Rear guard..... 980
Reconnoitering and screening..... 976
Reconnoitering patrols..... 978
Respect to superiors..... 1012
Running rein..... 432
Saber, manual for officers, etc.....181, 196-201
Salute with carbine, rules.99, 1012
Salute with hand, rules...36, 1012
Saluting distance..... 1012

MISCELLANEOUS SUBJECTS—Continued.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| Screening and reconnoitering | 976 |
| Shoeing horses | 1104 |
| Sick horses | 1108 |
| Signals | pages 7, 8, 10 |
| Skeleton of horse | page 448. |
| Standard and guard | 650, 1002, 1003 |
| Standard bearer at "Prepare for review," and "Posts" | 1029 |
| Standard, salutes by | 1002, 1030 |
| Standard, salutes to | 1019 |
| Stable duty | 995–1000 |
| Stable management | 1106 |
| Swimming and fording | 456 |
| Throwing the horse | 441–446 |
| Training horses | 430–453 |
| Treatment and care of horses | 256, 288, 1107, 1108 |
| Trumpet calls, etc | 1119 |
| Trumpeters, posts and duties | 1006 |
| Trumpeters sound march, flourishes, and to the standard | 1009, 1032 |
| Use by enlisted men of about face for officers | 1011 |
| Veterinary medicines | 1109, 1110 |
| Vicious horses, disciplining | 448–453 |
| Visiting patrols | 978 |
| Watering | 1000 |


# DISTANCES.


| | |
|---|---|
| Definition | Page 3. |
| Band, between ranks | 1004 |
| Band, in column | 649 |
| Band, open ranks | 1008 |
| Close column, between troops | 589 |
| Close column of wings, between wings | 606 |
| Column, band | 1005 |
| Column of files, dismounted, between files | 127 |
| Column of fours, between squadrons | 662 |
| Column of fours, between troops | 556 |
| Column of fours, dismounted, between fours | 140 |
| Column of fours, twos, or troopers, mounted, between fours, etc. | 298, 392, 408, 409 |
| Column of masses, between squadrons | 692 |
| Column of squadrons, between squadrons | 666 |
| Column of troopers, between troopers | 298 |
| Column of troops, between troops | 567 |
| Column of troops, full distance | 567 |
| Column of twos, dismounted, between twos | 151 |
| Dismissing squad, mounted | 288 |
| Dismount, in line | 308 |
| Echelon, between platoons | 519 |
| Echelon, between troops | 632 |
| Guard mounting, dismounted, file-closers, supernumeraries, and first sergeants | 1074, 1075 |
| Guides, posting of, from head or flank of column | 560 (i, k, l) |
| Instruction of trooper in galloping | 335 |
| In two lines, between lines, regiment | 666 |
| Leading trooper, where halted | 310 |
| Mount, in line | 307 |
| Platoon column, between platoons | 493 |
| Platoon distance | 493 |

DISTANCES—Continued.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| Saber exercise, etc | 176–179, 370 |
| Saluting | 1012, 1030 |
| Troop, extended order, between echelons | 856 |


## INTERVALS.


| | |
|---|---|
| Definition | Page 5. |
| Band, between men | 1004 |
| Band, in line | 649 |
| Double column of fours, between columns | 627 |
| Forming line by two movements | page 5, 564 |
| Guard mounting, between old and new guard | 1067, 1079 |
| In rank | 26, 27, 306, 379 |
| Line, band | 1005 |
| Line, between brigades | 778 |
| Line, between regiments | 755 |
| Line, between squadrons | 653 |
| Line, between troops | 543 |
| Line, dismounted, between troops | 925 |
| Line of columns of fours, full and closed intervals | 582 |
| Line of masses, between squadrons | 717 |
| Line of platoon columns, between squadrons | 740 |
| Line of platoon columns, between troops | 611 |
| Line of platoons, extended order, between platoons | 893 |
| Line of platoons in columns of fours | 508 |
| Line of platoons in columns of fours, between troops | 586 |
| Line of skirmishers, dismounted, between skirmishers | 830 |
| Line of skirmishers, mounted, between skirmishers | 798 |
| Line of squads, between squads, dismounted | 895 |
| Line of squads, between squads, mounted | 869 |
| Line with intervals, school of trooper | 278 |
| Regiment, extended order, between squadrons | 933 |
| Saber exercise, etc | 176–179 |
| Saber exercise, mounted | 370 |
| Squadron, dismounted, between troops | 925 |
| Squadron, in line, between troops | page 5, 543, 564 |
| Trumpeters on right of guard | 1067 |


## GENERAL RULES AND RULES OF GENERAL APPLICATION.


| | |
|---|---|
| After passing reviewing officer | 1035, 1036 |
| Aids in horsemanship | 293 |
| Alarm or surprise | 467, 1119 |
| Alignments | 110, 117–122, 274, 381–385, 473–475, 551–553, 660 |
| Alignments of line of masses | 726 |
| Armament of trooper | 51, 354 |
| Arrangement of troops of different arms | 1014 |
| "As you were" | 11, 24 |
| At ease, march | 286, 524 |
| Attention fixed, in extended order | 784 |
| Attention, position of | 28 |
| Attention, to resume | 31, 69, 194, 287 |
| Back step, from order | 110 |
| Bands play, turn out of column, etc., at review | 1031 |
| Base skirmisher | 794, 795 |

GENERAL RULES, ETC.—Continued.


Pars.

Base squadron.....652, 656
Base subdivision, in echelon.....518
Base troop.....548, 560 (a)
Basis of alignments.....384
Basis of extended order.....781
Battery.....753, 755, 757, 759, 764
Battle exercises.....111, 855
Blanket, bed, and shelter tent, to roll.....270
Brigades at ease, at review.....1027
Cadence of motions..55, 56, 105, 111
Cadence of steps.....38, 41, 45, 46
Captain, dressing troop.....545
Captain, etc., in firings.....153, 154
Captain, etc., in wheeling about by fours.....486, 487
Captain, forming line from column of fours.....491
Captain, in alignments...473–475, 545
Captain, in column of fours, twos, or troopers..485
Captain, in platoon column.493
Carbine, in extended order.105, 787, 813, 830
Carbine salute.....99, 1012
Care and treatment of horses.....256, 288, 1107, 1108
Cartridges, use of.....97, 98, 170, 171, 173, 855
Cavalry horses.....1101–1108
Cavesson and longe.....431, 440
"Cease firing, load," use of 160
Cease firing, when command may be given.....159
Ceremonies (see general rules for ceremonies).1014–1017
Charge.....421–429, 525–535, 635–637, 818, 868
Chief leaving post, in extended order.....789
Chief of platoon, dismounting in line or column of platoons.....476

Pars.

Chief of platoon, dressing platoon column.....495
Close boxes.....83, 100, 101, 155
Close column, leading or designated troop in front.589
Colonels and majors facing line to give commands, at review.....1028
Colonels and majors salute after resuming front, at review.....1028
Column of fours, changing guide.....138, 492
Column of fours in regiment, movements explained from march.....664
Column of fours in squadron and regiment, movements same as in troop.558, 663
Column of masses, ployment.....693
Column passing reviewing officer, distance.....1018
Combat patrols and ground scouts.....525, 832, 861, 862, 931, 936, 948–950, 958, 978
Commanders draw and return saber at review, when.....1026
Commanders of brigades and divisions take places in column at review, when 1023
Commanders turning out of column, at review.....1025
Commands...9, 10, 11, 461, 537, 538, 540, 652, 758, 867
Commands by chiefs of platoon.....461
Commands for firing.....155, 157
Commands repeated by colonels and majors, at review.....1028
Commencement of instruction, in extended order..782
Commencement of instruction with arms.....52

GENERAL RULES, ETC.—Continued.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| Corporal, as squad leader | 13, 113, 377, 380, 457, 464 |
| Corporal in extended order | 790, 792, 795, 796, 799, 808, 809, 830, 865, 866, 870, 871, 873, 876, 878, 891, 901, 939 |
| Correction of errors | 11, 12, 22, 290 |
| Courtesy among military men | 1012 |
| Deploy close column | 604–606 |
| Deployment of masses | 771 |
| Deployments, extended order | 797, 830 |
| Depth | page 3, 115, 299, 379 |
| Depth of horse, in rank | 299, 379 |
| Designation of brigade in reports | 773 |
| Designations of regiments and battery | 754 |
| Designation of squad | 464 |
| Designations of squadrons and troops | 639 |
| Designations of troops and wings | 543 |
| Detachments, details, etc | 479 |
| Discretion of majors | 646 |
| Disengaged hand in double time | 110 |
| Dismounted skirmishers | 819, 830 |
| Dismount, on skirmish line | 819–821 |
| Dismount to fight on foot while deploying | 900 |
| Distance and trace, in platoon column | 497 |
| Distance between troops in column of fours | 556 |
| Distance, full | page 3. |
| Distance in close column | 589 |
| Double time | 5, 110, 895 |
| Draw cartridge | 364 |
| Dress in column of fours | 138, 140, 392 |
| Dressing | 475, 484, 551 |
| Dressing, in extended order | 788 |
| Dressing platoon column | 495 |
| Drill, led horses | 824 |
| Drills, begin and end at walk | 255 |
| Echelon, base subdivision | 518 |
| Echelon, designation of subdivisions | 518 |
| Echelons, extended order | 856. 905 |
| Elementary drills | 14–19 |
| Enemy, imaginary, outlined, represented | 427 |
| Errors, correction of | 11, 12 |
| Escort of led horses | 824, 896, 917 |
| Execution of commands repeated by majors, at review | 1028 |
| Execution of movements in extended order at signals | 784, 790, 815 |
| Extended order, from any formation | 785 |
| Extended order, positions of piece | 105, 830 |
| Evening gun | page 471, 1119 |
| Facings, from order | 110 |
| Face to the front on halting, in extended order | 786, 812, 873 |
| Fall in | 26, 27, 53, 116, 468, 472 |
| Fighting line | 905 |
| Fight on foot | 819–830, 895–903, 917–952, 969, 970 |
| Fight on foot, formation before dismounting | 822 |
| Fight on foot, while deploying | 900 |
| Fire at will and with counted cartridges | 835, 841, 842, 938 |
| Fire discipline | 831–837, 939 |
| Firings | 157 |
| Firings, dismounted | 838–843 |
| Firings, mounted skirmishers | 816, 817 |
| Foragers and skirmishers | 425, 428, 967 |
| Fording and swimming, with horses | 456 |

GENERAL RULES, ETC.—Continued.


Pars.

Formation advancing considerable distances... 550
Formation before dismounting to fight on foot 822
Formation for cavalry..1, 955, 956
Formation of squads, forming line of squads... 871
Formations and routes, moving into position.... 757
Forming for dismounted service ..... 472
Forming line, faced to the rear .....560 (n,o)
Forward march, on completion of wheel by fours .....142, 394
Fours wheel about toward point of rest, forming line faced to the rear .....560 (n)
Front.....page 4, ..115, 299, 379
Front of action .....929–931, 952
Gait, after passing reviewing officer ..... 1035
Gait, in platoon column.. 497
Gaits.....454, 455
Gaits of movements.....6, 7, 8, 255, 459, 481, 497, 539, 640, 791, 797, 1034, 1035
General principles, Cavalry Drill Regulations... 1–19
General principles, extended order.....781–789
Ground scouts and combat patrols..525, 832, 861, 862, 931, 936, 948–950, 958, 978
Grouping of men into squads.....337, 457
Grouping of recruits....16, 25, 113
Guard mounting, details alternating..... 1057
Guard mounting, dismounted cavalry and infantry united..... 1082
Guard mounting, in bad weather, etc..... 1073

Pars.

Guard mounting, new and old guards.....1067, 1070, 1072, 1079, 1081
Guard mounting, noncommissioned officer as chief of platoon..1059, 1061, 1075
Guard mounting, noncommissioned officer commanding guard..1061, 1068, 1075, 1076, 1080
Guard of the standard..650, 1002, 1003, 1096
Guide, announcement of.. 501, 541
Guide in column of fours. 138, 140, 142, 391, 392, 394, 485
Guide, in oblique march .132, 133
Guide, oblique in column of subdivisions ..... 500
Guide of squad.....114, 378
Guide of squad, in extended order .....794, 795
Guide (right, left or center) ..... 3
Guides, in platoon column ..... 497
"Guides out".....473, 560(r)
Guides, recovering direction.....497, 569, 571
Guidon and principal guide, extended order...867, 896
Guidon, changes of front .....560(1)
Guidon, forming line from column of fours..485–487, 489, 490
Guidon, forming line from platoon column..... 504
Guidon, forming line of platoon columns ..... 611
Guidon, in alignments...473, 474, 552, 553
Guidon, in charge ....527, 530, 533
Guidon, in extended order .....867, 883, 884, 896
Guidon, in platoon column 493
Guidon, in turnings .....483, 484

GENERAL RULES, ETC.—Continued.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| Guidon, line of platoons in columns of fours | 508 |
| Guidon, manual of | 1001 |
| Guidon, marching in line | 481, 548 |
| Guidon salute | 1001, 1038 |
| Guidon, successive formations | 560(a, k, l, p), 611, 665 |
| Halt | 386 |
| Halting faced to the front, extended order | 786, 812 |
| Halting leading four or subdivision at less than prescribed distance | 404 |
| Hammer at safety notch | 57, 74 |
| Honors to be paid by troops | 1013 |
| Horse holders | 821, 823, 825 |
| Horses, care and treatment of | 256, 288, 1107, 1108 |
| Inspection of arms | 101–104, 373, 374 |
| Inspection of boxes | 100 |
| Inspection of quarters | 1090, 1093 |
| Inspection, pistol | 175 |
| Instructors, elementary drills | 17–19, 254 |
| Instructors, posts of | 13 |
| Instruction in extended order | 782 |
| Instruction, mounted, order of | 254, 290 |
| Instruction of officers, etc. | 462, 542 |
| Interval between skirmishers | 798, 805, 806, 830 |
| Intervals, elasticity of | page 5. |
| Intervals, forming line by two movements | page 5, 564 |
| Kneeling and lying down, extended order | 830 |
| Lariat, use of, in fight on foot | 819 |
| Leading the squad | 790–796 |
| Leading four or subdivision, where halted | 404 |
| Leading trooper, where halted | 310 |
| Led horses | 821, 823–825, 829, 896, 898, 899, 901, 917, 924, 926, 948–950 |
| Length of drills | 15 |
| Length of steps | 38, 41, 44, 45, 46 |
| Line by two movements, command "march" | 564 |
| Line of columns of fours, movements same as in troop | 588 |
| Line of masses, posting guides | 717 |
| Link horses | 821, 823, 825, 827 |
| Longe | 290, 431, 440 |
| Maintenance of fire discipline | 939 |
| Manual of carbine, battle exercises | 111, 830 |
| Manual of carbine, hammer at safety notch | 57 |
| Manual of carbine, marching and halting | 110 |
| Manual of carbine, mounting and dismounting | 355 |
| Manual of carbine, piece in front of body | 57 |
| Manual of carbine, position of thumb | 57 |
| Manual of carbine, resuming carry, last motions | 57 |
| Manual of carbine, when marchings, etc., are understood | 110 |
| Manual of guidon | 1001 |
| Manual of the standard | 1002 |
| March and stand at ease, in extended order | 788 |
| Marking points where column changes direction, at review | 1018 |
| Memorizing drill signals | pages 471, 472, 1119 |
| Modifications of formation for review | 1033 |
| Morning gun | page 471, 1119 |
| Mount and dismount | 285 |

GENERAL RULES, ETC.—Continued.


Pars.

Mounted movements, gaits of .....6, 7, 8, 255, 459, 481, 497, 539, 640, 791, 1034, 1035
Mounted officers, about ... 470
Mounted skirmishers, firings .....816, 817
Mount, on skirmish line .. 820
Movements by fours.....138, 142, 391, 485–491, 558, 663, 664, 830
Movements by platoons, in squadron..... 607
Movements by threes..... 830
Movements by troops or platoons, simultaneous .541, 652
Movements, dismounted, regiment..... 895
Movements, dismounted, squadron..... 895
Movements, dismounted to fight on foot ..... 830
Movements, dismounted, troop .....138, 153, 472, 895
Movements from halt or marching ..... 4
Movements in close column, same as column at full distance ..... 599
Movements in extended order, commence ..... 784
Movements in extended order, dismounted, at quick time ..... 895
Movements in extended order, with reference to enemy.....783, 855
Movements, in regimen, from column of fours explained from march ..... 664
Movements of battery, in brigade..... 757
Movements of column of masses same as column at full distance..... 702
Movements of double column of fours same as line of columns of fours..... 627

Pars.

Movements of masses like regiment in line ..... 727
Movements of platoons, detachments, etc., like squad mounted ..... 479
Movements of platoons, in regiment .....740–742
Movements of regiment in column at full distance same as in squadron....688, 689
Movements of regiment in column of fours same as in squadron..... 663
Movements of regiment in line of columns of fours. 686
Movements of second, etc., lines, in brigade .....764, 772
Movements of squad, in extended order, executed at signals .....784, 790, 815
Movements of squadron in column of fours same as in troop ..... 558
Movements of squadron in line of columns of fours same as in troop..... 588
Movements of troop, like squad, mounted .... ....479, 868
Movements on foot, in double time ..... 5
Movements toward either flank, how explained .... 2
"Next" ..... 344
Nomenclature of the saddle.....page 92.
Non-commissioned officer as chief of platoon at guard mounting .1059, 1061, 1075
Non-commissioned officer commanding guard..1061, 1068, 1075, 1076, 1080
Non-commissioned officer commanding troop or platoon..... 1016
Objective and range, firings .154, 157, 831, 833, 834, 837, 843

GENERAL RULES, ETC.—Continued.


Pars.

Oblique march, to resume, from halt ..... 303
Officer of the guard, supernumerary ..... 1060, 1075
Officers and others accompanying reviewing officer ..... 1019, 1021, 1022
Officers, manual of saber ..... 196–201
Officers of the day at guard mounting ..... 1062–1064, 1066, 1076, 1077
Open chamber ..... 54
Order from brigade commander to squadron commander ..... 773
Order on halting ..... 110
Orderlies at review ..... 1020–1022, 1024, 1025, 1028
Orderly for commanding officer ..... 1059
Overcoat, to roll ..... 269
Passing from close to extended order and reverse, in brigade ..... 773
Patrols and scouts ..... 525, 832, 861, 862, 931, 936, 948–950, 958, 978
Pistol firing ..... 174
Pistol, in extended order ..... 787, 813
Pistol lanyard ..... 162
Pivot, fixed and movable ..... 140, 144, 392, 397
Platoon column ..... 493
Platoons ..... 463, 479, 894, 895
Ployment of column of masses ..... 593, 693
Position of the soldier ..... 28
Position of the trooper, without saddle ..... 276
Position of the trooper, with saddle ..... 326
Positions of piece ..... 109, 830
Positions of piece, extended order and route marches ..... 105, 830
Posting of troops, squadrons, etc ..... 1015

Pars.

Posts of officers, etc., and instructors ..... 13
Principal guide in alignments ..... 473–475, 545, 553, 560, 665
Principles of charge ..... 421
Principles of Par. 8, example ..... 405
Ranges, classification ..... 837
Rapid fire ..... 836, 843, 944
Recruits, care and treatment of horses ..... 256
Recruits, grouping of ..... 16, 25. 113
Recruits marching with arms ..... 109
Reënforcing ..... 858, 903
Relieving the firing line ..... 902
Rendering honors, mounted ..... 198, 1017
Reports to brigade commander ..... 773
Respect to superiors ..... 1012
Review before inspector junior to commanding officer ..... 1037
Reviewing officer passing around troops, who accompany ..... 1022
Reviewing officer, post of ..... 1019
Review of command larger than corps ..... 1055
Reviews (see general rules for reviews) ..... 1018–1037
Riding school ..... 311
Right shoulder, when taken ..... 110
Route marches ..... 105, 200, 286, 524, 544, 651
Route step ..... 29, 68
Running rein ..... 432
Rushes ..... 853, 941, 943
Saber, combat mounted ..... 202, 252
Saber, manual, etc., officers, non-commissioned staff and file-closers ..... 181, 196–201
Saber, marching in double time ..... 199

GENERAL RULES, ETC.—Continued.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| Saber, rendering honors | 198 |
| Saber, route marches | 200 |
| Saber, scabbard hooked | 181 |
| Saber, when drawn and returned | 200 |
| Saddle, nomenclature of the | page 92. |
| Saddle, to pack | 271 |
| Salutes, by standard | 1002, 1030 |
| Salutes, marching in review | 1002, 1019, 1030, 1034, 1039 |
| Salutes returned by reviewing officer | 1019 |
| Salute standard by uncovering | 1019 |
| Salute with carbine | 99, 1012 |
| Salute with hand | 36, 1012 |
| Salute with saber | 187, 197, 198, 1012 |
| Saluting distance | 1012 |
| Scouts and patrols | 525, 832, 861, 862, 931, 936, 948–950, 958, 978 |
| Sharpshooters and individuals firing | 833 |
| Shelter-tent and bed blanket, to roll | 270 |
| Shoeing horses | 1104 |
| Short step | 131 |
| Side step from order | 110 |
| Signals | pages 7, 8, 10 |
| Simultaneous movements by troops, etc | 541, 652 |
| Single rank habitual formation for cavalry | 1 |
| Skirmishers, mounted, firings | 816, 817 |
| Sounding of march, flourishes, and to the standard | 1009, 1032 |
| Speed of different gaits | 454 |
| Spur | 331, 332, 354 |
| Squad leader | 13, 113, 377, 380, 457, 464, 790, 792, 795, 796, 799, 808, 809, 830, 865, 866, 870, 871, 873, 876, 878, 891, 901, 939 |
| Squadrons at ease awaiting completion of movement | 647 |
| Squads | 113, 377, 457, 464, 465 |
| Squads, in extended order, face to the front on halting | 873 |
| Squad, when broken up | 781 |
| Stable management | 1106 |
| Staff, etc., of commanders at review | 756, 1024–1026 |
| Staff, etc., of reviewing officer | 1019, 1020–1022 |
| Staff, etc., when commanders face line to give commands at review | 1028 |
| Staff, flag, and orderlies of brigade commander | 756 |
| Staff of commanders draw and return saber at review, when | 1026 |
| Standard bearer at "Prepare for review" and "Posts" | 1029 |
| Stand to horse | 287 |
| Step, when lost | 124 |
| Subdivisions of troop | 463, 464 |
| Successive formations | 560, 665 |
| Swimming horses and fording | 456 |
| Throwing horse | 441–446, 452 |
| Trail while in motion | 110 |
| Training horses | 430–453 |
| Treatment and care of horses | 256, 288, 1107, 1108 |
| Trooper, position of | 276, 287, 326 |
| Troops, two or more united | 458 |
| Trumpet calls and saber signals | pages 7, 8, 10, 784, 1119 |
| Trumpeters, at review | 1031, 1032 |
| Trumpeters, posts and duties | 1006, 1031 |
| Trumpeters sound marches, flourishes, and to the standard | 1009 1032 |
| Turn, individual | 297 |

GENERAL RULES, ETC.—Continued.


| | Pars. |
|---|---|
| Turnings | 389, 390, 483, 484 |
| Use by enlisted men of about face for officers | 1011 |
| Vicious horses, disciplining | 448–453 |
| Volleys | 156, 834, 938 |
| Walk, drills begin and end at | 155 |
| Wheeling by fours | 551 |
| Wire fences | 526 |


○

RBC
Fairfield Rogers
357.73
Un3.2

357.73 Un3.2
U.S.-War dept.
Drill regulations.

357.73 Un 3.2